

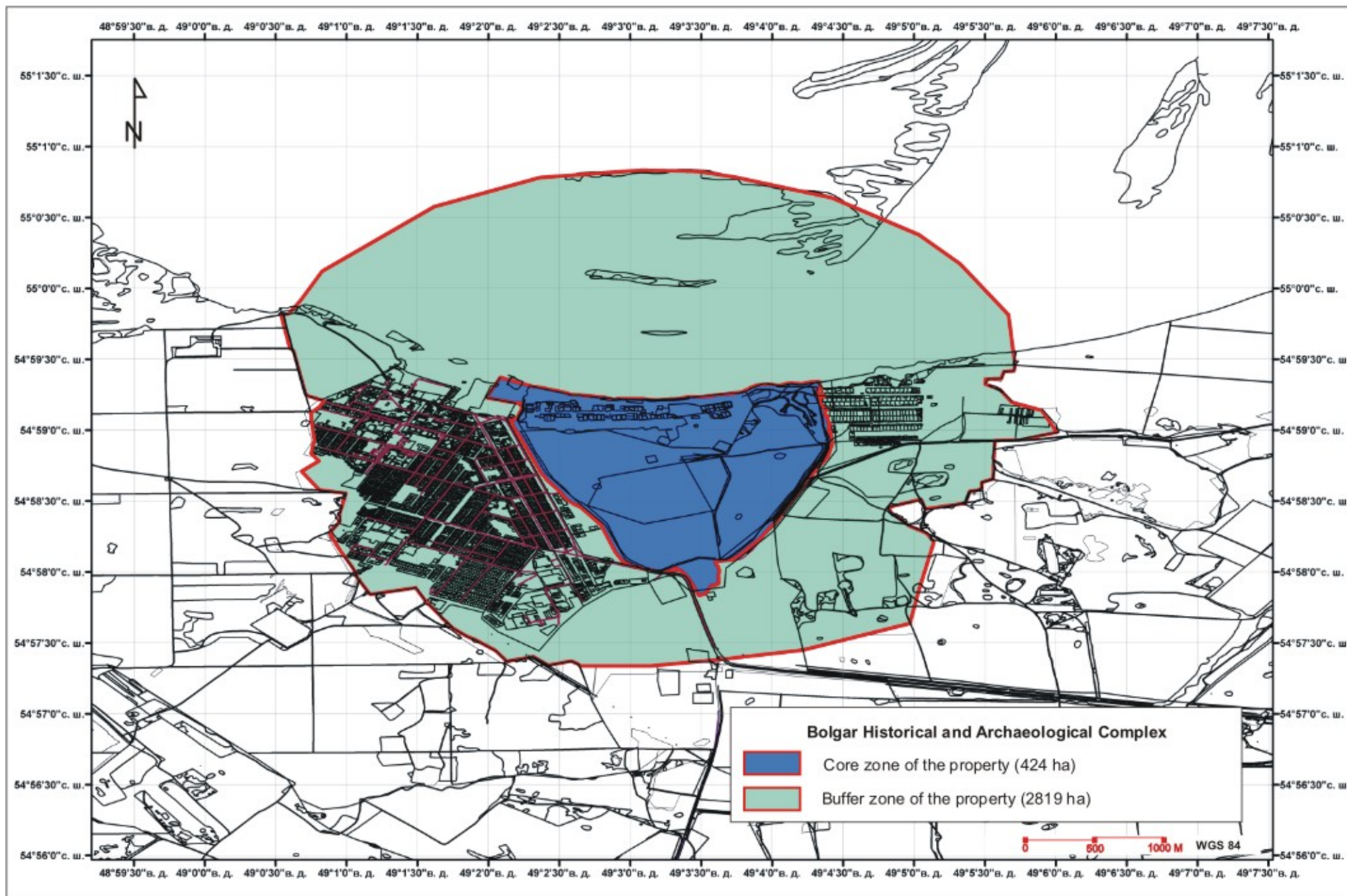
Nomination
BOLGAR HISTORICAL AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL COMPLEX
(RUSSIAN FEDERATION)

For inscription
on the World Heritage List

Executive Summary

State Party	Russian Federation
State, province or region	Republic of Tatarstan, Spasskiy Rayon (District), Town of Bolgar
Name of property	The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex
Geographical coordinates to the nearest second	N 54 ⁰ 58' 44'' E 49 ⁰ 03' 23''
Textual description of the boundary(ies) of the nominated property	<p>The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex borders on the town of Bolgar from the east and on the Privolzhskiy settlement (Podivanovo village) from the west, occupying the edge of the 30m high Volga river terrace.</p> <p>From the west, east, and south, the Complex is surrounded by an earth rampart and a moat of the Bolgar archaeological site of the 10th to 15th centuries extended to more than 5.5 km, enclosing the area of 416.8 hectares.</p> <p>From the north, the Complex borders on a especially protected natural territory of the Republic of Tatarstan, the State Natural Complex Preserve “Spasski” of regional significance (“<i>Spassky Insular Archipelago</i>”) with an area of 17979 hectares that was inscribed by the decision of the International Coordination Council of the MAB UNESCO in September, 2007 into the Large Volga-Kama Biosphere Reserve as a cluster area.</p>
A4 (or “letter”) size map of the nominated property, showing boundaries and buffer zone (if present)	Map of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex with boundaries of the property and its buffer zone
Justification Statement of Outstanding Universal Value	<p>The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex is a unique testimony of the existence of an ancient civilization that had developed in the Middle Volga and Foreland Ural area in the 10th–15th centuries. The bearer of this civilization was the Volga Bulgaria, or the Volga–Kama Bolghar, a historic Bulgar state. This civilization ceased to exist by the 16th century, but paradigms of culture and spiritual life, which had been formed in it, defined the characteristics of faith, customs, traditions, social and moral norms of life in this geo-cultural region for many years.</p> <p>The Bolgar Complex in the 13th century was the first capital of the Golden Horde (the headquarters of Batu-Khan and <i>Ulus Djuchi</i>). The spatial organization of the Bolgar Complex is a perfect example of the advanced urbanism in the Volga Bulgaria State that is one of basic</p>

	<p>indication of a civilization. Another indication of civilization is existence of money circulation system. Even in the mid 1200s coins of Volga Bulgaria were minted.</p> <p>The Complex is a sacred place for Muslims. Being a place of formal adoption of Islam in 922 by Volga Bulgarians, the complex is a subject of religious worship and pilgrimage of Muslims from the 16th century. Today many Tatars consider Bolghar city to be their ancient and religious capital and to allow a glimpse of Muslim Bulgar life before the Mongol invasion of Volga Bulgaria.</p> <p>The Bolgar Complex is an outstanding example of Muslim medieval architecture in Eastern Europe. This is the world's northernmost monument of Muslim architecture, a unique example of the Bulgar-Tatar architecture of the 13-14 cc., indicating a high level of building technology and distinctive character of the architecture. Architectural traditions of the ancient Bulgars were embodied in the civil and religious constructions of modern Tatarstan.</p> <p>Occupation layer of the Complex reaches a depth of 5 meters. Seven cultural strata are identified there from the mid of the first millennium.</p> <p>Thus, the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex presents exceptional testimony to the existence highly developed civilization of Volga Bolgar that dominated the Region of Volga in the 10th–15th centuries.</p> <p>The cultural landscape of Bolgar has remained intact for a thousand years.</p>
<p>Criteria under which property is nominated (itemize criteria)</p>	<p>(iii)</p>
<p>Name and contact information of official local institution/agency</p>	<p>Bolgar State Historical and Architectural Museum Reserve 67, Nazarovykh St., Bolgar 422840, Spasski Raion, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation</p> <p>Phone: +7(84347) 30456, Fax: +7(84347) 30132 E-mail: bolgar.museum@tatar.ru http://www.bolgar.info mk.bolgar.museum@tatar.ru</p>



Property for inscription on the World Heritage List

1. IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROPERTY

1a. Country

The Russian Federation

1b. State, Province or Region

The Republic of Tatarstan, Spasskiy *Raion* (District), the town of Bolgar

1c. Name of Property

The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex

1d. Geographical coordinates to the nearest second

N 54° 58' 44" E 49° 03' 23"

1.e Maps and plans, showing the boundaries of the nominated property and buffer zone

1. Sketch-map: Federative Structure of the Russian Federation
2. Sketch-map: Administrative-territorial division of the Republic of Tatarstan.
3. Map showing the territory edges of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex and the State Natural Complex Reservation of regional significance “Spassky” (“*Spassky Insular Archipelago*”).
4. Sketch-map with territory edges of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex, and architectural-archeological objects.
5. Sketch-map of extension of the occupation layer within borders of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex.
6. Space photography of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex.

1.f Area of nominated property (ha.) and proposed buffer zone (ha.)

Area of the nominated property is 424 ha

Buffer zone is 2819 ha

Total area is 3243 ha

2. DESCRIPTION

2.a Description of Property

At present the area of the medieval town of Bolgar is occupied by the village of Bolgary and an extensive Bolgar archaeological site, dating from the 10th to 15th centuries that features brick and stone public buildings and buildings for public worship, which have been survived from the town of Bolgar’s heyday in the latter part of the 13th to the early 14th century, within fortifications (a moat and rampart) encircled its territory from the south, west, and east in the 14th and early 15th centuries. The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex includes the following:

The settlement of Bolgar dating back to the 10th-15th centuries

The Bolgar settlement adjoins the town of Bolgar from the east and occupies the edge of the Volga terrace 30 meters high. From the west, east and south the settlement is surrounded by an earth rampart reaching in some points 5 m in height (it used to be called “Big” in the 18th century) and a moat 2 m deep. The length of the entrenchment is 5.63 km. There are ancient driveways from every side of the entrenchment. The site is triangular in shape, and its “apex” faces the south, where there

is an extra fortification located near one entrance, called “Small Town”. In the north, the “Big” rampart and the moat come against the slope of the terrace. The north-eastern part of the site is occupied by two ravines, the Big and Small Jerusalem (*Ierusalimskiy*) ravines, which form three capes near the edge of the terrace. The western one, formed by the Big Jerusalem (*Ierusalimskiy*) ravine and the terrace edge and having steep slopes and several westward spurs of the ravine, was the original site of Bolgar.

The occupation layer of the archaeological site of Bolgar includes seven beddings, spanning the period from before the appearance of a town to modernity:

- I - the life of the modern village of the 20th-21th centuries;
- II - the Russian history period, late 16th to 19th century;
- III - the Kazan Khanate period, mid-15th to 16th centuries;
- IV - the Golden Horde period, late 13th to early 15th century. This layer is subdivided into layer IVI (the late Golden Horde period dating mid-14th to early 15th centuries) and layer IVE (the early Golden Horde period, mid-13th to early 14th centuries);
- V-VI pre-Mongolian period of the town history, and the layer V is age-dated to the second half of the period, but its beginning is age-dated to the 11th century, and the layer VI is age-dated to the first half of the period (9th-10th centuries and partly the 11th century) at that;
- VII - pre-Bolgar settlements dating to the middle of the second half of the 1st millennium.

The stratigraphic scale is associated with the division into periods of the history of the Volga Bulgaria and of the medieval Eastern Europe, as a whole. The materials and layers of the archaeological site of Bolgar reflect all the characteristics of the culture and ethnic mix of the Volga Bulgaria and the Golden Horde, and their political history. General structure, sequence and dating of the layers are proved with long-term researches.

The Cathedral Mosque (“Tetragon”) (ruins)

The Cathedral Mosque is the first and just the only survived architectural structure of the early Golden Horde period.

Main building of the Complex forming ensemble of the public center of Bolgar of the 13-14th centuries included the Khan’s palace, the East and North Mausoleums known as the “Saint Nicholas Church” and the “Monastery Cellar”.

The limestone building, rectangular in plan and with dimensions 45 m by 46 m, had 20 columns and wood hipped roof. Arched portal of the entrance and a high minaret adjoined to the main northern façade. The temple walls were plastered and strengthened with counterforts from every part. A mihrab bordered with rich ornamental carving was located from the southern side. At the beginning of the 14th century the Cathedral Mosque was restored including internal re-planning: hall for worship was divided into six naves with six octahedral columns.

At the present time the property is ruins of walls, corner towers, bases of portal and columns foundations, and a minaret reconstructed in recent years. It was studied with archaeological excavations in 1892, 1915, 1946. Conservation works were performed in 1964–1966, 2003-2005.

Though there are many projects of restoration of the Cathedral Mosque, which are founded on analogies and assumptions of researchers, no restoration works are planned to be realized.

The Big Minaret (restored)

According to evidences and iconographic documents, the 24-meter “Big Pillar of Big Minaret” had substantial similarity with extant “Small Pillar or Small Minaret” (it was twice as large and had Arabic inscriptions at the façade, which are quotations of the Koran). It crushed down in 1841, its materials were plundered fast by locals. Professor of the Kazan University I.Berezin wrote: “Now the big pillar, i.e. Minaret, does not exist anymore: its remains lie on the place it fell down. When passing through the Bulgar land in 1846, I saw several stones with scripture from the Koran that belong to...the fallen minaret”.

The project of restoration of the Big Minaret of the Cathedral Mosque was developed and realized in 2000 on the basis of analysis of following historical, literature and iconographic materials of the 18-19th centuries: (N.I.Savinkov and I.Krapivin (1732); V.I.Tatischev (the 1730s); G.R.Derjavin (1761), A.M.Svechin (1762); P.S.Pallas (1768), I.Lepekhan (1767); N.I.Kaftannikov (1819); P.P.Sviny (1823); F.Kh.Erdman (1825); E.Tournerelli (1837); G.G. and N.G.Chernetsovs (1838); A.Durand (1839), I.I.Vtorov (1840); album by architect A.Schmit :Architectural Drawings of the Ruins of the Ancient Bulgars. Made on location in 1827” (“Round Tower or Minaret” natural view), “Plan and Profile of the Big ... Tower”.

Restoration of the minaret was realized at the original calcareous foundation in accordance with the International Charter of protection and restoration of monuments and remarkable places” (the “Venice Charter”). Limestone from the *Sukeevsk* field (situated on the opposite side of Bolgar, on the opposite side of the Volga river in the neighborhood of the village Sukeevo) was used for the minaret restoration. All the architectural monuments are constructed with this limestone.

Restoration of the Big Minaret made considerably better the general perception of the Complex and provided integrity and potential unity with the Cathedral Mosque, the North and the East Minarets (color, tone, structure, shape and proportionality) lost in the 19th century, and did not make discrepancy in its original (traditional) environment.

At present the view of the central part of the Complex is in line with the iconographic documents of the 18th-19th centuries. The observation deck of the minaret is available for tourists and pilgrims; the deck provides a fine view of the site of Bolgar and its architectural monuments, boundless water space of the Volga and green meadows with copses.

Restoration of the Big Minaret was justified because of the religious interests (Muslims pilgrimage go for so called the “Little Hajji” to the holy places; annual celebration of turning Mohammedan).

The North Mausoleum (“Monastery Cellar”)

The North Mausoleum is located in the northern part of the Complex, in front of the northern facade of the Cathedral Mosque. It was built century used as a cellar by the Dormition (*Uspenskiy*) Monastery’s monks in the 1430s and in the early 18th. The building is made of white limestone. Tuff blocks are used in its facing. It is square in plan, with the sides measuring 13 m by 18 m.

There are only the foundations, the inner filling of the walls with some of the original facing reaching to the base of a totally lost dome, and several courses of outer facing inside the occupation layer, pointed arch door and window openings, and corner chamfers passing from the square base of the inner room to the octahedron and the circular base of the dome that remains the original look. The mausoleum was build in connection with completion of the second reconstruction of the Cathedral Mosque and improvement of the central square of the town of Bolgar. The mausoleum was the family shrine of a noble Bolgar name.

The monument was being studied by means of archeological excavations in 1964, 1966. The monument was conserved and partly renewed in 1968-1969. Recently it is used as a lapidary (exhibition of epigraphy of the 8th-14th centuries).

The East Mausoleum (“St. Nicholas Church”)

The East Mausoleum is situated in the northern part of the Complex, in front of the eastern facade of the Cathedral Mosque. It was built of white stone (limestone and tuff) by analogy with medieval Muslim burial vaults with a projecting portal (mausoleum-*durbe*) in the 1330s and was converted into a Russian Orthodox church dedicated to St. Nicholas in the early 18th century.

The mausoleum is square-shaped with a portal entrance on the southern side. An octahedron is placed on a rectangular prismatic shape, with trumpet vaults passing up to it. The octahedron is covered with a hemispherical dome. Plot dimensions are 10.8 m by 10.8 m. The mausoleum was built in connection with completion of the second reconstruction of the Cathedral Mosque and the development of the central square of the town of Bolgar. The mausoleum was a family burial vault of the noble Bolgar family of the Burashbekovs.

It was being studied by means of archeological excavations in 1964-1966 and 1991. The East Mausoleum was partly restored in 1967-1968. The last preservation works were being done in 2006.

The Church of the Dormition

The church in the Name of Dormition of the Virgin is situated in the historic centre of the archaeological site, in its northern part near the Cathedral Mosque. The verticals of the temple part and the belfry dominate the Bolgar’s monuments and can be seen from a distance, providing a kind of reference point in the surrounding natural landscape. It was built in 1732-1734 with the money contributed by a Kazan merchant, Mikhlyaev. During the construction of the church, ruins of the Bolgar monuments were used for the foundations, and the wall plinths were made of the Bolgar gravestones with Arabic and Armenian epitaphs, which are of great scholarly value.

This architectural monument of provincial baroque is of interest as an element of a historically established complex.

Restoration works were carried out in 1965, 1977, 1982-1983, 2006-2009. Since the 1970s the Church was converted into a historical and archaeological museum of the preserve.

The House with Towers (“Khan’s Palace”) (ruins)

This is a brick and stone monumental building with corner pylons (towers). It is square in plan (internal dimensions 24x29 m). It is situated at the edge of upper plateau of the site in 90-100 m to the northeast from the Cathedral Mosque over bath “Red Chambers”. It has been explored since 1994 with intervals, more than 1000 m² are uncovered. Material accumulated within excavation works allows to correlate time of the start of its construction with the middle of the 13th century. It has rich complex of finds, a part of a numismatic collection is presented with coins of 1240-1259.

The Red Chamber (ruins)

The Red Chamber is situated at the foot of the left bank of the Volga lower the complex of the Cathedral Mosque. It is constructed in the 15th century. Foundations and basement of walls 1,5-2 m height, underground heating system, system of water supply and sewage, stone bowls of basins and other details are only parts that survive. The building is L-shaped. The Red Chamber is ruins of an ancient bath which was called because of the color of the inner wall painting. At present the Red Chamber lies hidden underground.

The Red Chamber is an evidence of advanced construction engineering skills of the Volga Bolgars and high level of improvement of the central part of their capital city.

The Red Chamber was archeologically studied in 1938-1940 and preserved (it is filled with soil and fenced with a stone dike from the river).

The East Chamber (“Khan’s Palace or Bath-house”) (ruins)

The East Chamber is situated approximately 200 m south-east of the East Mausoleum. It was built in the mid-13th – early 14th centuries. The construction bears marks of bad destruction caused by the stone provision from ancient ruins in the late 19th century. Some segments of the masonry were removed down to the foot of the foundation. The general plan of the building resembles the Red Chamber and especially the White Chamber. The dimensions in plan are 39 m by 19 m. The iron-clad masonry of the foundations and the external wall base was made of large pieces of limestone, and the inner walls were filled with small quarry-stone and rubble. The building is the remains of the largest and earliest public bath-house in Bolgar.

The East Chamber was archaeologically studied in 1984-1991. Preservation works had being carried out in the end of the 1990s.

The Black Chamber

The Black Chamber is situated 400 m south of the Cathedral Mosque complex and the same distance east of the Small Town complex. It was built of white limestone in the mid-14th century. Part of the central room of a larger building survives. The building is plastered inside and decorated with alabaster mouldings consisting of profiled ties, star-shaped rosettes, colonnettes with capitals, and stalactites on trumpet vault chamfers. The dimensions of the surviving octahedron are 10 m by 10 m, and, including the galleries, is 15 m by 16 m. The Black Chamber was the khan’s courthouse.

The Black Chamber is the only extant civil building dating from the 14th century.

Archaeological explorations near the Black Chamber were being done in 1957 and 1966. The monument was conserved and partly restored in 1956-1957 and 1977-1984.

The White Chamber (ruins)

The White Chamber is located 250 m to the south-east of the Black Chamber. The building was constructed in the 1340s. The walls are made of white stone, limestone, with a facing of square blocks on the outer side, with backfilled masonry, coursed rubble masonry, and lime plastering of the inner surfaces of the walls. The northern part of the building (the bath-house anteroom) is built of brick. The building consists of several rectangular spaces of different sizes. The dimensions in plan are 33 m by 17 m. It was one of town’s public bath-houses.

The White Chamber is a pattern of the 14th century Bolgar buildings modelled on Oriented baths widespread in Central Asia, the Crimea, and Transcaucasus. It is an evidence of advanced construction engineering skills of the Volga Bolgars and high level of the town improvement.

The White Chamber was archaeologically studied in 1982-1984, and conserved in the 1990s.

The Maly (Small) Minaret

The Small Minaret is situated 500 meters southward of the central complex of the Cathedral Mosque, near the Khans’ Shrine. The minaret was erected in the second part of the 14th century and took the Great Minaret of the Cathedral Mosque as model. It was built of drafted tuff and limestone blocks. The minaret is a massive column, whose cube-shaped base passes smoothly, by flat triangular bevels, to an octahedral intermediate tier. A 45-steps winding staircase inside the minaret leads to the top tier. The dimensions in plan are 4.8 m by 4.8 m. The height is about 10 meters (without the tent top).

The Small Minaret is the only medieval Bolgar architectural monument to survive intact to this day.

Area of the Minaret location has being studied with archeological excavations in 1914 and in 1968-1969. The monument was restored in 1968-1970.

The Khans' Shrine

Khans' Shrine is situated 15 meters to the north of the Lesser Minaret within the territory of a former cemetery. The building was built at the beginning of the 14th century. In the middle of the 14th century Khans' Shrine was reconstructed to form a complex of vaults (shrines). It is made of white limestone. The building is a small portal-less dome structure, square in plan. Its dimensions are 8.5 m by 8.5 m. Eight graves in *tabut* boxes were uncovered and some of them had been lying under brick gravestones. Khans' Shrine is an exponent of the central-dome type of cubic mausoleums so widespread in the countries of the Islamic Orient.

The monument was archaeologically studied in 1968 and conserved and partially restored in 1968-1971 and 1990, 2006.

Mausoleums (ruins)

Ritual buildings, mausoleums, hold a special place among the monumental stone structures of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex. Besides the East and North Mausoleums, and Khans' Shrine, another nine mausoleums surviving on the foundation level and another four mausoleums concealed beneath hills are situated within the territory of the complex, southward the central part, in the south-east area of the Lesser Minaret and in southern areas. The mausoleums were built of limestone in the middle of the 14th and the early 15th centuries. The graves in the mausoleums are evidence of the fact that the people buried here were of noble origin and deeply venerated. All the burials were done by the Islamic ritual and are identical to the graves in the town cemeteries.

The mausoleums were archaeologically explored in the 1970s and preserved.

Small Township

Small Town is located at the south end of the town of Bolgar outside the town, to the west from the southern entrance gates of the 14th century, in 2 km from the Volga River. This is a small territory, stretching from north to south, surrounded by a low rampart and a shallow moat. Within the Small Town territory there is a rectangular square, also surrounded by a rampart and moat, with stone buildings inside. External dimensions are 290 m (eastward), 330 m (westward), 300 m (northward) and 150 m (southward). The second zone is internal.

The Small Town was found in the 13th to 14th centuries. Its buildings comprise a fort located on the town's most exposed side. With the construction of a line of town fortifications in the first half of the 14th century, the fort became an organic part of the Bolgar's military-engineering construction protecting and controlling the south main gate.

The southern building is built in, roughly halfway along the line, into the southern moat, in such a way that its front wall does not stand out of the moat border line. It is built of white limestone. Generally, it is the building's underground part, its base that survives. This is a square structure, having dimensions 18.9 m (southward), 19.1 m (northward), 13.15 m (eastward), and 13.05 m (westward). The building's original purpose is unknown.

There is the bedding of a monumental stone structure, two four-corner towers as well as remains of a gate in between opposite the southern building, midway along the northern line of the Small Town moat. The structure is built of white limestone. Both towers are shaped roughly as squares of approximately equal size (about 8 m by 9 m). The western tower has winding stairs inside, which from four lower treads and the flight of the fifth survive.

Outside the limits of the Small Town, to south-east of the gate, there is a stone building with a reservoir that was built of limestone. The building is connected with Small Town and positioned in such a way that one cannot bypass it on the way to the main gate. It is square-shaped and its

dimensions are 5.2 m by 5.3 m. The reservoir inside the building was intended for purifying ablutions of either religious or ritualistic/political nature.

The construction engineering of the Small Town buildings has some salient characteristics setting it apart from the Bolgar monuments of the 13th-14th centuries, although it has analogy with them. Small Town is the only known one of its kind in Bolgar. In respect of history and architecture the entrance gate is a unique. Analogues of complexes that combine earthwork with wooden structures and stone entrance gates are well known in towns of pre-Mongolian Rus: suffice it to remind as examples the fortifications of Kiev (the Golden and Sophia gates) and those of Vladimir on the Klyazma. However, these are totally different structures in both design and architecture.

Small Town was archaeologically explored in the 1980s and preserved partly.

The Greek Chamber

A Christian church, called the Greek Chamber, is situated on the Volga terrace westward the town fortifications, on the side of what used to be an Armenian merchant colony. It was built in the 14th century of carefully drafted limestone blocks. It survives up to the foundations and two-three courses of the masonry. The building is rectangular in plan, measuring 16.4 m by 12.6 m, and slightly elongated along the west-east axis. It has no altar projection in the eastern wall, a characteristic element of single-storied Christian churches.

An Armenian colony and the Greek Chamber near the main town of Volga Bulgaria are evidences of the lasting and extensive international relations of this mediaeval state of Eastern Europe.

The building had been archaeologically studied in 1916 and was conserved in 1945.

Local archeological properties

Site the ancient settlement at Womanish (Babiy) Hillock. The property is located within the territory of existing modern village and is characterized by concentration of interesting and various monuments of different ages.

Imenkovskiy ancient site was situated at the hill in the middle of the 1st millennium. Remains of sacrificial altar-hearth built of stones have been excavated. Crude modeled ceramics have been found. A town cemetery was situated at the *Womanish (Babiy) Hillock* in the pre-Mongolian period. It was functioning all the time the town existed even when it came within the town. Burial ground dates from Muslim period although there are deviations from rites in earlier burials. Mass graves, in which 19 skeletons with marks of violent death were found is the latest burial.

In the 18th-19th centuries the *Womanish (Babiy) Hillock* (from which there was a view on the Volga) enters the cultural topography of the village as the place of girlish and womanish proms.

At the present time surroundings of the *Womanish (Babiy) Hillock* are the part of the village of Bolgary that has preserved historical aspect of the end of the 19th and beginning of the 20th centuries to a large degree; brick stones of this period survive here. A small lake called *Britankino* makes this part of the village individual.

Surrounding of Galanskiy Lake. The area, which is interesting in relation to archeology, is located close to the small lake Galanskiy that dries up in summer time. Archaeologists have found out big resources of grey clay on the lakeshores. Numerous finds of Bolgar tableware make us suppose that potter's settlement was situated here. Ceramic functioned in the middle of 14th century, in prosperity time of the town. On the lakeside archaeologists explored 4 potteries with one, two, three and four two-high furnaces with round and oval bases. The furnaces made of adobe blocks were placed at the specially excavated pits. Masters produced large earthenware pots, jugs, *kumgans* (vessel for ablution), moneyboxes, spherical cones, water supply pipes and smoke tubes, *napryaslos* (details of distaffs) and other wares. They were covered with glazing and decorated with linear, wavy, scalloped or comb-shaped ornaments. No habitations have been found.

Remains of bone handicrafts were found on the lake's north shore: plates with complicated geometrical ornament, knife handle moldings, roofings and numerous half-finished products for handicrafts. It is supposed that in the first half of the 14th century a house belonging to a master coppersmith was located on the same shore. It was a modest structure 4 m by 4 m dimensions. Remains of bowl with droplets of some copper on its sides, copper slags, cuttings of copper plates and wires, fragments of bronze handicrafts of mirrors' covers were found here. Ruins of production furnaces and pits were found.

Place around the lake is an interesting area of a medieval town environment with extant remains of production activity. It has good potential for musefication. Discovered archeological materials allow to trace back whole process of pottery from clay storage on the lake shore, keeping in special pit-storages with wooden flooring to puddling and forming of different production on the manual and foot wheels.

The Gabdrakhman's Spread (Captain's Well)

At the present time a natural spread called in honor of Muslim Saint is the object of religious worship and pilgrimage.

The Village of Bolgary

Existing village occurred as a monastic settlement of the Church of the Dormition founded in the early 18th century. In the middle of the 18th century 120 people resided in the monastic settlement (future village of Bolgary). Population was Russian but Tatars who had adopted Christianity were settled here too. In 1764 the cloister had been abrogated and settlement became the state settlement, "economic".

At the present time the village of Bolgary has preserved aspect of rural settlement with a traditional single-story buildings; original planning of the village is also preserved. Big part of the buildings date to the Soviet period, but some buildings can be related to the 19th -beginning of the 20th century because of stylistic signs.

Architectural environment of the village, with its extant historical and traditional development, typical way of life of habitants is of independent interest as an object of a tourist tour.

Cultivated landscape

The cultivated landscape has remained intact through a thousand years. The territory of the Bulgarian complex is located on the boundary of natural zones: zones of deciduous forests and steppe zones. The combination of forest and steppe landscapes created a unique place for the development of forest and steppe cultures of Eurasia. Originally, the steppe Bulgarian culture, on the one hand, found in these places close steppe motives, but on the other hand it had been forced to develop new forest lands.

The Jerusalem (*Ierusalimskiy*) ravine exists from the pre-Mongolian times. This part of the landscape is an important detail of the town of Bolgar and, at the same time, it is a place of the most ancient settlement of the *Imenkovskiy* culture at its territory (settlement is situated in the mouth of ravine). From the ancient times and over of period the medieval town has being existed the ravine was a part of its defence system. The archaeological site of Bolgar has kept its boundary and its fortifications (a moat and a rampart) to this day. The boundary of the village, founded in the 18th century, has remained unchanged

This area is located in the heart of the natural knot, formed by the confluence of the Kama to the Volga. The broad valley of the Volga has created unique panoramas and spread visual perception of the area. Three natural habitat of plants that are dyer's-broom (*Genista tinctoria*), mat-grass (*Stipa gen.*) and young oak-grove are valuable ecological objects.

2b. History and development

Bolgars (collective name of group of nomadic Turkic tribes) are mentioned for the first time in the Latin “Chronicle” (354), in the period of the great migration of peoples. They are known under name “*utigur*” and “*kutigur*” in the 6th-16th centuries. In the middle of the 6th century Bolgary was subdued by the Turkic Khaganate. In the 630s Bolgars led by Khan Kubrat founded the state Volga Bulgaria. In the course of struggle with khazars the part of Bolgars headed by Asparukh moved to the lower Danube and established the “First Bolgar Kingdom” (681-1018) in the north of the Balkan Peninsula. Another part of them moved to Pannonia, the third part moved to Northern Italy, the fourth part moved to the Central Volga, and remainder part was taken under the influence of the Khazar khaganate. Supposedly, in the 8-9th centuries some Bolgar tribes (*barandjars*, *barsits*, *bilers*, *savirs* etc.) left Khazaria for the Central Volga area. At the end of the 9th and at the beginning of the 10th centuries Bolgars, having subdued Finno-Ugric lingual and Turkic lingual tribes, established a nation the Volga Bulgaria.

The town of Bolgar in the 10th-11th centuries was the capital of Volga Bulgaria, one the largest early medieval states in Eastern Europe, and then, in the 13th-14th centuries, the first capital of the Golden Horde, and the centre of Bulgarian Ulus (*Ulus Djuchi*) within the Golden Horde.

Situated at one of the most strategic, both in military and trading terms, places in Eastern Europe, at the confluence of the rivers Volga and Kama, the town of Bolgar acted very important role in the history of the peoples of the Volga area from its earliest years, and a substantial role in the history of Eastern Europe.

In 922 Bolgars, the ancestors of today’s Kazan Tatars, officially embraced Islam. In the 10th century money was coined in Bolgar as a symbol of the new state. Coins bore the names of the emirs who ruled in Bolgar, and occasionally, the name of the town itself.

Even then, the town attracted the attention of foreigners, and Arab and Persian chroniclers and travellers wrote about it.

In written sources (substantially, in oriental sources) the town is mentioned beginning from 920-921, i.e. before Ibn-Fadlan’s arrival. Analysis of the numismatic materials does not contradict this information either.

Bolgar occupied key positions in Eastern Europe’s trade with Central Asia. It was through it that major goods, products of the trades and hunting of northern peoples, passed to the East. Russian goods went through it too.

With the lapse of time handicraft has developed in Bolgar. Thus, especial good leather at the markets of Caliphate was called “Bulgarian” as well as boots made of it (actually, this is “juft”, the world itself borrowed from Bulgarian; and nowadays leather of the superior quality in Arabic language is called “al-Bolgary”).

In the 12th century, without losing being important as an international market, Bolgar stood down as the capital, to be supplanted by Bilyar. There is reiterated destruction of the town during pre-Mongolian period in the result of struggle for the Volga waterway that has played its part.

That period witnessed growth in the town’s economy, crafts, and trade relations, its territory expanded, and a new fortification line was built around it. The fortified part of the town covered 12 hectares then and 24 hectares by 1236. Bolgar’s ties with Rus expanded in that period.

In 1236 Bolgar was seized and burned by the Mongols. Its fortifications were dismantled. The town, together with the whole country, became one of the *uluses* subjected to the Djuchids, i.e., a constituent part of the Golden Horde. In 1242 Batu-Khan chosen Bolgar to be the first capital of the Golden Horde.

In the mid-13th century, Bolgar was revived and became the most important urban locality in a new state created by the Mongols on the western skirts of their empire.

In the 13th century Bolgar acted the leading role in the Golden Horde. The horde of the first Golden Horde khans was nomadizing nearby, and it was under Berke when the Cathedral Mosque was erected in Bolgar in the 60s of the 13th century, the first structure of its kind to be built in *Djuchi ulus*. Bolgar was the first Golden Horde town to coin money, in the 1240-1250s, on behalf of the great *kaans*, Mengu and Arig-Bugi. Coinage soon started in the Crimea, and only much later, in the last quarter of the 13th century, in Sarai. Although Sarai had already been built under Berke, Bolgar was the most important town in the Golden Horde in the 60s of the 13th century.

In the 50s of the 13th century Rus, Arbyan and Bolgar princes were asking Batu-khan *yarlyks* (edicts) principalities. Not only under Batu-khan but also under Uzbek, Bolgar continued to be one of the main economic, mercantile, cultural and religious centers of the Golden Horde.

Bolgar grew into a great and strong town in the 14th century, even though the political centres of the Golden Horde had shifted southward, to Sarai. In that period, the town grew rapidly northward, southward, and westward, and surrounded itself by a line of fortifications, including ramparts, moats, wooden fences, and towers. The fortified part covered 415 hectares.

The town expanded its trade relations with the lower Volga regions, Iran, Khorasm, the Caucasus, the Crimea, and Rus principalities. Specialised multi-sectoral crafts and trades developed. Pig iron production was started here as early as the 14th century, two centuries before Western Europe. Monumental architectural structures appeared: palaces, estates of feudal nobility, caravan-serais, cathedral and ward mosques, madrasahs and *maktabahs*, public bath-houses, mausoleums, and other buildings – the North and East mausoleums, the Black, White, and East Chamber, the Lesser Minaret, Khans' Shrines; and the main Cathedral Mosque was rebuilt. The town's amenities met very high standards. Pavements and water supply facilities, as well as drainage systems were built.

Endless feudal discord in the Horde, one of episode of which had been campaign by Bulat-Timur against Bolgar in 1361, marches by *ushkuyniks* (river pirates) who “created much evil”, and Rus princes at the end of the 14th–early 15th centuries, and after all, campaign by Moscow forces under *Knyaz* (Prince) Fedor the Motley sent by Great Prince Basil II against Bolgar in 1431, led, as the world goes, to the ultimate fall of the town (“war them and whole land was taken away”): since then the town left the historical stage to become a place of Muslim pilgrimage. Name of Bolgar was transferred to another centre, Kazan. “And was Kazan the capital town instead of a Bryag city of Bolgar” wrote a chronicler in the 16th century about this events. The “*Kazan History*”, written in the 16th century by someone who had been kept prisoner in Kazan for over 20 years, says that “and today the town is empty”.

Afterwards, Bolgar led some sort of a life. Two Tatar poets of the 16th and 17th centuries, Mukhamed'yar and Mevla-Kolyi, are known to have written poems in Bolgar.

In the 16th century, the lands of the former Bulgarian state were incorporated into the Rus state.

Instruction to make an inventory of ancient stone buildings and other ruins located within the territory of Bolgar site was given in the second half of the 17th century, the reign under Tsar Feodor Alexeseevich (1661-1682). It was executed in 1712 by government official Andrey Mikhaylov who had visited the site in connection with foundation of an Orthodox monastery. He had described in detail more than 70 medieval buildings for the first time in the history.

The monastery has been built soon. It was erected in the centre of the settlement – in place of the Khan (princely) court and the Cathedral Mosque. Monks adapted for their own needs surviving mausoleums by ruins of the Cathedral Mosque (“quadrilateral”): one mausoleum (Eastern) was equipped to be a small temple (the “Saint Nikolas Church”), another one (Northern) was used for economic needs as “Monastery Cellar”

In 1719 the site of Bolgar was visited and shortly described by an expedition under the direction of Danish scholar Daniil Gotlib Messerschmidt sent by the Emperor Peter the First to Siberia for its “physical description”.

In 1722 Peter I visited the settlement. He ordered to preserve stone buildings of the ancient town, gather and translate epitaphs of tombstones with Bolgar and Armenian inscriptions.

In 1732 rich merchant Mikhleyev founded a stone church for the monastery “in honor of the Dormition of the Virgin”. When it was being erected the stones of the Bolgar ruins and great many gravestones were used as building material. From this period the monuments of two faiths – Islam and Christianity – are neighbours at the site of Bolgar.

In 1767 Ekaterina II drew attention to the Bolgarian monuments. She reported to French philosopher-enlightener Voltaire in one of her letters: “During my trip down the Volga I left my bark and landed to visit ruins of the ancient town of Bolgar... I found here so many stone buildings and nine minarets that had been structured. I came up to one of this ruins close by which forty Tatars stayed. Some of them were in praying position. Head of province said me that this place was being considered to be sacred by Tatars: they came here in great number for prayers”.

The monastery had been closed in the 1770s, and the monastery settlement was renamed as the village of Uspenskoe, and later it was renamed again as the village of Bolgary after the ancient town of Bolgar (the plural form “Bolgary” is being the name used in Russian chronicles).

The building of the monastery within the site and the appearance of a village within the former town contributed to the process of degradation. It was fast. The population of the village of Uspenskoe (later, Bolgary) took the stones from ancient buildings away for a variety of economic needs or for foundations, and dug for buried treasures. By the 1760s, there remained 44 ancient buildings in the territory of the Bolgar site (compared with more than 70 in 1712). Later explorers and travellers noted only miserable piles of stones where only recently there had been buildings. The Khan’s Court, Greek Chamber and the chapel in the area of the former Armenian cemetery, a complete district between the Black Chamber and the Lesser Minaret, and the mausoleum complex were all gone. The Great Minaret (“Great Pillar”) of the Cathedral Mosque crumbled in 1841. The fall was caused by cavities in its bedding, dug out by the local treasure hunters. The White Chamber fell down for the same reason in the 1860s. Therefore, by the 1870s, many of the buildings had been destroyed with only their foundations surviving.

Over a period of the 18th and 19th centuries it was being visited by travelers, writers, poets, journalists, the military, scholars, architects, artists and specialists of local history, geography and culture – P.S.Pallas, I.I.Lepekhn, F.I.Erdman, P.I.Svinyin, N.N.Kaftannikov, M.S.Rybushkin, I.A.Vtorov, A.Smidt, E.P.Turnerelli, I.N.Berezin, brothers N.G. and G.G.Chernetsovs, I.I.Shishkin, A.K.Savrasov and many others who made valuable descriptions, drafts, plans and drawings of the building and ruins of the ancient town but many of them did not remain to our time.

In 1964, when V.G.Tizengauzen had made excavations at the Womanish Hillock (*Babiy Bugor*), the archaeological study of the site of Bolgar started.

In 1877 the Fourth Archaeological Congress took into consideration necessity of long-term continuous observation over monuments of the town of Bolgar. In March of 1878 the Society of Archaeology, History and Ethnography was established under the Kazan University. Further fortune of the Bolgar monuments was closely associated with activity of the Society up to the revolution of 1917.

862 square sazhen of land occupied with Bolgar ruins were transferred to the possession of the Society of Archaeology, History and Ethnography in 1880. Beginning with 1881 a subsidy of 300 Rubles a year was being allocated by the State Treasury with purpose to “keep in a proper mode and to preserve the ancient town of Bolgar”. In 1888 watchman was engaged to guard the monuments, buildings themselves were fenced with wooden fences. Museum of the Bolgar antiquities was opened in the Black Chamber.

In 1887, 1892, 1913, 1914, 1916 archaeological study of the architectural monuments were carried out, the tract Aga-Bazar was investigated, at the burial ground Womanish Hillock (*Babiy Bugor*)

pottery area was revealed; in 1884, 1885, 1889, 1896 and 1905 repair works were made: remainders of the White Chamber, the Cathedral Mosque, pylons of Small Town and ruins of mausoleum by the Lesser Minaret, Greek Chamber were cleared.

After the Russian Revolution of 1917 preservation of Bolgar ruins became duty of the Department of Museums and Preservation of Monuments of Ancient Buildings, Art and Nature under the Academic Centre of Tatar People Commissariat of Education.

In 1923 the village Bolgary, whole territory of the ancient town surrounded with rampart, was declared to be “inviolable reserve”; plan of repair works was developed and realized in 1926. The works which had been carried out in the Small Minaret, Khan’s Shrine, North and East Mausoleums, Cathedral Mosque, Black Chamber retarded the process of mechanical destruction of Bolgar monuments.

From the end of the 1930s, off and on, in-depth purposeful and systematic archaeological study of this monument began.

In the 1950s, after some archaeological explorations had been completed, the Great Volga (the Kuibyshev Reservoir) flooded the north-eastern outskirts of the complex, including an old Russian settlement of the 13th-14th centuries, the trading suburb of the ancient capital, Aga-Bazar (the 10th century to 1431) situated 6 km west of the Armenian colony, and the foothill area with ruins of stone structures and the bed of the river Melenka.

From 1954 the complex became the object of systematic historical and architectural researches and of conversation and fragmental restoration of monuments from the 1960s.

In order to amplify the preservation of the monuments an historical and architectural museum was opened in the village of Bolgar in 1962, the Bolgar Historical and Architectural Park (from 2000 it is called the Bolgar Historical and Architectural Culture Preserve) was organized in 1969.

3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex is a unique testimony of the existence in the 10th–15th centuries an ancient civilization, that developed in the Middle Volga and Foreland Ural region. The bearer of this civilization was Volga Bulgaria, or Volga–Kama Bolghar, a historic Bulgar state. This civilization ceased to exist by the 16th century, but paradigms of culture and spiritual life, which had been formed in it, defined the characteristics of faith, customs, traditions, social and moral norms of life in this geo-cultural region for many years.

In frames of the existence of these states, the multimillion Turko-Tatar community had been formed. Bulgaria is one of objects of national and cultural selfidentification of the Tatars in the world. Bolgar had a decisive influence on the development of culture and architecture of the Bulgarian-Tatar civilization in general.

The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex is a sacral place for all Moslems of Russia and some other states. Being a place of formal adoption of Islam in 922 by Volga Bulgarians, – the ancestors of the Kazan Tatars, the complex is a place of religious worship, pilgrimage of Muslims to their holy places from the 16th century. For Muslims the place possesses the exclusive spiritual aura that presents the intangible heritage of the highest level. For many years, the Supreme Mufti of Russia organizes annual pilgrimage visits of Muslims of Russia and from abroad to the ancient Bolgar city in memory of their ancestors and to commemorate the adoption of Islam as state religion of the Volga Bulgars. Here it is felt a relationship with the people who once lived in these places, through which the Tatar ethnos appeared, the second largest Russian people and the curator of heritage of the Bulgars.

The Bolgar Complex is an outstanding example of Muslim medieval architecture in Eastern Europe. This is the world's northernmost monument of Muslim architecture, a unique example of the

Bulgar-Tatar architecture of the 13-14 cc., indicating a high level of building technology and distinctive character of the architecture. Architectural traditions of the ancient Bulgars were embodied in the civil and religious constructions of modern Tatarstan.

The occupational layer of the Complex depth of 5 m includes seven cultural strata dated back to the middle of the first millennium and up to the present. The remnants of urban planning and infrastructure, timber and stone structures, as well as items of material and spiritual culture of the Bulgar-Tatar civilization are kept there. Roman coins of the 3th-4th centuries, coins and Bulgarian Muslim dynasties of the 9th –12th cc., Mongol coins of the 13th-15th centuries were found on the Complex territory at different times.

Thus, the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex constitutes the exceptional testimony to the power and quality of the Bulgarian-Tatar civilization that dominated the Region of Volga and the territory neighbored to South Ural in the 10th–15th centuries.

3a. Criteria under which inscription is proposed (and justification for inscription under these criteria)

Introduction. The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex is a unique testimony of the existence of an ancient civilization, that had been developed in the Middle Volga and Foreland Ural area in the 10th–15th centuries. The bearer of this civilization was Volga Bulgaria, or Volga–Kama Bolghar, a historic Bulgar state. This civilization ceased to exist by the 16th century, but paradigms of culture and spiritual life, which had been formed in it, defined the characteristics of faith, customs, traditions, social and moral norms of life in this geo-cultural region for many years. Now the Complex represents the only physical trace of the Volga Bulgaria at its height.

In the 13th century the Bolgar Complex was the first capital of the Golden Horde (the headquarters of Batu-Khan and *Ulus Djuchi*). The spatial organization of the Bolgar Complex is a perfect example of the advanced urbanism in the Volga Bulgaria State that is one of basic indication of a civilization. Another indication of civilization is existence of money circulation system. Even in the mid 1200s in Volga Bolgar coins were minted.

The Complex is a sacred place for Muslims. Being a place of formal adoption of Islam in 922 by Volga Bulgarians, the complex is a subject of religious worship and pilgrimage of Muslims from the 16th century. Today many Tatars consider Bolghar to be their ancient and religious capital and to allow a glimpse of Muslim Bulgar life before the Mongol invasion of Volga Bulgaria.

The Bolgar Complex is an outstanding example of Muslim medieval architecture in Eastern Europe. This is the world's northernmost monument of Muslim architecture, a unique example of the Bulgar-Tatar architecture of the 13-14 cc., indicating a high level of building technology and distinctive character of the architecture. Architectural traditions of the ancient Bulgars were embodied in the civil and religious constructions of modern Tatarstan.

Occupation layer of the Complex reaches a depth of 5 meters. Seven cultural strata are identified there from the mid of the first millennium.

Thus, the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex presents exceptional testimony to the power and quality of the Bolgar civilization that dominated the Region of Volga in the 10th–15th centuries.

3b. Proposed Statement of Outstanding Universal Value

Brief synthesis:

- *Summary of factual information:*

Supposedly, in the 8-9th centuries some Bolgar tribes left Khazaria for the Central Volga area. At the end of the 9th and the early 10th centuries Bulgars, having subdued local tribes, they established the state Volga Bulgaria. In the 10th-11th centuries the town Bulgar was the

capital of Volga Bulgaria, one of the largest early medieval states in Eastern Europe, and then, in the 13th-14th centuries, the first capital of the Golden Horde.

The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex is situated on the territory of the former medieval city Bolgar. The Complex is on the territory of the Republic of Tatarstan, 200 km from Kazan on the Volga riverside. The Complex includes the Bolgar ancient settlement of 10-15th centuries surrounded by a rampart and a moat over 5 km long, a series of stone and brick buildings of public and religious purposes survived from 13-14 cc, local archaeological sites and rural village Bolgary, founded in the 18th century, with a preserved historic rural houses and traditional way of life.

The occupational layer of the Complex depth of 5 m includes seven cultural strata dated back to the middle of the first millennium and up to the present.

- *Summary of qualities (values and attributes)*

The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex is a unique testimony to the existence of the powerful medieval states in 10-15th centuries, – the Volga Bulgaria and the Golden Horde, and a civilization, that disappeared with them, but defined for many years until our time, peculiarities of the belief, culture, customs and traditions of peoples in the geo-cultural region of Volga and the Foreland of Ural, the civilization that initiated the beginning of the modern Tatar ethnos – the second largest nation of Russia and other nations living in the Volga Region. Now the Complex represents the only physical trace of the Volga Bulgaria at its height.

The Bolgar Complex is the best preserved medieval architecture and archaeological site in Eastern Europe. This is the world's northernmost monument of Muslim architecture, unique and almost the only example of the Bolgar-Tatar architecture on 13th-14th cc in the Volga region.

It is a sacred place for Muslims, the place of the formal adoption of Islam by Volga Bulgars in 922 AD. For Muslims the place possesses the exclusive spiritual aura that presents the intangible heritage of the highest level. It is the place of traditional religious worship and pilgrimage of Muslims to their shrines from the 16th century.

The complex has a unique occupational layer depth of 5 m that includes seven cultural strata dated back to the middle of the first millennium and going up to the present.

Justification for criterion (iii)

The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex is a unique testimony of the existence of an ancient civilization, that had developed in the Middle Volga and Foreland Ural area in the 10th–15th centuries. The bearer of this civilization was the Volga Bulgaria, or the Volga–Kama Bolghar, a historic Bulgar state. This civilization ceased to exist by the 16th century, but paradigms of culture and spiritual life, which had been formed in it, defined the characteristics of faith, customs, traditions, social and moral norms of life in this geo-cultural region for many years.

The Bolgar Complex in the 13th century was the first capital of the Golden Horde (the headquarters of Batu-Khan and *Ulus Djuchi*). The spatial organization of the Bolgar Complex is a perfect example of the advanced urbanism in the Volga Bulgaria State that is one of basic indication of a civilization. Another indication of civilization is existence of money circulation system. Even in the mid 1200s coins of Volga Bulgaria were minted.

The Complex is a sacred place for Muslims. Being a place of formal adoption of Islam in 922 by Volga Bulgarians, the complex is a subject of religious worship and pilgrimage of Muslims from the 16th century. Today many Tatars consider Bolghar city to be their ancient and

religious capital and to allow a glimpse of Muslim Bulgar life before the Mongol invasion of Volga Bulgaria.

The Bolgar Complex is an outstanding example of Muslim medieval architecture in Eastern Europe. This is the world's northernmost monument of Muslim architecture, a unique example of the Bulgar-Tatar architecture of the 13-14 cc., indicating a high level of building technology and distinctive character of the architecture. Architectural traditions of the ancient Bulgars were embodied in the civil and religious constructions of modern Tatarstan.

Occupation layer of the Complex reaches a depth of 5 meters. Seven cultural strata are identified there from the mid of the first millennium.

Thus, the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex presents exceptional testimony to the existence highly developed civilization of Volga Bolgar that dominated the Region of Volga in the 10th–15th centuries.

Statement of integrity

The integrity of the Bulgarian Historical and Archaeological Complex is provided by the robust borders of the property and its buffer zone. The delimitation of the property is accomplished such a manner to embrace the largest territory of city during its existence, including outer ramparts. The status of the state protected monument of Federal significance allowed to keep all architectural objects and archaeological occupational layers connected with medieval city life well preserved in their completeness. The buffer zone is delimited such a way to embrace all important vista points and to prevent the possibility of multistory building that would break the integral historical and visual perception of the property.

The integrity of the site is expressed in the fact that the territory proposed to retain all attributes (see above) that convey the potential outstanding universal value of the property.

The legal protection of the nominated area and its buffer zones are supposed to be adequate. The overall management system for the property involves both traditional for Russia State management through government legislation for protection of heritage monuments and the management system of Republic of Tatarstan community and government administrative bodies of regional level. The integrity of the site is thus maintained.

Statement of authenticity

The authenticity of the Bolgar Complex is confirmed by numerous descriptions in historical records (messages of Arab historians, geographers, missionaries, western travelers and ancient Russian chroniclers), archaeological, epigraphic, numismatic, topographical and iconographic materials, old maps and plans, published materials and archival documents, original elements of the urban structure of the original materials, archaeological cultural layer and the preserved natural landscape.

Intervention in the architectural monuments is insignificant. Architectural monuments of the Bolgar Complex basically underwent museumfication, conservation and fragmentary restoration with the use of building technologies, materials and substances appropriate to the given historical period.

Despite that the Great Minaret, reconstructed in 1990, lost its authenticity, its restoration was carried out precisely by measurement drawings of 1827, iconography and other archive materials in accordance with the Venice Charter. Restoration of the Big Minaret was justified because of the religious interests (Muslims pilgrimage to make the “Little Hadj” to the holy place and annual celebration of the adoption of Islam in 922).

The natural landscape of the Complex has not undergone significant changes due to human activities. Traditions of land-use by local residents have helped to keep its historical view.

Requirement for protection and management

- Overall framework

The legal and institutional framework for the effective management of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex is regulated by laws of the Russian Federation and the Republic of Tatarstan. The specific laws under which the Complex and its landscape are protected is the Federal Law No73-FZ of June 25 2002 “On properties of cultural heritage (monuments of history and culture) of peoples of the Russia Federation”, Law of the Republic of Tatarstan “On Culture” (2005), Law of the Republic of Tatarstan “On Properties of Cultural Heritage in the Republic of Tatarstan” (2005), other legislative documents, standard legal acts of the Russia Federation and the Republic of Tatarstan and also the Regulation of the Public Institution the “Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve” (2000).

The property is managed and resourced in according with the Concept of Development of the Bolgar State Historical and Architectural Museum-Reserve for 2009–2019. Key management issues include minimizing anthropogenic impact on architectural objects and the underground environment of the Complex, including managing the high number of visitors, to keep all its attributes intact.

– Specific long-term expectations

In 2010, the first President of the Republic of Tatarstan Mintimer Shaymiev formed the «Renaissance» Foundation. Its activities started with working out a unique integrated project – «Cultural heritage of Tatarstan: the ancient cities Bulgar and Sviyazhsk». The task set for the «Renaissance» foundation is truly revolutionary: within the next few years, the ancient cities must be not only restored, renovated, conducting systematic and extensive research, but also opened for tourists and pilgrims. While preserving the old world charm in Bulgar and Sviyazhsk, the towns must get modern tourist facilities, and match the level of latest architectural and technical thought.

The Integrated project for 2010-13 envisages the development of tourist infrastructure the Bolgar Complex; work to ensure the preservation of historical and cultural heritage, study and promotion of historical and cultural heritage, strengthening of material base of culture and science.

A new river-boat station, equipped by most modern technological standards and designed in the Bulgarian style will be constructed. The large complex will include museums, trading pavilions, viewing points and walking terraces. For Muslim pilgrims, all convenient services will be provided, including residential tents and parking.

The utmost importance to the Muslim world will be a memorial sign, built in the ancient Bolgar after the acquisition of faith, adoption of Islam by Volga Bulgars in 922. Over the centuries the history of Islam entrenched in a grand magnificent architectural complex.

Here, in Bolgar, participants and visitors of the 2013 Universiade in Kazan can get acquainted with the history of Tatarstan’s ancient land.

3c. Comparative analysis (including state of preservation of similar properties)

The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex is the most significant medieval site in Eastern Europe of 10th–15th cc. Indeed, more than 1 500 archaeological sites in the given geo-cultural region are connected with history of ancient Bolgar-Tatar culture, but anyone of them does not go to any comparison with the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex by dimensions, values and state of conservation. The Bolgar Complex, along with the earlier Golden Horde cultural layers of the 13th century, the first construction of the Golden Horde including the Cathedral Mosque, the East Chamber, the Khan’s Palace, have survived pretty good. Not one of the ancient Golden Horde

cities, such as Saray Al-Mahrous, New Barn, Beldzhamene and others in the Volga region, has such kind of structures. None of the early medieval monuments of the Volga region (and even from Eastern Europe) has not been nominated for inscription on the World Heritage List from Russia as geo-cultural region. In the category of archaeological monuments, only petroglyphs of Sikachi-Alyan in the Khabarovsk Krai and the archaeological site of Tanais in Rostov region are presented in the Tentative List of the Russian Federation. Thus, The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex has no analogues among properties of the UNESCO world heritage situated in the geo-cultural region of Eastern Europe. As more or less similar properties can be seen some sites in the Asian geo-cultural region. Among them are the historical and archaeological complexes as follows: Minaret and Archaeological Remains of Jam (Afghanistan, 2002), the Cultural Landscape and Archaeological Remains of the Bamiyan Valley (Afghanistan, 2003), Archaeological Ruins at Moenjodaro (Pakistan, 1980), Taxila (Pakistan, 1994), the archaeological site of Takht-e Soleyman (Iran, 2003), State Historical and Cultural Park “Ancient Merv” (Turkmenistan, 1990), Kunya-Urgench (Turkmenistan, 2005).

As one of suitable sites for comparison, it is appropriate to consider the Orkhon Valley Cultural Landscape (Mongolia, 2004) that includes numerous archaeological remains dating back to the 6th century. The site also includes Karkorum, capital of Chingis Khan’s vast Empire in the 13th and 14th centuries. Ruins and archaeological layers of the Karakorum give an idea about the culture of the nomadic Mongol empire during the peak of its expansion. One of the criteria of this site’s OUV is the criterion (iii), the same that proposed for the Bolgar Complex. Underpinning all the development within the Orkhon valley for the past two millennia has been a strong culture of nomadic pastoralism. This culture is still a reverend and indeed central part of Mongolian society and is highly respected as a ‘noble’ way to live in harmony with the landscape.

Bolgar was one of the centers of the Mongol Empire – The Golden Horde (Ulus Juchi). It also demonstrates the impact of Mongolian nomadic civilization that spread to the territory of Eastern Europe. At the same time, architectural elements of Bolgar and archaeological finds show the degree of transformation of Mongolian civilization in the Volga region by Tatars, under the influence of the interpenetration of different cultures, cultural exchange with the local Bulgarian ethnic group, the spread of Islam and the development of trade relations. Bolgar architectural monuments belong to a later historical period and exceed the ruins of Karakorum in respect of the state of conservation.

The Bolgar Complex could be compared with some properties of Islamic culture situated in Asian and Arab countries. As results of field observations show, there is a great stylistic commonality between architecture of Volga Bolgar structures and stylistic of religious buildings of the Middle East and Central Asia countries where Islam was a dominant religion. The unity of canonical principles for the spatial planning arrangements of religious buildings in these countries that contributes to the distribution of commonality in their architecture is also relevant to the Volga Bulgaria.

Samarra Archaeological City (Iraq, C 276rev, 2007) also was the capital of the major Islamic state. The criterion (iii) is one of its inscription on the WHL: «Samarra is the finest preserved example of the architecture and city planning of the Abbasid Caliphate, extending from Tunisia to Central Asia, and one of the world's great powers of that period». Bulgarians and Samara are comparable in their historical significance as the capital of lost civilizations, the significance of an archaeological

component, in style and values of the remaining landmarks. Both sites continue to disclose their value through the identification of new archaeological data.

The Qal'a of Beni Hammad (Algeria, 1980) is one more site that could be comparable with the Bolgar Complex. It represents ruins of the first capital of the Hammadid emirs founded in 1007 and demolished in 1152. As well as Bolgar, the Qal'a (11–12th cc.) is ensemble of preserved ruins and constructions concerning about besides to the period. This site also inscribed on the WHL according to the criterion (iii) as an exceptional testimony to the Hammadid civilization now disappeared. Qal'a of Beni Hammad yields to Bolgar Complex by the extensiveness of historical material, as it existed only about hundred years and Hammadid civilization, evidence of the existence of which it is much more local than the Turkic-Bulgarian one.

In this respect the architecture of the Bolgar Complex can be compared with the architecture of historical buildings of world heritage sites in Asian and Arab countries: Samarra Archaeological City (Iraq, 2007), the Qal'a of Beni Hammad (Algeria, 1980), The Walled City of Baku (Azerbaijan, 2000), Kunya-Urgench (Turkmenistan, 2005), etc. At the same time, while having common features, the architecture of each country in the Eastern World is associated with local cultural traditions and has features of a local originality. Each of these properties is an outstanding example of interaction between local traditions and a common culture of the Islamic world that formed during the existence of the Arab Caliphate in 7-8 cc. The Volga Bulgaria, that joined to the Islamic world a little later (in the 10 c.), possessing potential OUV, is organically reckoned in this number of objects, adding one more good example of such interaction in completely different natural and climatic conditions, cultural environment and against the other local traditions. So the Bolgar Complex being a unique evidence for the existence of the Bulgarian-Turkic civilization in the Volga region, supplements essentially the World Heritage List from the standpoint of the variety of representation of Islamic medieval architectural styles in different regions.

Dozens of medieval monuments of ancient architecture with rich archeology, more or less similar in type to the Bolgar Complex are included in the UNESCO World Heritage List from different geo-cultural regions of the world. However, overwhelming majority of them are concentrated in the South America and the South Asia. Among these, there are no sites located in the territory of Russia. It should be noted that outside the Russian Federation, in other geo-cultural areas, there are no monuments either being placed on Tentative Lists or inscribed on the UNESCO World Heritage List, which have unique features that would be close to those of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex. Among the inscribed World Heritage sites, there are no monuments which would reflect the historical and cultural heritage of the lost medieval states of the Eastern Europe – the Volga Bulgaria and the Golden Horde of the 10th to 15th centuries – of which kind is the nominated Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex.

In the case of inscription the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex on the World Heritage List it will become the first monument in the European geo-cultural regions, related not only to the unique Bulgar-Tatar culture in particular, but also to the Turkic-Mongolian community in general. World Heritage List contains only one site that is related to the heritage of the Golden Horde – Citadel, Ancient City and Fortress Buildings of Derbent (C 1070, 2003. Russian Federation). It should be noted that Derbent was a part of the Golden Horde, just a bit more than a hundred years in the 13-14 centuries. So it bears very few traces of the influence of the Golden Horde culture. In contrast, the other medieval Muslim culture, comparable with the Bulgar-Tatar culture by its historical significance, – the Ottoman Empire, - is represented in the WHL by 11 sites in Europe

(according to *The World Heritage List: Filling the Gaps - An Action Plan for the Future* (ICOMOS, 2005a)).

Thus, the Bolgar Complex reveals another important aspect of the history of relations and cultural exchange of nomadic civilizations of Asia, Europe and the Middle East, and its inscription on the WHL to fill an obvious gap in the World Heritage List concerning the impact of nomadic Turkic civilization in Eastern Europe on macro-level. At the same time, the Bolgar Complex would take its own niche in the List being a unique testimony to the existence of the little known until recently, but and distinctive separate Bulgarian-Tatar civilization. It was the first highly developed Islamic civilization in Eastern Europe. The potential OUV of the Bolgar Complex was conveyed in section 3.b. Not the least of the factors is that the inscription of the Bolgar Complex on the WHL would promote the harmonization of the World Heritage List, where Christian religious monuments are prevailing, in according with *The World Heritage List: Filling the Gaps – An Action Plan for the Future*.

It is important to note that among cultural monuments inscribed on the World Heritage List there is no sites with such combination of values and attributes conveying the culture of disappeared medieval states the Volga Bulgaria and Golden Horde of the 10th–15th century, that the nominated Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex has.

3d. Integrity and/or Authenticity

Integrity

The integrity of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex and the safety of all attributes conveying its outstanding universal value, provided by delimitation of the property and its buffer zone. The boundary of the Complex embraces the maximum area of the Bolgar city at the time of its existence including all architectural monuments, all archaeological layers as well as defensive ramparts and moats. So, all the attributes of the Complex are within the property (*Wholeness*). None of the attributes are threatened by development, deterioration or neglect (*Absence of threats*).

The boundaries of the buffer zone are delineated in such a way to capture all the important vista points and to prevent the possibility of a multistory building that could break the whole visual perception of the Complex.

Thus, the objects of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex are genuine. The Complex completely preserves all attributes of its outstanding universal value in the proposed boundaries.

Thanks to protective measures taken in the 18-20th centuries, the creation of museum-reserve, appropriate arrangements of the territory, the establishment of the academic center to study of history and culture of the Volga Bulgaria, the center of local history and environmental education, the Complex is of satisfactory state of conservation. Its potential outstanding universal value is not subject to immediate danger.

Authenticity

The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex, which dates back to the 10th century, has a documentarily testified history, such as messages of the Arab historians, geographers, missionary and travellers (Abu Ali Ahmed ibn Omar ibn Rosteh, *The Book of Precious Necklaces*; Ahmad Ibn Fadlan, *Rūsiyyah*; Abu Zayd Ahmed ibn Sahl ibn Balkhi, *Figures of the Climates*; Abu' Abd-Allah Muhammad ibn Ahmad ibn Nasr al-Jaihani, *The Book of Ways and States*; Abu Ishaq Ibrahim ibn

Muhammad al-Farisi al Istakhri, *Traditions of Countries*; Abu al-Hasan Ali ibn al-Husayn ibn Ali al-Mas'udi, *The Meadows of Gold and Mines of Gems*; Muhammad Abu'l-Qasim ibn Hawqal an-Nisibi, *Traditions of Countries*; Muhammad ibn Ahmad Shams al-Din Al-Muqaddasi, *The Best Divisions for Knowledge of the Regions*; Abu Hamid Muhammed Ibn Abd Ar-Rahim Al-Garnati Al-Andalusi, *Clear Summary of Some of the Wonders*), West European travellers (Guillaume de Rubrouck and Marco Polo), old Russian chroniclers (Laurentian Codex, Hypatian Codex, Typographic Chronicle, Tver Chronicle, Novgorod Fourth Chronicle, Sofia First Chronicle, Nikon Chronicle, Nikanorov Chronicle, Resurrection Chronicle, Lvov Chronicle, Kholmogory Chronicle, *Kazan History (Kazan Chronicle)*, Piskarevsky, Mazurinsky and Archangelsky chroniclers, Reduced Compiled Chronicle, Russian Chronograph, Chronicle of Avraamka), etc. Numerous archaeological, epigraphic, numismatic, topographical and iconographic materials, ancient maps and plans, literary materials, archival documents with original elements of town-planning structure, from genuine materials, archaeological cultural layer, and natural landscape testify to the high level of culture of the Bolgar and authenticity of the property.

Attributes relating to the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex are as follows:

Form and design: The spatial organization of the settlement of Bolgar – a perfect example of the existence of the urban ensemble of the large medieval city in the 13-15th cc with preserved authentic architectural objects of the Volga Bulgaria period.

Materials and substance: 14 buildings and ruins within the Bolgar ancient settlement and the use of materials – brick, limestone, plaster, tufa, quarry stone.

Use and function: Religious use: it is a sainted place for Moslems and one of the most active religious sites in Russia – including cultural / religious practices and rituals.

Traditions, techniques and management systems: Traditional management – site is a culture heritage monument of Federal significance of the RF and it is under state protection and management. Traditions are cultural and religious practices and rituals.

Location and setting: The original location and surviving occupational layer, morphological structure of natural landscape and general visual perception.

Language and other forms of intangible heritage: Religious use: it is a place of formal adoption of Islam in 922 by Volga Bulgarians which were the ancestors of the Kazan Tatars. It is also a place of religious worship, pilgrimage of Muslims to their holy place since the 16th century. This use involves cultural and religious practices and rituals. The exclusive spiritual aura for Muslims is the intangible heritage.

Spirit and feeling: The built, archaeology and natural elements of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex site are charged with historical, traditional and spiritual values.

The authenticity of ***form and design*** and ***materials and substances***, as attributes expressing the outstanding universal value, is provided by the insignificant contemporary interference with the architectural monuments of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex. They underwent mainly museumification and conservation with fragmentary restoration of those their parts which would contribute to better preservation of monuments providing their further use as remains of the architectural heritage of the Volga Bulgaria and the Golden Horde. The works were carried out with

the use of construction techniques and materials those meet the historical period of monuments constructing. To use modern materials such as concrete and cement was out of the question.

Despite that the Great Minaret, reconstructed in 1990, lost its authenticity, its restoration was carried out precisely by measure drawings of 1827, iconography and other archive materials in accordance with the Venice Charter. Restoration of the Big Minaret was justified because of the religious interests (Muslims pilgrimage to make the “Little Hadj” to the holy place and annual celebration of the adoption of Islam in 922). The Reconstruction of the Big Minaret is comparable with the recovery in 1912 the Campanile di San Marco in St Mark's Square, Venice after its collapse in 1902, which is now perceived as part of the architectural ensemble.

Since the 15th century the attribute *Use and function* reflects the authenticity of the object as sacred places of pilgrimage and worship for Muslims in Russia and abroad. For them, the Bolgar is the spiritual center having particular spiritual aura that is an intangible heritage certainly. The attribute of *spirit and feeling* is kept up to now. In according with documented historical sources the adoption of Islam in the Volga Bulgaria in 922 took place namely here.

As for the attribute *Location and setting*, by the degree of transformations and cultural reclaiming the territory of the Complex belongs to the naturally evolved and associative landscapes. The long-range impacts do not red to significant changes of the landscape. Natural components of the landscape accommodated to uncritical changes. That formed the culture heritage property in such a way that the processes of natural evolution and purposeful activity are interlaced. The territory of the Bolgar Complex comprises elements of fossil and relict landscapes. The fossil elements of the landscape are presented by sites of archaeology. The elements of relict landscape are continuing to develop.

In spite of very hard socio-political environment of the 15th century the Bolgar had survived with slight differences due to time and human impact. Many bearers of the culture that created this landscape have disappeared, but the property itself is in large part remained in their former shape, composition, content and traditions. The cultural landscape of Bolgar has remained intact for a thousand years. So the *Jerusalem* ravine has survived since pre-Mongol times. The boundaries and fortifications (moat and rampart) of the Bolgar archaeological site have remained unchanged up to the present day as the boundary of the village founded in the 18th century.

The risk factor for preservation of visual connections between monuments is the existing residential development located to the south and east of the central complex of the Mosque with the Minaret, the mausoleums and the Assumption Church is the main height dominant of the settlement. In contrast to the western part, where buildings of architectural interest are preserved, here poor wood constructions of the Soviet period are dominated. The existing building obscures views of the Complex from the east. It is situated on the site of the ancient Bolgar town. Now the eviction of inhabitants from the area is in progress to provide them with equivalent housing in the city. A ban was introduced on the construction of new residential buildings, the use of contemporary building materials, exceeding the traditional height of buildings. These and other measures aimed to preventing threats to the integrity and the authenticity of the Complex.

4. STATE OF CONSERVATION AND FACTORS AFFECTING THE PROPERTY

4a. Present state of conservation

Present conditions of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex are satisfactory.

Nature landscape of the complex is typical forest-steppe landscape with specified morphological structure that includes ravine-gully, areas of steppe pits. In spite of centuries-old influence of Bolgar culture and influence on nature of traditional peasant of the 18th century-first half of the 20th century (construction, trades, farming and forestry), the morphologic structure of nature landscape has been changed weakly. This is evidence of sparing adaptive character of the traditional nature management in this area. The main changes of the nature landscape in the 20th century relate to foundation of the Kuybishev Reservoir being reason for landflood of the Volga high-water bed and major portion of the first terrace above the flood plain.

Condition of defensive installations (rampart and moat) of the site of Bolgar and architectural monuments within its territory, in whole, can be estimated as satisfactory. The East Mausoleum, Black Chamber, “Khan’s Palace” and southern building of the Small town need conservation and fragmentary restoration, and the territory of some monuments and tourist mooring need to be improved.

The airport and water supply point have been taken out the territory of the complex.

4b. Factors affecting the property

(i) Development Pressures (e.g., encroachment, adaptation, agriculture, mining)

The Complex’s territory has been experienced and experiences various anthropogenic influence such as construction, development of minerals (stopped), influence in the result of functioning of settlements and offices of the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve, recreational affects by tourists and suburbanites (earth roads and footways, spontaneous parking), grazing.

The main anthropogenic impact on the complex’s territory is related to intensive grazing of livestock belonging to Bolgar citizens.

Any economical activity is forbidden within the territory of the Complex, expansion of development of the existing settlements (the town of Bolgar, the village of Bolgary, the settlement *Privolzhskiy* (the village Podivanivo)), passing of freight transportation, cultivation of land by citizens, making of halts, bivouacs and all the kinds of unorganized recreation, individual car park out of prescribed places, drift ways and pasture, erection pavilions and kiosks for trade and catering is forbidden.

(ii) Environmental pressures (e.g., pollution, climate change, desertification and so on)

There is no risk of negative environmental impact on the object as a result of natural pollution, climate change and desertification.

(iii) Natural disasters and risk preparedness (earthquakes, floods, fires, etc)

Water erosion, wind erosion (deflation), internal erosion of soil slams, season underflooding, landslip processes, scree, abrasion (washing banks away) stand out against dangerous and unfavorable nature processes.

Suffusion soil slams and potential wind erosion (in case meadow plant is drying up or reducing) are possible for the watershed surfaces of the second terrace above the flood plain of the Volga, taking into consideration of sandy and sandy-loam soil. For in-system slopes (skirting to ravines and beams) of the second terrace above the flood plain of the Volga the processes of the water erosion are matter of danger, apart from potential wind erosion.

Processes of season underflooding are typical for suffusion kettles and connect to season lakes formed by snow thaw.

Processes of the water erosion of different intensity degree are typical for erosion forms of the territory that are hollows, gullies and ravines.

Landslide processes progress in the most active way along the slopes of the second terrace sided to the Kuybishev reservoirs. In addition, small slides are possible in the mid and bottom parts of the Big and Small (*Jerusalem*) Iyerusalimskiy ravines because of the clay existing here.

Nearly all the erosive forms within the territory have been made a turf. Anti-erosive activities were made at the right sides of tops of the Big (*Jerusalem*) Iyerusalimskiy (drainage and concrete works of the upper part of connections). In the area of the Captain Well, where road and path type erosion is active, planting to provide anti-erosion operation has been made and fascine of twigs has been erected. Sandpit was re-cultivated by means of planting pine and meadow-steppe verdure.

All the buildings of the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve are provided with fire-extinguishing systems and personnel has been instructed how to act in case of fire.

(iv) Visitor/tourism pressures

Present attendance of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex is 36.7 thousand people (2010). Number of tourist buses coming to the complex remains the same: approximately 350 buses a year. Quantity of mooring motor ships has being increased permanently: from 35 in 2000 to 90 in 2009, number of “Meteor” type hydrofoils also increases (to 62 boats a year).

However, the tourist flow does not meet the unique historical and cultural potential of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex. The economic effect of tourism activities is also insufficient. The average monthly number of visitors of the Museum is about 3,000 people, many of whom are schoolchildren.

Activities planned for organization of tourist service allow to reach following factors: at the first stage of aimed development program of the Bolgar Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve (2010-2013) increasing of attendances expected at the expense of next factors:

organization of regular excursion service;

foundation of network of museums and various thematic tourist routes, Bolgar’s outskirts including; development of event-trigger tourism (celebration of adoption of Islam);

development of hotels networks and growth of number of tourists staying overnight.

At the first stage of development (to 2013) and with active advertising of historical tourist proposals, total number of visitors of the Complex will be approximately 140 thousand and 15-20 thousand of them are participants of annual pilgrimage in the day of turning Mohammedan. Construction of new tourist hotels outside the complex allows to provide 400 accommodations for tourists, and total quantity of tourists staying overnight in the area of the complex will be 30-40 thousand people.

At the second stage of development of the Bolgar Cultural Preserve (2014-2020) further growth of attendance is expected at the expense:

improvement of organization of excursion service, owing to construction of moorage and receiving of tourist motor boats including;

construction of moorage and receiving of tourist motor boats;

development of museum system, in outskirt historical villages including;

further development of event-trigger tourism (religious celebrations, arts festivals, historical festivals);

foundation of wide hotel basis to accommodate tourists and receive separate groups and individual tourists.

Approximate estimation of attendance for 2020 shows that total number of visitors of the cultural preserve is expected to be 500 thousand. In presence of tourist hotels with capacity 1100-1200 places, number of tourists staying overnight will reach 100 thousand.

(v) Number of inhabitants within the the property and its buffer zone.

Estimated population within:

Area of nominated property is 191 people;
Buffer zone is 64 people
Totally are 255 people. Year 2009

5. PROTECTION AND MANAGEMENT OF THE TERRITORY

5a. Ownership

Land area within the territory of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex (Bolgar site of the 10th-15th centuries) is a Federal property and is administered by the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve in accordance with following:

Federal Law No73-FZ and dated 25th of June 2002 *“On properties of cultural heritage (monuments of history and culture) of peoples of the Russia Federation”* (clause 49. Objects of archaeological heritage are the state properties);

Decree of the Cabinet of Ministers of the Republic of Tatarstan No591 and dated 19th of October 1992 *“On the establishment of the territory of the Bolgar Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve”*;

Decision of the Bolgar Town Council of People’s Deputies of the Republic of Tatarstan No1 and dated 24th of January 1992 *“On approval of proposals related to protected zone and allotment of land of the Bolgar Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve”*;

Resolution of the Head of the Administration of Spasskii Raion No16 and dated 24th of March 1992, *“On the allocation of lands in use by the Bolgarskii Soviet Farm, of the Krasnoslobodskii Village Soviet and Bolgar Town Soviet, to the Bolgar Preserve protected zone”*.

The architectural monuments (the Cathedral Mosque, the Black, White, and East Chamber, the North and East Mausoleums, Khans’ Shrine, the Lesser Minaret, the Church of the Dormition) are federal property, buildings of the Exhibition Hall and Excursion Office, maintenance building, building of collection department, excursion facilities, repair shops for museum items restoration, warehouses and garage are the property of the Republic of Tatarstan (regional property) and are administrated (adopted assets) by the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve.

Residential buildings and structures of the village of Bolgary are personal property or use of citizens.

Funds of the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve are the federal property and property of the Republic of Tatarstan and compose a public part of the Museum Fund of the Russia Federation and number 1097040 items (at the 1st of January 2010) including:

- items of numismatology - 14 622;
- items of archaeology – 65162;
- items of ethnography – 1381;
- weapons – 29;
- painting – 117;
- graphic arts – 252;
- sculpture – 13;
- workpieces of applied arts – 101;
- documents, rare books – 24384;
- items of natural-scientific collection – 59;
- items of history of technique – 52;
- others – 3532.

Items including precious metals and stones are 2156 pcs. out of the total.

5b. Protective designation

The site of Bolgar of the 10th-15th centuries and complex of the monuments of architecture of the 13th-14th centuries situated at its territory (the Cathedral Mosque, Black Chamber, North and East Mausoleums, Khans' Shrine and Lesser Minaret, Church of the Dormition) are properties of the cultural heritage (monuments of archaeology and architecture) of national significance basing on the Decree of the Council of Ministers of the RSFSR dated 20th of August 1960 "On further improvement of matter of protection of monuments in the RSFSR" and Clause 64 of the Federal Law No73-FZ and dated 25th of June 2002 "*On properties of cultural heritage (monuments of history and culture) of peoples of the Russia Federation*".

The protected zone ("Buffer Zone") was established with the Decree of the Council of Ministers of the TASSR No548 and dated 7th of November 1969 "On approval of the buffer zones and zones of regulation of buildings for architectural monuments in the TASSR" within the site of Bolgar and 50 m from the ancient rampart, including ruins of the "Small Town" and the "Greek Chamber"

In pursuance of the Decree by the Council of Ministers of the RSFSR No77 and dated 9th of November 1969 "On the Council of Ministers of the TASSR practices in cultural management in the Republic", the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Reserve (beginning from 200 it is the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve) was founded in the 1st of July 1969 on the basis of the Bolgar site with the Decree of the Council of Ministers of the TASSR No 222 and dated 14th of April 1969 "On founding in the TASSR of a public historical-architectural reserve on the basis of the Bolgar site". the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Reserve is a public state-financed research and educational institution of culture which studies, protects, preserves and popularizes historical and cultural monuments located at its territory.

The Bolgar State Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve is under the authority of the Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan, which is a body of executive power of the Republic of Tatarstan that is deputed for protection, preservation, use and popularization of the properties of cultural heritage by the state and is financed by the budget of the Republic of Tatarstan.

The Edict of the President of the Russian Federation No176 and dated 20th of February 1995, "*On the confirmation of the Federal (all-Russia) Historical and Cultural Heritage List*" the Bolgar Historical and Architectural Reserve was put on the List of the Properties of Historical and Cultural Heritage of Federal (all-Russia) importance.

The Bolgar State Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve is guided in its work by "Basis of Legislation of the Russia Federation on Culture" (1992), Federal Law "On properties of cultural heritage (monuments of history and culture) of peoples of the Russia Federation" (2002), Federal Law "On the Russian Federation's museum collections and museums" (1996), Law of the Republic of Tatarstan "On Culture" (2005), Law of the Republic of Tatarstan "On Properties of Cultural Heritage in the Republic of Tatarstan" (2005), other legislative documents, standard legal acts of the Russia Federation and the Republic of Tatarstan and also the Regulation of the Public Institution the "Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve" (2000).

5c. Means of Implementing protective measures

Beginning from the first half of the 18th century and up to the present time the complex has been an object of close attention of public and social institutions, scientists, tourists and excursionists, pilgrims.

Since the mid-19th century it has been the object of architectural and archaeological researches and of systematic archaeological study from 1938.

Starting from 1954 the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex has been an object of systematic historical and architectural researches and an object of restoration and preservation works from the 1960s.

In order to intensify protection and preservation of the monuments of the complex the Bolgar Historical and Architectural Reserve was founded in 1969 (since 2000 it is the Bolgar Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve).

From 1969 and up to the present time considerable researches of archaeological cultural layer of the Bolgar site, works of partial restoration, museumification and improvement of the architectural monuments (the Cathedral Mosque, the Black, Eastern and White Chambers, Khans' Shrine and Lesser Minaret, North and East Mausoleums, Church of the Dormition) have been carried out. Project of the protection zones of the site of Bolgar has been approved and conditions of application have been established. Reminders of the pre-Bulgarian settlements, the most ancient part of the town of the pre-Bolgar period at the northeastern part of the complex have been uncovered, expansion of the settlement territory has been retraced, residential, handicraft and also architectural and defensive fortifications have been studied. Expositions of the Bolgar antiquities have been prepared in the Church of the Dormition and the North Mausoleum. Fulfillment of the 1st stage of the dredging by the tourist mooring made it possible to receive four-deck motor ships, the territory is improved. Airport, the water intake system and also 30 residential buildings of the village of Bolgary were taken out the central part.

5d. Existing plans related to municipality and region in which the proposed property is located (e.g., regional or local plan, conservation plan, tourism development plan)

Federal purpose-oriented program "Culture of Russia (2006-2011)" approved with the Decree of the Government of the Russian Federation No 740 of 08.12.2005;

Integrated purpose-oriented program "*Miras-Heritage*" for Preservation of Cultural Heritage in 2007-2009 approved with the Decree of the Cabinet of Ministers of the Republic of Tatarstan No265 of 02.07.2007;

Decree of the Cabinet of Ministers of the Republic of Tatarstan No 590 of 24.10.2007 "*On Perspectives of Development of the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Preserve*";

Departmental purpose-oriented Program "*Preservation and Development of Public Museums and Preserves of the Republic of Tatarstan for 2009-2011*" approved with the Order by the Deputy Prime Minister, Minister of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan No750 of 22.09.2008;

Report of the field meeting in the town of Bolgar in the Spassk Municipal Region of the Republic of Tatarstan dated 07.08.2009 "*On Perspectives of Development of the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Preserve*" with participation of the President of the Republic of Tatarstan.

Integrated Project *Culture Heritage–Island-town Sviyazhsk and Anciet Bolgar* for 2010 – 2013 approved with the Decree of the Cabinet of Ministers of the Republic of Tatarstan No 1018 of 09.12.2010

Resolution of the Presidium of the State Council of the Republic of Tatarstan "*On the implementation of an integrated project the Island-City of the Ancient Bolgar and Sviyazhsk*" in 2010 - 2013 years.

5.e Property management plan or other management system

The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex, created in 1969, has passed the period of the formation and now was generated as one of large and interesting tourist and museum complexes on the territory of the Russian Federation. The preparation of the nomination dossier was coordinated by the Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan and the Russian National Committee for the World Heritage Committee.

A pivotal event in forming a modern management system for the nominated property has become the elaboration of the Concept of Development of the Bolgar State Historical and Archaeological Complex for 2009–2019 that was approved by the Order No. 51 of the Minister of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan of 04.02.2010. The main objective of the Concept is the further preservation of the cultural heritage of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex in frames of development of the Bolgar State Historical and Architectural Reserve and its transformation into one of the leading reserves of Russia.

To achieve this goal, it is envisaged the two-stages management plan of the implementation of the Concept: **Stage 1: 2009-2013, Stage 2: 2014-2019.**

With a view of implementing Stage 1 (2009-2013), **the Integrated Project** “Cultural Heritage: Island-City of Sviyazhsk and Ancient Bolgar” for 2010-2013 was developed. It was approved by the Resolution of the Cabinet of Ministers of the Republic of Tatarstan No.1018 of 09.12.2010. **Namely this Integrated Project (in the part concerning the Bolgar Complex) is the Management Plan of the nominated property.** State customer and a focal point to coordinate the Integrated Project is the Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan.

The Integrated Project (Management Plan) was developed in broad consultation with various governmental and nongovernmental partners, especially those represented on the Steering Committee. (See the block-diagram of the Management System of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex: Governance Structure). The implementation of the management plan (integrated project) directed to six strategic objectives (See the diagram) and details derived from them for 2009 –2013. **The mission of the Integrated Project** is to ensure the efficient preservation and reasonable utilisation of the unique sights of Russia the Island-city of Sviyazhsk and the ancient Bolgar, their spiritual, social, economic, and cultural revival.

The Integrated Project (Management Plan) is divided into three subprojects providing the implementation of a package of measures in line with its mission:

Subproject 1: Studying and popularising the historical and cultural heritage.

The Subproject 1 envisages a system of measures to provide for:

- Creation of historical and cultural geo-information systems;
- Architectural and archaeological research;
- Investigation of archaeological sites using non-destructive methods to create a virtual city model;
- Publication of scientific, popular science, and reference literature;
- Creation of popular science films and multimedia products;
- Holding of forums and conferences.

Subproject 2: Ensuring the safety of the historical and cultural heritage

The Subproject 2 envisages a system of measures to provide for:

- Elaboration of the design and estimate documentation;
- Carrying out of rescuing archaeological work;
- Carrying out of risk preparedness and conservation works;
- Museumification of archaeological objects of the property;
- Adaptation of cultural heritage objects of the property to their use for cultural, educational, and tourist purposes;
- Improvement of the territory of the property;
- Raising of private investments into preservation and management of the property;
- Replenishment of museum funds with especially valuable items and collections for existing and newly created museum displays;
- Implementation of a package of actions to improve the physical condition of especially valuable items and collections of museum funds;

Subproject 3: Developing the museum, housing, tourism, pilgrimage, transportation infrastructure and utilities, as well as improving the territory

The Subproject 3 envisages a system of measures to provide for:

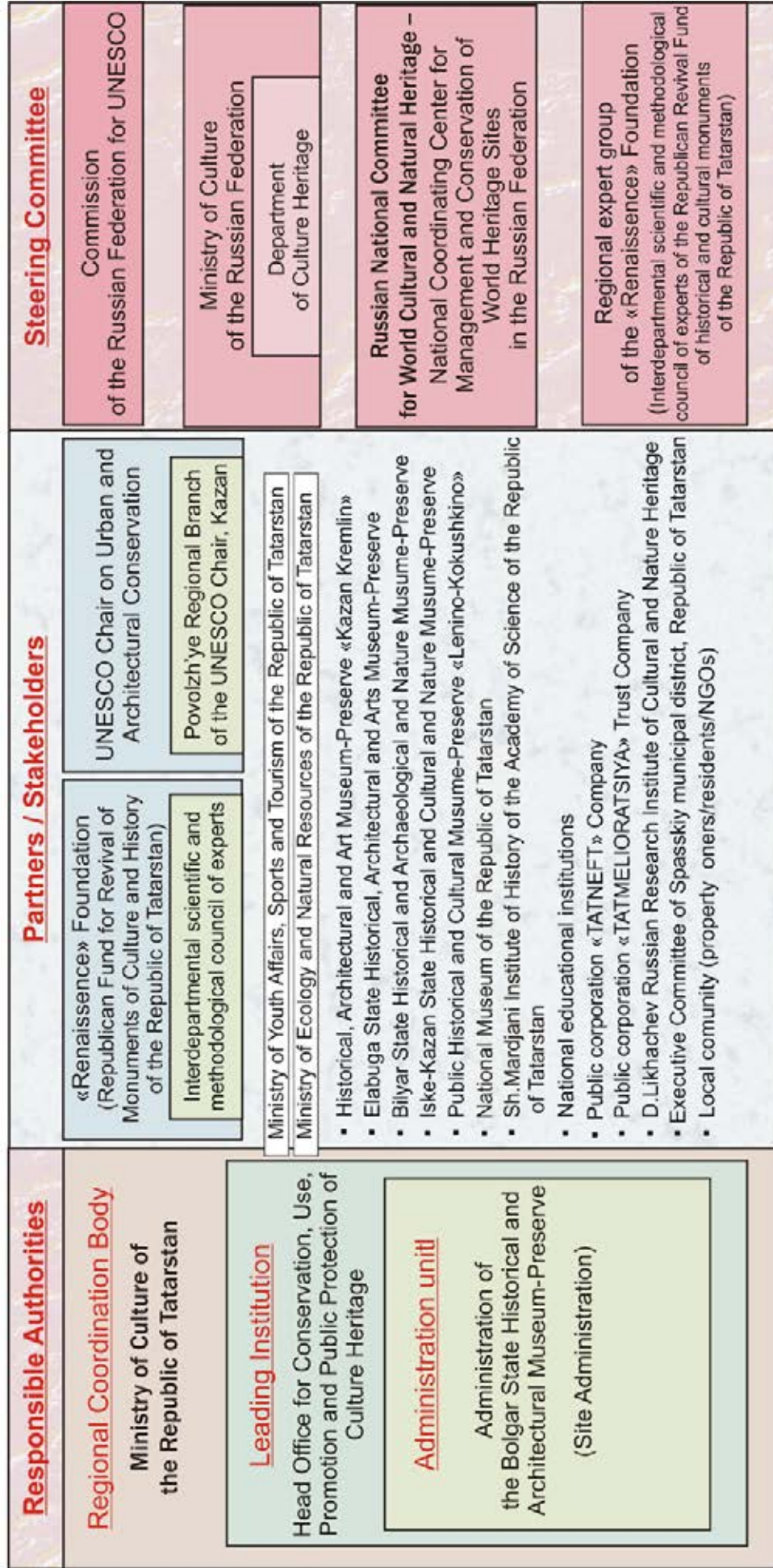
- Construction of new museum buildings;
- Creation of new museum displays;
- Reconstruction and repairs of available housing;
- Construction of a river harbour with the museum function;
- Construction, renovation, and repairs of automobile (access) and inner roads;
- Construction and renovation of parking areas;
- Construction of water and gas pipelines and power supply grids;
- Development of the territory;
- River bank protection.

The Management Plan is an implementation tool providing a framework of policies and actions to enable all concerned parties and stakeholders to understand and share the management objectives and their implementation, and to monitor the results achieved. It is oriented towards those responsible for the management of the site and other concerned government agencies, both national and regional, as well as municipal. It also addresses and serves the wider public: NGOs, the scientific community, groups and individuals interested in the protection and utilisation of the site, and potential sponsors as an outline and verification document.

Looking beyond the Stage 1, the Development Concept of the Bolgar State Historical and Architectural Reserve provides guidance for the long-range protection and operation of the Bolgar Complex in line with the stipulations of the World Heritage Convention.

Governance Structure

Management System of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex



Concept of Development of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex for 2009-2019



6 Strategic Objectives of the Management System

1. Preservation and conservation of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex as a unique object of cultural heritage of the Republic of Tatarstan and the Russian Federation
2. Development of the Bolgar Complex as one of the leading tourist centers of Russia, and - in the long term - of the world; to provide a high attraction for visitors from different regions of Russia and all over the world
3. Incorporation of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex into the system of all-Russian and international tourist programs
4. Development of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex as a significant all-Russian spiritual center of Muslim peoples
5. Establishing of the research and methodological center to study history and culture of the Volga Bulgars, as well as the center of ecological education and development of study of local lore
6. Development of the Bolgar Complex as a core of further social and economic development of Spasskiy municipal district of the Republic of Tatarstan

5f. Sources and levels of finance

Activities related to protection, preservation, use and popularization of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex are carried out at the expense of the Federal budget, budget of the Republic of Tatarstan, extra-budgetary sources as well as equity of the Bolgar State Historical-Architectural Museum-Reserve from the museum, tourist and sightseeing activities

Financing of activities in last years on protection and preservation of objects of cultural heritage of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex were as follows:

in 1994 - 92585 USD;
in 1997 - 412600 USD;
in 1998 - 189367 USD;
in 2005 - 186467 Euro;
in 2006 - 361276 Euro;
in 2007 - 419000 Euro;
in 2008 - 629685 Euro;
in 2009 - 832791 Euro;
in 2010 – 10 billion Euro;

Amounts and sources of funding for the Integrated Project:

The total amount of funding the actions specified in the Integrated Project through the federal budget and the budget of the Republic of Tatarstan is 80,000,000 EUR;

Co-financing the actions for the implementation of the Integrated Project:

Federal funds in form of grants of the budget of the Republic of Tatarstan - 40 million Euro, including:

10 million EUR in 2010;
10 million EUR in 2011;
10 million EUR in 2012;
10 million EUR in 2013;

From the budget of the Republic of Tatarstan 40 million Euro, including:

10 million EUR in 2010;
10 million EUR in 2011;
10 million EUR in 2012;
10 million EUR in 2013;

Federal funds allocated for the restoration of cultural heritage of the Federal significance, as part of the plan of organizational and financial activities in frame of the Federal target program *Culture of Russia* (2006, 2011.) and other programs of cultural development based on the projects which were selected by competition:

- budget funds of Spassky municipal district;
- means a nonprofit organization *Republican fund Renaissance for revival of historical and culture monuments of the Republic of Tatarstan*;
- funds of the non-profit organization *The State Housing Fund under the President of the Republic of Tatarstan*;
- Fund of the gasification of the Republic of Tatarstan;

Donations of legal entities and individuals as well as investors' funds.

5g. Sources of expertise and training in conservation and management techniques

Employee of the Bolgar State Historical and Architectural Museum-Preserve constantly improve their skills (10 people were trained over the past 5 years) in institutions as follows:

The Institute of Continuing Professional Education (training) of Specialists of the Socio-Cultural Sphere and Art on programs:

“Theory and Practice of Excursion Service at the Present Stage”,

“Scientific and Archival Activity of Museums: Recording, Protection and Functioning of the Museum Archives”;

“Forming of Personnel in the Social and Cultural Field: Problems and Scientific and Practical Approaches”;

“Study of Excursion: Theory, Methods and Practice”;

“Museum Studies and Protection of Monuments. Study of Excursion” in the State government-financed educational institutions of the Republic of Tatarstan “Institute of Additional Professional Education (Improvement of Skills) for Specialists of Social and Cultural Field and Arts”;

The State Academy for Retraining and Advanced Training of executives and specialists of investment sphere (GATIS) on the program “Novelty in Museum Studies and Protection of Monuments of Culture” in the State Academy of Professional Training and Improvement of Skills of Leading Employee and Specialists of Investment Field (GATIS);

E.N.Korolev Nizhnekamsk Polytechnic College on the program "*The qualification training on the organization of road transport within the Russian Federation.*"

5h. Visitor facilities and statistics

Territory of the Complex is open for tourists. The most favorable time for visit is period between April and October.

It can be reached with bus or car from Kazan, regions of the Republic of Tatarstan and neighbor regions of the Russia Federation (the Republics of Bashkortostan and Mari El, Chuvashia, the *oblasts* (regions) of Ulyanovsk, Orenburg and Samara), down the Volga by steamer from Moscow, St.Petersburg, Nijniy Novgorod, Kazan, Ufa, Ulyanovsk, Samara, Astrakhan or “Meteor” hydrofoil-boat from Kazan to the tourist dock of the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Preserve.

Cultural and educational, event-trigger, ecological and pilgrimage tourism are developing. Several tourist routes to sightseeing the site of Bolgar and its architectural memorials have been prepared, informational boards and signs, stands are placed, prospectus, guide-books, reference books and souvenirs are available. Excursions are made in Russian, Tatar and English.

Museums of the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Preserve (archaeological, epigraphic, museum of history of the town Bolgar-Spassk-Kuybishev, exhibit hall) are open for tourists every day from 09.00 to 18.00, 7 days a week.

Excursion office, open cafes “Shatry”, shops, parking, *Taharat-khana* (ablution room) for believers, rooms for rest and religious ceremonies are open for tourists, excursionists and pilgrims

There are the hotel “Regina” (80 accommodations) and a small motel, restaurant are in the town of Bolgar, outside the territory and protected (“buffer”) zone of the complex.

Number of visitors goes up from 24,7 thousand in 2000 to 36,5 thousand in 2009:

in 2004 – 24070;

in 2005 – 27006;

in 2006 - 27019

in 2007 – 33500;

in 2008 – 36287;

in 2009 – 36500

in 2010r. – 36700.

Great number of visitors are noted during annual celebration of adoption of Islam by Volga Bulgaria (the second week of June): it is celebrated by thousands Muslim pilgrims from the different regions of the Russia Federation and Kazakhstan (in 2009 - 15 thousand people).

5i. Policies and programs related to the presentation and promotion of the property

Departmental target program "Development of Tourism in the Republic of Tatarstan for 2009-2011" approved by Order of the Minister of Youth, Sports and Tourism of the Republic of Tatarstan № 1008 from 06.10.2008.

The scheme of territorial development of Tatarstan, which provides section "Creating a historical and cultural framework and development of tourism."

5j. Staffing levels (professional, technical, maintenance)

Management of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex is carried out by staff of the Bolgar Historical and Architectural Culture Preserve (85 people for 01.01.2010), including:

Administration:

- Director;
- Deputy Director for Science;
- Deputy Director for Economics;
- Chief Custodian.

The Centre for Study of the Bolgar Civilization (5 people);

Block of Science and Exposition Activity:

- Department of Local History (3 people);
- Department of Exposition-Exhibition Activities (3 people);
- Department of Dataware (3 people);
- Department of Record-Keeping of Immovable and Nature Heritage (3 people);
- Research Archives (1 person);
- Academic Library (1 person).

Block of Record-Keeping and Custody of the Museum Holdings:

- Department of Museum Holdings Record-Keeping (2 people);
- Department of Museum Collections (5 people).

Block of Scientific-Enlightening Works and Public Relations:

- Department of Excursions Organization (3 people);
- Department of Museum-Educational Activity (2 people);
- Department of Public Relation, Marketing and Tourism (4 people);
- Sector "Museum of History of the Town of Spassk-Kuybishev-Bolgar" (1 person);
- Sector «Museum Suvar» (1 person).

Block of Maintenance and Security

- Department of Immovable Monuments (7 people);
- General Service Department (11 people);
- Department of Security Service (16 people).

The Academic Council established under the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Preserve consists of different specialists.

Administrators and specialists of different specializations participate to the process of protection, preservation (maintenance, conservation, restoration and adaptation for use), popularization, including: the Ministry of Culture of the Russian Federation; the Federal Department of supervision, over law observation of protection of the Cultural Heritage; the Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan; the Ministry of Youth Affairs, Sports and Tourism of the Republic of Tatarstan; the Ministry of Ecology and Natural Resources of the Republic of Tatarstan; the Head Office of State Control over the protection and utilisation of historical and cultural monuments under the Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan; Povolzh'ye Regional branch of the UNESCO Chair on Urban and Architectural Conseravation; the Institute of Archaeology of the Russian Academy of Science, the D.S.Likhachev Russian Research Institute of Cultural and Nature

Heritage, the Sh.Mardjani Institute of History of the Academy of Science of the Republic of Tatarstan and the G.Ibragimov Institute of Language, Literature and Art History, Ulyanov-Lenin Kazan State University V.I., the Kazan State Architectural-Engineering University, the National Museum of the Republic of Tatarstan, Public Corporation “Tatar Special Scientific-Restoration Department”.

Many Specialists have doctor’s and Candidate’s degrees in fields of history, architecture, art criticism, etc. Among them there are anthropologists, archaeologists, social anthropologists (ethnographers), architect-restorers, archivists, historian, custodians of museum funds, restorers, museum specialists, who have been working in these fields for many years.

6. MONITORING

6a. Key indicators for measuring state of conservation

<i>Indicator</i>	<i>Periodicity</i>	<i>Records storage address</i>
Monitoring of condition and usage of properties of the cultural heritage of the Complex	Once a year	Public Department “Head Office of state control over the protection and utilisation of historical and cultural monuments” under the Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan”, Pushkina str., 66/33, 420015, Kazan, the Republic of Tatarstan, the Russian Federation Public Department «Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve», Nazarovikh str., 67, 422840, Bolgar, Spasskii raion, the Republic of Tatarstan, the Russian Federation
Monitoring of condition and usage of properties of nature heritage of the Complex	Once a year	Ministry of Ecology and Natural Resources of the Republic of Tatarstan Pavluhkina, 75, 420059, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation Public Department «Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve», Nazarovikh str., 67, 422840, Bolgar, Spasskii raion, the Republic of Tatarstan, the Russian Federation

6b. Administrative arrangements for monitoring property

Ministry of Culture of the Russian Federation

Maliy Gnezdikovskiy per., 7/6, building 1,2, 125993, GSP-3, Moscow, Russian Federation

Federal Department of Supervision over Law Observation of Protection of Cultural Heritage
Kitaygorodskiy passage, 7, building 2, 109074, Moscow, Russian Federation

Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan

Pushkin street, 66/33, 420015, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation

Ministry of Ecology and Natural Resources of the Republic of Tatarstan

Pavlukhin, 75, 420059, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation

Public Department “Head Office of state control over the protection and utilisation of historical and cultural monuments” under the Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan, Pushkin street, 66/33, 420015, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation

Public Department “Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Culture Preserve”
Nazarovykh street, 67, 422840, the town of Bolgar, Spasskii raion, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation

6c. Results of previous reporting exercises

No

7. DOCUMENTATION

7a. Photographs, slides, image inventory and authorization table and other audiovisual materials

IMAGE INVENTORY AND PHOTOGRAPH AND AUDIOVISUAL AUTHORIZATION FORM

Id. No	Format (slide/ print/ video)	Caption	Date of Photo (mo/yr)	Photographer/ Director of the video	Copyright owner (if different than photographer/ director of video)	Contact details of copyright owner (Name, address, tel/fax, and email)	Non-exclusive cession of rights
1	photo	Spray vessel of the 12 th -14 th centuries. China	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Makhmutov R.Z. Nazarovikh st., 67 422840, town of Bolgar, Spasskiy raion, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation +7(84347) 30456, +7(84347) 30132 bolgar.museum@tatar.ru	yes
2	photo	Spray cup, kashine, and luster. XII-XIV. Iran	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
3	photo	Spray cup of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Central Asia	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
4	photo	Spray cup of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Central Asia	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
5	photo	Spray cup of the 12 th -14 th centuries. The Lower Volga region	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
6	photo	Spray cup of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
7	photo	Spray cup of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
8	photo	Fragment of a spray cup of the 12 th -14 th centuries.	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes

		Central Asia					
9	photo	Fragment of tableware of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Celadon. China	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
10	photo	Fragment of tableware of the 12 th -14 th centuries.	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
11	photo	Fragment of a spray cup of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Sychjou, China.	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
12	photo	Fragment of a spray with picture of dragon head of the 12-13 th centuries. Celadon. China	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
13	photo	Fragments of kashine, luster tableware of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Iran.	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
14	photo	Fragments of spray tableware of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
15	photo	Fragments of spray tableware of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
16	photo	Fragments of a spray cup of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Iran	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
17	photo	Fragments of spray vessels of the 12 th -14 th centuries.	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
18	photo	Fragments of spray vessels of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Central Asia, the Lower Volga region	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
19	photo	Spray cup of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Central Asia, the Crimea	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
20	photo	Drinking bowl of the 14 th centuries. Kashine. The Lower Volga region	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
21	photo	Drinking bowls of the 14 th centuries. Kashine. The Lower Volga region	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
22	photo	Bolgar tableware of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Ceramics. Spray ceramics	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
23	photo	Jugs of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Ceramics. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
23	photo	Jugs of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Ceramics. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
25	photo	Jugs of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Ceramics. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
26	photo	Stamped vessel of the 13 th -14 th centuries. The Lower Volga region	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
27	photo	Fragments of stamped ceramics of the 13 th -14 th centuries. The Lower Volga	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes

		region					
28	photo	Spherocons of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Ceramics. Stamped ceramics. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
29	photo	Samples of stamps (<i>Tamga</i>) of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Ceramics. Bolgar. The Lower Volga region	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
30	photo	Samples of runes on the vessels of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Ceramics. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
31	photo	Samples of stamps (<i>Tamga</i>) and graffiti of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Ceramics. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
32	photo	Fragments of early ceramics of the 8 th -10 th centuries. Modelled ceramics. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
33	photo	Glass-making. Fragments of vessels of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Syria. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
34	photo	Glass-making. Fragments of vessels of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
35	photo	Hoard of copper tableware of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
36	photo	Copper tableware of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
37	photo	Pot of the 14 th century. Cast-iron. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
38	photo	Pot of the 14 th century. Cast-iron. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
39	photo	Plough knives of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Iron. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
40	photo	Ploughshare of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Iron. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
41	photo	Arrowheads of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Iron. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
42	photo	Casting mold of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Stone. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
43	photo	Belts cover plates of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Бронза. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
44	photo	Padlocks, keys of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Bronze. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
45	photo	Fragments of mirrors of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Bronze. Bolgar. China	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
46	photo	Bracelets of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Bronze. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
47	photo	Seal with image of the pard	Dec.	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes

		of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Bronze. Bolgar	2009				
48	photo	Shop equipment: set of weights, stamps of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Bolgar. The 11 th -12 th centuries. Cups and beams of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Iron, bronze, lead, stone. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
49	photo	Shop equipment: set of weights of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
50	photo	Items of Christian cults of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Baptismal crosses, icon, candlestick details – corona lucis. Stock. Shist. Bronze. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
51	photo	Clasp – Fibula, the 10 th century. Bronze. Scandinavia.	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
52	photo	Finno-Ugric jewelers of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Bronze. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
53	photo	Padlock – amulet «Maklashevsk's Horseman» the 12 th century. Bronze. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
54	photo	Pen, pencil case of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Кость. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
55	photo	Шашки, шахматные фигуры of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Кость. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
56	photo	56. Игральные кости of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Bone. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
57	photo	Dice of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Bone. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
58	photo	Figured models on vessels of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Ceramics. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
59	photo	Plummet of the 11 th -13 th century. Shist. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
60	photo	Beads of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Amber. Baltic.	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
61	photo	Lash handle of the 12 th -14 th centuries. Bone. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
62	photo	Water pipes of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Ceramics. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
63	photo	Water pipes of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Ceramics. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
64	photo	Millstone with stamp (<i>Tamga</i>) of the 13 th -14 th centuries. Stone. Bolgar	Dec. 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes

65	photo	View to the central part of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex: to the Cathedral Mosque, the Big Minaret, the North Mausoleum, the Church of the Dormition and East Mausoleum.	June 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Makhmutov R.Z. Nazarovikh st., 67 422840, town of Bolgar, Spasskii raion, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation +7(84347) 30456, +7(84347) 30132 bolgar.museum@tatar.ru	yes
66	photo	View to the central part of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex.	June 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
67	photo	View to the central part of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex and specially protected natural territory of the Republic of Tatarstan – the Public Nature Complex Preserve of Regional Property “Spasskii”	June 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
68	photo	The East Mausoleum, the Cathedral Mosque, the Big Minaret, the Church of the Dormition and the North Mausoleum.	June 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes
69	photo	The Big Minaret and Bell Tower of the Church of the Dormition	June 2009	Makhmutov R.Z.		Ibid.	yes

7b. Documentation relating to protective designation, copies of property management plans or documented management systems and extracts of other plans relevant to the property

Documentary evidence indicated in subsections 5b, 5d, 5e should be submitted to the nomination text

7c. Form and date of most recent records or inventory of property

Funds of the Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Cultural Preserve are the federal property and property of the Republic of Tatarstan and compose a public part of the Museum Fund of the Russia Federation and number 1097040 items (at the 1st of January 2010) including:

- items of numismatology - 14 622;
- items of archaeology – 65162;
- items of ethnography – 1381;
- weapons – 29;
- painting – 117;
- graphic arts – 252;
- sculpture – 13;
- workpieces of applied arts – 101;
- documents, rare books – 24384;
- items of natural-scientific collection – 59;
- items of history of technique – 52;
- others – 3532.

Items including precious 2156 pcs. metals and stones are out of the total.

7d. Address where inventory, records and archives are held

Ministry of Culture of the Russian Federation

Maliy Gnezdikovskiy per., 7/6, building 1,2, 125993, GSP-3, Moscow, Russian Federation

Federal Department of Supervision over Law Observation of Protection of Cultural Heritage

Kitaygorodskiy passage, 7, building 2, 109074, Moscow, Russian Federation

Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan

Pushkin street, 66/33, 420015, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation

Ministry of Youth Affairs, Sports and Tourism of the Republic of Tatarstan

Peterburgskaya street, 12, 420107, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation

Ministry of Ecology and Natural Resources of the Republic of Tatarstan

Pavluhkina, 75, 420059, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan

Russian Research Institution of Cultural and Nature Heritage

Kosmonavtov street, 129366, Moscow, Russian Federation

Institute of Archaeology of the Russian Academy of Science

Dm.Ulyanova street, 19, 117036, Moscow, Russian Federation

Chief Department "Main Department for State Control over the Protection and Utilisation of Historical and Cultural Monuments" of Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan,

Pushkina street, 66/33, 420015, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation

Chief Department "Bolgar Public Historical and Architectural Preserve"

Nazarovikh street, 67, 422840, the town of Bolgar, Spasskii raion, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation

Sh.Mardjani Institute of History of the Academy of Science of the Republic of Tatarstan, the Kremlin, passage 5, 420014, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation

Public Corporation «Tatar Special Scientific-Restoration Directorate»

Vishnevskogo street,26, 420043, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation

7e. Bibliography

1. Айдаров С.С., Аксенова Н.Д. *Великие Булгары. Путеводитель по Булгарскому историко-архитектурному заповеднику*. - Казань, 1971.
2. Ардашев И.А. *Развалины Болгар и древние Булгары по описанию англичанина Э.П.Турнерелли* - Казань, 1901.
3. Баллод Ф. *Приволжские Помпеи*. - М., Пг., - 1923.
4. Башкиров А.С. *Памятники болгаро-татарской культуры на Волге*. - Казань, 1928.
5. Березин И.Н. *Булгар на Волге*. - Казань, 1853.
6. Бестужев-Рюмин К.Н. *Чертежи, виды и карты Болгарского городища в главном Московском архиве Министерства иностранных дел // Труды 4 Археологического съезда*. - Казань, 1884. - Т.1.
7. *Болгар (Булгар) // Искусство стран и народов мира. Архитектура. Живопись. Скульптура. Графика. Декоративное искусство*. - М., 1971. - Т.3.
8. *Болгар и проблемы исторического развития Западного Закамья. Тезисы научной конференции*. - Болгар, 1998.
9. *Болгар: Путешествие в прошлое*. - М.,1983.
10. *Большая Советская Энциклопедия*. - М., 1950. - Т.5.

11. Борисов В.Л. *Описание развалин города Булгара подполковников Свечиным в 1765 г. // ИОАИЭ. - Казань, 1898 г. - Т.14, Вып.5.*
12. *Булгары. Черная палата. - Казань, 1951.*
13. Валеев Д.К. *Искусство волжских булгар (X-начало XIII вв.). - Казань, 1987.*
14. Валеев Р.М. *Волжская Булгария: торговля и денежно-весовые системы IX- начала XIII вв. -Казань, 1995.*
15. Валеев Ф.Х. *Древнее и средневековое искусство Среднего Поволжья. - Йошкар- Ола, 1975.*
16. Валеев Ф.Х., Валеева-Сулейманова Т.Ф. *Древнее искусство Татарии. - Казань, 1987.*
17. *Вестник научного общества татароведения. - Казань, 1928. - № 8.*
18. *Военно-оборонительное дело домонгольской Булгарии. - Казань, 1985.*
19. *Волжская Булгария и монгольское нашествие. - Казань, 1988.*
20. *Волжский вестник. - 1893. - № 278.*
21. *Второв Н.И. Памятники древностей в Казанской губернии // Журнал Министерства внутренних дел. - Спб., 1840. - Ч.38, № 8.*
22. *Вопросы древней и средневековой археологии Восточной Европы. - М., 1978.*
23. *Гаркави А.Я. Сказание мусульманских писателей о славянах и русских (с конца 7 до конца 10 в.). - Спб.,1870.*
24. *Георги И.Г. Описание всех обитающих в восточном государстве народов. - Сп., 1799.- Ч.1-П.*
25. *Город Болгар. Очерки истории и культуры. - М., 1978.*
26. *Город Болгар. Очерки ремесленной деятельности. - М., 1988.*
27. *Город Болгар. Ремесло металлургов, кузнецов, литейщиков. - Казань, 1996.*
28. *Город Болгар. Монументальное строительство, архитектура, благоустройство. – Москва, 2001.*
29. *Города Поволжья в средние века. - М., 1974.*
30. *Греков Б.Ю. Волжские болгары в IX-X вв. // Исторические записки. - М., 1945. - Т.4.*
31. *Григорьев В.В. Булгар // Энциклопедический Лексикон. - Спб., 1836.*
32. *Григорьев В.В. Волжские болгары // Россия и Азия: Сборник исследований и статей по истории, этнографии, географии, написанных в разное время В.В.Григорьевым.- Сп., 1876.*
33. *Давлетшин Г.Н Волжская Булгария: духовная культура. - Казань, 1990.*
34. *Дмитриев А. Древний Булгар и татарские о нем предания // ИОАИЭ. - Казань, 1889. - Т.7.*
35. *Древнейшая географическая карта, относящаяся к концу 16 в. Возобновлена и пополнена в 1627 г., переиздана в 1838 г. - Спб., 1838 г.*
36. *Древности Восточной Европы. - М., 1966.*
37. *Древности Волго-Камья. - Казань, 1977.*
38. *Заходер Б.Н. Каспийский свод сведений о Восточной Европе. - М., 1967. - Т.2.*
39. *Известия Общества археологии, истории и этнографии при Казанском университете. -Казань, 1884, Т.3, 1885, Т.4, 1888, Т.6, вып.2, Т.7., 1889, Т.7., 1892, Т.10, вып.4, 1898, Т.14, вып.5, 1916, Т.29, вып.5-6, 1919, Т.30, вып.1.*
40. *История СССР в 12 томах. -М., 1966. - Т.1.*
41. *Егерев В.В. Архитектура города Болгара // МИА, № 61. - М., 1958.*
42. *Ефимова.М. Болгарское городище. Справочник-путеводитель. - Казань, 1951.*

43. Кавелин А. Древние Болгары // Библиотека для чтения. - Спб., 1847. - № 83, Отд.3.
44. Казанская история. - М., Л., 1954.
45. Казанский музейный вестник. - Казань, 1920. - № 1-2, 1921. № 1-2.
46. Казаринов В.А. Развалины древних зданий при селе Болгарах // ИОАИЭ - Казань, 1888. - Т.6, Вып.2.
47. Кафтанников Н.Н. Болгары и развалины столицы сего народа // Заволжский муравей. - Казань, 1832. - Ч.2, №№ 11,16. - Ч.3, № 19.
48. Ковалевский А.П. Книга Ахмеда Ибн Фадлана о его путешествии на Волгу в 921-922 гг. - Харьков, 1957.
49. Крачковский И.Ю. Арабская географическая литература // Избранные сочинения. - М., Л., 1967. - Т.4.
50. Кунцевич Г.З. История о Казанском царстве, или Казанский летописец: Опыт историко-литературного исследования. - Спб., 1905.
51. Лепехин И.И. Дневные записки путешествия по разным провинциям Российского государства, 1768 и 1769 гг. - Спб., 1795. - Ч.1.
52. Материалы и исследования по археологии СССР. - М., 1954, № 42, 1958, № 61, 1960, № 80, 1962, № 111, 1970, № 164.
53. Материалы по охране, ремонту и реставрации памятников ТАССР. - Казань, 1927-1929, вып.1-3.
54. Мухаметишин Д.Г. Великие Болгары. Путеводитель. - М., 1982.
55. Мухаметишин Д.Г., Хакимзянов Ф.С. Эпиграфические памятники города Булгара. - Казань, 1977.
56. Невоструев К.И. О древних городищах древнего Волжско-Болгарского и Казанского ханств в нынешних губерниях Казанской, Симбирской, Самарской и Вятской // Труды I Археологического съезда. - М., 1871.- Т.2.
57. Отчеты императорской археологической комиссии. - Спб., 1892, 1893, 1895.
58. Очерки истории СССР. IX-XIII вв. - М., 1953.
59. Паллас П.С. Путешествие по разным провинциям Российской империи. - Спб., 1773. - Ч.1.
60. Письмо Екатерины II к Н.И.Панину от 3 июня 1767 г. // Сборник Русского исторического общества. Спб., 1872. - Т.10.
61. План развалин и укреплений бывшей столицы Волжской Болгарии, находящиеся при с.Успенское-Болгары // По замечательным местам Поволжья: Поездка по Казанской губернии и болгарским развалинам. - Казань, 1896. - Приложение.
62. Поволжье в средние века. - М., 1970.
63. Полное собрание русских летописей. - Спб., 1848. - Т. 4; Спб., 1851. - Т. 5; Спб., 1859. - Т. 8, 10, 15; Спб., 1889. - Т. 16, 18; Спб., 1897. - Т. 11, 15, 18, 25, 30; Спб., 1907. - Т. 17; Спб., 1908. - Т. 21; Спб., 1911. - Т. 22; Спб., 1913. - Т. 18; М., 1962. - Т. 1, 27, 30; М., 1963. - Т. 13, 15, 18, 30; М., 1965. - Т. 9, 15; М., 1968. - Т. 31; М., 1978. - Т. 34;
64. Порфирьев С.И. Белая палата в Болгарах по рисункам альбома Чернецовых. - Казань, 1915.
65. Путешествие Абу Хамида аль-Гарнати в Восточную и Центральную Европу (1131-1153 гг.) . - М., 1971.
66. Риттих А.Ф. Материалы для этнографии России. Казанская губерния. Ч.1. - Казань, 1870.
67. Рыбушкин М.С. Поездка в Болгары и Билярск // Заволжский муравей. - Казань, 1853. - Ч.1., № 2,4.

68. Савельев В.К. *Городища древнего Болгарского царства*. - Спб., 1892.
69. Свиньин П.П. *Картины России и быт разноплеменных ее народов*. - Спб., 1837. - Ч.1.
70. Свиньин П.П. *Плавание по Волге в Казань и к развалинам Болгар в 1823 г. // Отечественные записки*. - Спб., 1824. - № 48.
71. *Свод памятников археологии Республики Татарстан*. – Казань, 2007.
72. Семенов В.П. *Россия. Полное географическое описание нашего Отечества*. - Спб., 1901, - Т.6.
73. Смирнов А.П. *Волжские болгары // Труды ГИМ*. - М., 1951. - Вып.19.
74. Смирнов А.П. *Основные этапы истории города Болгара и его историческая топография // МИА, № 42*. - М., 1954.
75. Смирнов К.А. *Городище Великие Болгары. Путеводитель*. - М., 1962.
76. Смолин В.Ф. *По развалинам древнего Булгара. Спутник экскурсанта. Обзор развалин древнего города*. - Казань: Госиздат ТССР, 1926.
77. Смолин В.Ф. *Болгарский город Брахимов // ИОИАЭ*. - Казань, 1925. - Т.33., Вып.1.
78. Смолин В.Ф. *Охрана и ремонт болгарских развалин в прошлом*. - Казань, 1927.
79. Спасский Н. *Очерки по родоноведению. Казанская губерния*. - Казань, 1912.
80. *Сокровища культуры Татарстан. Наследие народов Российской Федерации*. – Москва, 204.- Вып.5.
81. *Татарский энциклопедический словарь*. – Казань, 1999.
82. *Татары*. – Москва, 2001.
83. Татищев В.Н. *История Российская с самых древнейших времен*. - М., 1768.
84. Тизенгаузен В.Г. *Сборник материалов, относящихся к истории Золотой Орды*. - Спб., 1884. - Т.1.
85. Тизенгаузен В.Г. *Сборник материалов, относящихся к истории Золотой Орды*. - М., Л., 1941. - Т.2.
86. *Труды I Археологического съезда*. - М., 1871. - Табл.10.
87. *Труды IV Археологического съезда*. -Казань, 1884. -Т.1.
88. Турнерелли Э.П. *Россия на границе Европы и Азии // Деятель*. - Спб., 1901
89. Чернецов Г.Г., Чернецов Г.Н. *Путешествие по Волге*. - М., 1970.
90. Шмит А. *Архитектурные чертежи развалин древних Болгар*. - Казань, 1927, Тоже. - М., 1832.
91. Шпилевский С.М. *Древние города и другие болгаро-татарские памятники в Казанской губернии*. - Казань, 1877.
92. Шпилевский С.М. *Город Болгар // Труды 4 Археологического съезда*. - Казань, 1884. - Т.1.
93. Фахрутдинов Р.Г. *Археологические памятники Волжско-Камской Булгарии и ее территория*. - Казань, 1975.
94. Фахрутдинов Р.Г. *Золотая Орда и татары. -Набережные Челны, 1993.*
95. Фахрутдинов Р.Г. *Мелодия камней*. - Казань, 1986.
96. Фахрутдинов Р.Г. *Очерки по истории Волжской Булгарии*. - М., 1984.
97. Федоров-Давыдов Г.А. *Золотоордынские города Поволжья*. -М, 1994.
98. Фехнер М.В. *Древние архитектурные памятники России. Великие Болгары. Свияжск. Казань*. - М., 1978.
99. Формозов А.А. *Очерки по истории русской археологии*. - М., 1961.
100. Хахимзянов Ф.С. *Язык эпитафий Волжских Булгар*. -М, 1978.

101. *Хакимзянов Ф.С. Эпиграфические памятники Волжских Булгар и их язык. - М, 1987.*
102. *Халиков А.Х. Монголы, татары, Золотая Орда и Булгария. - Казань, 1994.*
103. *Халиков А.Х. Происхождение татар Поволжья и Приуралья. - Казань, 1978.*
104. *Халиков А.Х. Татарский народ и его предки. - Казань, 1989.*
105. *Хвольсон Д.А. Известия о хазарах, буртасах, болгарях, мадьярах, славянах и руссах. - Спб., 1869.*
106. *Хлебникова Т.А. Керамика памятников Волжских Булгар. -М, 1984.*
107. *Хузин Ф.Ш. Волжская Булгария в домонгольское время (10 - начало 13 веков). - Казань, 1997.*
108. *Хузин Ф.Ш. Булгарский город в X-XII вв. – Казань, 2001.*
109. *Хузин Ф.Ш. Ранние булгары и Волжская Булгария. – Казань, 2006.*
110. *Червоная С.М. Искусство Татарии. - М., 1987.*
111. *Энциклопедический словарь. Спб.: Брокгауз и Эфрон, 1891. - Т.4., кн. 7,8.*
112. *Эрдман Ф.И. История булгаров (и города Булгар)// «Сын Отечества». – 1821. - № 6.*
113. *Яблоков А.Е. Село Болгары или Успенское Спасского уезда Казанской губернии (Болгарское городище). - Казань, 1905.*

Foreign Bibliography

1. *Beirage zur Kenntnis des Innern von Russland, Bd.I. Die Ruinen Bulghars. - Riga u.Dorpat., 1822.*
2. *Erdmann F.F. Beitrage zur Kentniss der Innert von Russland. - Riga, Leipig, 1822-1826. V. I..*
3. *Geographie d'Edrisi traduite de l'arabe en francais d'apres deux manuskrits de la bibliothque du roi et accompagnee de notes par P. Amadee Joubert. - Paris, 1840. -T.2.*
4. *Fraehn Ch.M. Die altesten arabischen Nachrichten uber die Wolga-Bulgaren aus Ibn-Fozzlan's Reiseberichte // Memoires de l' Akad. Der Sciences. - SPb., 1832. - Ser.6, T.1.*
5. *Fraehn Ch.M. Drie Munzen der Wolga-Bulgaren aas dem X Jahrhundert // Memoires de l' Akad. Der Sciences. - SPb., 1832. - Ser.6, T.1.*
6. *Klaproth J. Notice et explication des inscriptions de Bolhari // Nouveau Journal Asiatique. - Paris, 1831. - T.8.*
7. *Rona-Tas - Fodor S. Epigraphica Bulgarica: A volgai bolgar-torok feliratok // Studia Uralo-Altaica. - Szeged, 1973. - T.1.*
8. *Rorlich A.A. The Volga Tatars. A profile in National Resilience. - Stanford. California, 1986.*
9. *Ruines de Bolgari. Ancienne Ville Tatare, route de Siberie. (17 Septembe 1839) // Figures par Raffet Andre Durand, 1846.*

Tatar Bibliography

1. *Айдаров С.С., Аксенова Н .Д. Болгар шэһэре. (Болгар шэһэрен ойрэнү буенча юл күрсэткеч).- Казан, 1971.*
2. *Кәримуллин Э. Татарлар: исемебез һәм жисемебез.-Казан, 1991.*
3. *Кол Гали “Кыйсса-и-Йосыф”. -Казан, 1983.*
4. *Минсэгыйрова Р.С. Археология музейе буенча юл күрсэткеч. -Болгар, 1998.*
5. *Мохэммәдиев А.Г. Борынгы хазар һәм болгар акчалары. -Казан, 1986.*
6. *Мәржани Ш.Б. Мостафадел-эхбар фи эхвали Казан вэ Болгар. -Казан, 1989.*
7. *Нуретдин Агиш. Алтын Орда парчалары каталогы. -Истанбул, 1976.*
8. *Фәхретдинов Ризәтдин. Болигар вэ Казан торклэре. -Казан, 1993.*
9. *Фәхретдинов Равил. Ташлар моны. -Казан, 1992.*

10. Фәхретдинов Равил. Мондадыр безнен бабайлар. -Казан, 1992.
11. Хәкимжанов Ф., Мохәммәтшин Ж.Г. Шәһре Болгар. -Казан, 1997.
12. Халиков А.Х. Беренче дәүләт. -Казан, 1991.
13. Халиков А.Х. Кем без - боларлармы, татарлармы -Казан, 1992
14. Шәһри Болгар. Великий Болгар. Фотоальбом. -Казан, 1997.
15. Татар халык дастаны. Идегәй. -Казан, 1994.
16. Әхмәд-Зәки Вәлиди. Кыскача торек-татар тарихы. -Казан, 1992.

8. CONTACT INFORMATION OF RESPONSIBLE AUTHORITIES

8a. Preparer

Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan, Head Office for Conservation, Use, Promotion and Public Protection of Culture Heinage” of the Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan

Name: Nesterenko Igor Mikhaylovich

Title: Chief of the Head Office

Address: Pushkin street, 66/33

City, Province/State, Country: 420015, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation

Tel: +7(8432) 26474397

Fax: +7(8432) 2907510

E-mail: tatnasledie@tatar.ru,
inester@mail.ru

UNESCO Chair on Urban and Architectural Conservation

Name: Makovetskiy Igor Ivanovich

Title: Chair Holder

Address: 105037. Moscow, Bauman Gorodok, 1. Russian Federation

Tel: +7(499) 1657672

Fax: +7(499) 1657672

E-mail: intark@com2com

Kazan State University of Culture and Arts

Name: Valeev Rafael Mirgasimovich

Title: Pro-rector on scientific work

Address: 420059. Kazan, Orenburgsky trakt, 3. Russian Federation

Tel: (843) 2777499

Fax: (843) 2775907

E-mail: prector@kazguki.ru

8b. Official Local Institutions/Agencies	Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan
Name:	Valeeva Zilya
Title:	Deputy Prime-Minister, Minister of Culture of Republic of Tatarstan)
Address:	Pushkin street, 66/33
City, Province/State, Country	420015, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation

Tel:	Phone: +7(843) 2647401
Fax:	Fax: +7(843) 2920726,
E-mail:	E-mail: mkrt@tatar.ru
	The Bolgar State Historical and Architectural Museum- Preserve”
Name:	Makhmutov Rafael
Title:	Director
Address:	Nazarovikh street, 67
City, Province/State, Country	422840, town of Bolgar, Spasskiy raion, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation
Tel:	+7(84347) 30456,
Fax:	+7(84347) 30132
E-mail:	bolgar.museum@tatar.ru

8c. Other Local Institutions

Ministry of Youth Affairs, Sports and Tourism of the Republic of Tatarstan
(Minister: Bareev Marat)
Peterburgskaya street,12. 420107, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation
Phone: +7(843) 2643258
Fax: +7(843) 2643167,
E-mail: mdmst@tatar.ru

Ministry of Ecology and Natural Resources of the Republic of Tatarstan
(Minister - Satretdinov Azat)
Pavlukhin street, 75. 420059, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation
Phone: +7(843) 2676859
Fax: +7(843) 2676822
E-mail: ecot@tatar.ru

Head Office for Conservation, Use, Promotion and Public Protection of Culture Heinage” of the Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan
(Head of the Chief Department Nesterenko Igor)
Pushkin street, 66/33. 420015, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation
Phone: +7(8432) 26474397
Fax: +7(8432) 2907510
E-mail: tatnasledie@tatar.ru,
inester@mail.ru

State Historical, Architectural and Art Museum-Preserve «Kazan Kremlin»
(Director: Khayrutdinov Ramil)
Kremlin, 420014, Kazan, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation,
Phone: +7(8432) 5678002
Fax: +7(8432) 2920480
E-mail: mzkk@mail.ru

Elabuga State Historical, Architectural and Arts Museum-Preserve
(Director: Rudenko Gulzada)
Gassara street,9. 423600, Elabuga, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation,
Phone: +7(85557)78600
Fax: +7(85557) 78328
E-mail: elabuga.museum@tatar.ru

Bilyar State Historical and Archaeological and Nature Musume-Preserve
Director: Kutuyev Anas
422920, Bilyarsk settlement, Alekseevskiy raion, Republic of Tatarstan, Russian Federation
Phone: +7(84341) 24567
Fax: +7(84341) 24567
E-mail: bilyar.museum@tatar.ru

8d. Official Web address	http://www.bolgar.info Contact person: Makhmutov Rafael E-mail: bolgar.museum@tatar.ru
---------------------------------	---

9. Signature on behalf of the State Party

Submitted by the Commission of the Russian Federation for UNESCO

G. Ordzhonikidze
Secretary-General

Annex to item 5b

Statements of organizational-administrative documents:

The Decree of Russian Emperor Peter I from 7/2/1722

«Mr. Governor!

In our stay in Bolgar we saw that at the ancient Bulgarian tower structures (or bell towers) the base has ruined, and this is the subject to renovate again. For that reason send there nowadays twelve or fifteen masons with their tools and some barrels of a lime, and the old stones there are sufficiently, order to repair old places as well on time. The Decree behind the prescription its own majesties of a hand, i.e.: Peter, consider to be original.

From Astrakhan on the 2 day of July, 1722»

From the Charter of the Archaeology, History and Ethnography Society of the Kazan University, approved 3/18/1878 by the Minister of national education

«... studying the past and the present of the Russian and foreign population in territory of former Bolgaro-Hazaria and Kazansko-Astrakhan kingdoms with districts adjoining to it».

The Resolution of the Council of People's Commissars of the TSSR № 47 from 9/22/1923

1. «To declare as the inviolable reserve all the territory of the ancient Bulgarians including the following:

- a) Bolgary village (foothill and upland parts),
- b) All territory of the ancient city surrounded by the shaft, including the Small town on the way to the village Three Lakes and
- c) Territory of so-called Greek Chamber with all their ancient monuments and arts.

According to the plan this area concludes 567,1 tithes.

2. To prohibit to conduct any excavation in this territory without the permission of the Museum Commission at the Academic center Tatnarkomprosa, to take stones from ancient buildings for constructions, and also to carry away from this territory any remainders of olden time and art, as well as to fill in with garbage.

It is forbidden to build this area up with new houses and cold constructions without the permission of the Museum Commission and to plow up the places occupied with ancient buildings and remainders by their circle each in 5 meters.

3. The precise area of ancient Bulgarians should be specified by the Commission with representatives of Narkomzem, Building Management and the Museum Commission.

Guilty of infringement of the meant resolution will be taken to court for plunder and spoil of the state property».

The Resolution of the Council of Ministers of the RSFSR from 8/30/1960 N 1327 "On the further improvement of monuments of culture protection in the RSFSR"

With a view of the further improvement of monuments of culture protection and their use in communistic education of the Soviet people the Council of Ministers of the RSFSR enacts:

9. To establish that all monuments of culture are subjects to be arranged to good conditions, and most valuable of them - to transformation into objects of museum display. To confirm the list of monuments according to Appendix N 3, liable for preparation for museum display.

8. To confirm the list of monuments of culture according to Appendix N 1, liable to protection as monuments of the state significance, and the list of monuments of culture according to Appendix N 2, liable to protection as monuments of local value.

The Chairman
of the Council of Ministers of the RSFSR
D. Polyansky

Administrative officer
of the Council of Ministers of the RSFSR
I. Gruzdev

Appendix N 1

To the Resolution of the Council of Ministers of the RSFSR of August, 30th, 1960 N 1327
THE LIST OF THE ARCHAEOLOGICAL RELICS LIABLE TO PROTECTION AS THE
RELICS OF STATE SIGNIFICANCE

Name of the relics	Location
Tatar Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic, Kuybyshev district	
Site of ancient settlement "Bolgar" the capital of the Bolgar State	Bolgary village

THE LIST OF THE ARCHAEOLOGICAL RELICS LIABLE TO PROTECTION AS THE
RELICS OF STATE SIGNIFICANCE

Name of the relics, built-time, author	Location
Tatar Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic, Kuybyshev district	
The Complex of the archeological relics of the XIII-XIV centuries on the territory of ancient settlement "Bolgar" The Black Chamber The Maly Minaret The Monastic celler (burial vault) Khan's burial vault Nikolskaya church (burial vault) Quadrangular ruins (former mosque) Dormition church, 17th–18th centuries	Bolgary village

To the Resolution
of the Council of Ministers of the RSFSR
from August, 30th, 1960 N 1327

THE LIST OF THE ARCHAEOLOGICAL RELICS LIABLE TO PRIOR PREPARATION FOR
THE MUSEUM DISPLAY

Name of the relics,	Location
Tatar Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic, Kuybyshev district	
Ancient city of "Bolgar" the capital of the Bolgar State	Bolgary village

The Decree of the Council of Ministers of TASSR from 4/14/1969 № 222

«About opening the State historical-architectural reserve in the Tatar ASSR on the basis of the Bulgarian site of ancient settlement»

To execute the resolution of of the Council of Ministers of the RSFSR from February, 9th, 1968 № 77 "About practice of a management of Council of Ministers of TASSR in cultural building in republic" the Council of Ministers of the TASSR enacts:

1. To open on the July, 1st, 1969 State historical-architectural reserve on the basis of the Bulgarian site of ancient settlement.
2. To ask the Ministry of culture of the RSFSR to confirm the job pattern of the Bulgarian State historical-architectural reserve.

Chairman
of the Council of Ministers of the TASSR
G.USMANOV

Administrative officer
of the Council of Ministers of TASSR
G. Yankin

The resolution of the Council of Ministers of the TASSR from 10/7/1969 № 548

«About the statement of conservation zones and zones of adjustment of building for architecture monuments in the TASSR»

1. To confirm developed by the Ministry of Culture of the TASSR and agreed with the Ministry of Cultures of RSFSR the conservation zones and zones of adjustment of building for monuments of architecture of Kazan, Sviyazhsk and Bolgar village, and the housing estate Raifsky.
2. To oblige the executive committees of the Kazan city, Verhneuslonsky, Kuibyshev and Zelenodolsky regional councils of deputies of workers, tenants, owners and users of architecture monuments to observe strictly a mode of the maintenance of conservation zones and zones of

adjustment of building according to the time instruction «About the organization of conservation zones and zones of adjustment of building for monuments of history and culture in RSFSR», confirmed by a state system of RSFSR in December, 1966.

The Chairman
of the Council of Ministers of TASSR

G.USMANOV

Deputy Administrative officer
of the Council of Ministers of TASSR

S. SAIFULLIN

The Decree of the President of the Russian Federation from 2/20/1995 N 176

«About the statement of the List of objects of historical and a cultural heritage of federal (all-Russian) value»

With a view of preserving the cultural heritage of the people of the Russian Federation I enact:

1. To confirm presented by the Government of the Russian Federation the List of objects of historical and a cultural heritage of federal (all-Russian) value it (applied).

The President of
The Russian Federation
B.YELTSIN

Moscow, the Kremlin
February, 20th, 1995
N 176

Confirmed
By the Decree of the President of
The Russian Federation
February, 20th, 1995 N 176

THE LIST OF THE HISTORICAL AND CULTURAL OBJECTS OF FEDERAL (ALL-RUSSIA) VALUE

CHAPTER 1. HISTORICAL AND CULTURAL MUSEUMS-PRESERVES AND MUSEUM COMPLEXES

Name of the object	Location
State historical-archaeological museum complex "Bolgary"	Spasskiy district Bolgary village

The Resolution of Cabinet of Minisers of the Tatarstan Republic from 9/10/2010 №726 «About reference to objects of a cultural heritage of regional (republican) value»

With a view of provision of preserving and the state protection of the revealed monuments the Cabinet council of the Republic of Tatarstan ENACTS:

1. To carry to objects of a cultural heritage of regional (republican) value objects of the cultural heritage located in the city territory of Bulgarians of Spasskiy district and a city of Kazan, according to the appendix;

2. To the ministry of culture of Tatarstan Republic in the order established by the law to present in 30-day term to the Federal Agency of supervision of a compliance with law in the field of protection of a cultural heritage documents for inclusion of objects of a cultural heritage of regional (republican) value, according to the appendix, in the Uniform state register of objects of a cultural heritage (history and culture monuments) people of the Russian Federation.

3. The control of execution of the present resolution to assign on the Ministry of culture of Tatarstan Republic.

Prime Minister of
The Republic of Tatarstan
I. Halokov

Annex
To the resolution of the
Cabinet council
Tatarstan Republic
From 9/10/2010 №726

The LIST
of the archaeological relics liable to protection as the relics of regional (Republic) significance.

№	The name of the relic, built-date	The location of the relic
Bolgar town, Spasskiy municipal district		
5.	Complex of architectural relics of the XIII-XIV centuries on the territory of the ancient settlement "Bolgar" – the capital of the Bolgar State	
5.1.	Khan's burial vault, XIV century.	Spasskiy municipal district, Bolgar village, Ozerny lane,2a
5.2.	The White Chamber (ruins), XIV century.	Spasskiy municipal district, Bolgar village, Shkolny lane,2b
5.3.	The Red Chamber(ruins), XIV century.	Spasskiy municipal district, Bolgar village, State historical-archeological Preserve "Bolgary"
5.4.	The Eastern Chamber («Khan's Chamber or bath-house») (ruins), second part of XIII century.	Spasskiy municipal district, Bolgar village, Ozerny lane,30
5.5.	Tower House («Khan's Palace») (ruins), 1240s.	Spasskiy municipal district, Bolgar village, State historical-archeological Preserve "Bolgary"
5.6.	North and South buildings of the Small town (ruins), XIV century.	Spasskiy municipal district, Bolgar village, Likhacheva str, 160

5.7.	The building with the pond (ruins), XIV century.	Spasskiy municipal district, Bolgar village, State historical-archeological Preserve “Bolgary”
5.8.	Tombs (ruins), XIV century.: №1, №2, №3, №4, №5, at former village school, to the North of the Black chamber	Spasskiy municipal district, Bolgar village, State historical-archeological Preserve “Bolgary”
6.	Small shop, end of the XVIII – beginning of the XIX centuries.	Spasskiy municipal district, Bolgar village, Nazarovs’ str, 67 A
7.	Bukhtulov’s small shop XIX century.	Spasskiy municipal district, Bolgar village, Nazarovs’ str, 67 G
8.	Residential houses XIX century.	Spasskiy municipal district, Bolgar village, Nazarovs’ str, 67 V

Annex to item 5e.

Abstract of the Concept of Developing Bolgar State Historic and Archaeological Complex for 2009- 2019, approved by the Order of the Minister of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan № 51 of 04.02.2010.

CONTENT of the CONCEPT

INTRODUCTION

I. HISTORIC, CULTURAL AND NATURAL HERITAGE OF THE BOLGAR COMPLEX

1. HISTORY AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL HERITAGE OF BOLGAR

- 1.1. General characteristics
- 1.2. Early Bolgar
- 1.3. Bolgar of the Golden Horde period
- 1.4. Archaeological exploration of Bolgar
- 1.5. Written sources about Bolgar
- 1.6. Short characteristic of the basic monuments on the territory of the Bolgar Complex

2. LANDSCAPE ORIGINALITY and ESTIMATION of the NATURAL HERITAGE of the TERRITORY

- 2.1. Regional natural situation
- 2.2. Containing landscape: structure, the characteristic, Environment and Cultural assessment
- 2.3. Dangerous and adverse natural processes in the territory of the Bolgar Complex
- 2.4. Problem territorial complexes of the museum complex
- 2.5. Ecologically valuable natural objects of the museum complex
- 2.6. Toponymy of landscapes in the memorial estate territory as a part of a historical heritage

3. CULTURAL and LANDSCAPE TERRITORIAL DEVISION

4. HISTORIC, CULTURAL and NATURAL HERITAGE of the ENVIRONMENT of the BOLGAR COMPLEX

4.1. Suvar

- 4.2. Modern city of Bolgar
- 4.3. Three Lakes
- 4.4. Nickolskiy
- 4.5. Antonovka (Abyss)
- 4.6. Kuznechiha
- 4.7. Bugrovka
- 4.8. Kuralovo and the place of the former Spasskiy district
- 4.9. Shaft and ditches of the Zakamsky defensive lines
- 4.10. Spasskiy wildlife preserve
- 4.11. Sjukeevsky caves
- 4.12. The big landslip
- 4.13. Tetyushi
- 4.14. Archaeological monuments

II. BASIC DIRECTIONS of DEVELOPMENT of the BOLGAR HISTORICAL AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL COMPLEX up to 2020s.

5. CONCEPTUAL OBJECTIVES of PERSPECTIVE DEVELOPMENT of the COMPLEX

6. TASKS of ORGANIZATION of the COMPLEX TERRITORY

- 6.1. Functional zoning of the territory and perspective goals of developing some zones

- 6.1.1. The main center of tourists reception («the New center»)
 - 6.1.2. The second center of tourists reception ("Pier")
 - 6.1.3. The main exposition and cult center
 - 6.1.4. New cult complex
 - 6.1.5. The central archaeological zone
 - 6.1.6. The Small Town
 - 6.1.7. Residential area
 - 6.1.8. Ecological zone
 - 6.1.9. Runway
 - 6.2. Protected zones of the Museum Complex and suggestions on expanding its territory.
7. STRATEGY of DEVELOPMENT MUSEUM ACTIVITY
- 7.1. General tasks of developing museum complex
 - 7.2. Main museum of the Bolgar Museum Reserve
 - 7.3. Museums at the Pier
 - 7.4. Expositions in architectural monuments of the ancient Bolgar
 - 7.5. Places of archaeological explorations as museum expositions
 - 7.6. Ethnographic museum
 - 7.7. Museum objects outside of the Museum Complex
8. PROSPECTS of DEVELOPMENT of TOURIST SPHERE
- 8.1. Main directions of tourism development
 - 8.2. Formation of a tourism infrastructure
 - 8.3. Organizational and economic problems of tourism development
9. THE SCIENTIFIC-EDUCATIONAL DIRECTION IN THE MUSEUM COMPLEX ACTIVITY
10. ECONOMIC AND ORGANIZATIONAL ISSUES OF DEVELOPING THE BOLGAR COMPLEX
- 10.1. Preproject solutions on development of the territory and separate objects
 - 10.1.1. Restoration projects of the Museum
 - 10.1.2. A tourism infrastructure
 - 10.1.3. Scientific-educational projects
 - 10.1.4. Developing of infrastructure of the Museum Complex
 - 10.2. Staff of the memorial estate and expenses on its maintenance
 - 10.3. Assessment of social economic efficiency of developing of the Bolgar Complex
- CONCLUSION

Extract from the Concept

II. BASIC DIRECTIONS of DEVELOPMENT of the BOLGAR HISTORICAL AND ARCHAEOLOGICAL COMPLEX up to 2020s.

5. CONCEPTUAL OBJECTIVES of PERSPECTIVE DEVELOPMENT of the COMPLEX

The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex created in 1969 has passed the period of the formation and now was generated as one of large and interesting museum complex on the territory of the Russian Federation. Historical value of this place, the unique objects of a cultural heritage located here, and also the stored experience of museum and organizational work allow us to set the task of the further development of the Bolgar complex and its transformation into one of leading museum complexes of Russia.

The concept of perspective development of the museum complex originates from that potential of a historical and cultural heritage of Bolgar as the historical center of acceptance of Islam on the territory of Russia, one of the most ancient cities of the Volga region and the most interesting on a set of archaeological, historical and architectural objects of a monument, can be compared with the potential of leading objects listed as of the World cultural heritage. The museum complex here can and should become object of world importance, by museum and tourist possibilities not to concede to the best museums of the country and the world, to provide high appeal to visitors from various regions of Russia and the foreign states.

For realization of this purpose the solution of following problems is necessary.

1. The account and heritage preservation within the whole territory of the museum complex and proper management of the territory, based on its cultural-landscape and functional zoning.

For this purpose the system of the further study of the territory is planned, including both archaeological, and naturalists' studies, work with already discovered monuments and discovering new, scientific restoration and preservation of the studied objects (ramparts, inhabited, industrial objects on a place of the historical city). And perspective works on studying of a natural heritage of this territory are very interesting. There the rests of steppes, small forest (which it can be considered as analog of primary woods of historical Bolgar time), steppe landscapes and rare species of plants have remained.

Ultimately the whole territory of the memorial estate will be considered as a uniform cultural-landscape complex, as complex cultural-landscape object which includes not only archaeological and architectural monuments of the Bulgarian and the Golden Horde period, but also later stratifications connected with existence of an orthodox monastery, the remained historical village, nature sanctuaries, the coastal Volga landscape. The memorial estate territory should receive the scientifically reasonable division into districts and zones of mass visit and protected sites, places of developing of a tourist infrastructure and other functional zones.

2. Formation of the newest museum complex.

Modern museum development doesn't answer historical potential of Bolgar. Creating the systems of museum expositions corresponding to all modern world trends. Formation of a museum complex from the several exposition sites the route on the ancient monuments of the historical site of ancient settlement (some kind of an open-air museum) is planned.

In the structure of the museum complex the following objects are planned: the main museum building; an exposition at a mooring for informing of the visitors, who arrived a waterway; an ethnographic museum with display of a traditional life, with craft workshops, objects of a traditional cuisine and other ethnographic sights. It is necessary to insure the real museum features of the remained architectural monuments, a small site of the ancient shaft, the archaeological excavation (as an independent and very interesting object of display). Museum expositions shouldn't infringe the historical landscape, the glass cover of some objects and the use of an underground space for some archaeological objects (as in leading archaeological museums of the world) is planned.

The creation in the long term branches of the museum complex near the historical Bolgar plays the important role. Two similar branches already exist: the museum of local lore in Bolgar, containing the information on Spasskiy district, and also the archaeological monument of the ancient settlement of Suvar, which are in 60 km from Bolgar. On a way from Bolgar in Suvar there are some more interesting objects.

Creation of system of various museums will allow to distribute in regular intervals enough visitors on the territory of the memorial estate and to avoid excessive number of tourists on the separate objects. It pursues also one more important aim – formation of the various tourist offer which will allow the visitor to stay longer in this place for some days. Due to it the preconditions for more

effective in economic sense of the service organization are formed (in comparison with several hours excursion).

3. The Museum complex development as one of the Russian leaders and in the long term the world tourist centers.

The historical value of Bolgar and its favorable economic-geographical position (the Volga route, a reliable communication with Kazan) make this problem feasible. Perspective development will receive various forms of cultural-informative tourism, pilgrim tourism (including an annual holiday – the day of acceptance of Islam), scientific tourism.

Actually, the appeal of Bolgar, its future branches, the Volga river space – all these in the long term will allow to detain the tourist per day and more here, that will provide favourable economic preconditions of development of the memorial estate. The creation of a modern tourist infrastructure is planned: building of the new mooring for the organization of reception of the tourists traveling on the river routes; visit-center creation, formation of the various hotel network meeting requirements as tourists, and pilgrims.

The use of this fund of placing and tourist infrastructure should provide substantial growth of attendance of the Bolgar complex. The special program is planned for maintenance of carrying out of the annual holiday of acceptance of Islam and target visiting of this ancient place by pilgrims. The Memorial estate will develop programs of specialized scientific tourism, and also congress tourism. Planned increase of level of profitableness from tourism will be connected not only with increase of visitors in total, but also with service improvement of quality, providing various kinds of additional services, the organization of excursions under the individual program, etc.

4. The museum complex development as the center of the further social and economic development of surrounding territory.

In the Concept of developing museum complex the following strategic problem is set: the complex of a historical and cultural heritage is special and very important economic resource, it can and should become a basis of special branch of specialization of Spasskiy area, to become one of the perspective directions of development of local economy.

Various activity of the museum complex and the development of sphere of tourism connected with it, various service establishments and branches of a social infrastructure are capable to bring significant economic benefit. Cumulative effect of developed actions of developing museum complex allows us to speak about high social pay back and social efficiency. It is connected, first of all, with culture and tourism development, spirituality preservation, improvement of an ecological situation and preservation of the historical landscape environment, perfection of formation, ecological education and so forth.

Use of potential of a cultural and natural heritage of Bolgar for science development is of great value. Normal work of the museum complex is impossible without the highly qualified employees. In this connection it is planned to generate on the basis of the Bolgarian museum complex the Scientific academic center on History studies and culture of the Volga Bolgars – as the all-Russian scientifically-methodological center coordinating researches and rendering the necessary advisory help to all Russian regions in the territory where the objects of that time located.

Strategy of development of the Bolgar complex will allow to provide the solution of the following important problems:

- Preservation of the unique object
- of a cultural heritage for the Republic of Tatarstan and Russia;
- Creation of extremely interesting tourist complex on the territories of the
- Republic of Tatarstan, increase of tourist and economic value of Tatarstan
- and the Volga region as a whole;

- Inclusion of the complex of the cultural and natural heritage of historical
- Bolgar in the system of the Russian and international tourist programs;
- Development of the significant all-Russian spiritual center of the Muslim people;
- Creation of the scientifically-methodological center of History studies and
- culture of the Volga Bulgars, the center of ecological education,
- development of study of local lore;
- Occurrence of new factors of social and economic development on the appearance of Spasskiy area, formation of its special cultural and tourist specialization.

6. TASKS of ORGANIZATION of the TERRITORY of the COMPLEX

6.1.2. The second center of tourists reception ("Pier")

Proceeding from the characteristics of the historical, archaeological and natural heritage of the territory of the museum complex, as well as cultural-landscape division into districts, the following functional zoning of the territory of the memorial estate is being planned and this will be the basis for further development of museum business as well as service of visitors.

6.1.1. The main center of reception of tourists («the New center»)

The importance of the center of reception of tourists keeps also the Volga moorage from which many visitors will start their tour of the museum historic monuments. But in the nearest future creation of the new center of reception of tourists around the Small town (outside of the territory of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological complex and its reserve ("security") zones) through which the main stream of visitors will take place is necessary.

Formation of the new center at the Small town is connected with necessity of the reception of excursion buses, auto tourists, the areas on which creation of tourist hotels, motel, the modern tourist visit-center, administration of the museum complex, infrastructural objects is possible in the long term here are located.

The new modern museum complex with the storage facilities will be also built.

6.1.2. The second center of tourists reception ("Pier")

This area will remain one of the main places of tourists' receiving. Nowadays nearly eighty motor ships are docked to the Bulgarian moorage, in summer excursion groups are formed from these spot, points of catering and souvenir sales are organized as well. In future this might be the second gate of the museum complex, the center for receiving rater tourists and organizing river tours.

The main task on the territory of this area is building of a new moorage for motor ships, which can ensure receiving of water vessels of different kinds.

As a whole, the area of wharf has high historical and cultural potential; it is possible to make a part of Voljskiy slope as a museum demonstrating its geological structure and archaeological layer.

6.1.3. The main exposition and cult center

This area includes the Cathedral Mosque complex with a big minaret and other architectural monuments surrounding it. They compose the heart of the complex, which is viewed by all the tourists; also it is used for religious purposes during annual celebration of Islam's adoption.

The administrative buildings of the museum complex located in the constructions dated from the 19-20 centuries are of great historic interest. The larger part of the objects of cultural heritage is located on the premises of the Dormition Church. It's planned to upgrade this exhibition up to the late Bolgar history (period of russification) creation of monastery and history of the village. The main task for this zone is to insure physical preservation of architectural monuments as well as there preservations establishing the authenticity of the object of cultural heritage ecological

monitoring of architectural and archaeological objects in accordance with modern scientific requirements

6.1.4. New cult complex

This small area includes one more religious monument which is popular with all the visitors of Bulgarian ancient settlement who arrive here with religious purposes, - Gabdrahman's draw well. It is visited by Muslim pilgrims all the year around.

Low architectural structures are erected above the spring, they are unnoticeable from the site of the main ancient settlement's architectural monuments and they are not in the way of their perception, however, they are within a good view from the Volga River. Taking into consideration the modern religious importance of this place, it is obvious that equipping it with services and utilities are necessary here, but the architectural quality and its level don't meet the case of ancient Bulgarian monuments' historical image in full. In prospect it is necessary to find architectural solution and a landscape design for this area.

6.1.5. Central archaeological zone

It is an active museum and tourist zone on the culture of the museum complex which is visited by many tourists. It is situated beyond the main architectural center and forms a kind of museum under the open sky where a visitor sees archeological excavations, which are being examined by archeologists.

6.1.6. The Small Town

The complex of the small town with its valuable archeological and natural environment correspond perspective museum and tourist area of the Bolgar museum complex. Unfortunately, nowadays this zone is practically not visited by the sightseers because of its being remote from the main monuments. Due to creating the tourists' receiving center near this property will enable The Small Town will enjoy proper attention.

6.1.7. Residential area

This zone includes the historic settlement of Bolgar with its archaeological, architectural and ethnographic monuments. It is planned to preserve country houses and partially preserve the dwelling houses as well as its partial use to house ethnographic museum and developing touristic infrastructure. Historic dwelling houses can be used as a museum with exposition of objects of peasants household and peasants farmstead. The owners of country estates should preserve the historic appearance of the building. It's forbidden to use modern construction materials in external appearance of houses to increase the number of floors to erect disharmonic buildings in terms of its height and colour.

6.1.8. Ecological zone

The most part of the museum complex is in a functional area which is defined as "ecological". It is a territory with valuable archeological and cultural layer and ecologically significant natural complexes; it forms an ecological framework of the museum complex and determines its cultural and landscape look.

This zone is visited by a few sightseers. However, it has a great number of archeological objects which can be demonstrated to the visitors. Besides, the territory is interesting for ecological routes basing on which we can get the information about the Bulgarian landscape in different seasons, get acquainted with typical landscape features of forest-steppe region and its vegetation. This zone has very rare types of plants such as feather grass and oak.

6.1.9. Runway

In the center of ecological zone there is one specially designed territory. It is an old runway initially used for local airfield. Now is runway is no longer used in accordance with its direct purpose and gradually deteriorates.

But now in a present condition this asphalt runway can be employed for temporary use of museum complex. Primarily it can be used as a bus parking lot and to spend the night for the visitors during annual celebrations of acceptance of Islam. It can be also used for temporary tend camp, toilets, cooking facilities.

6.2. Protected zones of the Museum Complex and suggestions on expanding its territory.

An important condition in preserving historical landscape monument is strict observation of regime of the protected areas. Strict control over apartment block development, strict restriction in number of storeys, special colour and household structures designing is necessary in order to conceal visual environmental pollution.

For the future it is recommended to verify the boundaries of the museum complex and to enlarge them on account of some small territories to the East of small town. They are planned to house new administration buildings, museum complex, tourist visit center; territory of Aga-Bazar (Aga market) as a monument of archaeology and historic trade wharf of Bolgar where it is quiet possible to recreate in touristic purposes the wharf and trade, to built a berth for small motorboats, places for bathing and entertainment; Rabiga lake and its vicinities should be considered as a valuable object of cultural heritage and can be used for various cultural events. In the nearest future it is quiet possible to consider the possibility of enquiring new territories on account of former middle aged Armenian colony. After liquidation of industrial buildings it is possible to recreate the Armenian church.

7. STRATEGY of DEVELOPMENT MUSEUM ACTIVITY

7.1. General tasks of developing museum complex

At present museum exposition of the Bulgarian museum complex is located in the interior of the Dormition church and takes up a small area. Modern means of presenting museum exhibits and modern i-tech are lacking.

On the assumption of Bolgar's historical and cultural potential, it is rational to take the following strategies of museum development. A new big museum exposition should be formed in which all the main moments in history and development of the ancient town could be exposed. This main museum exposition apart, it is necessary to create several museum units on the territory of the culture preserve which could show the history of Bolgar's main architectural ensembles essential aspects of ancient and new Bolgar history (ethnographic museum est.).

Foundation of several active museum spots will increase the time of visiting the culture preserve by a sightseer or a tourist, it will enable to distribute the visitors on the territory quite evenly and avoid excessive load on separate units, it will make it possible to increase the entrance fee into the museums but at the same time it sets up very important requisite.

Within the bounds of this strategy realization of the following projects is recommended.

7.2. Main museum of the Bolgar Museum Reserve

Its creation is expected in the Small Town district to the east of it. Nowadays a great number of visitors arrive at Bolgar through this place. In prospect 4/5 of all arrivals will take place from the Small Town's side in highway lying from Kazan and other neighboring regional centers.

Foundation of tourist hotels, motels, modern touristic visit-center, office buildings of the culture preserve, infrastructural objects (parking lot, cafes) are planned on the same territory. The preference of visiting Bulgarian ancient town than the Small one is in possibility to envisage clearly

the size of ancient Bolgar, possibility to have a good look at various monuments, examine archeological excavations which are held in different places.

In the museum structure it is planned to organize the following main exposition sections: general (introductory) section with a big mockup of ancient Bolgar, a section of Voljskiy Bolgar's history, a section of archeology, a section of Islam culture and art, a nature section, a section of modern Bolgar history and its surroundings.

There won't be only the Main Museum in the exposition space of the culture preserve but also museum sections and expositions will be located on the other territories of it. We should mention the following among them.

7.3. Museums at the Pier

Voljskiy landing stage will remain its importance as one of the main entrances into the culture preserve at a long date. At present touristic motor ships arrive here (on 80 calling at in a year), the number of motor ships and bulk of shipping tourists must increase considerably with building of new moorage.

Because of short stopover not all of them will get the opportunity to visit the museum at the Small Town, walk along the territory of Bulgarian ancient town. In number of cases excursion program will provide only short sightseeing of Bolgar's main monuments – Big Minaret and its surrounding structures. But even in this case a visitor has to get necessary information about Bolgar, have an idea concerning its archeological godsend and cultural heritage of Bulgarian land.

7.4. Expositions in architectural monuments of the ancient Bolgar

At present there are small expositions in some reconstructed architectural structures of ancient settlement. In the Northern Mausoleum there is a lapidary (exhibition of 8th - 9th century's epigraphy on the flagstones). The sightseers can visit the Black Chamber and see its interior, the Eastern Mausoleum. At present there is the main museum exposition in the interiors of the Dormition Church.

Using of ancient architectural structures' interiors of the culture preserve in visitors' sightseeing enriches the impression of visiting the historical place. This technique in development of museum exposition can and must be extended.

The places of museum expositions in Bolgar's architectural monuments will be: 1. the Northern Mausoleum; 2. the Black Chamber; 3. the Eastern Mausoleum; 4. Khan's burial at the Small Minaret; 5. the Dormition church where exposition of late Bolgar history will be displayed: Russian settlement, foundation of monastery, history of Bolgar country, history of orthodoxy in this area.

7.5. Places of archaeological explorations as museum expositions

It is extremely important for archeological culture preserve to give a visitor an opportunity to get acquainted with archeological excavations and archeologists' work. On the example of ancient Bolgar museum archeological excavations can be one of the most interesting units of visiting the museum. Namely they give true information about history of this remarkable place, about Voljskiy Bolgar's culture.

At present there are no such expositions in the culture preserve. Their creation is planned in different places (1. Swells. 2. Mausoleums. 3. Khan's palace. 4. Pottery workshops. They are located in the western part of Bulgarian ancient settlement on the bank of dried-up Galankino lake (Galanki). 5. Underground space along the slope which arises from the landing stage to the main architectural monuments).

7.6. Ethnographic museum

It is planned to locate it on the territory of Bolgar country in several units concentrating the main ones near Britankino Lake. The museum will supplement information about history of this place; take a kind of monotonous impression of archeological expositions and exhibits down.

Dwelling houses will be supplemented with workshop houses where traditional trades and manufacture (weaving, art of embroidery, production of clothes, footwear, pottery trade and others) will be displayed and where a visitor can buy handmade goods as a souvenir.

Also houses will be the major addition – snack bars where a visitor can stop at and have a snack (Tatar or Russian cuisine), taste different buns and rolls, sweets and drinks.

Some houses are supposed to re-equip as small hotels. In some houses it will be possible to rent rooms in the period of great load and active visiting of the culture preserve (it is described more detailed in the part devoted to the touristic services).

7.7. Museum objects outside of the Museum Complex

At present an interesting museum of urban history “Spassk-Kuibishev-Bolgar” is functioning in Bolgar, which is the culture preserve’s subdivision. The exposition is very interesting, and the museum’s visiting card is its peculiar collection containing about a hundred of samovars. Scantiness of space doesn’t make it possible to expand the full-grown museum where the history of vanished Spassk and Spasskiy boatyard as well as the history of modern settlement have to find its reflection. A new building is needed for the urban museum.

The other museum’s subdivision beyond the culture preserve is a small museum in Kuznechiha country near the ancient settlement Suvar. It was founded in 1999, and its collection contains about seven hundred archeological and historical items of local mode. The museum is situated in the historical part of country near the Pokrovskaya church in a small building of the early 20th century.

The Museum of country estate’s culture in Antonovka (Bezdna) country must become the biggest and the most interesting museum beyond the Bolgar ancient settlement. The museum complex which will be an extremely interesting and visited unit can be founded on the basement of preserved Musin – Pushkin’s country estate. Constructing of new building for country school in exchange for occupied country estate is necessary for foundation of the culture preserve in Antonovka.

It is also reasonable to organize the museum branch in Three Lakes country. There was a country estate of Molostvoy and a stud farm. It is a beauty spot and it has ancient history beginning in Bolgar time. Nowadays the Nativity Church with detached belfry (it is being restored) is the most interesting monument of the country. Not far the church there is a beautiful wooden house of the former local land surveyor. It is a building of the 20th century’s beginning and it is practically not re-formed and it has remained many details of wooden décor.

In prospect it is reasonable to project foundation of the museum branch in Nikolskiy country. Nikolskiy is one of the area’s biggest countries where was a country estate of Molostvoy and the building of church which is interesting with its architecture has preserved.

8. PROSPECTS of DEVELOPMENT of TOURIST SPHERE

8.1. Main directions of tourism development

Analysis and appraisal of tourist potential of Bolgar culture preserve and its surroundings make us come to the conclusion that there are all the necessary preconditions for foundation of full-grown system of tourist recreational services which are capable of attracting tourists and sightseers, keeping them here for a few days.

Primarily it is:

- Historical and cultural sights;
- Natural environment;

- Beneficial economic and geographical location (it is a tourist and transit centre on the river Volga, easy accessibility from Kazan and other regional centers);
- Availability of the large famous reserve museum.

There were no any comfortable hotels for tourists for quite a while in Bolgar. However, the situation has dramatically changed during the recent few years. The hotel named Regina (with 40 rooms and accommodation capacity of up to 80 people), meeting all international standards, and a small motel with 3 rooms on the roadside were opened, it is believed that Regina will keep growing and new hotels will be constructed. The restaurants, cafes and other catering facilities including hotel restaurants, other places in the town and seasonal spots on the pier may altogether provide 600 seats.

However, despite its amazing history and marvelous sights, the tourist flow doesn't meet the unique historical and cultural capacity needs of the ancient Bolgar city. There is also a lack of economic benefit from tourist activity.

The Bolgar reserve museum is generally a place where tourists come only for a day. Cruise ships bringing tourists stay here only for a couple of hours. There are also bus tours, which come to Spasskiy region with the only purpose of sightseeing without overnight stop. Only tour companies arranging those trips benefit from tourist activity and only a small part of their profit stays in the reserve museum as an entrance fee, compulsory payment for provision of services on the territory of the museum or spending on souvenirs.

At the same time the resources of the Museum Reserve and other sights of Spasskiy region allow them to form different tour packages. Elaboration and launch of a smart program designed to attract tourists by organizing proper reception and provision of services for different categories of tourists and visitors will fundamentally change the situation to the better. It is expedient to recommend the following forms of tourism and programs:

Cultural and educational tourism. This particular direction is mainly related to the historical and cultural resources and sights of Bolgar and its posing itself as a historical destination, the place of adoption of Islam and the capital of the ancient state. This reserve museum is a unique place on the whole European part of Russia where a visitor can get the most comprehensive and diversified information about the Islamic component of the Russian culture, come in touch with its most ancient monuments.

Event tourism. Is one of the most promising directions in tourism development on international tourism market. It is based on organizing bright, memorable events, holidays and festivals, which afterwards become annual events and keep attracting more and more tourists from a host country as well as from abroad.

The Bolgar event tourism could be focused on several matters. The major event is adoption of Islam which took place here in 922. Marking this date along with continuous improvement of the organizational procedures will result in turning it into one of the most popular Russian events.

Sabantuy and City days are traditional event holidays, but they are mostly meant for local people. The Day of Archeologist linked to archeological value of the Bolgar heritage and scientific studies, which constantly take place here, may also become an event holiday.

Pilgrimage tourism. Ancient Bolgar has already become a center of pilgrimage for Muslims from all over the Russia. Due to the revival of historical traditions and memory Bolgar's relics and monuments may play a pivotal role in religion consciousness. Even now the annual holiday - the day of adoption of Islam brings together thousands of devotees along with high officials. There is a pressing need for elaboration of a special pilgrimage program, in some sense a small Hadj to one of the most exciting places for the Russian Muslims. Hence, we have to draft a program for organizing regular pilgrimage tours.

Ecotourism also opens up huge opportunities for the Bolgar reserve museum. It is preconditioned by its natural resources, environmental peculiarities, abundant fishing opportunities and the ability to organize river tours. Ecotourism may include visiting cultural sights with getting acquaintance with archeological heritage, old rural settlements and other ethnic culture (in Tatar villages, for instance).

Spasskiy state natural complex reserve with its islands is the highest unflooded area of the first terrace above the floodplain of the Volga river. Some endangered plant species enlisted in the Red Book can be found here. The water surrounding the islands is the most favorite spot for fishing for the local people and tourists. Apart from that, one of the islands with numerous remnants of substructures and roads survived from the former uyezd (district) city of Spassk and a half flooded bridge is a matter of historical and cultural interest.

The next important direction is the development of different forms of specialized scientific tourism. It is first of all organization of specialized archeological or some other kinds of educational or historical tours. There is no doubt that the Bolgar reserve museum opens up interesting opportunities for experts in the field of archeology, history and art. Special program tours could be designed for students majoring in history, archeology and art.

8.2. Formation of a tourism infrastructure

Construction of different tourism facilities designated for providing services for different categories of tourists is suggested in the frames of the Bolgar Reserve Museum development strategy.

Tourist hotels. In order to boost tourists flow to Bolgar there is a strong need for construction of three different types of hotel and accommodations:

- budget hotels;
- comfortable ones;
- motels.

The first type is represented by the existing hotel Regina. In the nearest future for being able to accommodate everyone and satisfy growing demand during rush seasons the accommodation capacity of that kind of facilities is to be doubled. The project aimed at increasing the accommodation capacity of the hotel by 100 places is under consideration.

It is planned to recommend those hotels to ensure the ability to accommodate from 300 to 500 people.

The second type of hotels is, as a rule, a comfortable inn (4-star hotel) with 20-34 rooms intended for 30-50 people. The construction of these hotels can be realized by means of private sector. Entrepreneurs will eventually benefit from this endeavor.

There is a need for construction of a small affordable motel for 100 people on the roadside. There are several reasons for that:

- the motel should meet the needs of transit tourists passing by Bolgar and staying overnight;
- a cheap hotel would serve tourists willing to save their money, including pilgrims;
- Russian accommodation complex suffers from the lack of facilities for car tourists whose number is rapidly growing.

Besides those accommodating facilities for Bolgar it is of significant importance to construct a couple of special facilities like an ethnographic inn and a guesthouse.

For holding the annual holiday in honor of adoption of Islam it is becoming necessary to set up one more facility for tourists – a pilgrim camp. It is going to be a temporary camp accommodating up to 2-3 thousand of people. According to the project the camp will be located on the territory of the reserve museum but a little bit far away from the main venues – on the take-off strip of the former airdrome. The camp is intended to represent a temporary encampment equipped with all the

necessary sanitary-hygienic installations. There will be a temporary parking lot for buses and personal cars.

For the reserve museum it is desirable to have a hotel under its own supervision. It can be used for accommodating experts and volunteers who help archeologists during excavations. It is advisable to build the hotel in the village named Bolgari using bought out properties for that. It will have a distinct tourist village.

Public catering enterprises. Catering system determines the reputation of a tourist zone and plays a pivotal role in a tourism industry in general. Apart from the hotel ones, it is recommended to launch the following types of catering enterprises:

- cafes located out of the hotel zones specializing in traditional national cuisine. Their capacity increases during summer due to a seasonal rush. Hence, besides the main hall with 10-30 seats, the meals are served on a special open area on the street with 15-40 more places;
- fast-food catering services: buffets, vending machines, self-catering cafes and cafeteria with limited choice of meals. Using portable and mobile constructions is very convenient during the rush seasons.

Variety and abundance of catering enterprises will create a good reputation of a tourist region for Bolgar. Apart from that, it's necessary not to abuse the traditional restaurant service but open small bars and stalls near tourist sights, for instance.

Designated trade enterprises. Making a stop in Bolgar must inspire tourists or even a person coming on business to make purchases. The most exciting moment in tourist trade is purchasing an item that he or she can get only here. That purchase also contributes to the set of tourist impressions.

Traditional sale in gift shops and at the museum facilities should be supplemented by trade using the following venues:

- a trade hall for personalized articles of arts and crafts or antique items (it's preferable to have them within a hotel);
- stall-workshops where a master not only makes items but immediately sells them (2-3 workshops should take place on the territory of the former ancient workshops of the reserve museum and in the village of Bolgar);
- fairs when a tourist can buy an item from a tray.

Works on making own souvenir products and symbols have already been started in the reserve museum. That is a very important part of tourist infrastructure. At the moment earthenware items in the form of small copies of architectural constructions are the most popular souvenirs. One more popular type of tourist product is special informational literature about the museum (booklets, prospectuses with the pictures of tourists sights and their description, museum guides).

Apart from that there are:

- a wide spectrum of folk art items (they are sold in the museum and in the workshop stall where the master makes and sells items);
- items of painting, graphics, arts and crafts created by modern artists (originals and reproductions);
- imitations (copies) of historical items presented to the public at the exposition;
- greeting cards, audio, CDs and DVDs reproducing specifics of historical and cultural heritage of Bolgar.

It's worth noting, that psychologically tourists go through spending on unusual and extraordinary purchases during vacation much easier than at home.

8.3. Organizational and economic problems of tourism development

In order to achieve setup goals the reserve museum should create a special department for tourism issues, which will be responsible for formation of its own tourist product and in joint cooperation with tour companies of Tatarstan and neighborhood regions provide the organization of high quality service for incoming tourists and visitors.

With developed informational and organizational functions it will become an organization for promoting the tourist products fostered in the region on domestic and international tourism markets. It will give the reserve museum a chance to access the global informational network. As the improvement of its own informational resource goes on (internet-provision, booklets and guides, hotel booking services, personalized routs) the Bolgar reserve museum will be able to perform on the tourism fares independently, including the international ones.

One of the important issues is provision of the tourist services with their own transportation. Having own automobile stock, consisting of a few minibuses will let them serve the needs of small group of specialized tourists, which is an important condition for the development of scientific and cultural tourism. Given the environmental conditions, the provision of the Bolgar reserve museum with water transport plays a huge role as well. Thus, there is a need for small motor boats for taking tourists on the river tours, organization trips to Aga-Bazaru, the place of former Spassk and Tetyushi.

The most important component of the regional tourism infrastructure is a Visiting center, which provides informational, organizational and service support for tourists. That kind of a center should be created in the Bolgar Museum Reserve.

The center is intended to provide tourists with all the information about the regional tourist product (museums and other places for sightseeing, accommodation, restaurants, entertainment, folk arts, transportation etc.), supply them with literature, maps, video and audio materials, informational and souvenir DVDs and CDs. Visitors will be able to make a hotel reservation, to book an excursion and transport here.

9. THE SCIENTIFIC-EDUCATIONAL DIRECTION IN THE MUSEUM COMPLEX ACTIVITY

Educational and scientific activity in the Bolgar reserve museum will develop in several directions.

The first one is related to the opportunities for the development of scientific studies by the leading experts from Russia and abroad based on the resources of the Reserve museum, its historical and cultural values. The worldwide famous unique archeological monument Bolgar township and well-preserved ancient city of Volzhskaya Bolgariya both create good conditions for development of the following scientific studies on the basis of the museum resources.

Firstly, the work will be aimed at studying its unique archeological monuments and landscapes, and the issues related to the history of Volga Bolgariya.

Studies of the nature of the territory that have been extremely insufficient till now are not less important. The following studies are needed in this particular direction:

- making a list of typical and rare species of the territory, botanic and floristic analysis of the museum territory (taking into account the suggestions on the development of the territory). The work is necessary for more precise planning of ecology oriented projects, including educational ones;
- drawing a list of animals and birds inhabiting the territory; faunal studies of the territory of the reserve museum (taking into consideration the suggestion on the territorial development). The work is also needed for more detailed planning of ecology oriented projects, including educational ones (earths of gross animals were found during the field study on the right hand Big Jerusalem ravine tributary);

Research of the local folklore is going to be fascinating as well. Folklore studies of the region, making a collection of legends and stories are important for its development. In the view of some specifics of the museum related to research issues and preservation of its archeological and architectural heritage, the issues related to the research and conservation of the cultural heritage of the region have not been explored enough. Legends and stories wisely included in excursion activity, work with tourists are inherent elements.

There is a sense in carrying out works aimed at drawing a map of toponymy heritage of the reserve museum and its surrounding. The scientific value of the work consists in the fact that oral map of folklore toponymy is a part of the Bolgar cultural landscape intensifying the authenticity of its architectural and archeological heritage.

Works on comparison environmental data and human impact on the nature. In this regard the topmost scientific task for the reserve museum is organization of the complex monitoring which implies permanent tracking of the state of the environment and ongoing processes in accordance with clear procedures comparable to different periods and regions.

Implementation of an integrated monitoring will also make it possible for culture preserve to become a real center of scientific information in the area and to join the system of nationwide and even global centers tracking the condition of cultural and natural heritage. Simultaneously, it will predict the potential environmental and social problems of the Bulgarian museum.

The accumulation of scientific results and the formation of its own museum system and promising research programs will allow the culture preserve to work actively with a variety of specialists (archaeologists, naturalists, ethnographers and others) later on. At this stage, the culture preserve is becoming a very attractive object for professionals around the world. And, the arrival and scientific work of experts may be conducted not only in terms of archaeology an invitation of experts on related issues (specialists who study the river landscapes, folk culture of the Tatars, etc.) can be very interesting and prospective.

In these circumstances, the Bulgarian Museum can also be a venue for prestigious conferences, seminars and international meetings. It is possible to implement such programs when, for example, the plenary session of the conference is held in the capital of the republic – in Kazan, workshops and field practice of specialists-archaeologists or naturalists and ethnographers is carried out in the territory of culture preserve.

First of all, the programs of informational support propose a constant scientific support of the main areas of research, museum and other activities that will take the form of creating and maintaining their own databases of geographic information system of Bulgarian museum.

Proposals for the development of GIS “BGIAMZ” performed by specialists of the State Scientific Production Space Rocket Center “TSKB-Progress” (Samara), and they include full electronic mapping of the territory, collecting and drawing of all the data on heritage sites and the conditions of their location, method of work with this data. Using geographic information system will allow searching the objects, visualization and reconstruction of damaged archaeological sites by their fragments, to create three-dimensional models of historical and architectural sites and historic landscapes. It is important to emphasize that the use of geophysical methods of research of areas is a new and higher level in the detection of archaeological sites in the territory of the Bulgarian settlement.

Resources of the Bulgarian Museum, its almost bottomless archeological potential create all the possibilities for turning the site into an interesting and promising research centre of the Republic of Tatarstan.

The second trend is the creation of special educational center on the basis of culture preserve, conducting historical and environmental education, education in other disciplines. This activity can be combined with teaching at the local schools.

It is very important to create distinctive school or courses on the archaeological heritage, training practices for students of historical and archaeological disciplines on the basis of the culture preserve.

Nowadays in summer here, a kind of archaeological training camp of the volunteers is formed they come from different regions (for example, a large group - from Ulyanovsk). In the long term specialists-archaeologists, as well as students of other faculties of humanities and natural sciences, departments of fine arts can undergo an annual practice in such a camp. The training practice and research assignments performed by students can help in studying resources of the culture preserve; implementation of its plans in the establishment of a museum archaeological complex, integrated area research, preparation of projects for architectural decisions.

The role of culture preserve can be very significant in improving the education system in the region. First of all, experts of the culture preserve should prepare a system of school lessons (in archeology and ecology), which is necessary to speak to the students. The museum staff can also conduct natural history studies in the area schools, preparing special teaching materials on local history. That is, the creation of this culture preserve should play an important role in enhancing educational opportunities of Spasskiy district.

In the future activity of the culture preserve should be an impulse of appearance specialized training centers in the city of Bolgar, a kind of school in the revival of crafts and learning objectives of the tourist service.

An important part of implementing the results and techniques of scientific and educational programs is the information and publishing activities of the culture preserve.

Information and publishing activity of the Bulgarian Museum should accomplish three main tasks:

- Preparation and implementation of scientific publications (scientific papers of individual authors and monographs, materials based on new research, republication of old books, etc.);
- Introduction the scientific results of the Museum;
- Promotion of the unique historical and cultural heritage of ancient Bulgarians.

10. ECONOMIC AND ORGANIZATIONAL ISSUES OF DEVELOPING THE BOLGAR COMPLEX

10.1. Preproject solutions on development of the territory and separate objects

This section provides a description of each object of the proposed projects associated with the development of the Bulgarian Museum and arrangement of its territory.

Summary table of costs for the development of the Bulgarian Museum

Main directions	Cost estimation (million rubles)	
	to 2020	including 2013
Prospects of development of the museum sector (including the restoration of objects)	735	19
Prospects of development of tourist areas	725	340
Scientific and educational projects	370	77
Infrastructure development	892	355

Total:	2722	970
--------	------	-----

10.2. Staff of the memorial estate and expenses on its maintenance

This section provides suggestions on the formation of its prospective structure and strengthening of personnel by qualified experts.

It is important to emphasize that a significant part of culture preserve staff will be recruited from local residents. These will include not only workers or auxiliary employees, active work on cultural programs, the use of local traditions, environmental activities can only be done by local staff. Thus, the museum will play an important role in the employment of local work force.

At the same time, some experts will be invited from Kazan, other research centers (approximately 20 leading experts) to set up a museum and research work. They can share their experience and help prepare new personnel of local residents to work in culture preserve.

It should be noted that in summer it is necessary to increase museum staff temporarily in order to ensure the fulfillment of the total volume of work in tourist service. This would entail the creation of additional jobs in the town and other settlements of Spasskiy district (due to the organization of the restoration and construction works, the expansion of tourist services, establishment of new infrastructure facilities). Considering this factor, we can talk about the role of the museum as a special "town (city)-forming" institution.

10.3. Assessment of social economic efficiency of developing of the Bolgar Complex

Despite the considerable development costs of the Bulgarian museum, in the future its activity will bring tangible social and economic effects.

The main directions of development of the Bulgarian culture preserve focused on the formation of the unique museum offer, the resource base of tourist accommodation and the infrastructure complex that would allow a full-fledged and long visitors stay and to overcome the existing situation, when most visitors visit the ancient monuments of Bulgaria only as tourists and remain here for a few hours. An alternative variant is to create opportunities for tourists to stay for a longer time, to stay overnight or spend even a few days in the place of interest.

Museum Development Program assumes formation of the expanded museum offers. By 2020, up to 20 different museum objects can operate in the territory of the culture preserve and its surroundings. Among them, there will be museums with archaeological exhibits as well as the Bolgar city museum, the Museum of estate culture, etc. Creating a system of museums will allow to distribute evenly the visitors on territory of the culture preserve and to avoid excessive load on the individual sections of landscapes and historical sites. It pursues another goal - the formation of tourist demand, which allows the visitor to linger in this place for several days.

It is also expected to form an ramified network of different typologies and on the comfort level of tourist accommodation facilities (hotels, motels, private homes). The total capacity of accommodation establishments will be able to achieve 1200 seats by 2020. If the planned volume of tourist construction implements, the following tourist offer will be provided:

- tour to Bulgarian settlement;
- a two-day stay on Bulgarian land with an overnight stay in one of the tourist hotels and the wider provision of opportunities for sightseeing cultural and natural heritage;
- days-long stay with accommodation in one of the tourist hotels and to obtain a wide range of services associated with building the cultural and natural heritage of Bolgaria and his entourage (including Tetyushsky district).

Prerequisites for the organization of the following types of tourism will be created:

- Cognitive tourism
- Pilgrim tourism

- Eco-Tourism,
- Event tourism,
- Research and congress tourism.

The programs of children's tourism will also be formed; there will be cultural and educational campaigns in order to raise the educational level of young people and youth, youth development local history movement. These programs will be closely connected with issues of school education.

The total cost estimate for implementation of projects in various areas (the museum and restoration development, tourism, science, infrastructure) for the period 2010-2020 amounts to 2,7 billion rubles. It is supposed to draw 0.97 billion till 2013.

Currently, attendance of the culture preserve is 36.3 thousand visitors a year. Off-budget incomes of the museum at the same time amounted to about 2,5 million rubles. The planned strategy of tourism development will significantly increase the extent of visiting the sights and have a significant economic effect.

At the first stage of the development of the Bulgarian culture preserve (till 2013) there is a construction of new tourist hotels which will allow to bring about 400 seats for the reception of tourists, and the total number of tourists staying overnight in the museum will be 30-40 thousand people. With the active promotion of historical tourism, the total number of visitors to the culture preserve will be approximately 140 thousand tourists

Incomes of the culture preserve in similar quantities visit would be 22-25 million rubles. This is a real value, taking into account the average expenses of a visitor to visit the museum exhibits and buy souvenirs for 150-170 rubles. Availability of the tour and hotels will increase the share of income of the museum.

Total annual income from tourists reception in Bolgar will be from 85 up to 100 million rubles (total revenues in tourism, revenue from trade and services, transport services).

Approximate calculation for 2020 shows that the number of visitors would get amount to 500 thousand (giving tourist hotels of 1100-1200 places, the number of tourists staying at one or more nights at the museum reaches 100 thousand).

Under such conditions, the scope of rendered services in the structure of the culture preserve will exceed 125 million rubles (at an average complex ticket price to tour and the sale of souvenirs will be 250 rubles per person). The total volume of services (accommodation, meals and other services and entertainment, buying souvenirs, transportation and other ancillary services) will amount to 500-600 million rubles. (Table 10.3). Net income in the tourism sector is estimated from 12 to 15%.

The calculations also suggest a high social returns and social efficiency of museum development program.

First of all, we are talking about the implementation of the measures to identify the unique cultural heritage and the formation particularly protected cultural area, which is extremely important for Russia. The overall social effect of proposed activities on arrangement of the Bulgarian culture preserve is also associated with the solution of the conservation of spirituality. This place can become one of the main centers of pilgrimage for the Muslims of Russia and the world. Bulgarian culture preserve acquires importance as a kind of a place of inter-regional cultural center of Russian Muslims and the area of international cooperation. For visitors it will be virtually the only Russian culture preserve, providing the history of Islam in our country, the Muslim part of Russian civilization.

Important social effect of the Bulgarian museum is also creating the conditions for historical and environmental education, environmental education for youth and young adults. Environmental studies, natural history movement – all this is an important part of patriotic education.

Another key facet of social efficiency will be changes in lifestyle and improving the living standards of the local population, the emergence of new opportunities for employment, for employment of some categories of vulnerable populations (seniors, youth). Indeed, the implementation of the planned program will lead to the creation of additional jobs in various industries for about 250-300 people. This is the number of new workplaces are significant enough for the economy of the Spassky district and in fact equal to enact new large manufacturing facility.

Another social accomplishment would be the emergence of new opportunities not only for employment but also for special education based on technical training schools, contributing to training for the development of culture preserve and tourism.

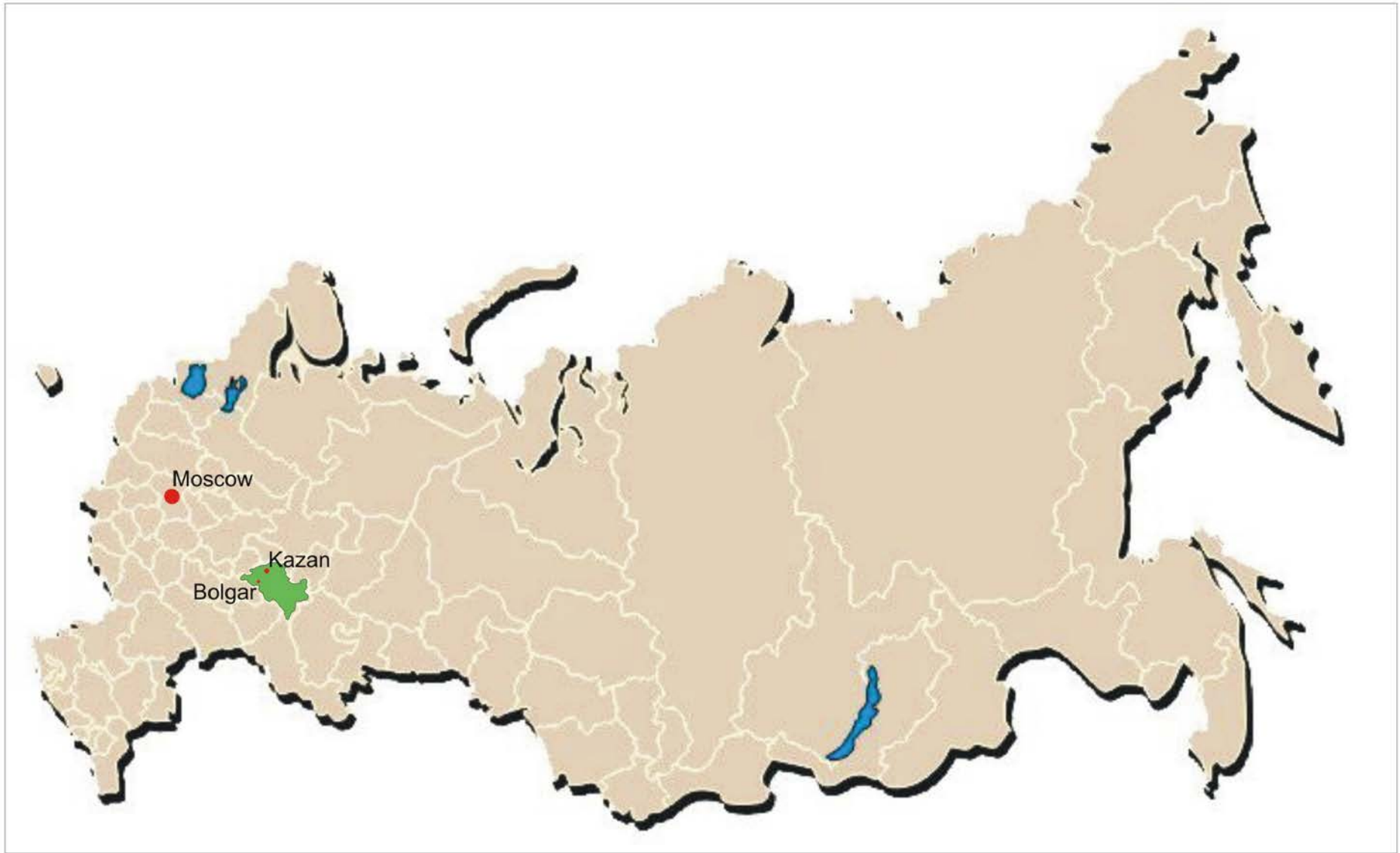
Significant changes will occur in rural areas of Spasskiy district. A number of villages, which lost part of its population, will come from the depressed level under the program of the museum and tourist development. Village Bolgar will receive interesting prospects where local people can develop small private hotels, souvenir production and manufacture of traditional food products on the basis of their farms. Another 5-6 villages of Spassky district (Antonivka, Three Lakes, Nikolsky, Kuznechiha, Kuralovo, Bugrovka) will gain such an impetus to the development. Therefore, for example, a very interesting museum of estate culture based on an ancient manor house can be created in Antonovka. The development of culture preserve can give impetus to the revival of the stud farm in Nikolsky. New workplaces in the museum field, trading, tourist's service will be created in all of these settlements. All this will save not only the old villages, but also the way of rural life and rural economy. Development of the Bolgarian culture preserve may also have an impact on social and economic development of the neighboring district center Tetyushi.

Considering the republic-wide importance of the culture preserve and its nation-wide and worldwide fame, we can say that the planned strategy actually leads to the formation of a new industry in the economic structure of the Spasskiy district – the industry related to conservation and use of historical, cultural and natural heritage. It shows promising new specialization in the region.

Deputy Prime minister -

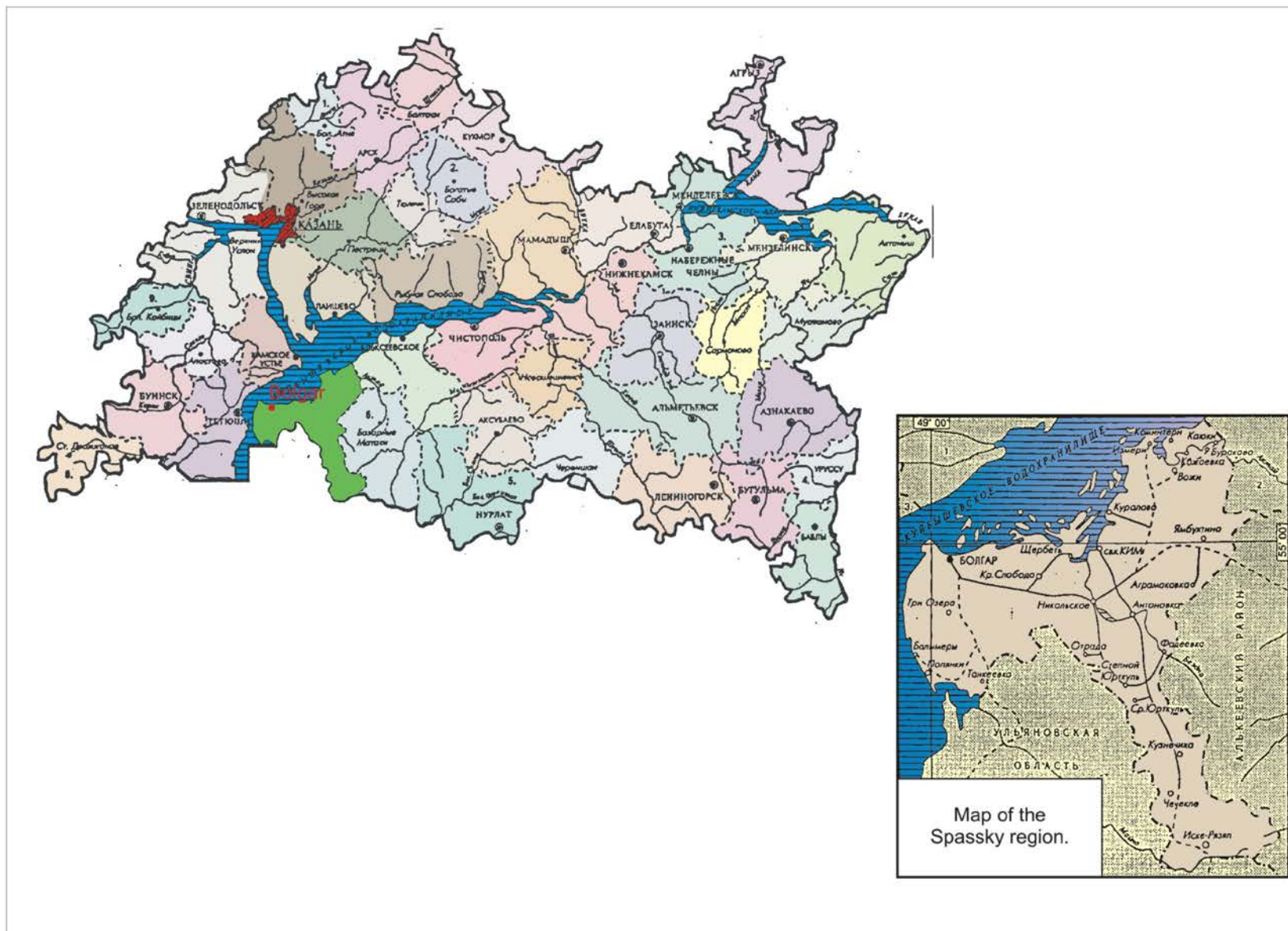
Minister of culture of Republic Tatarstan

Z.R.Valeeva




Sketch-map: Federative Structure of Russia


Sketch-map: Administrative-territorial division of the Republic of Tatarstan





Map showing the territory edges of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex, and the State Natural Complex Reservation of regional importance “Spasskii” (*Spassky Insular Archipelago*)

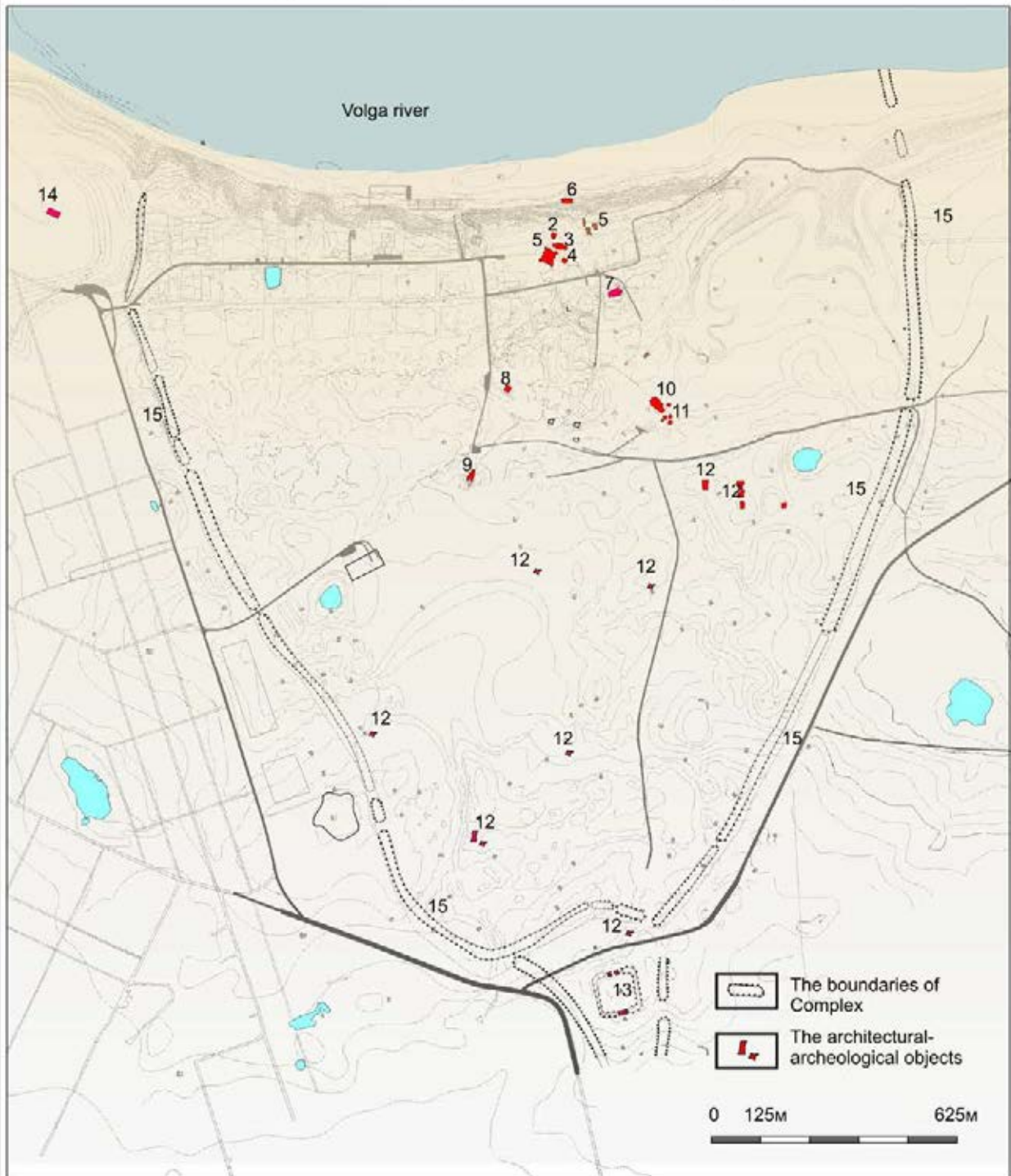
 The territory of the Bolgar Complex

 The boundaries of the State Natural Complex Reservation “Spassky”

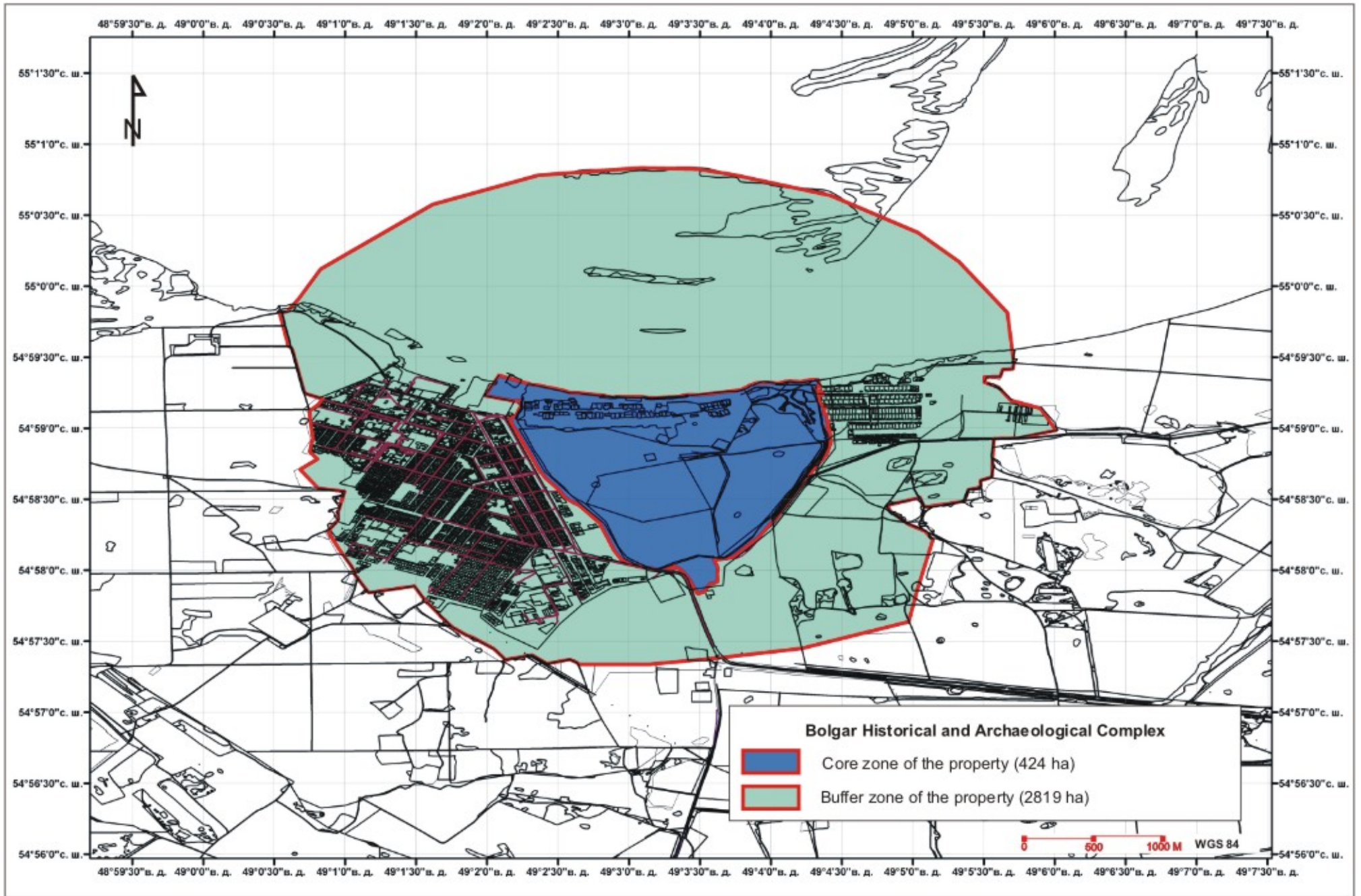
Asia, 1025 AD

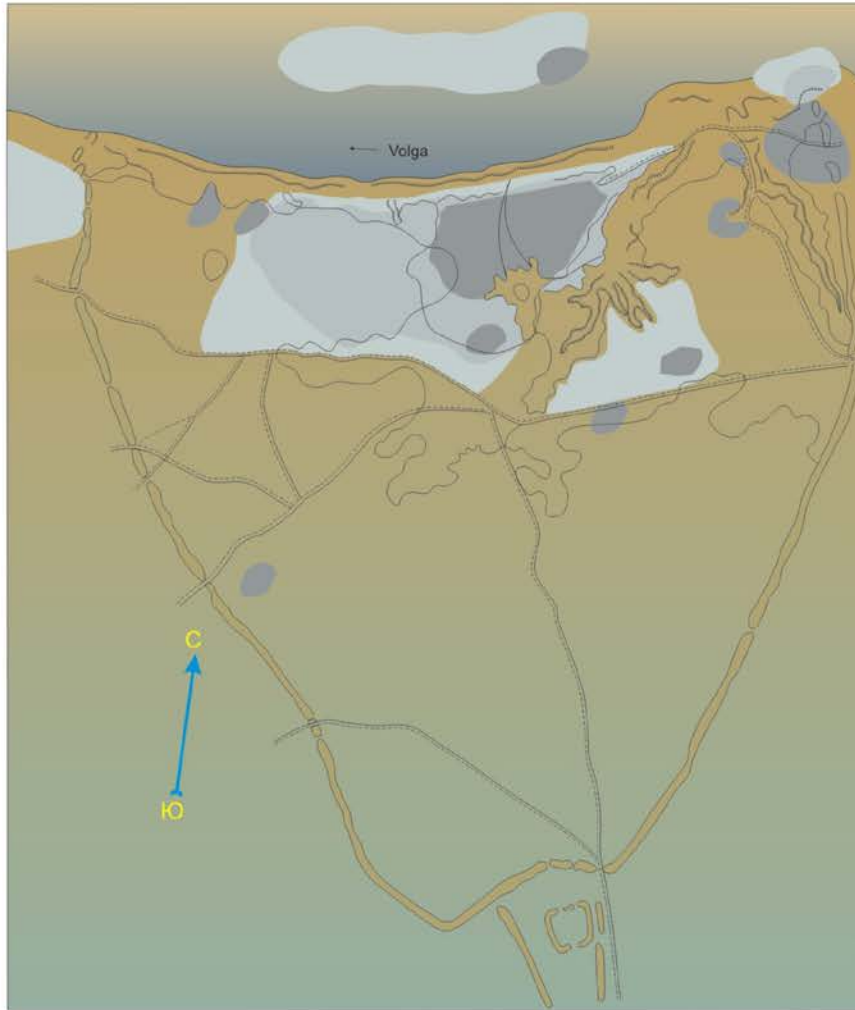


Sketch-map with territory edges of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex, architectural-archeological objects









- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. The Cathedral Mosque ("Tetragon") (ruins) | 9. The White Chamber |
| 2. The Northern Mausoleum (Monastery Cellar) | 10. The Small Minaret |
| 3. The East Mausoleum (St. Nicholas Church) | 11. The Khans's Burial Vault. |
| 4. The Church of the Dormition | 12. The Mausoleums (ruins) |
| 5. House with Towers (Khan's Palace) (ruins) | 13. The Small Township |
| 6. The Red Chamber (ruins) | 14. The Greek Chamber |
| 7. The East Chamber | 15. The Towns fortification |
| (Khan's Palace or Bath-house) (ruins) | |





Sketch-map of extension of the occupation layer within borders of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex

-  A-the area of the 10 century A.D.
-  B-the area of the 11-the early 13 century A.D.
-  C-the area of the early Golden Horde 13 century A.D.
-  D-the fortification of the 10 century A.D.
-  E-the fortification of the 12- the early 13 century A.D.
-  F-the fortification of the latter half of the 14- the early 15 century A.D.

**Space photography of the Bolgar Historical
and Archaeological Complex.**



Съемка:
18 августа 2008 года
11 часова 14 мин.



Fig.1. General view of the Bolgar Complex



Fig.2. Bolgar Complex. Landscape



Fig.3. General view of the Bolgar Complex



Fig. 4. Big Minaret



Fig.5. Khan's burial-vault



Fig.6 Black chamber.



Fig.7. Khan's burial-vault and Small Minaret



Fig.8. North Mausoleum



Fig.9. Eastern Mausoleum



Fig.10. Church of the Dormition



Fig. 11. East Chamber (“Khan’s Palace or Bath-house”. Ruins)



Fig. 12. White Chamber (ruins)



Fig. 13. Maly (Small) Minaret



Fig. 14. Big Minaret. Decor



Fig 15. The Temples



Fig. 16. Cathedral Mosque and Big Minaret



Fig. 17. "Khan's Palace or Bath-house" (ruins)



Fig.18. The Entrance



Fig. 19. Cathedral Mosque and Church of the Dormition



Fig.20 . View from above



Bolgar June 2011





Bulgar is the holy place for Muslims in Russia



Pilgrims in Bolgar. June 18, 2011



Pilgrims in Bolgar. 2011



Map of Tartaria from Atlas by Gerard Mercator and Jodocus Hondius.
Amsterdam. 1607.



*Major map "Tartaria" made by Nicolaes Witsen. Amsterdam. 1696.
Constructed Nicolaes Witsen and engraved by Carolus Allard*

Гръ. Цѣсарю!

Объяснить намъ въ болгарск. языкѣ мѣтѣ
исправленнаго болгарскаго иконописца башки сѣмъ иконо-
искусн. Фредерикова иконописца, и оной иконописцу
тоже оная, и оной иконописцу оная и оной
и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу
и оной иконописцу, и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу,
и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу,
и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу,
и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу.

Подлинной Его Императорского
Величества Императора Всероссийскаго
и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу,
и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу,
и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу и оной иконописцу,

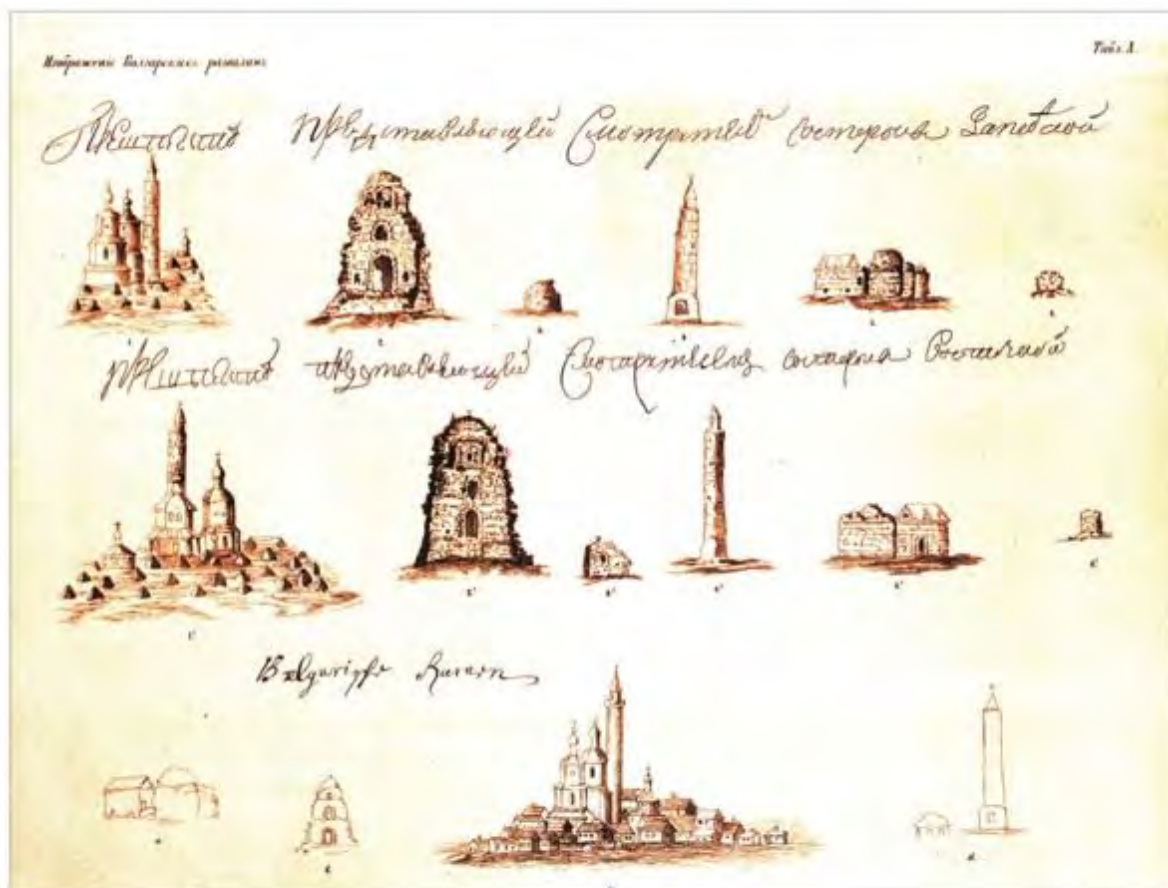
и оной

Императору.
а .1722 года

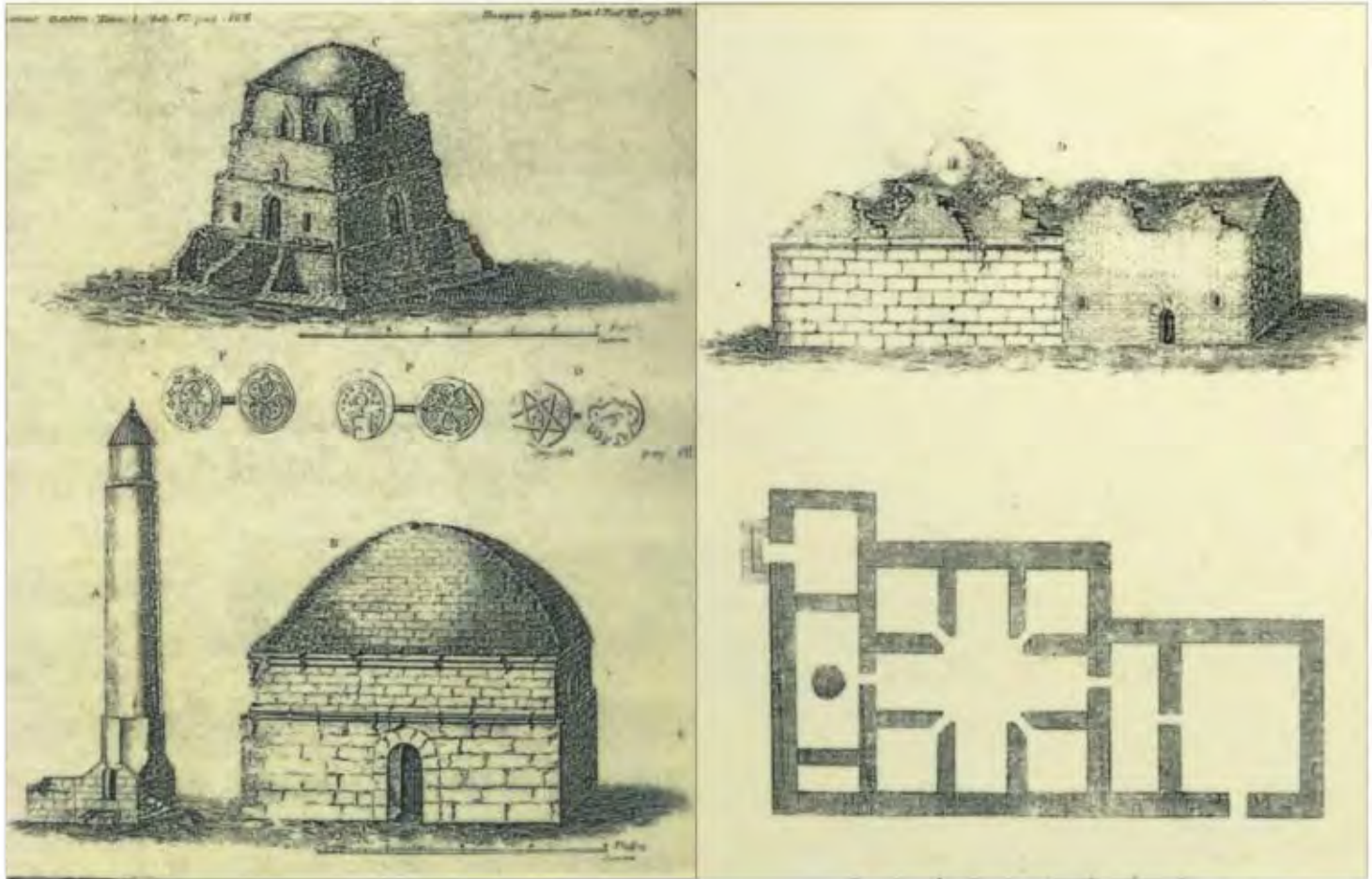
Получено въ Икону
и оной иконописцу .1722

Императору Всероссийскому и оной иконописцу

Decree (edict) by Petr I regarding Bolgar
dated 2 (15) of July 1722.



The Ruins of the Bulgar. The drawing of the unknown painter. XVIII.



The Big Minaret, the Black Chamber, the Khans' Burial Vault and the White Chamber. The drawing by the P.S. Pallas. 1768.



The Ruins of the Bulgar. The drawing by the N.I. Kaftannikov. 1819.



(Общій видъ развалинъ города Болгары.)

The Ruins of the Bulgar. The drawing by the F.Kh. Erdman. 1825.



The Big Minaret. The drawing by the F. N. Erdman. 1825.



The Lesser Minaret. The drawing by the F.Kh. Erdman. 1825.

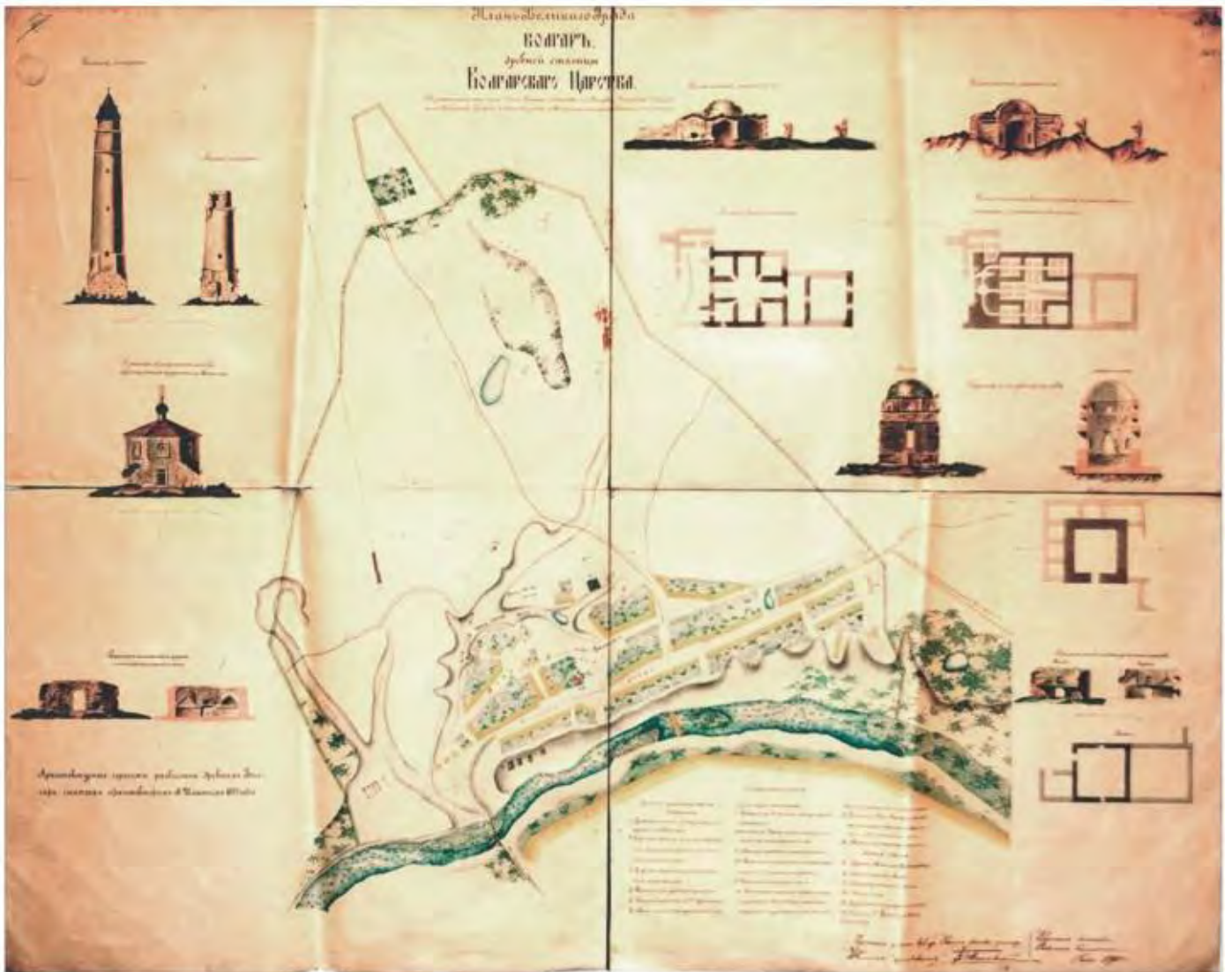


*The East Mausoleum ("St. Nicholas Church").
The drawing by the F. Kh. Erdman. 1825.*



(Черная палата.)

The Black Chamber. The drawing by the F. Kh. Erdman, 1825.



The Ruins of the Great Bulgar, the Ancient capital of the Bulgar Kingdom. The plan and the architectural drawing by the A. Schmit. 1827.



The Big Minaret and the Lesser Minaret. The drawing by the A. Schmit. 1827.

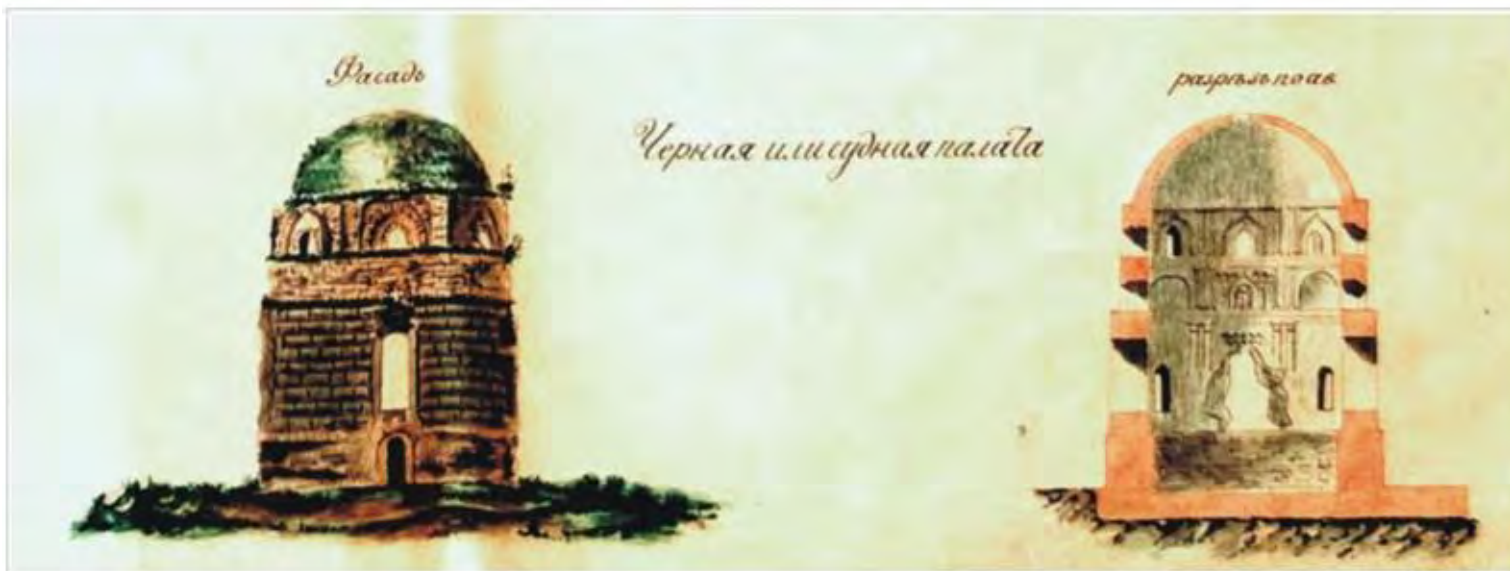


Большой минарет. По А. Шмиту.

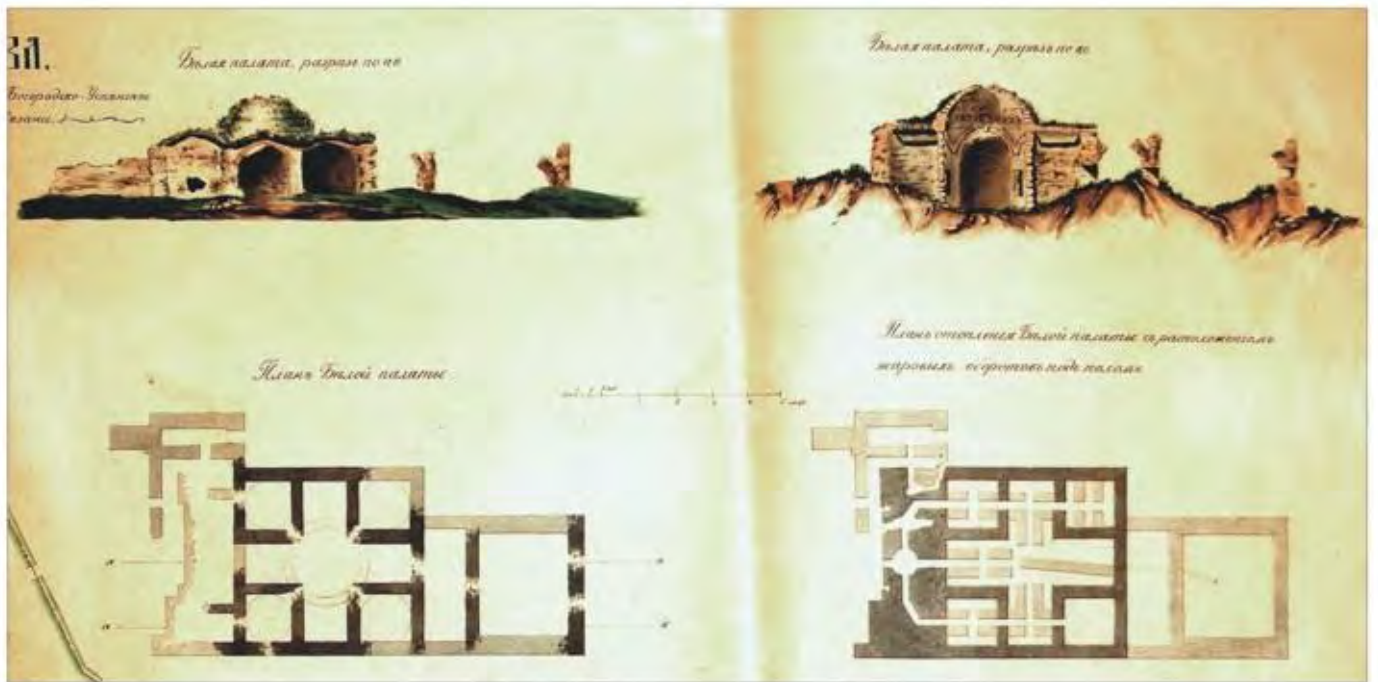
The Big Minaret and The Lesser Minaret. The plan and the drawing by the A. Schmit. 1827.



The East Mausoleum ("St. Nicholas Church"). The drawing by the A. Schmit, 1827.



The Black Chamber. The plan and the drawing by the A. Schmit, 1827.



The Write Chamber. The plan and the drawing by the A. Schmit. 1827.



*The Big Minaret and the Cathedral Mosque ("Tetragon") (ruins).
The drawing by the brothers N.G. and G.G. Chernechov's. 1838.*



*The Lesser Minaret and the the Khans' Burial Vault.
The drawing by the brothers N.G. and G.G. Chernechov's, 1838.*



1). Бѣлая Пазата въ Болгарахъ.
(Изъ альбома Чернецовыхъ).

The White Chamber. The drawing by the brothers N. G. and G. G. Chernechov's. 1838.



27. Бѣлая Палата въ Бозгаратѣ.
 (Изъ альбома Чернецкихъ).



Бѣлая Палата. Рис. Н. Чернецова.

The Write Chamber. Interior. The drawing by the brothers N.G. and G.G. Chernechov's. 1838.



The ruins of the Bolgar. The road to the Siberia. The engraving by the A. Durand. 1839.



The ruins of the Bolgar. The Black Chamber. The lithography by the S.A. Tille. 1868.

**Information on the nomination
Bolgar Historical and Archaeological
Complex
(Russian Federation)**

2012

Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex is a unique preserved site in the Russian Federation and in Eurasia, where not only the history of ancient civilizations (Medieval Turkic-Tatar States), but also basic paradigms of culture, spiritual, social and moral life norms are represented within its borders. Its Outstanding Universal Value is stipulated by valuable archaeological heritage and a unique role of the territory in the formation and development of Muslim culture, traditions of religious worship and pilgrimage, medieval craftsmanship in the northern realm of Islam proliferation. The site is a bright embodiment of national identity, which influenced greatly the formation of modern Tatar people, their traditions, mentality and the establishment of tolerance and intercultural dialogue.

Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex has a long history of research. First archaeological excavations were carried out at the territory of the monument in 1864. Systematic studies of the site began in 1938 under the leadership of A. P. Smirnov.

The expedition he had organized conducted large-scale excavations at the territory of the monument.

The studies conducted over the period of some 150 years in 232 digs over the area of some 3 hectares produced information on over 30 brick and stone structures, 16 of which underwent special conservation and museumification work for displaying them to tourists.

Remaining objects investigated in 1930-50-s were preserved for later excavation and restoration works due to impossibility of conservation at the time of their detection.

Architectural and archaeological information on these sites is preserved in the form of detailed research reports describing their exact location and providing drawings of the sites' structures. These sites are described in well-documented dedicated scientific publications, and are also included into reopening, conservation and museumification program covering the period up to 2019.

In accordance with the Venice Charter and USSR legislation on protection and use of monuments, archaeological research was accompanied by conservation

work of the newly identified objects since the establishment of Special Tatar Scientific Restoration Workshop Unit in 1960s.

Many years of archaeological work provided valuable scientific information on the topography and the history of the monument.

Early settlements at Bolgar site date back to Ananyino archeological culture (8th-5th centuries BC). Subsequent development in the area takes place at the time of Imenkovo archeological culture (5th-7th centuries BC). Early period settlements were limited by the Eastern end of the cape between *Melenka* river and the *Ierusalimskiy ravine*.

From stratification point, pre-urban period of Bolgar site is marked as seventh cultural horizon represented by a heavily reworked cultural layer and a mixed archaeological material.

Bulgarians first settled at the territory of *Bolgar site* in X century. Small settlement was established at the mouth of *Ierusalimskiy ravine* in the beginning of X century. The dating is based on discovered archaeological materials – Arab silver dirhams and numerous household items – of the early X century. Pottery fragments characteristic to the Finno-Ugric peoples of the Volga-Kama region witness to diverse ethnic character of the early Volga Bulgaria. It was characterized by peaceful coexistence, interaction and mutual penetration of different ethnic and cultural traditions. Cultural and religious tolerance was distinctive and characteristic feature of the region in the later epochs as well.

Subsequent phases of the city development are well represented by materials from three stratigraphic horizons of Bolgar site's cultural layers formed mainly within city fortifications limit.

Cultural layers reflect the continuous accumulation of urban living remains dating back to 10th -15th centuries.

Archaeological data show continuous development of the material culture artifacts beginning with early period of Volga Bulgarian history through the period of Kazan Khanate.

Traditions of Volga Bulgarian culture became the basis of a culture of modern Tatars, which is confirmed by historical sources.

Studies of fortification structures provided information on city development dynamics in various periods and specifics of their construction. Early fortifications were erected in the 10th century, surrounding the area of about 9 hectares. The settlement subsequently grew, developing posad (trading area). By the 12th century the city covered 20 hectares, including sections outside the fortified area.

Erection of new earthwork defensive structures and moats expanded the fortified part of the city up to 13 hectares.

These fortifications witnessed some minor changes in the early Golden Horde period in the 13th century.

The city reached its maximum size at the height of the Golden Horde in the 14th century. The area of the fortified urban settlement at Bolgar site covered some 400 hectares by mid-14th century.

The city grew rapidly in the Golden Horde era. First monumental stone and brick-stone buildings such as Khan's Palace, a public bath (Eastern Chambers), and a mosque came into being. In the first decades of the newly formed state's existence, Bolgar served as a place of residence — the first capital established by the Golden Horde founder Batu Khan, the grandson of Genghis Khan. Archeological studies at the site disclose presence of a relatively small group of people from the Central Asia. Traces of their settlement are discovered on a territory of about a hectare outside the area of the early Golden Horde period fortifications limit (the first half of the XIII century). The presence of this population group can not be traced to subsequent periods.

City planning structure was established in the 13th - 15th centuries. Archeological studies disclose areas clearly dedicated to crafts, burials.

Discovered amenities include fountains, aqueducts, open containers of water. City streets' plan survives to the present day.

Urban thoroughfares were used in the later period as well. Their active exploitation in the 18th - 19th centuries led to the destruction of the cultural layer and structural elements.

Materials for archeological studies preserving stratification and various objects we obtained only from the sites of new construction.

Pre-Mongol period material culture continuity is markedly evident in the Golden Horde period Bolgar. Findings demonstrate active trade relations with different regions (China, Iran, Byzantium, Western Europe, etc.). Contacts within the Golden Horde also show dynamic development, supported by the finds from its other major urban centers, such as Ukek, Sarai, Beldzhamen, Majar, Azaq, Solkhat, etc.

Bolgar's city level is further attested to by presence of developed craftsmanship – the site has distinctive areas dedicated once to pottery production, metallurgy and metal works. Bolgar also served as a center of a vast region it was providing with its crafts in return for agricultural products.

The excavation revealed the remains of cereals (millet, wheat, oats, rye), as well as hand mills for flour production.

Bolgar's 13th - 14th century archaeological layers witnessed Turkic and Finno-Ugric ethnic traditions of regional population. This was also true for Kazan Khanate period, thus a key factor in formation of the modern Volga Tatar culture.

Bolgar site showed urban life decline at the end of 14th century. The city was subject to continuous attacks, trade links diminish. The city was abandoned by mid-15th century, with traces of a small settlement continuing existing near the mosque. This settlement was associated with maintaining places of worship and mausoleums.

The tradition of pilgrimage to Bolgar lived on among Muslim Tatars in the course of 16th - 20th centuries.

This tradition has not been broken and has a growing character in modern Russia. Over 50 thousand people gather at Bolgar annually on the 22nd of May

commemorating adoption of Islam by Volga Bulgarians. Pilgrims visiting Muslim holy places come throughout the year.

In line with adopted concept of establishing Museum of Bolgar civilization, archaeological materials disclosed during on-site excavations and years of monitoring after crumbling shorelines of *Kuibyshev* reservoir on the Volga river that are currently possessed by Bolgar museum-reserve, will become part of the museum's permanent exhibit.

Scientific study of Bolgar site requires conducting archaeological research, which is programmed to take place during the period up to 2019.

These activities include excavation works as well as extensive use of modern archaeological monument study methods, such as using plane and satellite mounted equipment to discover new architectural monumental sites and studying layout of the monument.

Non-destructive geophysical methods are widely used for locating architectural and industrial structures in the cultural layers.

Extensive research and compilation of previous studies provide materials for creation of geographic information system integrating historical and archaeological information obtained in the course of archival studies, excavation work, aerospace and geophysical methods. Linking information on objects from the museum's collection with such a system increases effectiveness of efforts directed at preserving the monument, as well as planning scientific research and museification work.

Comprehensive restoration of archaeological finds providing for a long-term preservation thereof is a separate area of the program.

Excavated artifacts are studied using traditional archaeological methods, as well as using special spectral emission equipment to study chemical properties of archaeological objects.

In accordance with the Russian law, full-scale archaeological research works are implemented as well at the sites of earthwork initiated for the economic needs of Museum-reserve functioning and infrastructure development.

Therefore, archaeological research confirms continuity of Bolgar existence in X-XV centuries. Cultural stratigraphy and archaeological findings allowed us to accurately define periods of X- beginning of XI cc., Pre-Mongol period – before the beginning of XIII c. and Golden Horde stage – XIII-XV cc. As a result of materials' analysis, we can precisely talk about completeness of existing sources and data, confirming the definition of historical and archaeological content of this nomination. They allow us to display the formation and growth of medieval town of X-XV cc., of such states as Volga Bulgaria and Golden Horde and to show the continuity of the development of this territory and its landscape for 1500 years.

A factor, letting us preserve the completeness of this territory and its development, is Bolgar Museum-Reserve, its infrastructure, sustainable social and economic evolution and high tourist potential.

The repair and restoration activity will result in preservation of 40 object of cultural heritage provision (historical and cultural monuments) of federal and regional significance.

Four objects of cultural heritage: Northern and Eastern mausoleums, Black Chamber and Khan's mausoleum, will be additionally rendered suitable for the modern use for museum purposes.

A number of cultural heritage objects after archeological investigation and conservation will be added to the category of museum objects: Red Chamber, Eastern Chamber (Khan's chambers or bathhouse), House with towers (Khan's palace), Southern building of the Minor town, mausoleums, town market, etc.

Replenishing and restoration of the museum fund will considerably increase the existing and new museum expositions.

Transportation, engineering, museum and tourist infrastructures are being established on the basis of the existing network of historical roads and infrastructural objects. The following objects have been reconstructed and built on the territory of the Complex in Bolgar – landing pier for tourist motorboats, river port with museum function "Museum of Bolgar civilization", Memorial in honor of the official adoption of Islam in the Volga Bulgaria in 922, canvas encampment

for pilgrims, the building of archaeological funds storage and restoration laboratories;

in the buffer zone

- open air museum (Museum of bread), mosque and medrese complex, utility unit of the museum-reserve, dismountable festival-and-event complex.

Landing pier and the port are operating since 1990 for tourist boats and river rapid transit ships of “Meteor” type, fulfilling regular voyages in the navigation period. In the process of reconstruction their initial purpose, meeting the modern technical requirements, is supplemented with the new function – the extended exposition of the Bolgar civilization museum showing the main stages of formation and development of Bolgar-Tatar culture and nationality of the VII-XVII centuries period.

The river port building and landing pier are located on the bank of the river Volga and do not harm the territory of the Complex and its visual landscape.

The erection of the Memorial sign has been carried out dedicated to the outstanding event, and taking into consideration the sacral and religious-spiritual significance of Bolgar for the history of the Tatar people, as well as the special role of this town in Islam adoption by Volga Bolgar people in 922, in the start-up of tolerant relationships formation in the sphere of ethnic-confessional and poly-cultural ties in the Volga-Ural region.

The Memorial sign is an octagonal building with the round copper cupolas and Muslim half moon on the top, stylized for the ancient Bulgar architecture. Here is the location of the Koran, the biggest printed one in the world, as well as the dimensional map of the route to Bolgar covered by the embassy of Al-Muktadir Khalif of Abbasid dynasty, carved of dolomite, limestone, marble and metal.

In the basement level of the Memorial there is a museum-exhibition complex – the gallery and museum exposition depicting the history of Bolgar in art and artistic works, as well as the history of Muslim pilgrimage, including the mosaic picture “Adoption of Islam by the Bulgars”.

It depicts the meeting of Bulgars with the embassy of Al-Muktadir Khalif. There is a Khan Almush with his spouse in the center, Ibn Fadlan, the Khalif's Ambassador, the Heads of the Bulgar tribes with their banners and distinguishing signs. The main historical source – “The Reminiscences” written by Akhmed Ibn Fadlan of his trip to Volzhskaya Bulgaria with the embassy of Al-Muktadir Khalif of Abbasid dynasty.

Ibn Fadlan has left a detailed description of his voyage, where he has depicted the moment of Islam adoption by Bulgars and collected a lot of unique information of ethnographic character.

The Memorial contains a conference hall for scientific conferences and cultural events.

For the purposes of large quantities of pilgrims accommodation (up to 50 thousand people) coming to Bolgar on the 21st of May, the day of the Islam official adoption, which is a state holiday of the Republic of Tatarstan, there have been located temporary construction of the canvas camping on the territory of the former airport, and determined the parking places for the coming buses.

The main amount of archaeological findings (near 100 thous. units of storage) is planned to be located in the building of the archaeological funds storage and restoration workshops, including for the open access for the specialists and tourists, as well as in the laboratory complex for conservation and restoration of archaeological objects, supplied with the modern equipment.

In the buffer zone (beyond the borders of the complex territory) there is an Open air Museum – a Museum of Bread- the interactive museum of agriculture and bread making history on the land of Tatarstan since the ancient times to the XX century. The Museum embraces the territory of 5ha, and locates the main exposition of a miller's farm, wind and water mills, baking house, blacksmith's shop, open air exposition of agricultural technology, trading shops of arts and crafts.

Archaeological artifacts, ethnographic objects connected with business activity, documentary and video materials allow us to imagine the historical way of agriculture development and improvement of the farmers' working tools.

The special attention in the exposition is given to the epoch of Volga Bulgaria. Parts of agricultural tools, ploughs, wheat harvesting and processing tools, found during archaeological diggings on the territory of Bolgar ancient settlement tell about the historical roots of arable farming on the territory of Tatarstan.

The brightest part of the exposition dedicated to the labor of farmers – the national Tatar holiday Sabantui.

Expositions are located in the other buildings of the museum complex. The interior of the Tatar home is reconstructed in the house of the miller, created on the basis of the authentic pictures of Tatar home interiors taken from the funds of the RT National Museum, using the samples of the preserving household items, home decoration, clothes, working tools belonging to the end of XIX- beginning of XX centuries.

Noticeable objects of the complex are the wind and the water mills. The exposition located inside the wind mill (it was located on the territory of the Bolgar ancient settlement in the XIX century) presents not only the process of the grains milling, but to learn about the mills existing on the territory of the Spassk district on the verge of the 19-20 centuries. Household constructions – the barn and the barn floor- add the description of the harvest processing and storing.

The baking house locates the exponents connected with bread baking and traditional Tatar tea ceremony – household utilities, containers for bread baking, tableware. Here the visitors can witness the process of pastry making and taste the hot baked bread.

Not far from the Museum of Bread, at the distance of 2,5 km from the central complex of monuments there is a White mosque (Ak Machet)complex – serving as a generalized character stressing the revival of Muslim cultural

traditions in Tatarstan, denoting purity and spirituality of the town of Bolgar – the most Northern outpost of Islam.

The best samples of the world Islamic architecture served as an example, and apart from the Mosque, Complex includes the Residence of Imam and Medrese.

The building of the Mosque is crowned by three cupolas and two minarets 46,5m high. The diameter of the main cupolas is 9 meters. The height of the cupola inside the Mosque is 17 meters. There are 16 windows in the cupolas with stained glass panels. The walls are decorated with traditional decoration elements – tulips, Arabic letters, mukarnases and geometrical ornaments. The area of the hall for prayers – 180 m². The area of mezzanine – 100 m². The buildings for the square. Open praying area – musalla, 1500 m² is surrounded by the arcade of 88 columns. Five steps divide the square from the park, the water pool lies near the entrance and symbolizes the ritual washing before the prayer.

The buffer zone also contains dismountable festival-and-event complex aimed at holding cultural-educational mass events, for servicing of a large quantities of tourists on the territory of the monument.

The utility unit supplies territory for the technology (tractors, snow removal machines, buses) servicing the museum- reserve and the warehouse of construction materials.

A number of monuments on the territory of the Complex (Minor minaret and Khan's Chapel, Black Chamber, central complex of monuments) are surrounded by the fence on the places of the historical fences and railings, established by the

Archaeological, historical and ethnographical Society under the Kazan University at the end of XIX century for their preservation and fulfillment of restoration works.

In 1970 this wooden railing has been replaced by the metal showed in the nomination.

In the beginning of XXI century all fences along the perimeter have been replaced due to their unfitness. The trees have been planted on the territory of the monuments.

During the last two years there have been carried out the unification of the restoration approaches and methods on the remaining and those being detected archaeological-architectural objects.

Materials applied in the XX century, including cement and concrete, are replaced by the materials corresponding to the traditional technologies.

The severe monitoring of the conservation and repair-restoration works is being fulfilled. Upon termination of the conservation works at the objects, there will be drawn red lines on the outer and inner surface, dividing the conservation layer from the authentic elements and constructions.

In compliance with the international requirements, the level of the restoration layers shall be decreased at the restored objects and the interference into the authentic part of the monument shall be minimized.

The main works are connected with the strengthening of constructions and provision of their integrity in the conditions of the northern climatic zone. All construction and utility works, including asphalt laying on the historical roads were fulfilled upon the preliminary fulfillment of the preservation activity on the cultural layer of the Bolgar ancient settlement.

Works have been carried out in 2011-2012 in the area of the town of Bolgar for the purposes of the negative water influence prevention on the coastal stripe of the Kuybyshevsky water reserve fulfilled within the frames of the Federal targeted investment program and the Federal targeted program “Development of hydroeconomic complex in the Russian Federation in 2012-2020”.

The part of the strengthened embankment subject to the most intensive processing comprised 872 m.

As per the data presented by the Kazan University and the enterprise “Tatarstangeologia”, the annual impact of the erosion-abrasive processes on the coast in this part comprises at average 1,0m, reaching in some years 7,0-8,0m. The

coast strengthening activities has been caused by the necessity of the town buildings and constructions protection (20 dwelling houses with onsteads, external gas pipeline net, the section of the asphalted road), as well as historical-architectural monuments of IX-X centuries from destruction.

The following types of work have been fulfilled:

Immersion of steel studs - 674,526t, arrangement of the underlayer of limestone – 224m³, arrangement of anchoring supports - 32,81m³, arrangement of the capping beam – 32m³, installation of anchoring rods, 18,441 t, arrangement of the limestone layer in the water - 243,17m³, arrangement of the layer of nonwoven fiber to the slopes - 49,083 thous.m³; strengthening of the surface with the “Reno” mattresses -3,184 thous.m²; dumping of prisms for pipe drainage - 0,015 thous.m³; arrangement of the underlayer (sand) - 0,472thous.m³.

These works allowed to protect the coast from the further destruction and washaway, considerably decrease siltation and pollution of Kuybyshevsky water reserve with snow-melt and rain as well as with residential wastewater.

Alongside with the coast strengthening activities, we arranged the landing pier of the river port for the tourist boats making tours along the Volga river, which allowed to increase the number of tourists and sightseers.

Reconstruction of the river port with the museum function has facilitated the strengthening of the coastal line within the borders of the Bolgar ancient settlement.

For the period of Complex project realization, together with preservation of the cultural heritage, the life quality on this historical territory will be considerably increased, as well as developed the competitive tourist product, providing the positive image and recognizability of the Republic of Tatarstan on the tourist market.

In respect of the dwelling houses and constructions in private property or ownership of the citizens and considerably helping to preserve the historical image of XIX – the beginning of XX centuries, it is planned to preserve these part of the

town and partially use it for the ethnographic museum and tourist infrastructure development.

Historical dwelling houses will be restored and used as a museum exposing the farmers' way of life, their household and courtyard subjects, allowing to deliver more information about the history of the place, make the "monotonous" archaeological expositions and exhibits more illustrative.

The workshops will be located in the dwelling houses.

They will demonstrate traditional arts and crafts, production processes (weaving, art of embroidery, making clothes, shoes, pottery), and the visitor will have an opportunity to purchase the items he liked as a souvenir.

Another important addition will become the houses – family cafes, where the visitor will be able to have a rest and snack (with Tatar or Russian dishes), try different baked things, sweets, drinks.

Some houses are planned to be reconstructed into small hotels.

Some houses will create conditions for renting premises for one night during the period of the peak tourist activity in the museum-reserve.

The owners of the rural land lots must preserve the historic image of their constructions; it is prohibited to use modern construction materials in the exterior decoration of the houses, excess in the number of floors, construction of excessively high or colorful houses.

Over 60 families are planned to be moved from the village of Bolgary, mainly from the houses having no historical-cultural value and being old housing stock.

These families will be transferred to the well-furnished flats with all facilities on the territory of the town of Bolgar.

At present the museum-reserve is actively forming its own tourist product and providing the organization of tourist and excursion service in cooperation with the tourist companies on the internal and international markets.

We improve our own information resource (internet provision, booklets and guide books, hotels booking system, own tourist routs), which will help the Bolgar

museum-reserve to participate independently in the tourist fairs, including international ones.

One of the important organizational aspect is the provision of the own tourist transportation service.

The own stock of several minibuses will help to fulfill tourist servicing of small groups of specialized tourists, which are of the most importance for realization of the scientific and cultural tourism programs.

The availability of water transportation in the form of small crafts for taking tourist groups along the Volga river plays the extremely important role in the conditions of the Bolgar museum-reserve.

The most important component of the tourist structure is the Visit-Center fulfilling the informational, organizational and servicing functions.

The Center helps the tourist to get information of all components of the regional tourist product (museums and other sightseeing places, hotels, restaurants, entertainments, arts and crafts, transportation, etc.), provide it with information and local lore literature, tourist maps, as well as video and audio materials, information and souvenir CD, etc.

The function of the hotels and other places of accommodation reservation, both in Bolgar and along the whole route, excursions and transportation will be fulfilled here as well.

Bolgar is developing a diversified net of different in types of comfort objects of the tourists accommodation (hotels, motels, private housing).

Total capacity of the hotel enterprises will reach 1200 places by the year of 2020.

Today the demountable canvas camp is organized on the territory of the Complex (in the former airport), which can accommodate up to 2000 people during the celebration of Islam Adoption Day.

In case the planned volumes of tourist construction are realized, the following tourist structure will be provided:

- Tour of the Bolgar ancient settlement;

- Two day visit of the Bolgar land with one night in one of the tourist hotels and the extended opportunity to visit the objects of cultural and natural heritage;
- Many days stay with accommodation in one of the tourist hotels receiving a number of services and using the potential of the cultural and natural heritage of Bolgar and its environments.

The prerequisites for organization of the following types of tourism have been created:

- Educational tourism;
- Pilgrimage tourism
- Ecological tourism;
- Event tourism;
- Research and congress tourism.

The programs are developed for organization of the children tourism, cultural and educational trips with the purpose of educational level of children and youth increase and development of the youth regional studies movement.

These programs are interconnected with the school general education and patriotism training.

System of catering occupies one of the most essential places in the tourist industry, it greatly determines the reputation of the tourist region.

Apart from the catering facilities under the hotels, there are the following types of catering enterprises in the town of Bolgar and Bolgar museum-reserve:

- restaurants and cafes, located in the hotels, Museum of Bread, building of the River Port;
- café out of the hotels, museum buildings, which have the characteristic features of the national cuisine.

The capacity of such café in summer increases due to the seasonal increase: apart from the main hall (10-30 places), there are places round the tables located in the open air on the special terrace (15-40 places);

- fast-food enterprises: buffet, automatic buffet, café with self service, cafeteria – with the limited choice of dishes. Here it will be reasonable a broad seasonal increase and application of mobile constructions (detachable), acting in the “peak” periods of tourist seasons.

The most attractive moment for the tourist trade is the purchase of the items created on the spot. Such purchase is a part of the tourist impressions complex.

The museum-reserve carries out the activity of its own souvenir product and symbols creation. The most demanded souvenir at present seems to be the figures of small clay copies of architectural buildings.

One more type of the demanded specialized products is the special information literature regarding the museum-reserve (booklets, prospects of tourist places of interest, guide books of museum objects).

There are also in the museum-reserve:

- Wide range of arts and crafts items, manufactured on the territory of the complex in the workshops;
- The items of painting, graphics, applied arts created by the modern artists (author’s work and reproductions);
- imitations (copies) of the historical objects represented in the museum expositions;
- post cards, audio and video, CD reproducing the specific historical-cultural heritage of Bolgar.

It is important to stress that the considerable part of the museum staff is selected from the local residents, particularly with the higher and high special education. There are specialists in the staff of the museum with the scientific grades, as for example, Dzhamil Mukhametshin, Renat Valiev, the heads of the archaeological service, PhD (History).

Thus, the museum-reserve plays an important part in the employment of the local labor resources. At the same time, part of the specialists have been invited from Kazan and other research centers (approximately 20 leading specialists) for organization of the museum and research activity. They pass their experience, help

to bring up new specialists out of the local residents for the work in the museum-reserve.

It is notable, that during the summer period there is a need in the temporary increase of the collective body in the museum-reserve for the purpose of the whole volume of work fulfillment regarding the servicing of the tourists. It results in creation of the additional labor places in the regional center and other settlements of the Spassky district (due to restoration and construction activity organization, increase of tourist servicing, creation of new infrastructural objects).

Taking this factor into consideration, the role of the museum-reserve can be determined as a special town-forming institution.

General social effect of the Bolgar museum-reserve arrangement is closely connected with the spirituality revival issues solution. This place is one of the main centers of pilgrimage for the Muslims of Russia and the world. Bolgar museum-reserve gains importance as a place of interregional cultural center of Russian Muslims and a site for international cooperation. For its visitors it will be practically the only Russian museum-reserve representing the Islam history in the Russian Federation, general Islam culture as a part of the Russian civilization.

The important social effect of the Bolgar museum-reserve development is also the conditions development for historical enlightenment, ecological education of the youth and the formation of ecology of culture. Ecological training, regional studies movement – all this is a most important part of the patriotic education, both of the federal Russian level and on the international scale.

One more aspect of the social efficiency is the alteration in the life style and improvement of the living standards of the local population, availability of new opportunities for the population employment, job placement of certain categories of unprotected layers of population (pensioners, young people).

New opportunities not only in the sphere of employment, but for receiving of special education on the basis of the vocational-technical college will be a social achievement facilitating the training of personnel for the museum-reserve and tourist sphere.

Great changes have occurred in the rural settlements of Spassky district. A number of villages, which have formerly lost a part of their population, have left the category of the depressive during the realization of the museum and tourist development program. The village Bolgary will have very interesting perspective, when the local population gets the opportunity to establish small private hotels on the basis of their own household, souvenir production, making traditional culinary products. Such impact to their development will be given to 5-6 more settlements of Spassky district (Antonovka, Tri ozera, Nikolskoye, Kuznechikha, Bugrovka). Thus, there may be created a very interesting museum of country estate culture in Antonovka on the basis of the ancient landlords' manor.

In Nikolskoye the development of the museum-reserve may give the impetus for the revival of the stud farm. New work places in the field of museum service, trade, tourism will be established in all these places. It will enable to preserve not only the ancient settlements, but also the pattern of rural life and its economy.


On the whole, within the scope of the Russian Federation Bolgar historical and archaeological complex and Sviyazhsky historical-architectural and natural-landscape complex are the objects representing the break-through in the task of preservation and promotion of the cultural heritage, revival of Muslim and Orthodox spirituality, balance of cultures and confessions in the Republic of Tatarstan and Russia, tolerance in the state policy.

Bolgar Historical and Archeological Complex. Buffer zone

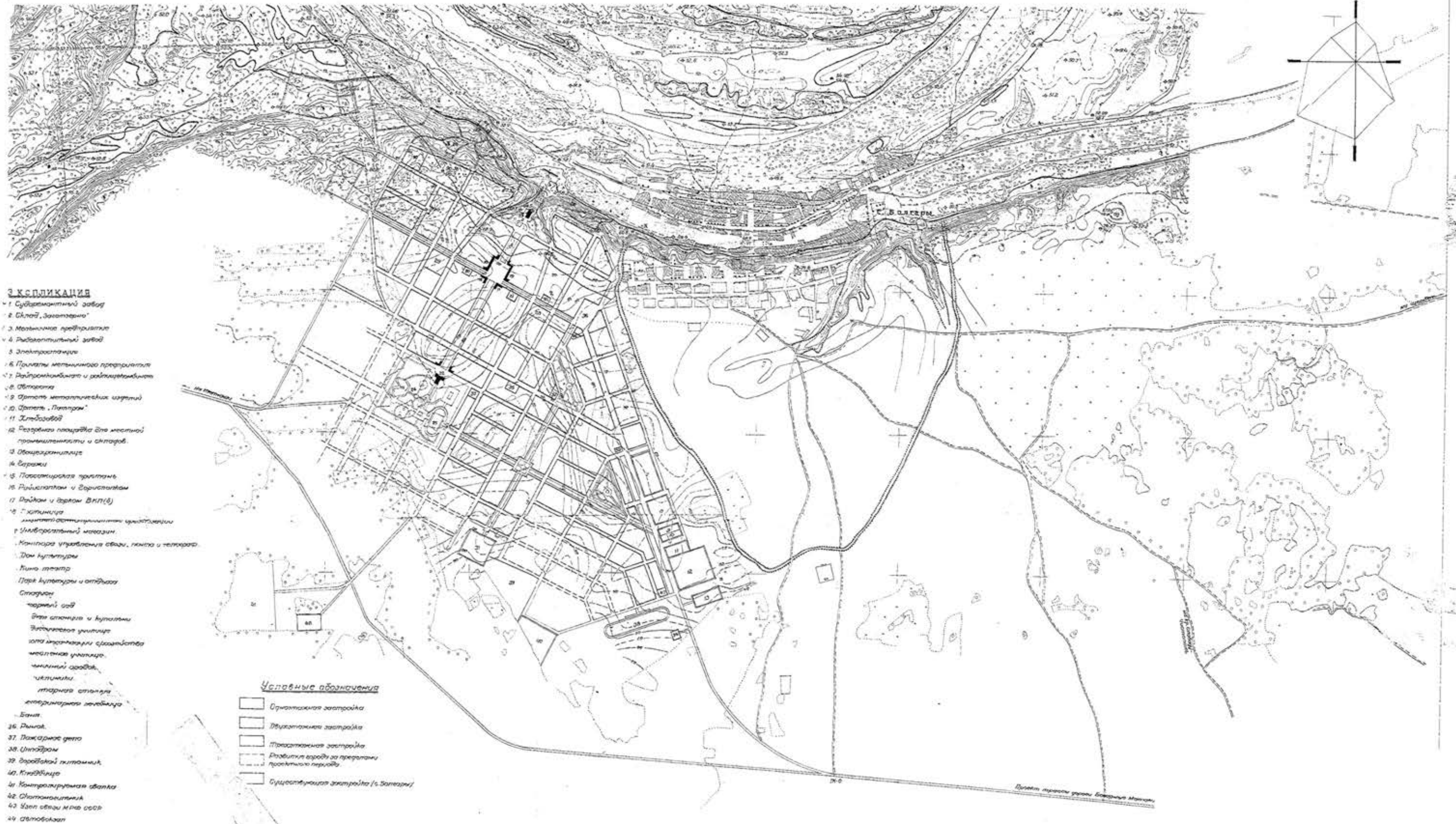


 -Border of the buffer zone

 State complex wildlife preserve Spassky

 -Border of the Bolgar Historical and Archeological Research

General Plan of Bolgar 1952 (before the inundation)



ЭКСПЛИКАЦИЯ

- 1 Субарканский завод
- 2 Склад, Заготовочный
- 3 Металлическая преферитовая
- 4 Рабочий поселок
- 5 Электростанция
- 6 Причалы металлургического предприятия
- 7 Районный комбинат и райисполком
- 8 Общественная
- 9 Станция металлургических изделий
- 10 Станция "Полет"
- 11 Железнодорожная
- 12 Производственная площадка для местной промышленности и складов
- 13 Общеобразовательная
- 14 Барак
- 15 Плавильная печь
- 16 Районный комбинат и райисполком
- 17 Район и парк ВЛП(Б)
- 18 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 19 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 20 Канализация
- 21 Дом культуры
- 22 Парк культуры и отдыха
- 23 Станция
- 24 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 25 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 26 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 27 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 28 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 29 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 30 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 31 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 32 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 33 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 34 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 35 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 36 Рынок
- 37 Пожарная станция
- 38 Улицы
- 39 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 40 Жилищно-коммунальное хозяйство
- 41 Канализация
- 42 Канализация
- 43 Канализация
- 44 Канализация

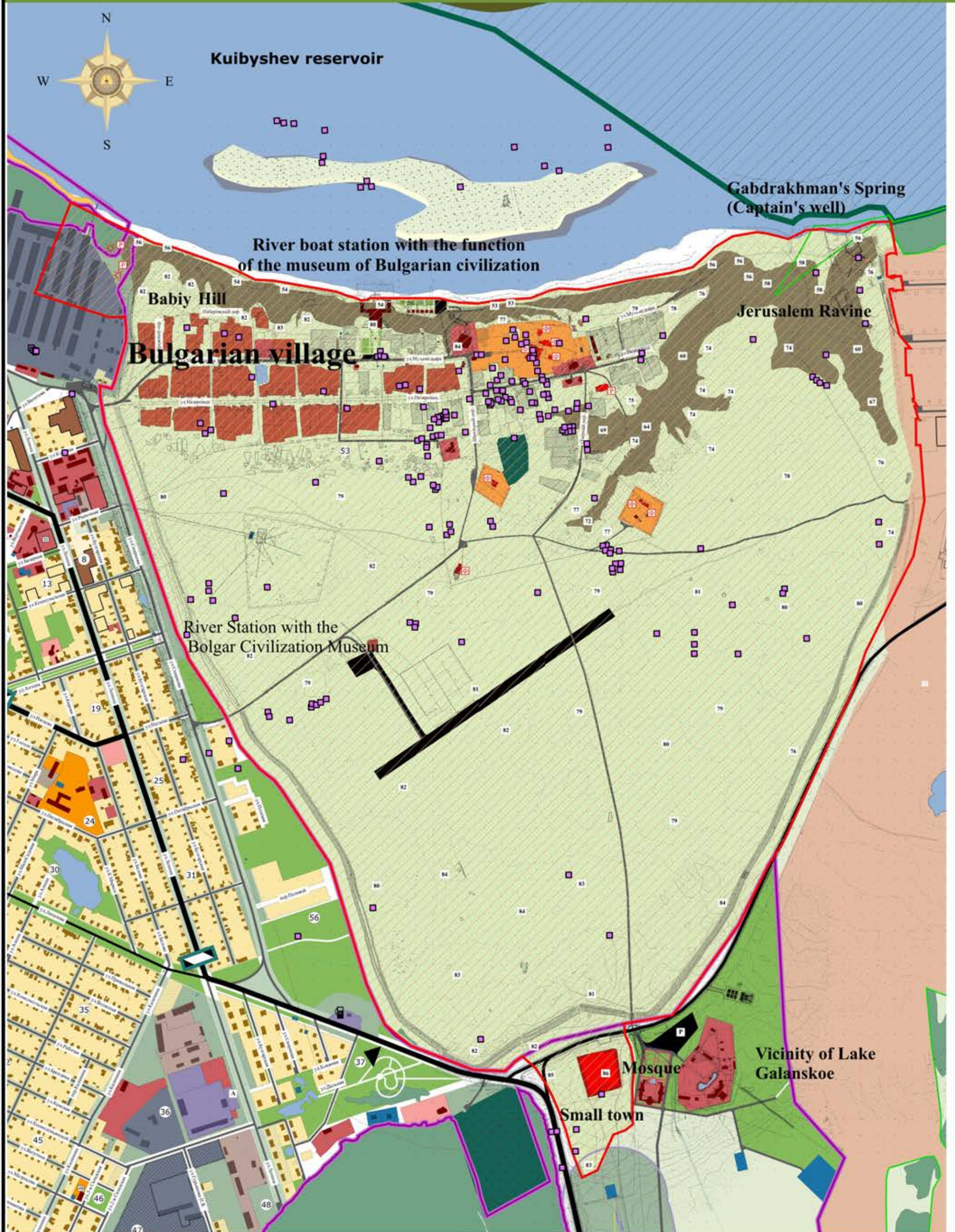
Условные обозначения

- Организованная застройка
- Разрозненная застройка
- Парковая застройка
- Районные кварталы за пределами проектного периода
- Существующая застройка (с Барак)

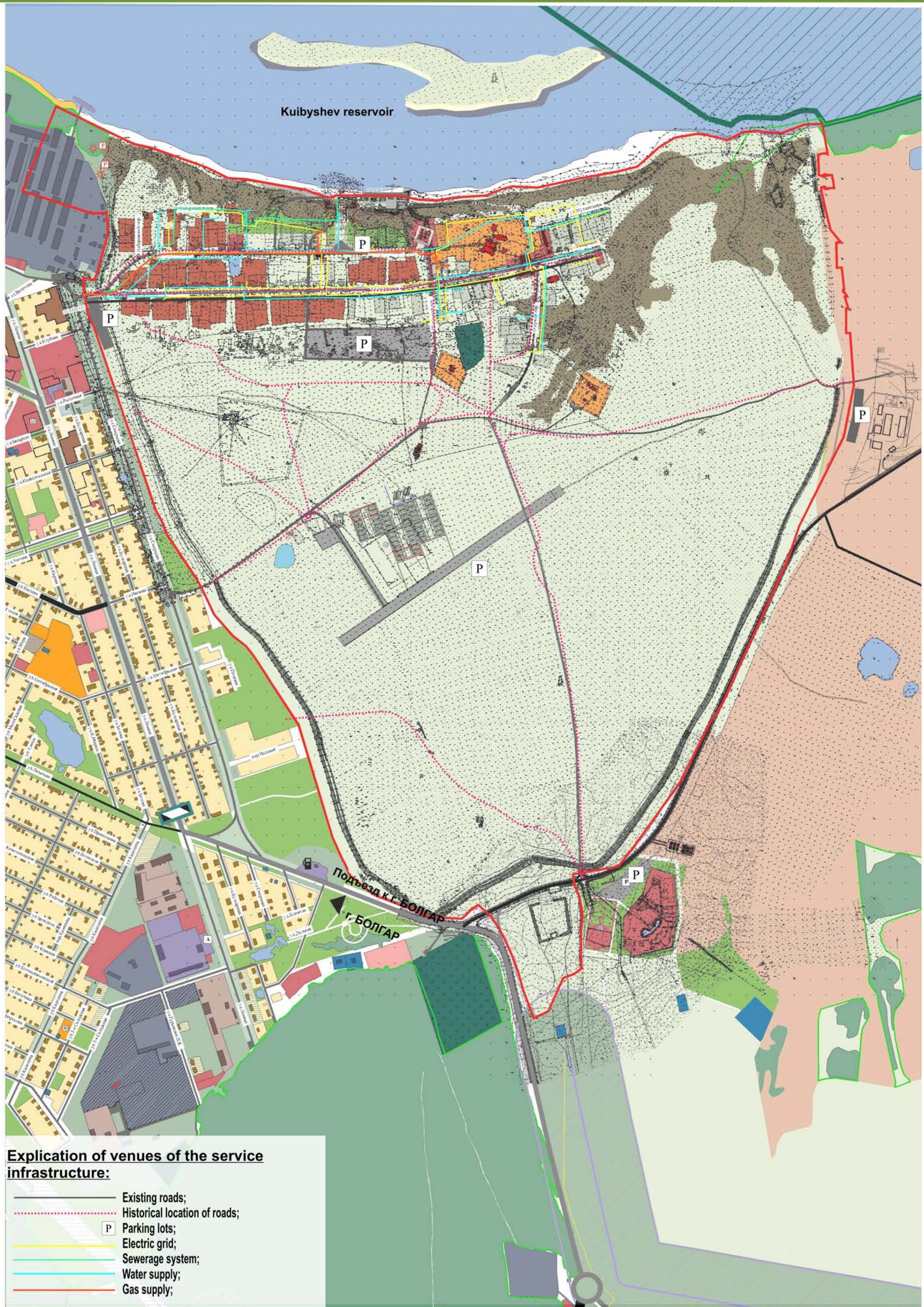
Geographical map. District plan

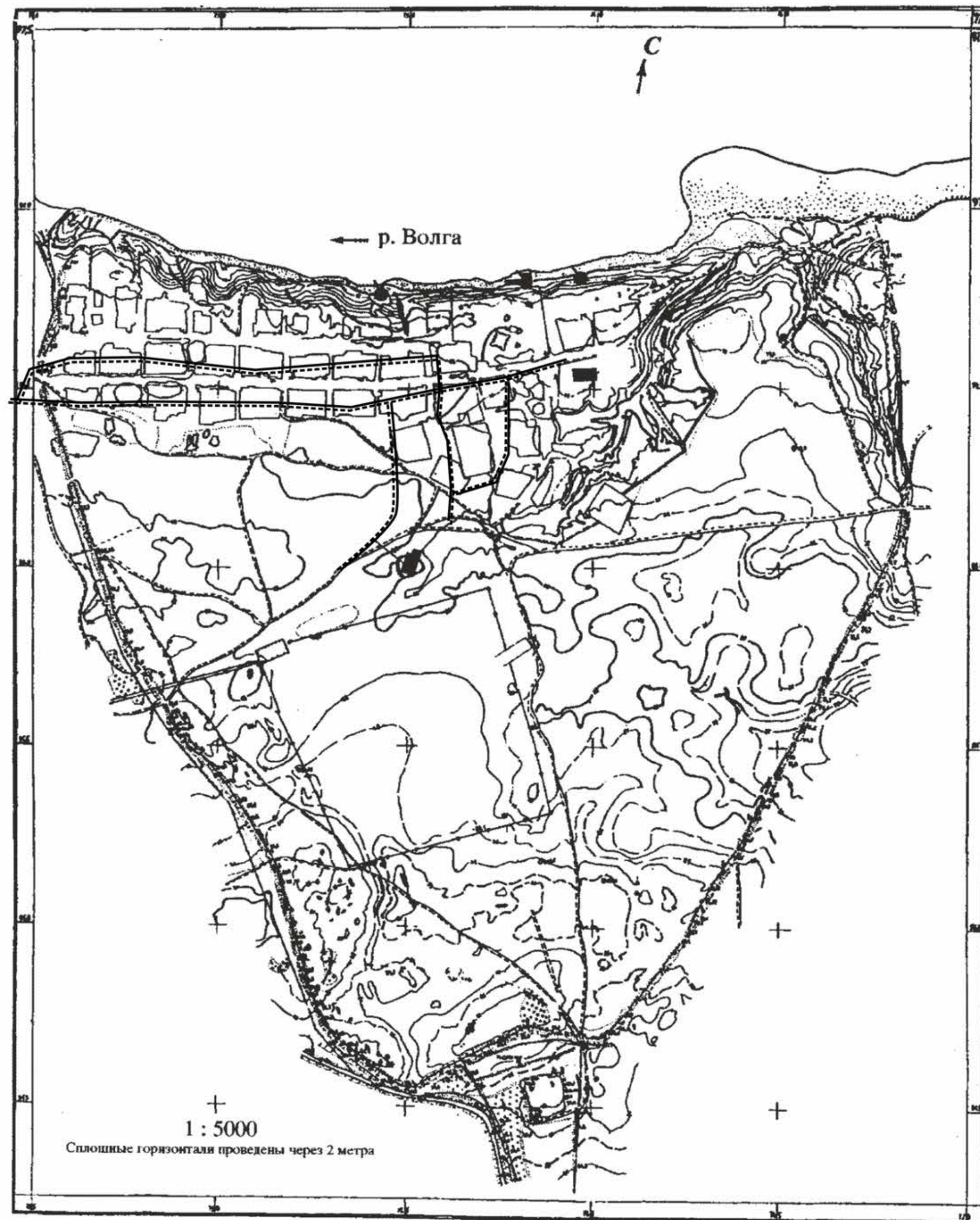
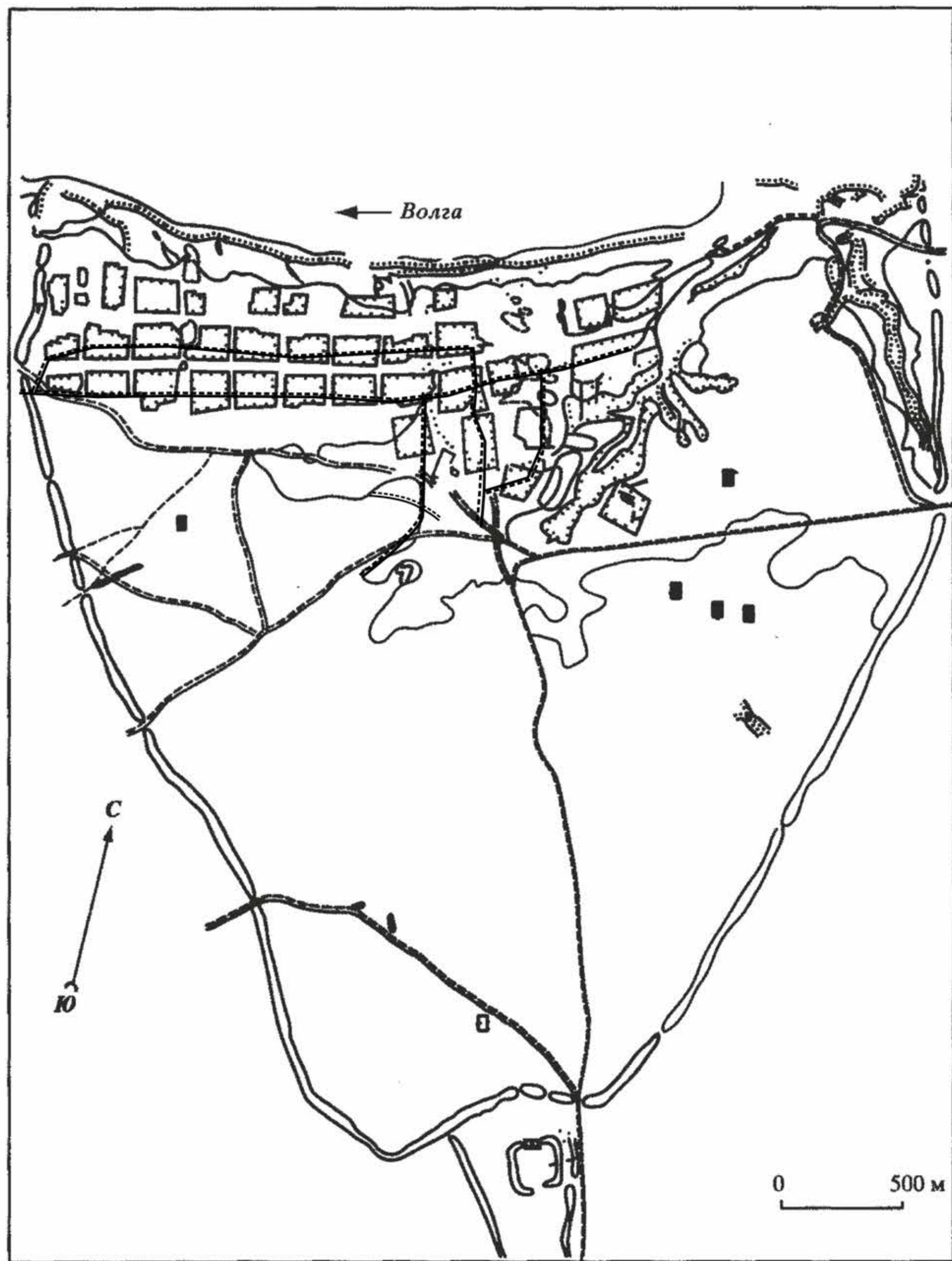


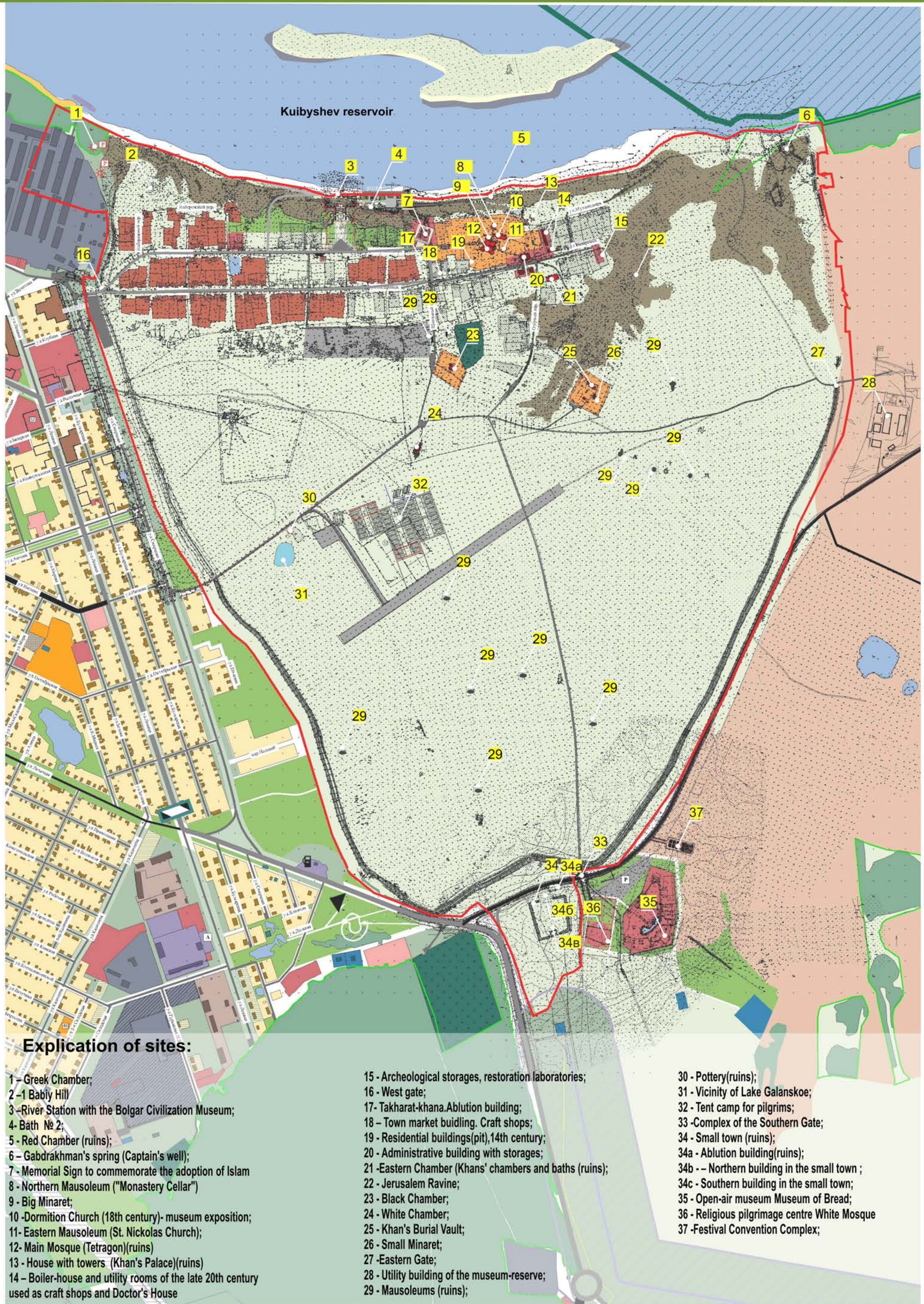
Bolgar Historical and Archeological Complex.



- The territory of the Bolgar Historical and Archeological Complex
- Archaeological pits
- The area of the present development of Bolgar
- Areas of dismantled buildings
- Geodesic marks





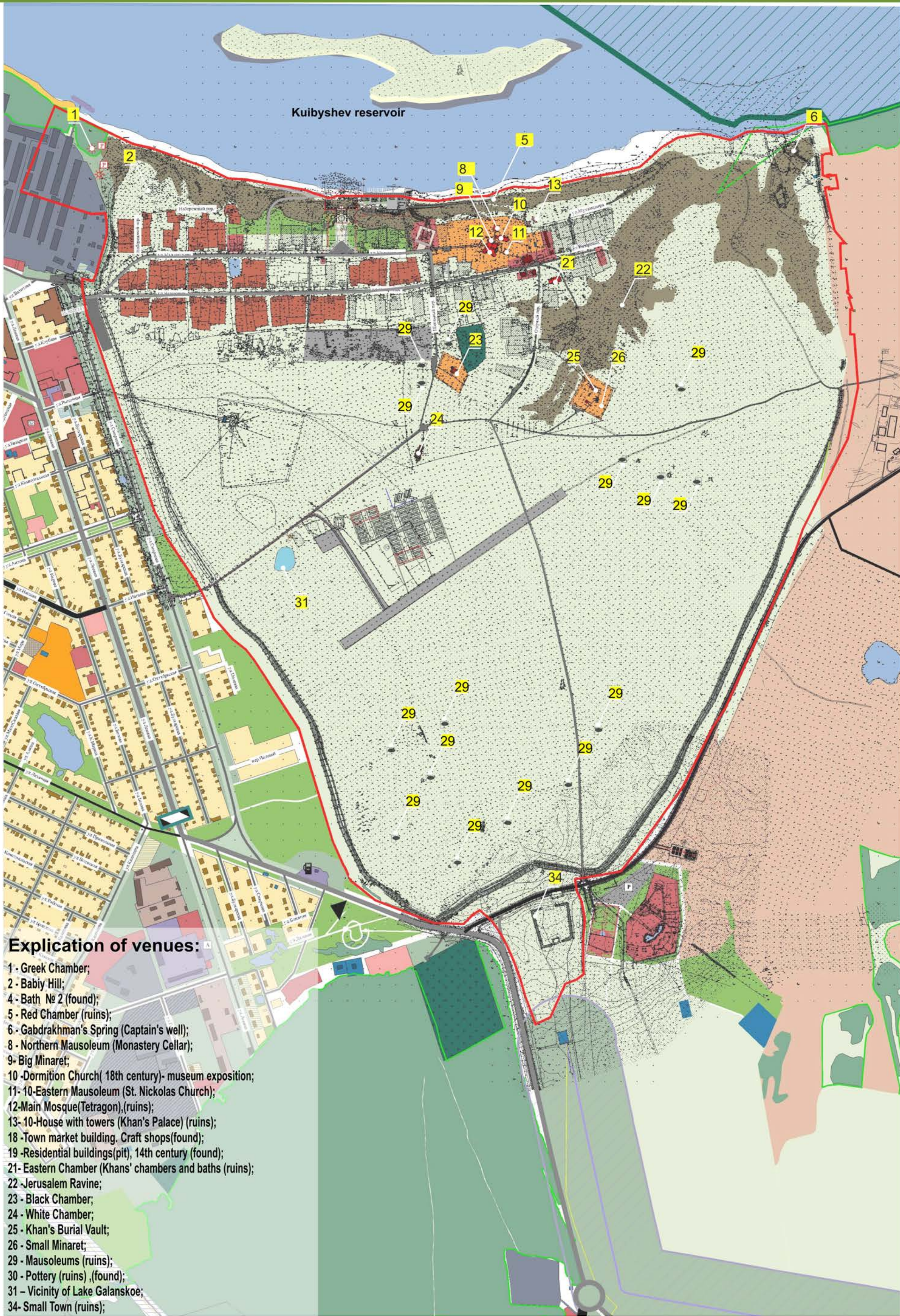


Explication of sites:

- 1 - Greek Chamber;
- 2 - 1 Baby Hill
- 3 - River Station with the Bolgar Civilization Museum;
- 4 - Bath № 2;
- 5 - Red Chamber (ruins);
- 6 - Gabdrakhman's spring (Captain's well);
- 7 - Memorial Sign to commemorate the adoption of Islam
- 8 - Northern Mausoleum ("Monastery Cellar")
- 9 - Big Minaret;
- 10 - Dormition Church (18th century)- museum exposition;
- 11 - Eastern Mausoleum (St. Nickolas Church);
- 12 - Main Mosque (Tetragon)(ruins)
- 13 - House with towers (Khan's Palace)(ruins)
- 14 - Boiler-house and utility rooms of the late 20th century used as craft shops and Doctor's House

- 15 - Archeological storages, restoration laboratories;
- 16 - West gate;
- 17 - Takharat-khana. Ablution building;
- 18 - Town market building. Craft shops;
- 19 - Residential buildings(pit), 14th century;
- 20 - Administrative building with storages;
- 21 - Eastern Chamber (Khans' chambers and baths (ruins);
- 22 - Jerusalem Ravine;
- 23 - Black Chamber;
- 24 - White Chamber;
- 25 - Khan's Burial Vault;
- 26 - Small Minaret;
- 27 - Eastern Gate;
- 28 - Utility building of the museum-reserve;
- 29 - Mausoleums (ruins);

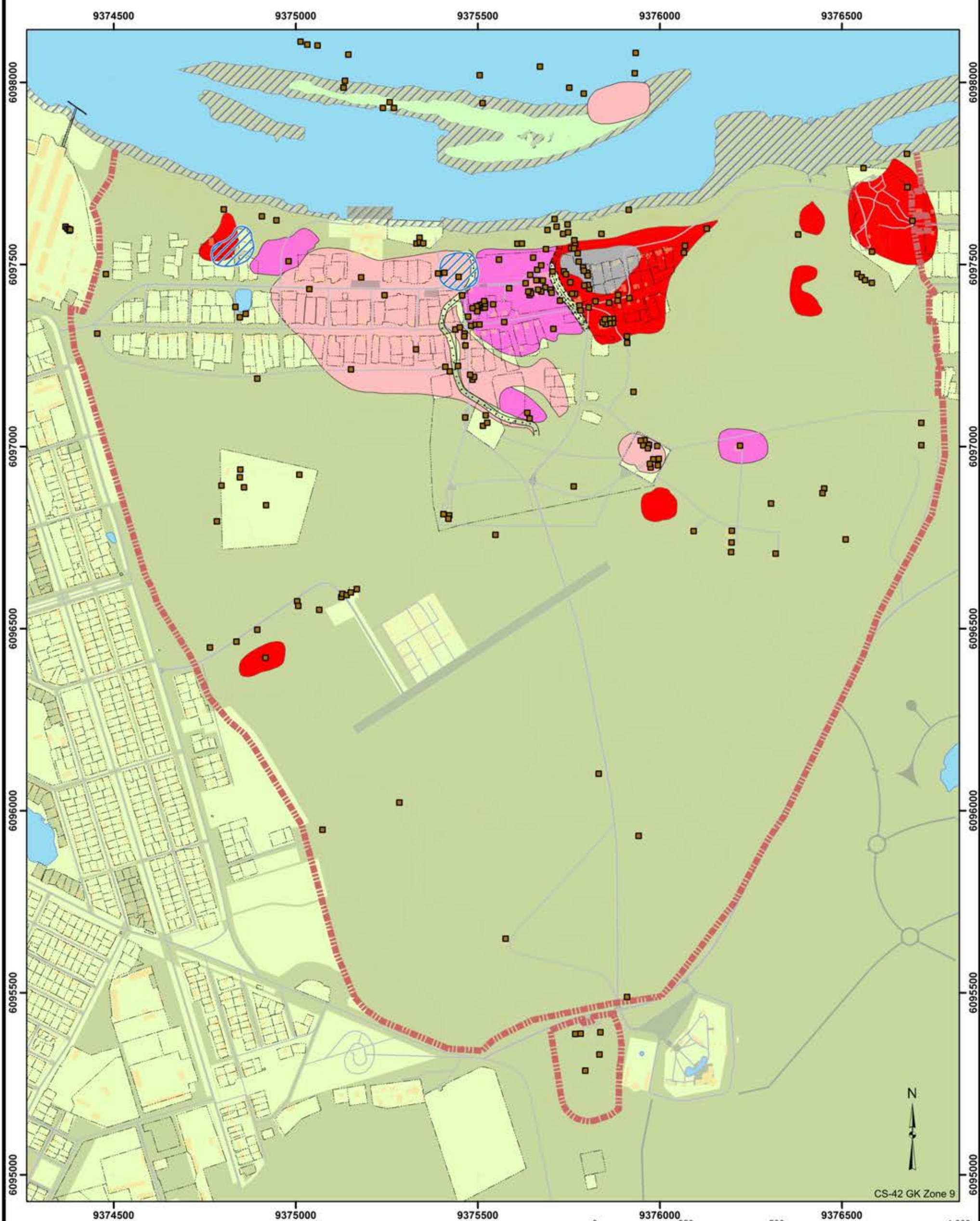
- 30 - Pottery(ruins);
- 31 - Vicinity of Lake Galanskoe;
- 32 - Tent camp for pilgrims;
- 33 - Complex of the Southern Gate;
- 34 - Small town (ruins);
- 34a - Ablution building(ruins);
- 34b - Northern building in the small town ;
- 34c - Southern building in the small town;
- 35 - Open-air museum Museum of Bread;
- 36 - Religious pilgrimage centre White Mosque
- 37 - Festival Convention Complex;



Explication of venues:

- 1 - Greek Chamber;
- 2 - Babiy Hill;
- 4 - Bath № 2 (found);
- 5 - Red Chamber (ruins);
- 6 - Gabdrakhman's Spring (Captain's well);
- 8 - Northern Mausoleum (Monastery Cellar);
- 9 - Big Minaret;
- 10 -Dormition Church(18th century)- museum exposition;
- 11- 10-Eastern Mausoleum (St. Nickolas Church);
- 12-Main Mosque(Tetragon),(ruins);
- 13- 10-House with towers (Khan's Palace) (ruins);
- 18 -Town market building. Craft shops(found);
- 19 -Residential buildings(pit), 14th century (found);
- 21- Eastern Chamber (Khans' chambers and baths (ruins);
- 22 -Jerusalem Ravine;
- 23 - Black Chamber;
- 24 - White Chamber;
- 25 - Khan's Burial Vault;
- 26 - Small Minaret;
- 29 - Mausoleums (ruins);
- 30 - Pottery (ruins) ,(found);
- 31 - Vicinity of Lake Galanskoe;
- 34- Small Town (ruins);

Map of cultural layers and necropolises of the Pre-Mongolian period (10th-early 13th centuries) of Bolgar historical and archeological complex



CS-42 GK Zone 9



Reference characters

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> --- Borders of plots --- Borders of areas --- Isolines --- Buildings and structures --- Roads | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Water Islands Water areas Impounded areas Water reservoir | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> --- Ditch and rampart of Bolgar town 13-15 centuries --- Excavations in 1864-2012 --- Ditch and rampart 10th century --- Ditch and rampart 11th-12th centuries | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sites of necropolises of the Pre-Mongolian period 5th layer - upper level of the 11th century settlement 5th layer - upper level of the 12th-early 13th century settlement 6th layer - lower level of the 10th century settlement 7th layer - settlement layer of the Imenkovo culture |
|---|---|---|--|

meter

1:10 000

BOLGAR AND REGIONS IN V-VII CENTURIES



BOLGAR REGIONS IN VII CENTURY



Kommenternovskij kurgan

BOLGAR IN X CENTURY



ETHNOCULTURAL GROUPS

BOLGAR IN X CENTURY



TRADE TOOLS

BOLGAR IN XI-XII CENTURIES



BOLGAR REGIONS IN XI-XIII CENTURIES



**COZHAYEVSKIY
TREASURE**



MAKLASHEEVSKIY "RIDER"



Map of cultural layers and necropolises of the golden Horde period (13th-15th centuries) of Bolgar historical and archeological complex



CS-42 GK Zone 9

Reference characters

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> --- Borders of plots --- Borders of areas --- Isolines --- Buildings and structures --- Roads | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Water Islands Water areas Impounded areas Water reservoir | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> --- Ditch and rampart of Bolgar town 13-15 centuries --- Excavations in 1864-2012 --- Ditch and rampart 12th-13th centuries --- Ditch and rampart 14th century | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sites of necropolises of the Golden Horde period 3rd layer - settlement layer of the Kazan Khanate of the early 15th-early 16th centuries 4th (early) layer - settlement layer of early 13th-early 14th centuries (lower horizon) 4th (late) layer - settlement layer of early 14th-early 15th centuries (upper horizon) |
|---|---|---|---|

1:10 000

BOLGAR IN XIII-XIV CENTURIES



BRONZE ARTICLES

BOLGAR IN XIII-XIV CENTURIES



BOLGAR IN XIII-XV CENTURIES



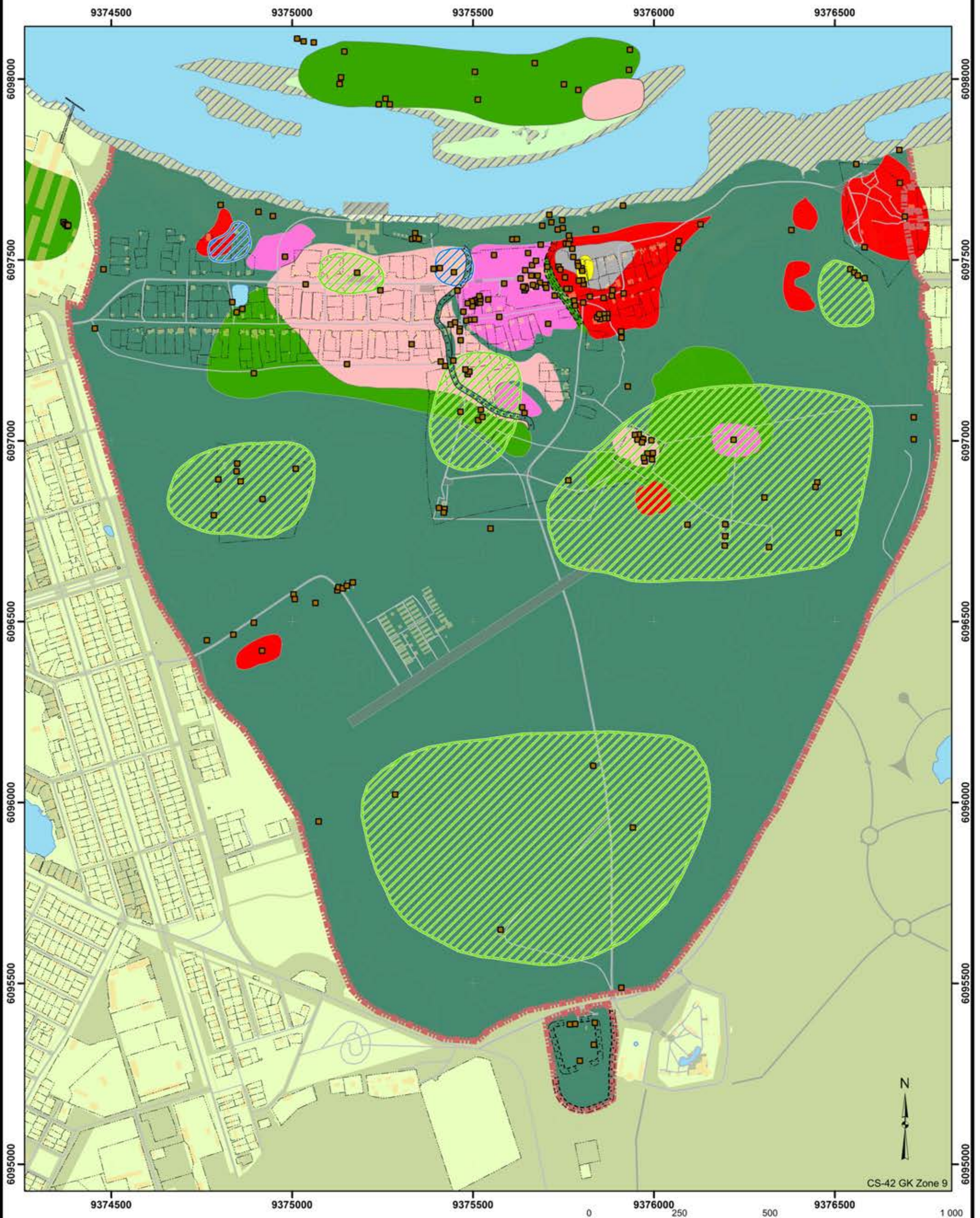
METAL WARE

BOLGAR IN XIII-XV CENTURIES



OVENWARE

Map of cultural layers and necropolises of Bolgar historical and archeological complex (10th-15th centuries)



CS-42 GK Zone 9

Reference characters

- Borders of plots
- Borders of areas
- Isolines
- Buildings and structures
- Roads
- Water
- Islands
- Water areas
- Impounded areas
- Water reservoir
- Ditch and rampart of Bolgar town 13-15 centuries
- Excavations in 1864-2012
- Ditch and rampart 12th-13th centuries
- Ditch and rampart 14th century
- Ditch and rampart 10th century
- Ditch and rampart 11th-12th centuries

- Sites of necropolises of the Golden Horde period
- Sites of necropolises of the Pre-Mongolian period
- 3rd layer - settlement layer of the Kazan Khanate of the early 15th-early 16th centuries
- 4th (early) layer - settlement layer of early 13th-early 14th centuries (lower horizon)
- 4th (late) layer - settlement layer of early 14th-early 15th centuries (upper horizon)
- 5th layer - upper level of the 11th century settlement
- 5th layer - upper level of the 12th-early 13th century settlement
- 6th layer - lower level of the 10th century settlement
- 7th layer - settlement layer of the Imenkovo culture

meter

1:10 000

Bolgar Site X-XVc. Defense construction (a bank and a ditch) of Bolgar Site of X-XVcc.

Bolgar Site comprises the architectural and archeological remains of Bolgar town, which in X-XIc. was the capital of Volga Bulgaria - one of the biggest early feudal states of Eastern Europe, in XIII-XIVc. it was the first capital of Golden Horde, the center of Bolgar ulus (Ulus Dzhuchi) being in Golden Horde.

It is in Bolgar that Bulgarians– the ancestors of contemporary Kazan Tatars officially adopted Islam in 922.

The cultural layer of Bolgar Site consists of seven strata from the time preceding the foundation of the town hitherto. The area of the settlement as a part of defense constructions is 416,8 ha. Nowadays about 30 brick-made constructions of different condition are known and have been archeologically examined, 16 of which have been preserved with partial reconstruction and partial view opportunity for tourists.

Bolgar ancient settlement is contiguous from the East to Bolgar city and is located at the edge of about 30 m. high basic Volga terrace. Moreover, the settlement is surrounded by the ground ditch of up to 5 m. high (in the XVIII-th century it was called “ The big one”) and by the ditch of up to 2 m. deep from the East, West and South. All the length of that defense construction is about 5,63 km. There are also ancient passes from all sides. The settlement is in the form of rectangle and is directed by its’ “top” to the South where there is the complementary defense construction - ”Small town”. In the North the “Big” bank and a ditch are set against the terrace slope. But in the north-eastern part there are Major ravine and Minor Jerusalem ravine, which have formed three capes at the terrace edge. The Western cape, which was created by the Major Jerusalem ravine and terrace edge with cliffs and some ravine spurs directed to the West, was actually the place of initial Bolgar.



1. General view of the Site. GPS survey.



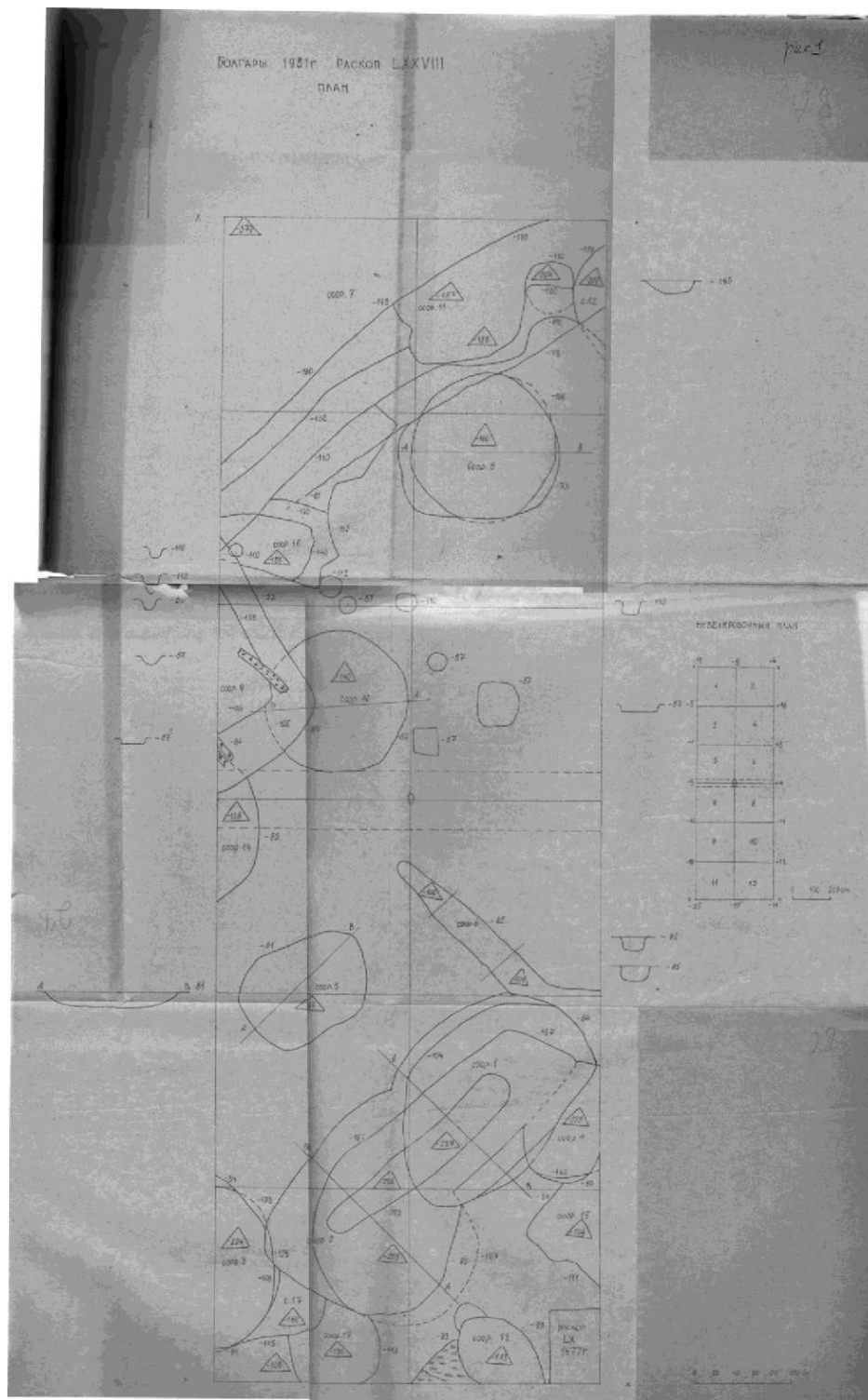
2. Bolgar Site, south-east view.



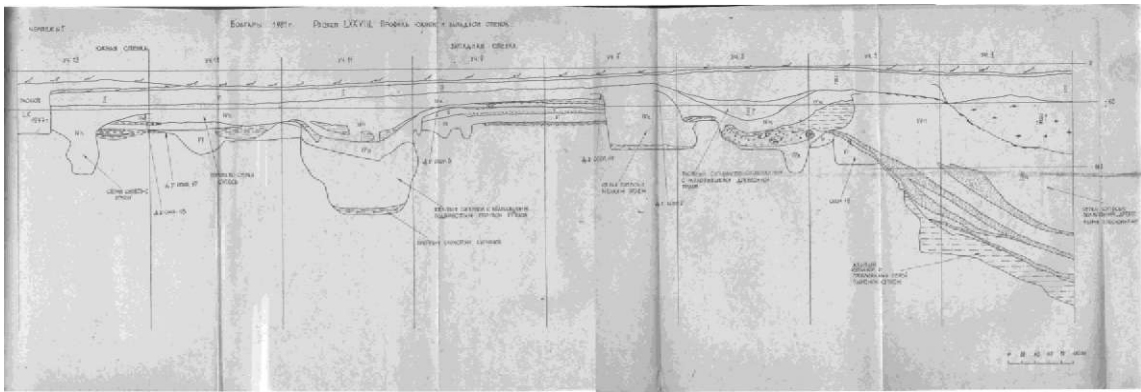
3. Defensive ramparts and moats of Bolgar Site of the 14th-15th centuries.

Fortifications of Bolgar Site of the 10th century

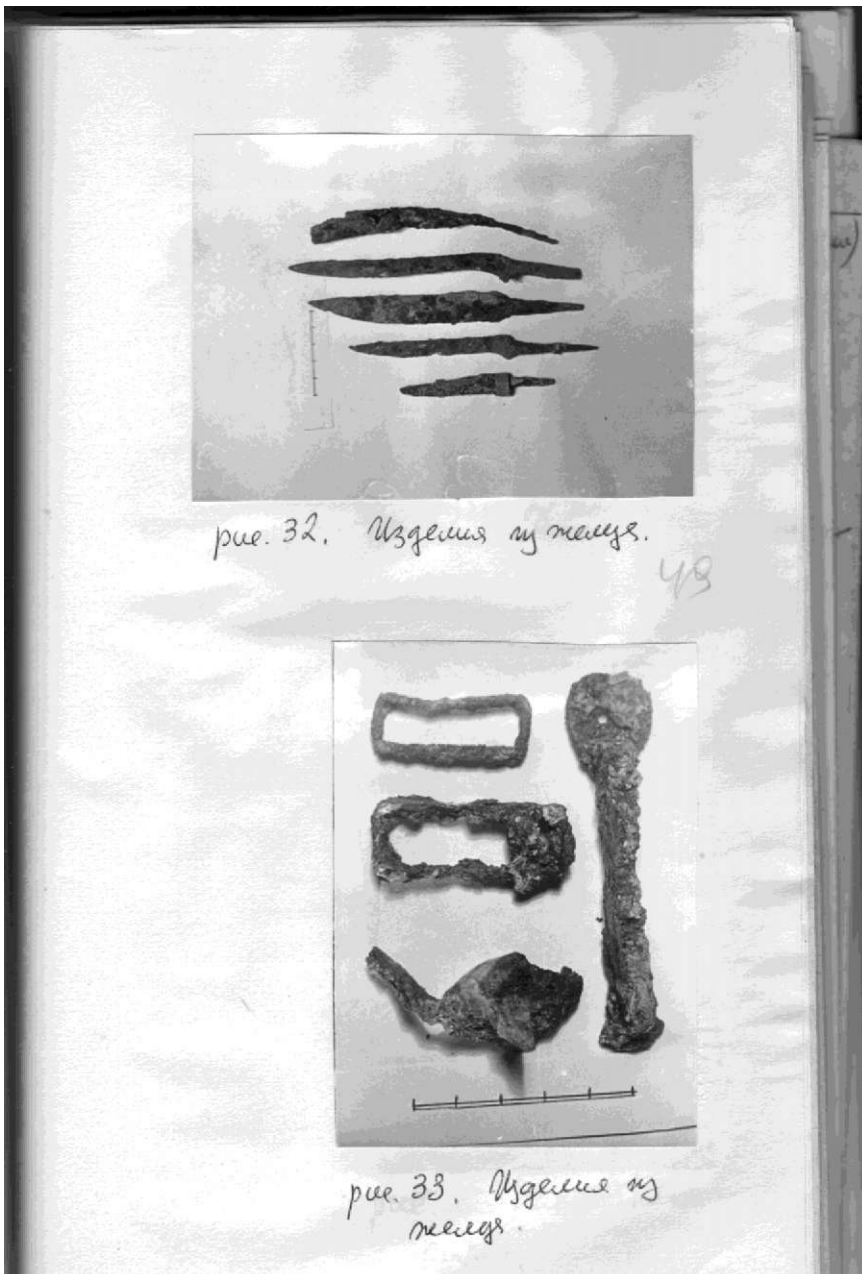
Khlebnikova T.A., Excavation LXXVII (1981)



2. Plan of excavation LXXVII (1981)



3. Cross section of excavation LXXVII (1981) with the degraded moat and remains of the destroyed rampart.



4. Findings of the 13th-14th centuries from excavation LXXVII (1981)

Fortifications of the Bolgar Site of the 10th century

Khlebnikova T.A., Excavation XVI (1967)

Khlebnikova T.A., Excavation XXVIII (1968)

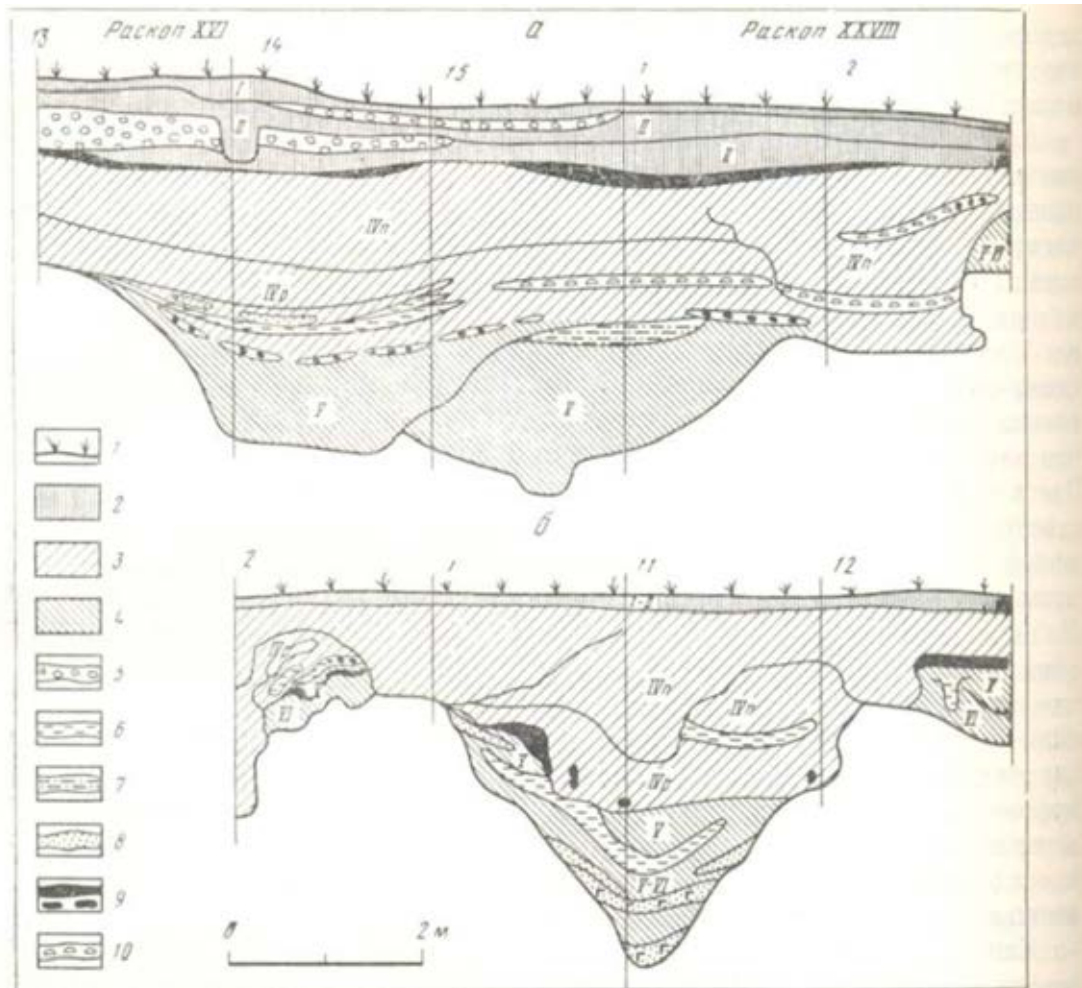


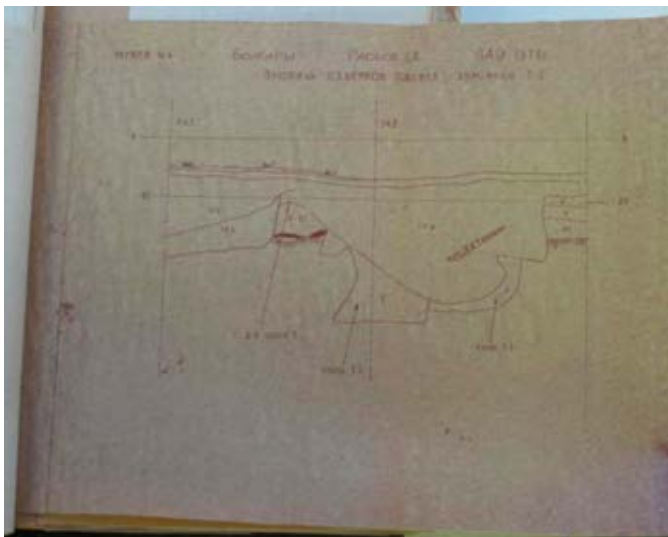
Рис. 10. Рвы начала X в.

а — западный ров в профиле северной стенки раскопов XVI и XXVIII; б — восточный ров в северо-западной стенке раскопа XXI; 1 — дери; 2 — современный слой (I) и слой русской деревни XVI—XIX вв. (II); 3 — слои золотоордынского времени — поздний (IVn) и ранний (IVp); 4 — слои домонгольского времени (V—VI); 5 — кирпичный лом; 6 — глина; 7 — суглинок; 8 — песок; 9 — уголь; 10 — древесная труха.

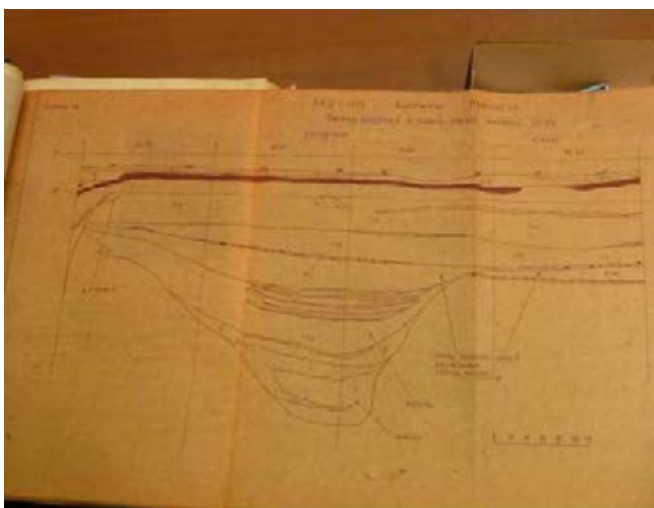
1. Cross sections of excavation XVI (1967) and excavation XXVIII (1968) with sections of the 10th-century moats.

Fortifications of Bolgar Site of the 12th-13th centuries

Khlebnikova T.A., Excavation LII (1976)



1. Cross section of excavation LII with sites near the fortifications



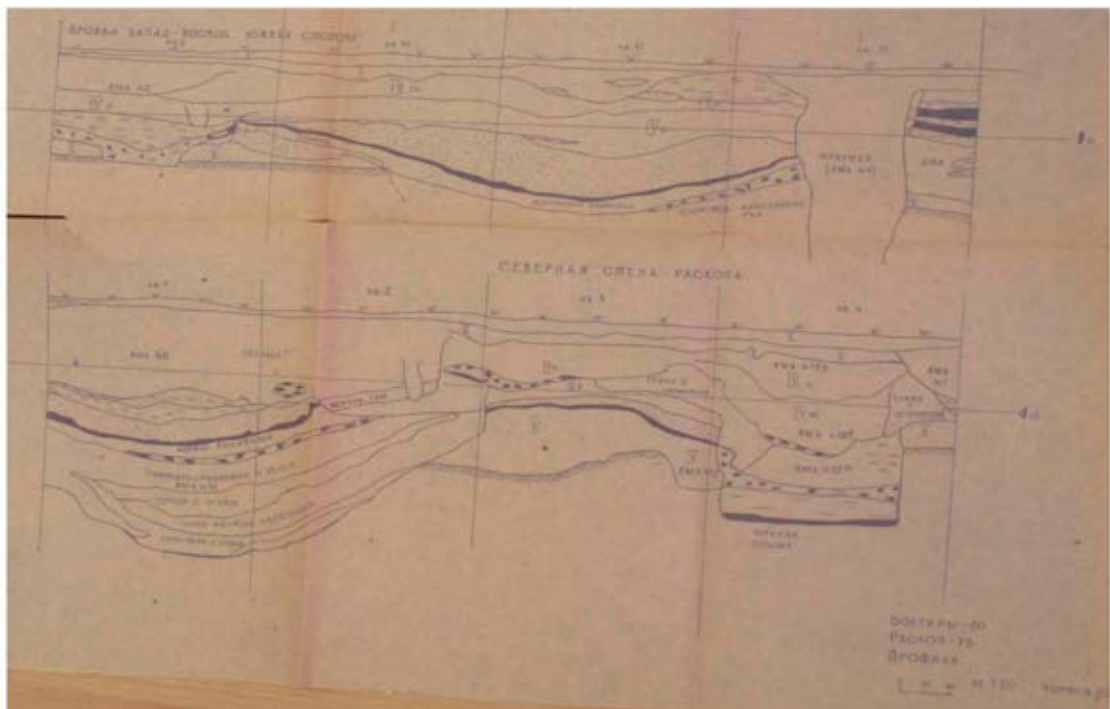
2. Cross section of excavation LII with the degraded moat of the 12th-13th centuries



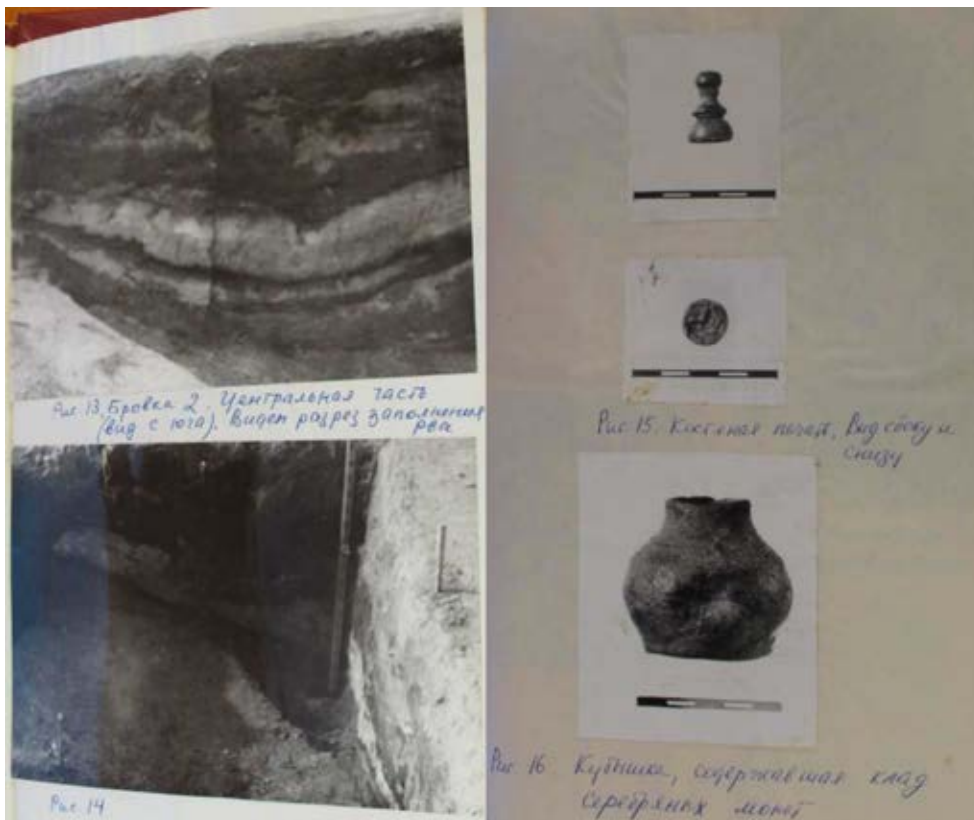
3. Findings of the 11th to 13th centuries from excavation LII (1976)

Fortifications of Bolgar Site of the 12th-13th centuries

Poluboyarinova M. D., Excavation LXXIII (1980)



1. Cross sections of Excavation LXXIII with the degraded moat of the 12th-13th centuries

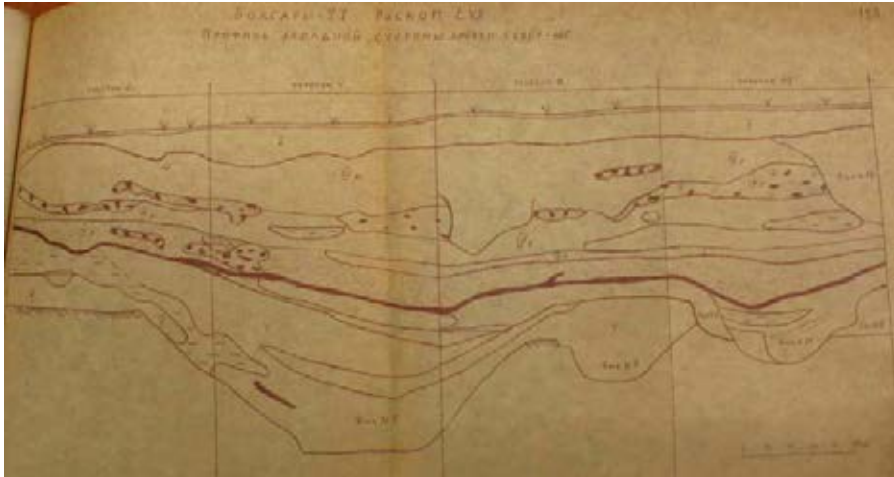


2. Cross section with the degraded moat of the 12th-13th centuries

3. Findings of the 12th to 15th centuries

Fortifications of Bolgar Site of the 12th-13th centuries

Poluboyarinova M. D., excavation LVII (1980) near the ramparts

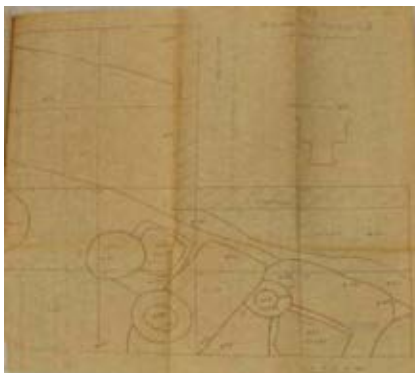


1. Cross section of excavation LVII near the ramparts



2. Edges of excavation LVII

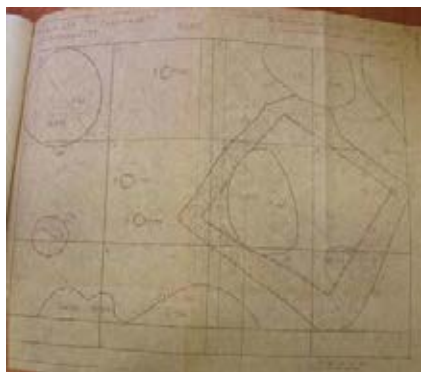
3. Findings of the 12th-13th centuries from excavation LVII near the ramparts



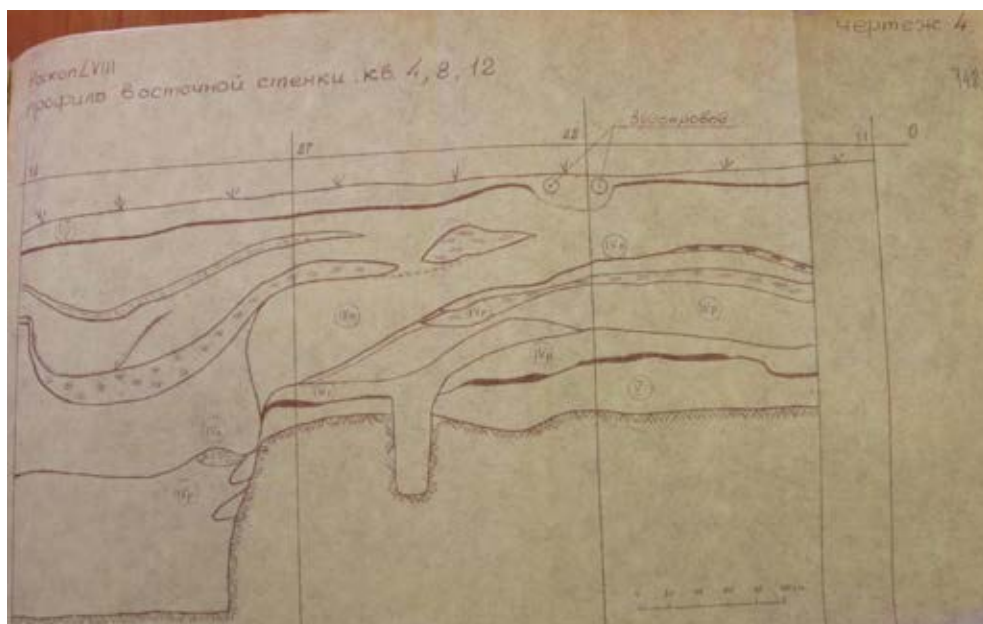
4. Plan of Excavation LVII near the ramparts

Fortifications of Bolgar Site of the 12th-13th centuries

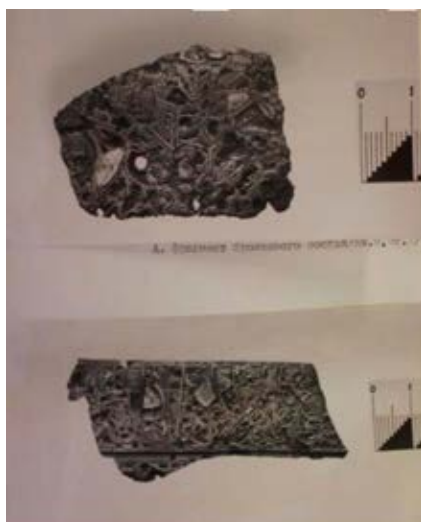
Poluboyarinova M.D., excavation LVIII (1980)



1. Plan of excavation LVIII



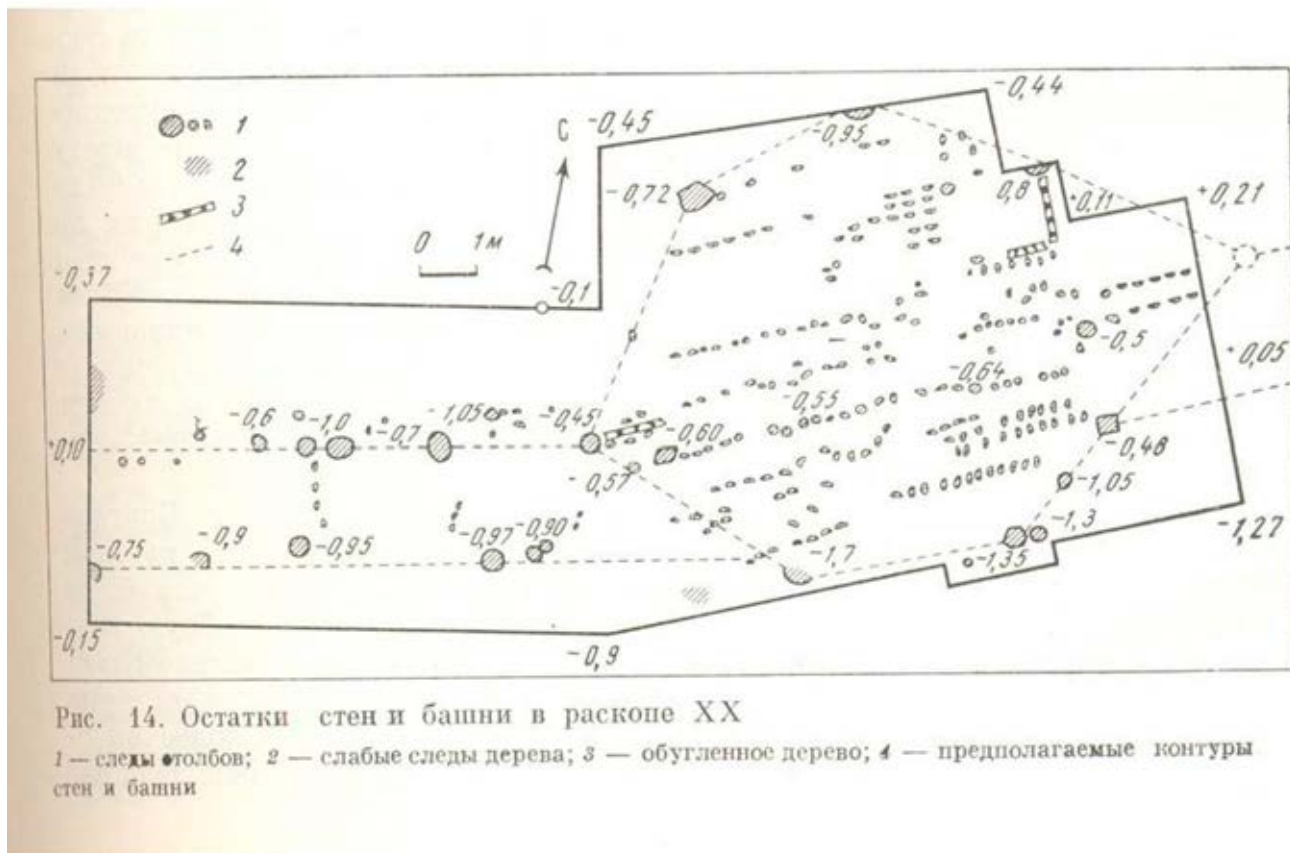
2. Cross section of excavation LVIII with structures in the vicinity of rampart



3. Findings of the 13th century from excavation LVIII

Fortifications of Bolgar Site at southern gates of the 14th-15th centuries

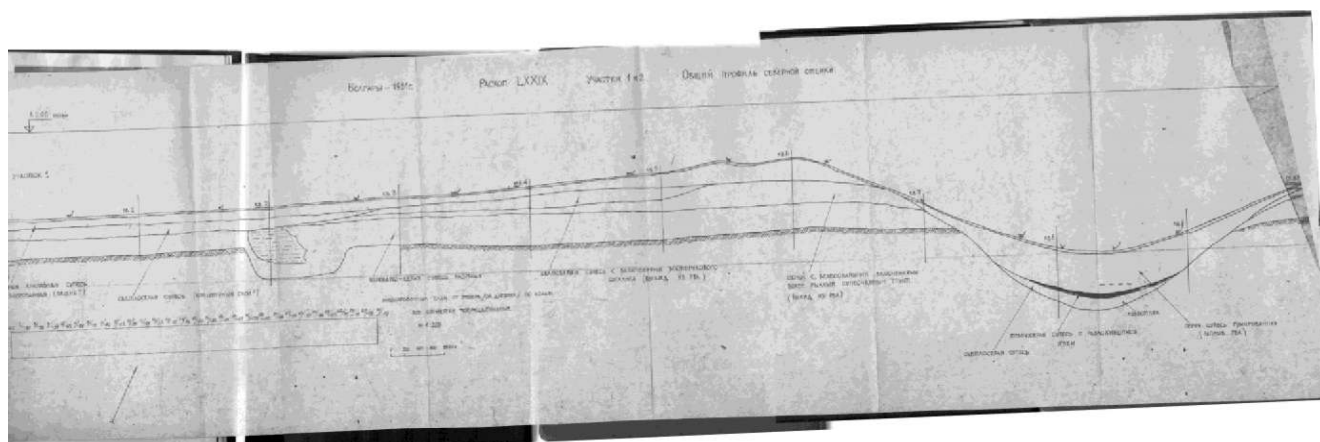
Krasnov Yu.A., excavation XX (1967)



1. Remains of walls and southern tower (Greater Rampart). Excavation XX

Fortifications of the 14th-15th centuries

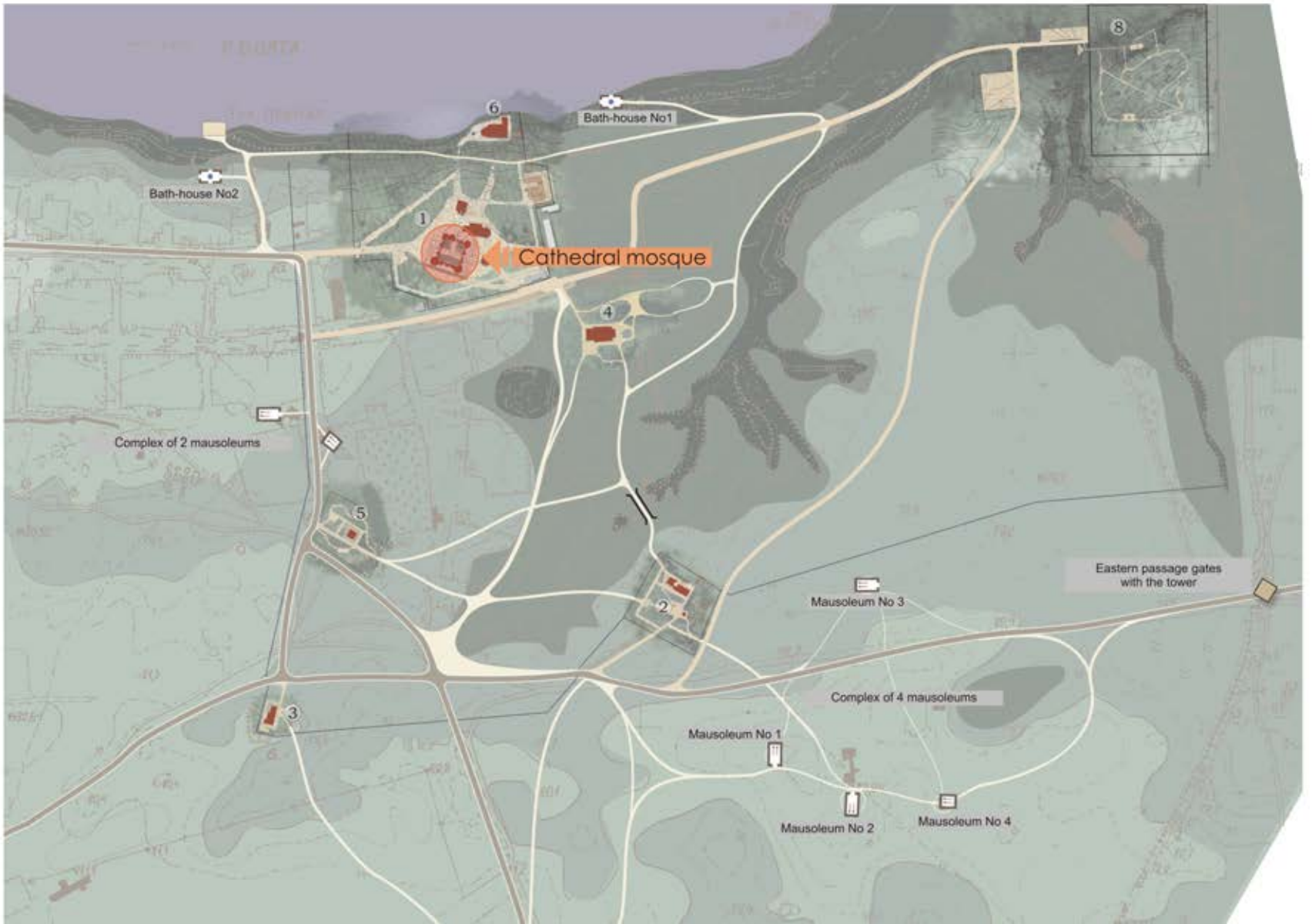
Khlebnikova T.A., The Small Town at Bolgar Site of the 14th-15th centuries.
Excavation LXXIX (1981)



1. Cross section of Excavation LXXIX with rampart and moat sections of the Small Town at Bolgar Site of the 14th-15th centuries



2. Photos of moat and rampart sections of the Small Town at Bolgar Site of the 14th-15th centuries



2. Cathedral Mosque ("Quadrangle") and Great Minaret XIII-XIV centuries.

The Cathedral Mosque represents the first and only preserved architectural building of the early Golden Horde period in the town of Bolgar.

This is the main building of the complex that formed an ensemble of public center of Bolgar in XIII-XIV centuries, which included Khan's Palace, East and North mausoleums, known as "St. Nikolas Church" and "Monastic Cellar".

Nowadays, the building appears as ruins of walls, corner towers, bases of the portal and foundations of columns, and the Big minaret, recreated based on the project in 2000.

It was studied by archaeological excavations in 1892, 1915, 1946. Conservation works were carried out in 1964-1966, 2003-2005.

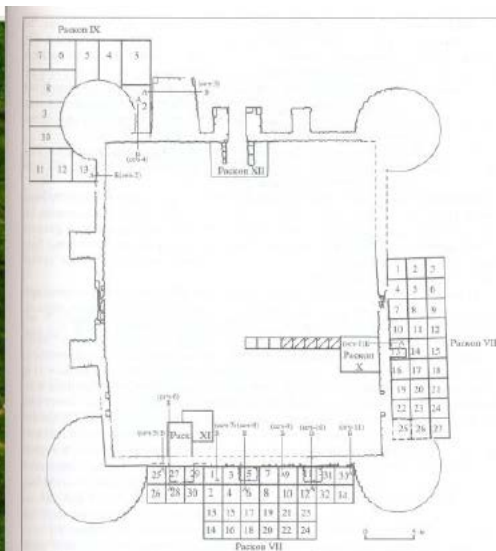


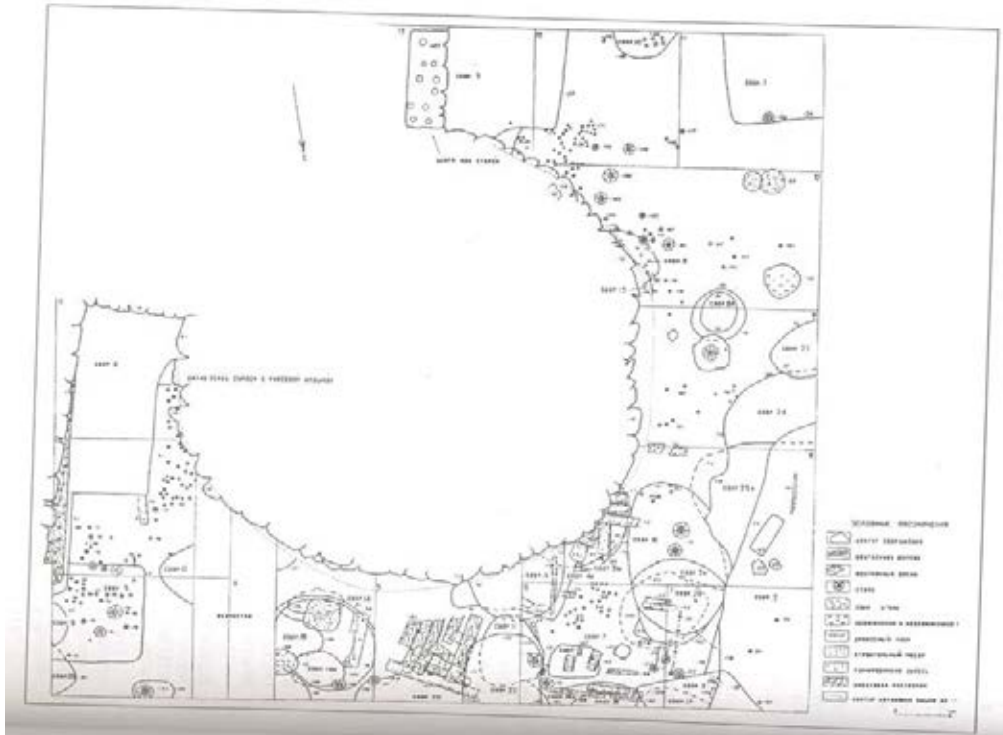
Рис. 76. Сводный план раскопок 1965 г. (Савинов А. П., Воскресенский А. С. Отчет о раскопках городища Великие Болгары в 1965 г. М., 1966 // ОИИ ВА АН, Д. П-1, № 301а, л. 26)

1. General view



А.П. Савинов на раскопках Голубиной мечети. Фото 1966 г. сс

Photo 3 and 4. Excavations of 1964-1966 years.



5. Plan of the excavation X

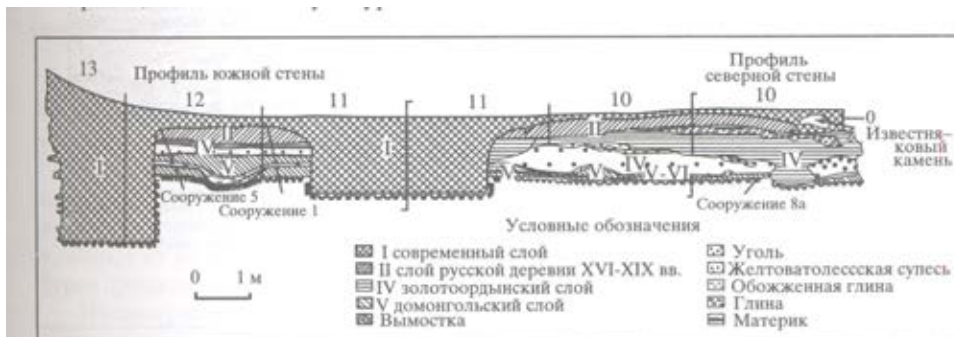


Рис. 80. Раскоп IX. Профиль культурных напластований (Смирнов А.П., Воскресенский А.С. Отчет о раскопках городища Великие Болгары в 1965 г. М., 1966 // ОПИ ИА АН. Д. Р-1. № 3011а. Л. 29)

6. Cross section of the excavation IX

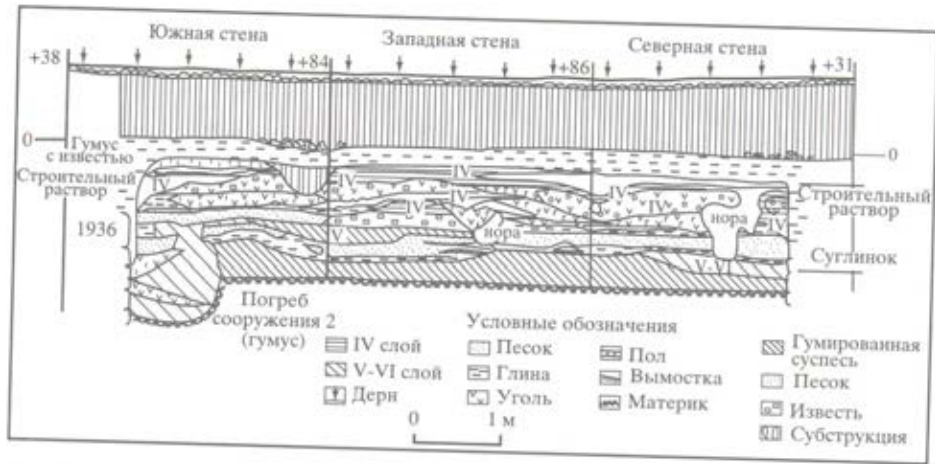


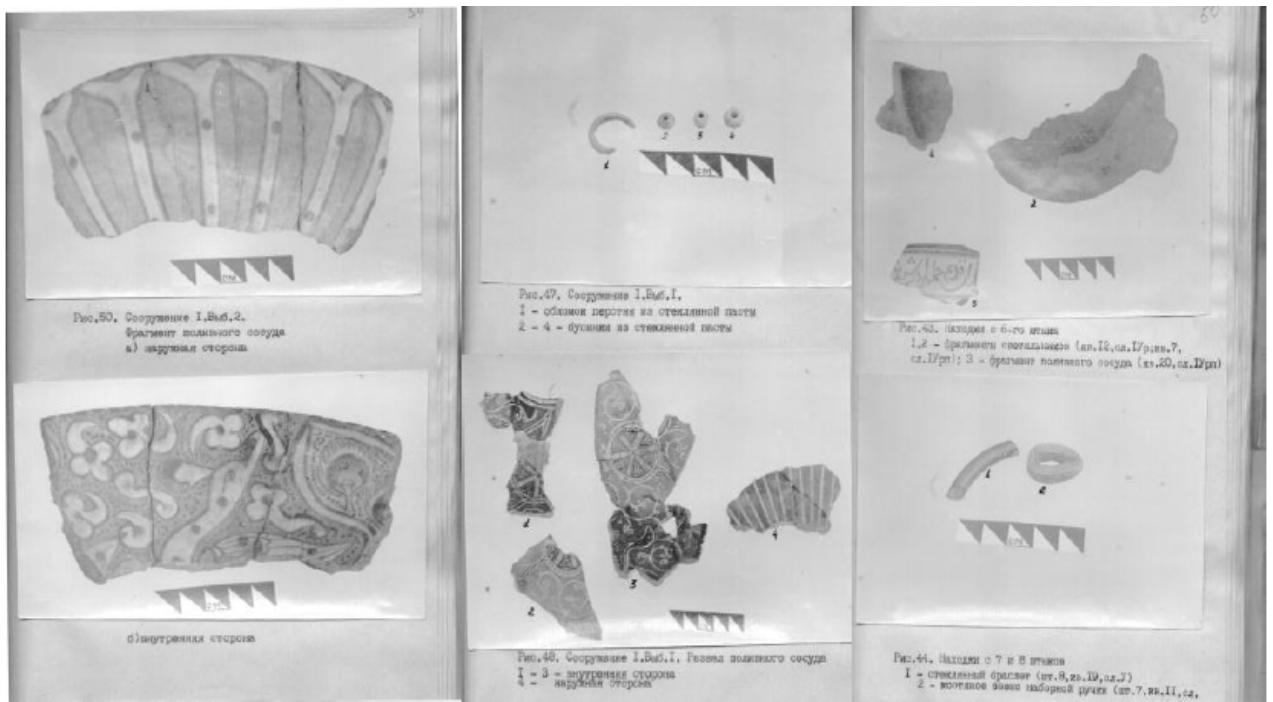
Рис. 81. Профиль стенок раскопа X (Смирнов А.П., Воскресенский А.С. Отчет о раскопках городища Великие Болгары в 1965 г. М., 1966 // ОПИ ИА АН. Д. Р-1. № 3011а. Л. 29)

7. Cross section of the excavation X



Рис. 82. План раскопа XI и профиль его южной стенки (Смирнов А.П., Воскресенский А.С. Отчет о раскопках городища Великие Болгары в 1965 г. М., 1966 // ОПИ ИА АН. Д. Р-1. № 3011а. Л. 30а)

8. Cross section of the excavation XI



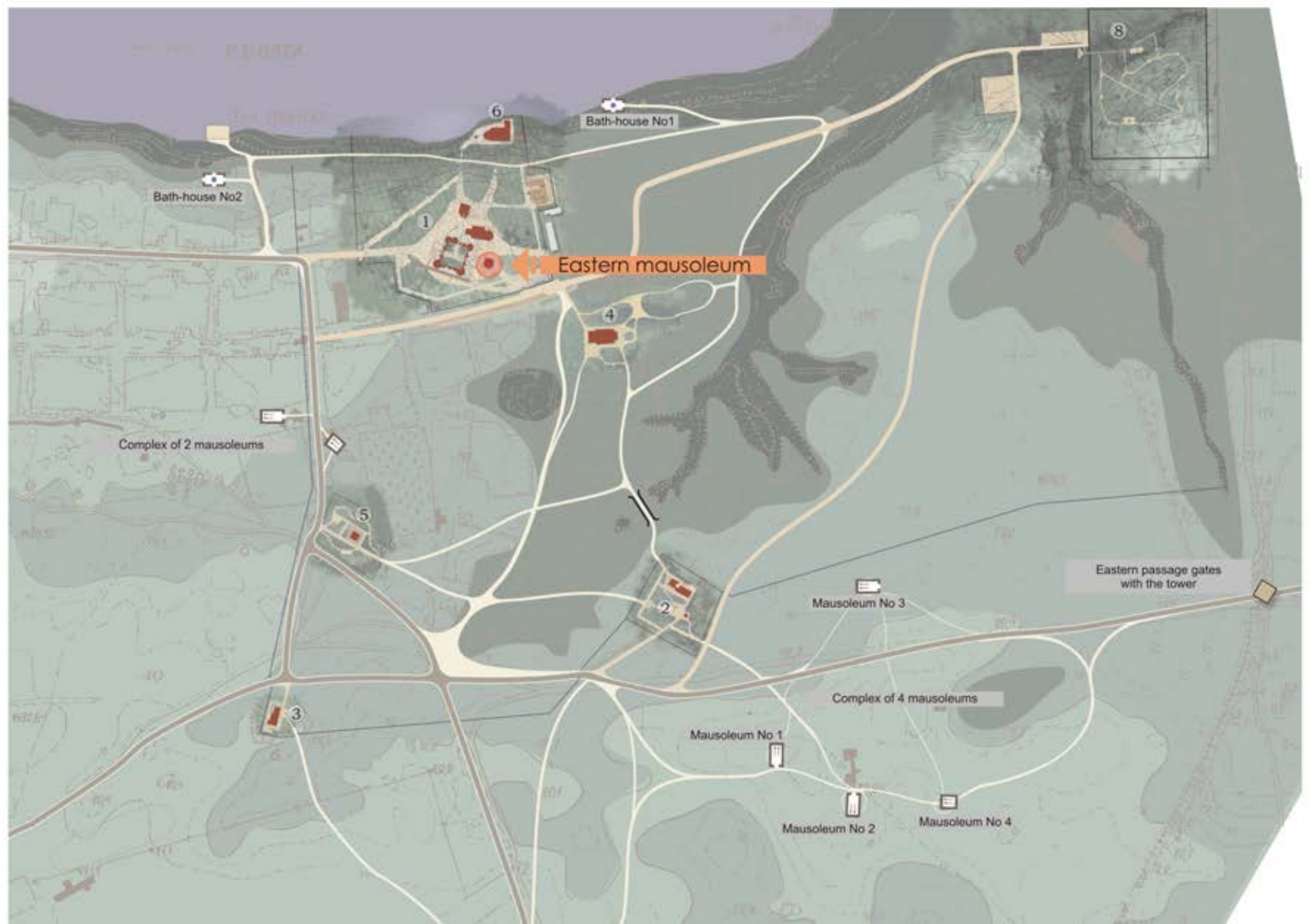
9. Findings of XI-XIV centuries from the excavation XCVI in 1985



10. Architectural details of the Cathedral Mosque XIII-XIV centuries







3. Eastern Mausoleum («St. Nikolas Church») XIV century.

Eastern Mausoleum is located in the northern part of the complex, opposite the eastern façade of the Cathedral Mosque. It was erected in the 1330-s out of white stone (limestone and tufa) according to the type of oriental medieval Muslim burial vaults with a remote portal - durbe mausoleums. In the early XVIII century it was turned into a Russian Church of St. Nikolas.

Construction of the mausoleum is associated with completion of the second reconstruction of the Cathedral Mosque and accomplishment of the central area of Bolgar. The mausoleum was a family tomb of a Bolgar noble family – The Burashbeks.

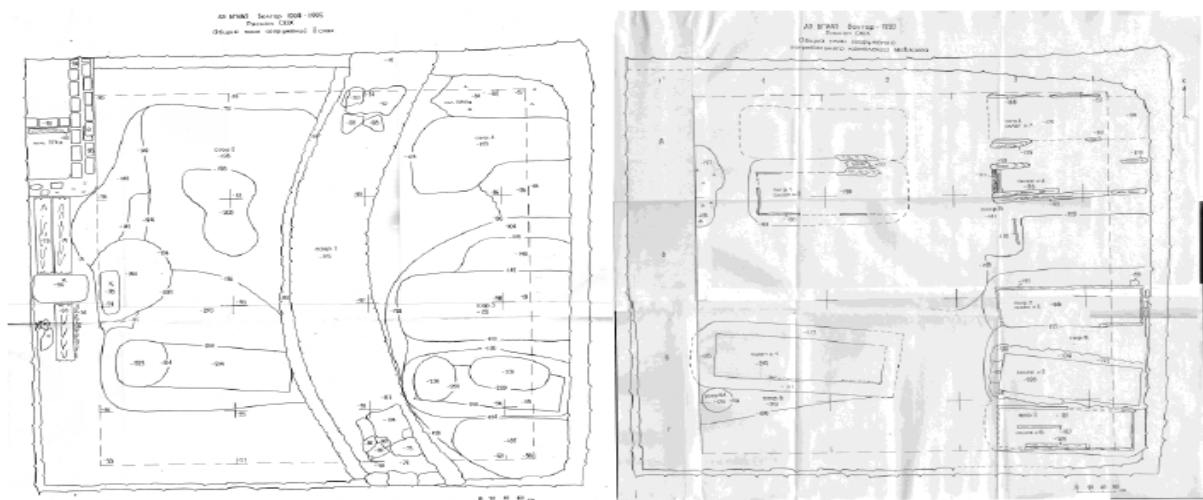
It was studied by archaeological excavations in 1964-1966 and in 1991. In 1967-1968 the Eastern Mausoleum was fragmentarily restored.



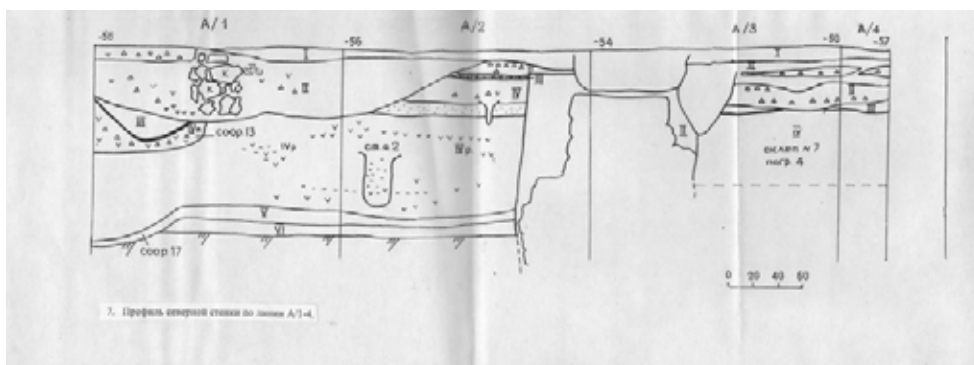
1. General view of the Eastern Mausoleum



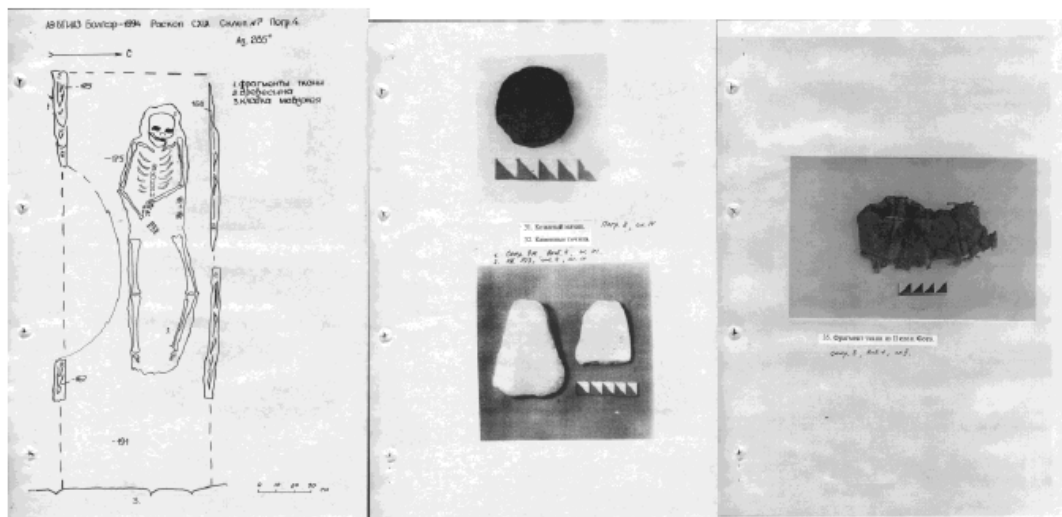
2. Excavation plan CXIX



3. Excavations plan CXIX of the Eastern Mausoleum

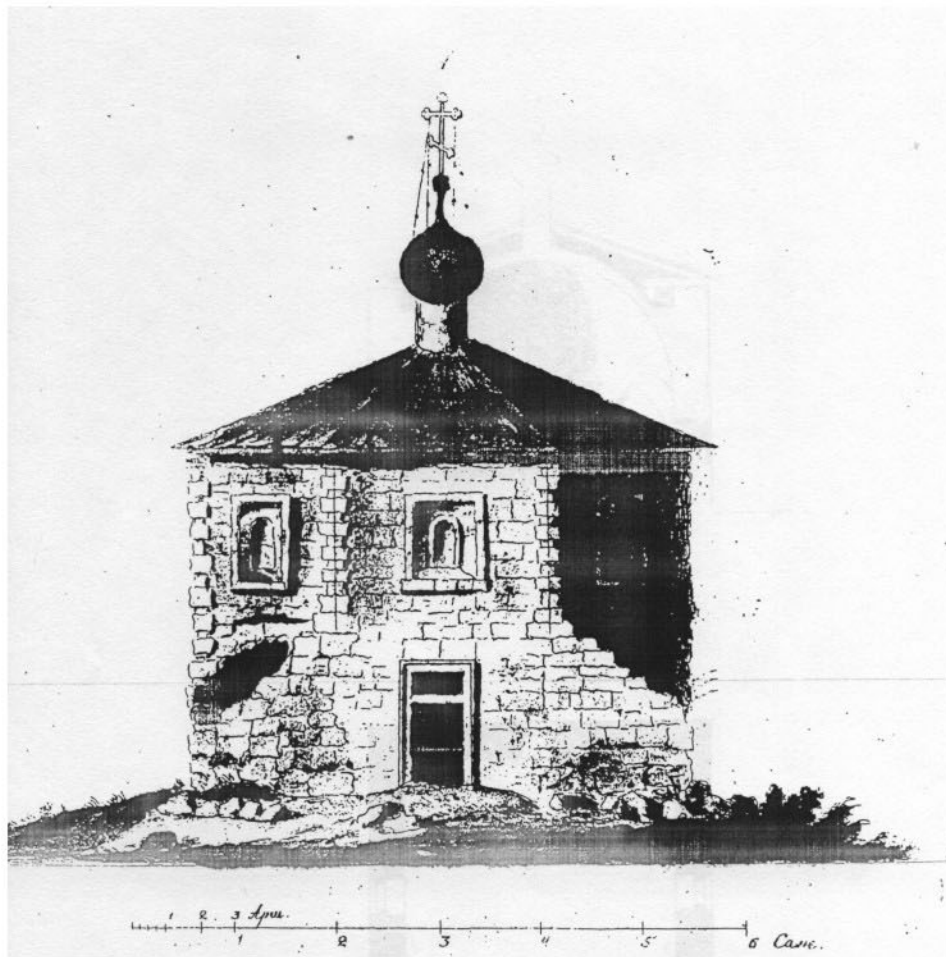


4. Cross-section of excavation CXIX in the Eastern Mausoleum



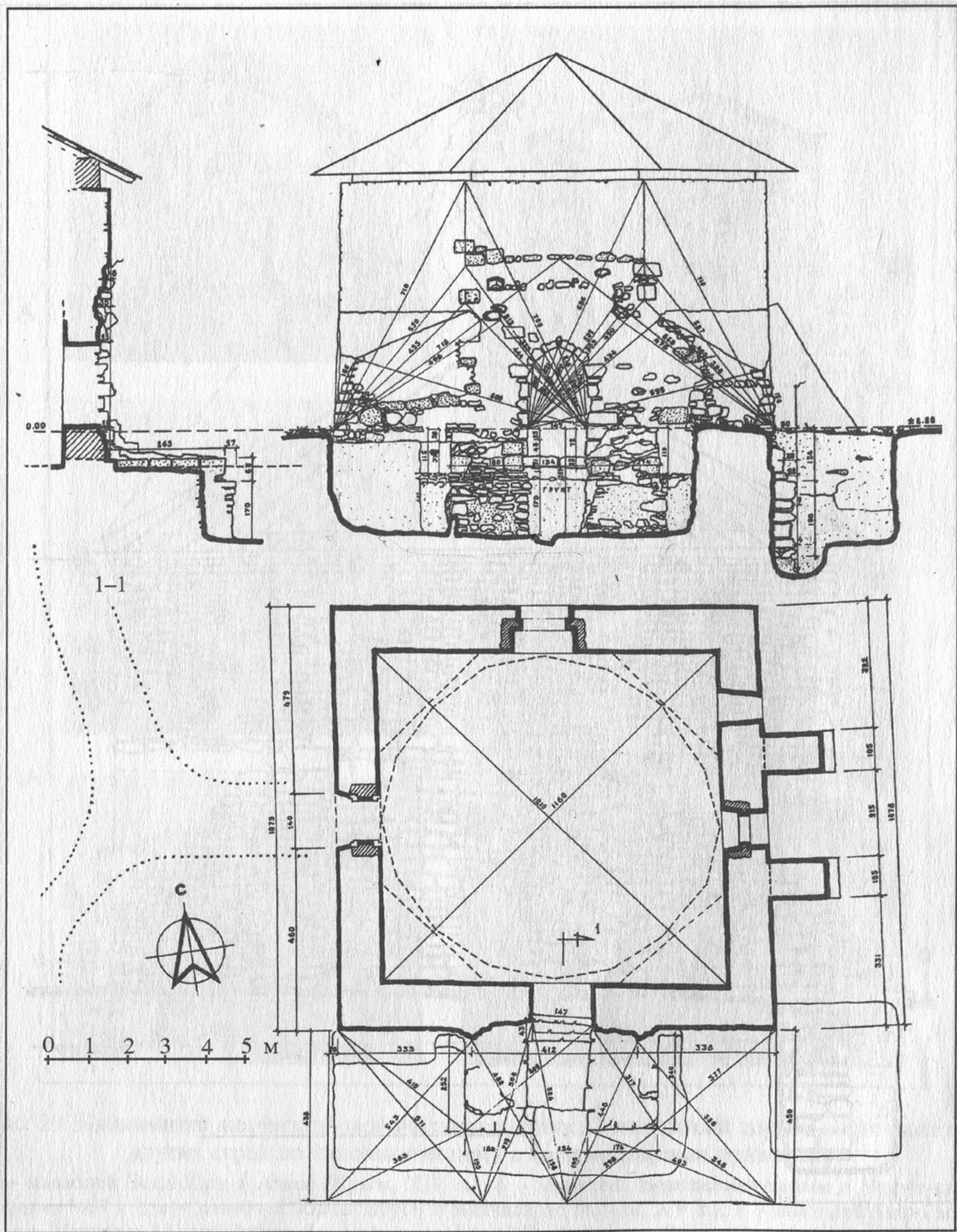
5. Burial places of the XIV century in the excavation CXIX

6. Findings of the XIII- XIV centuries from the excavation CXIX



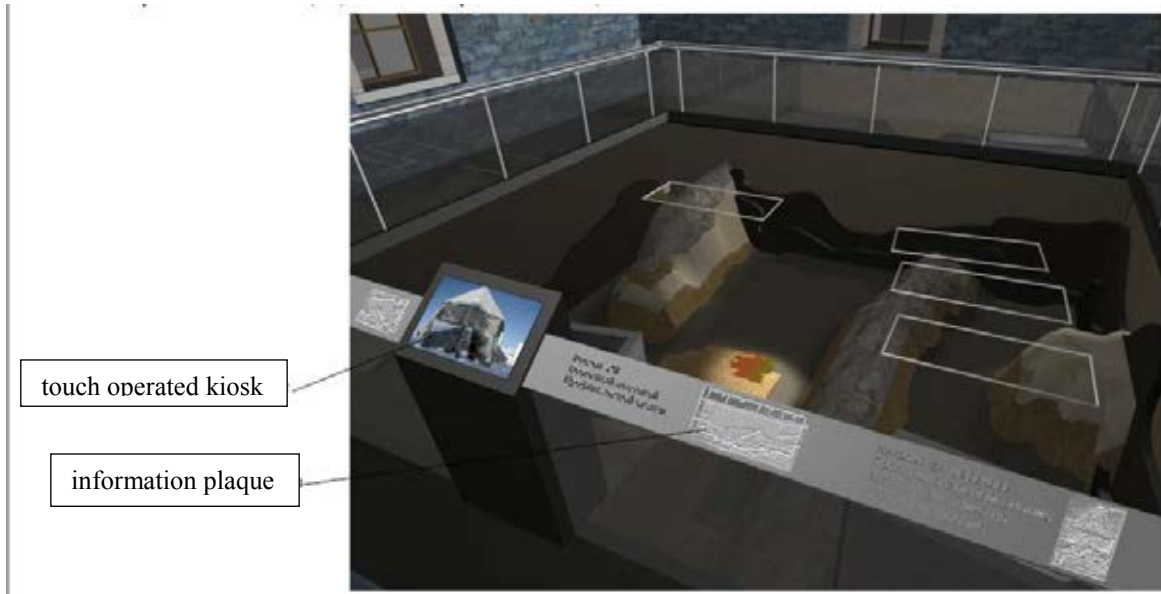
Drawing of arch. A. Shmit, 1827





.Nikolsky church.Measurement of the plan of the southern facade after archaeological opening of the adjoining build-on

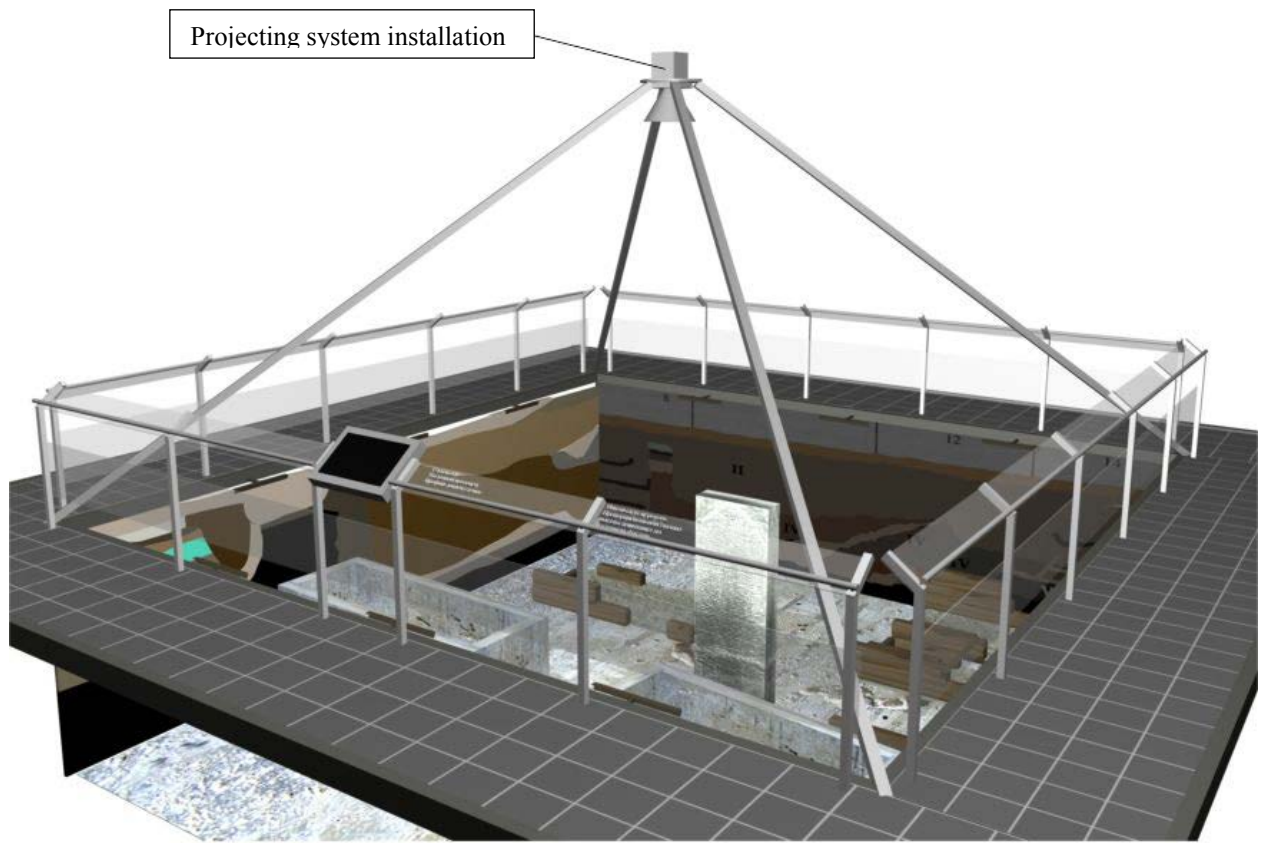
Artistic concept of the draft project for the Eastern mausoleum exposition



Interactive program in the touch operated kiosk shows the found exponents and handles the system of the diggings computer reconstruction projection, creating the archaeological “time machine”.

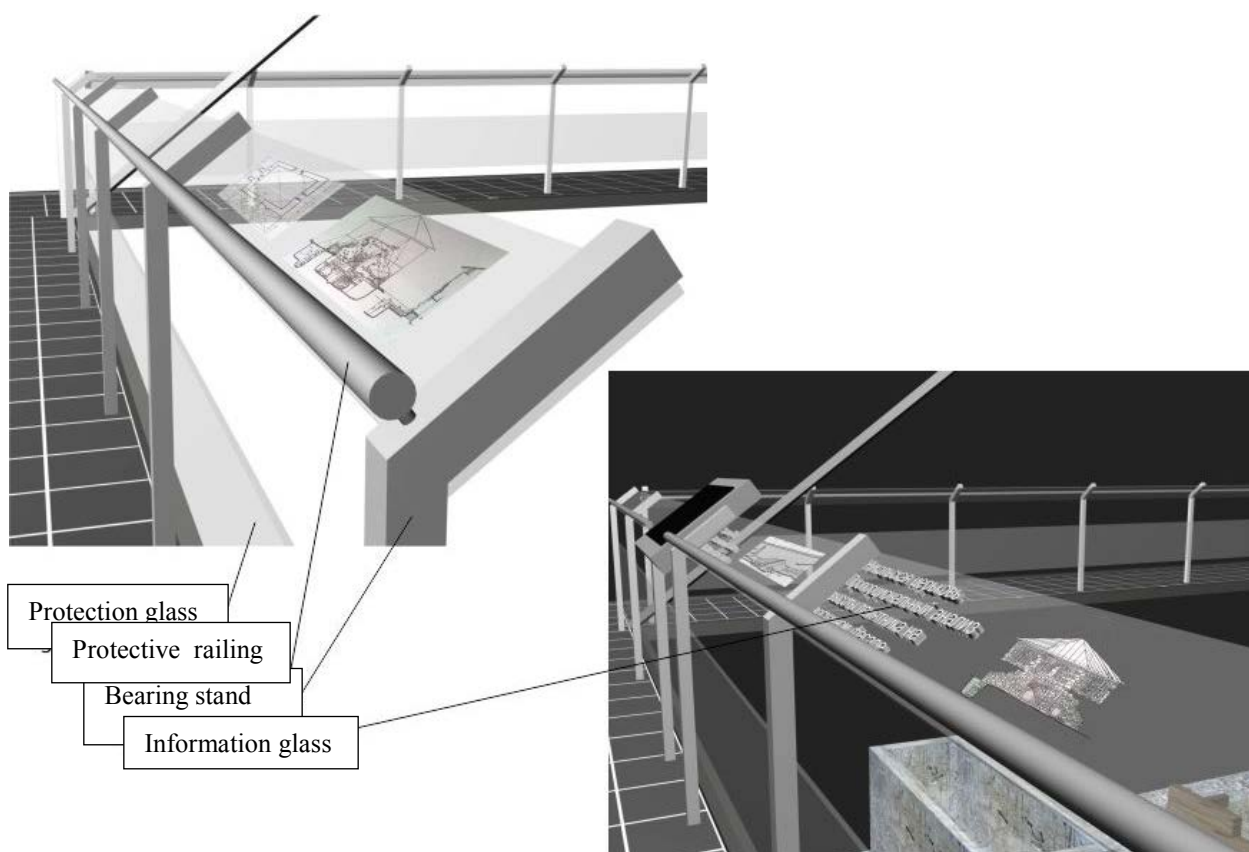
The highlighting by layers is stipulated for the cultural layers.

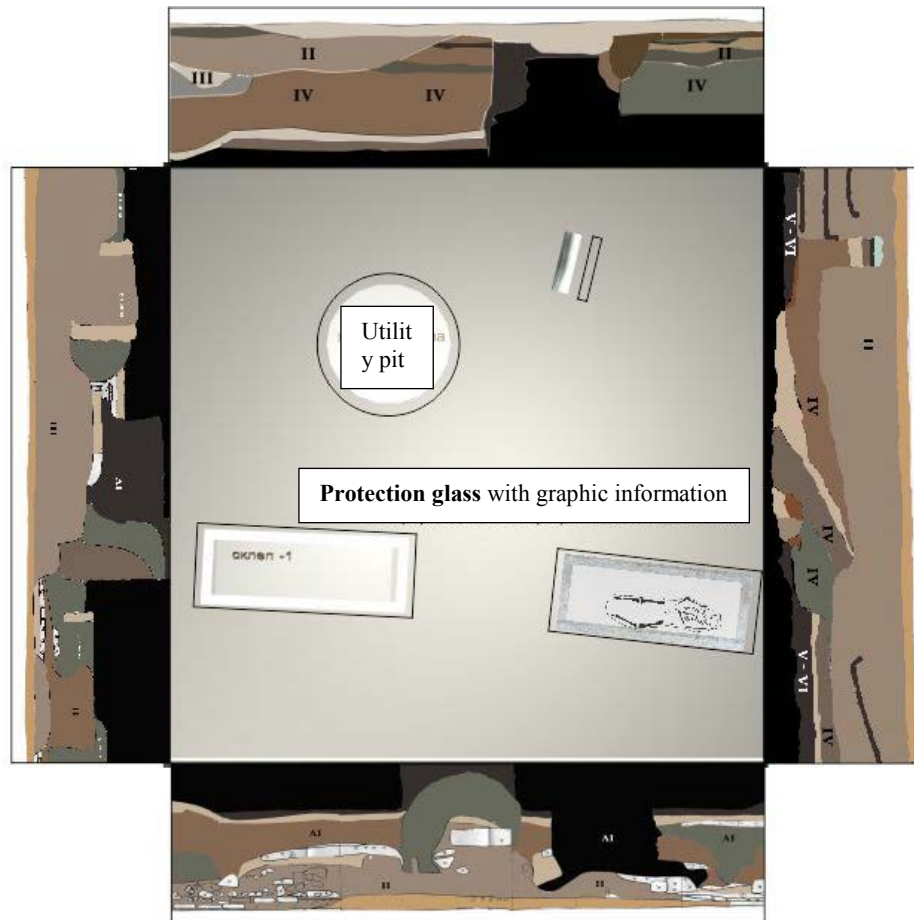
The proposed means of the Eastern Mausoleum museumification will allow not only to have a look at the site of the archaeological digging and study the findings, but to trace the whole history of Bolgar site on the example of a single cultural-historical object .



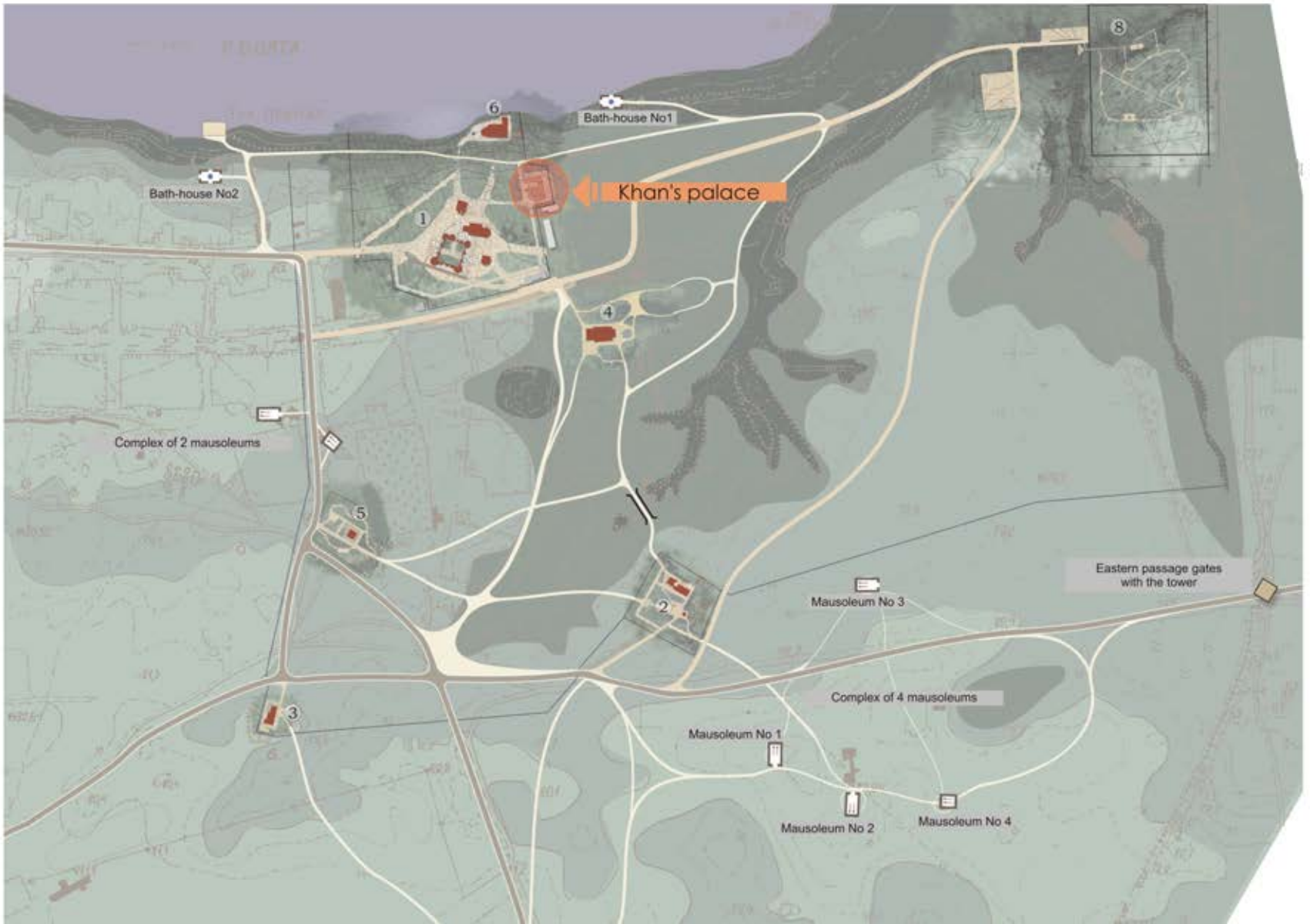
Draft project of the **Eastern Mausoleum** divisions. General view without cupolas space

Draft project of information-navigation system of the museum of **Eastern mausoleum**,
information railing





Draft project of information-navigation system of the museum of **Eastern mausoleum**, protective window for the remaining objects

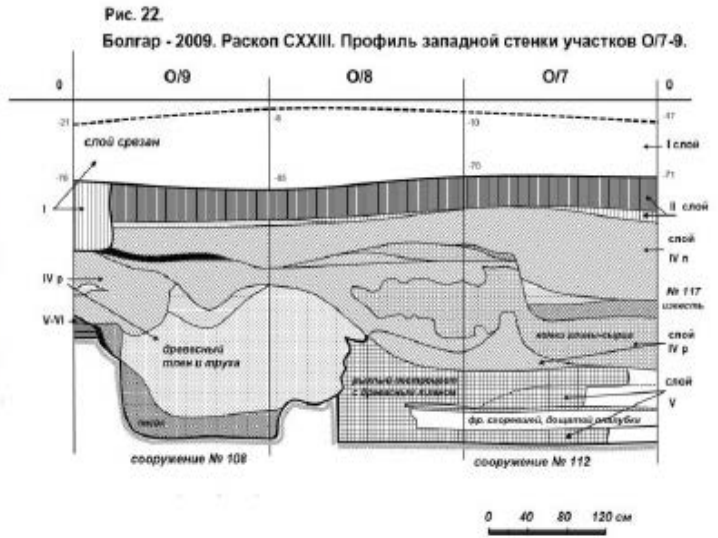
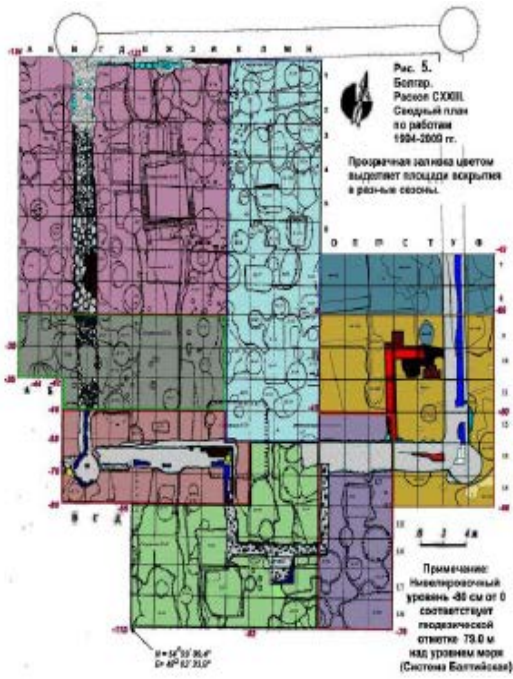


4. Building with towers ("Khan Palace») XIII century (ruins)

Brick and stone monumental building with corner towers pylons. In the plan - a rectangle (inside dimensions 24x29 meters). It is located on the edge of the upper plateau of the settlement, 90-100 m to the north-east of the Cathedral Mosque. It has been examined intermittently since 1994, more than 1,000 sq.m. have been uncovered. Accumulated excavation material allows to correlate the start of its construction with the mid XIII century. It has a rich set of findings, 30% of the numismatic collection is represented by coins from 1240-1259.



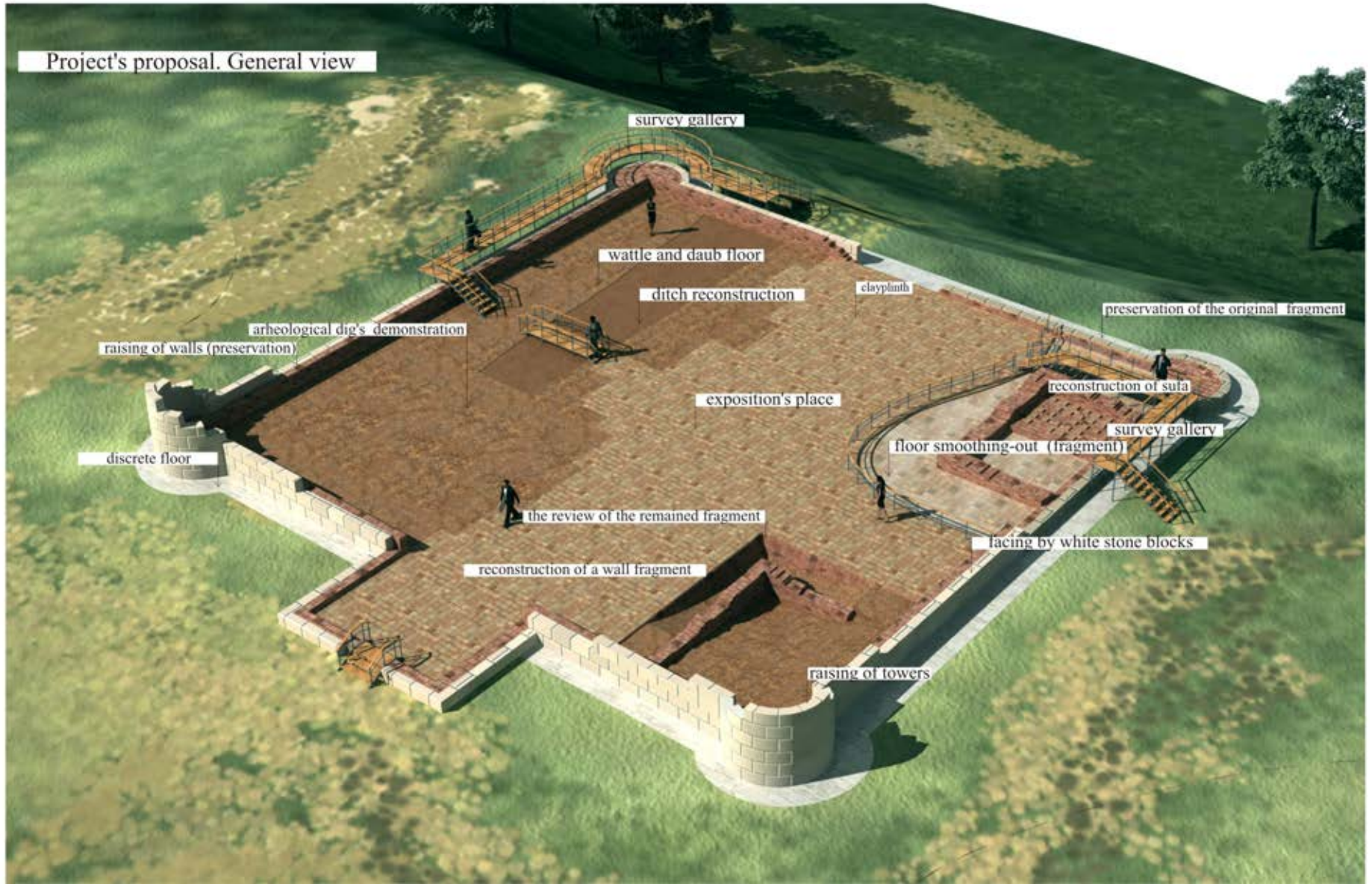
1. General view

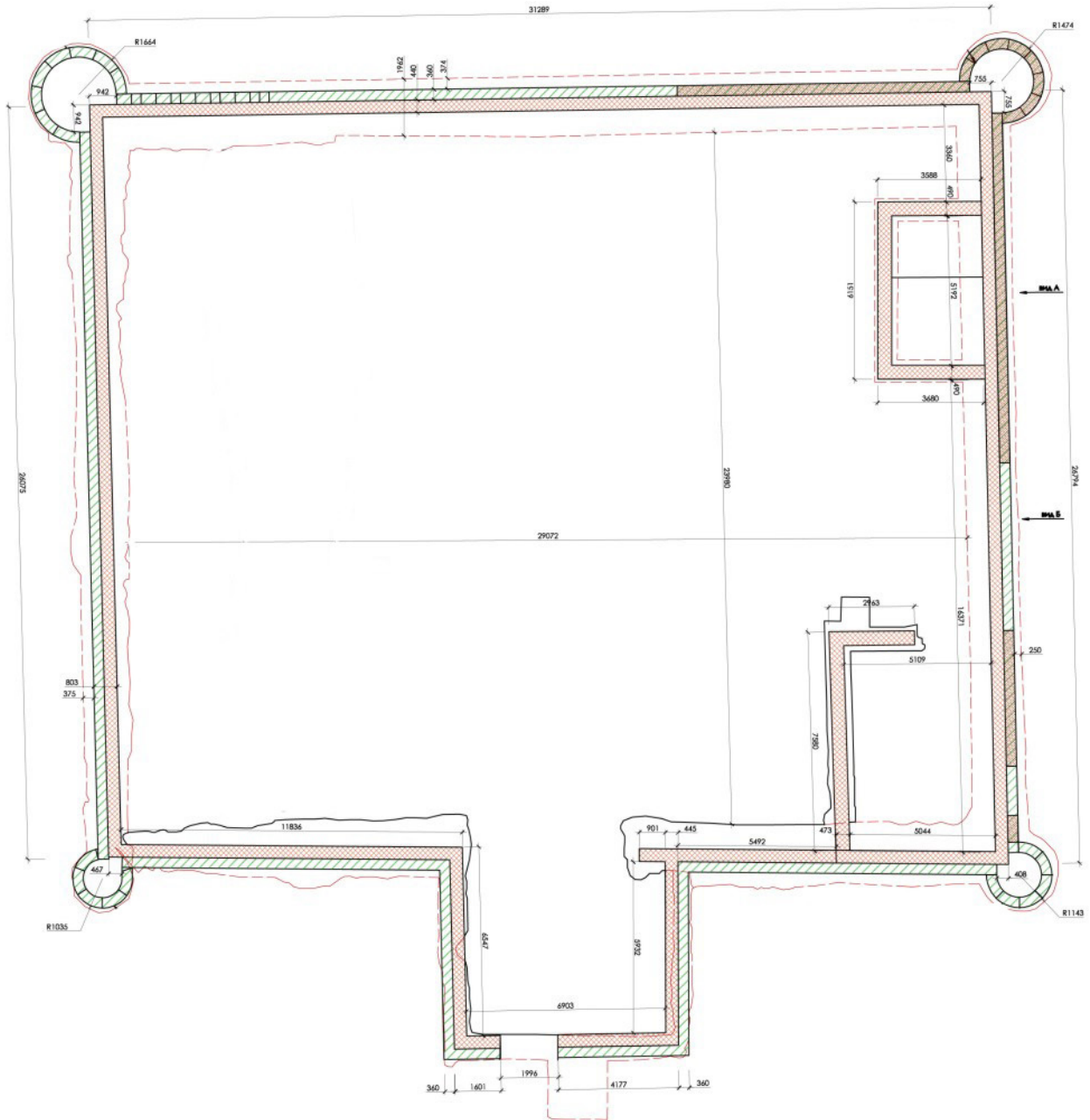


2. Composite excavations' plan (1994-2009) 3. Cross-section of excavation CXXIII



4. Findings from the excavation CXXIII, 2009.







12/09/2012
Khan's palace

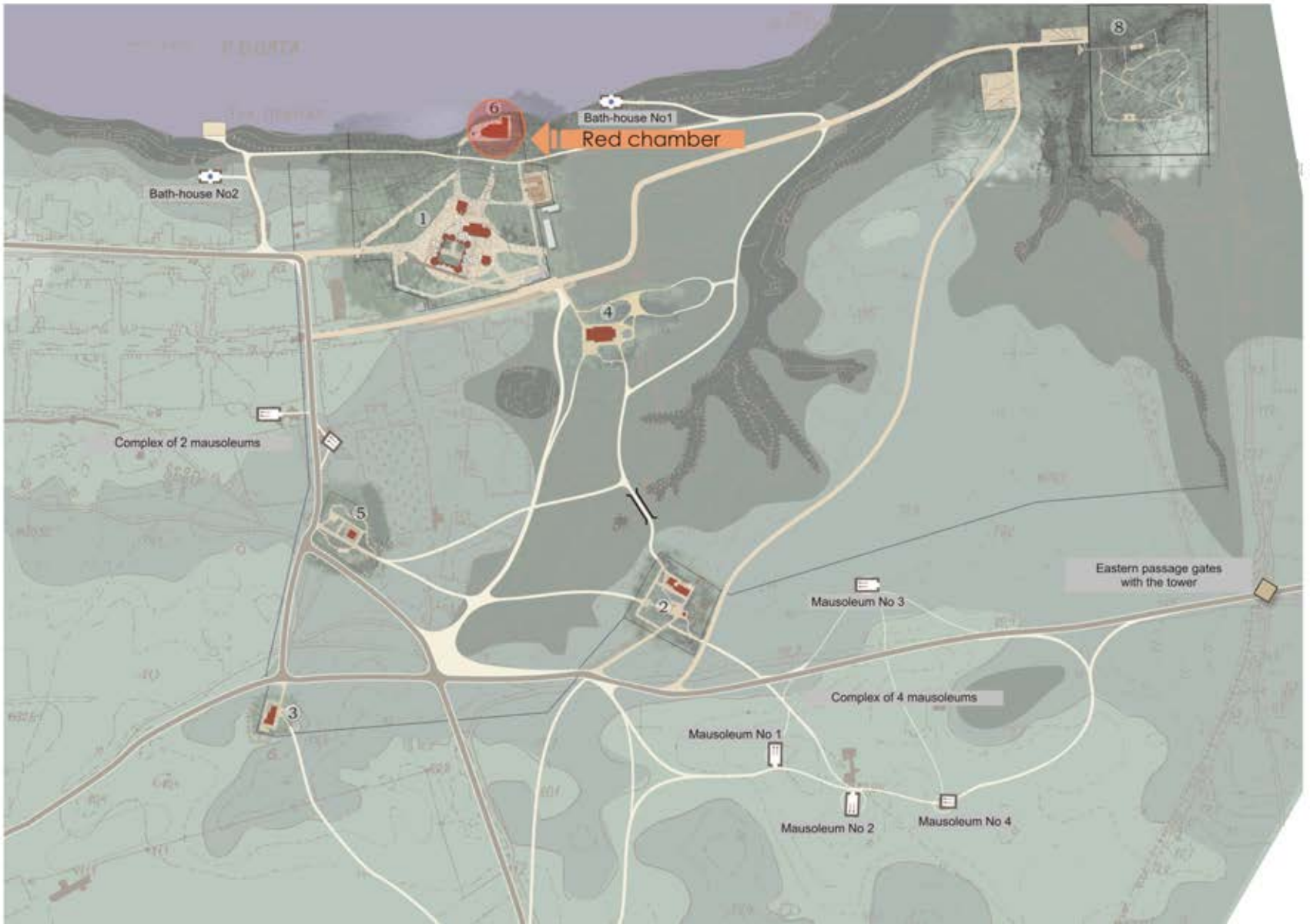


12/09/2012
Khan's palace



12/09/2012
Khan's palace





5. Red chamber XIV c (ruins)

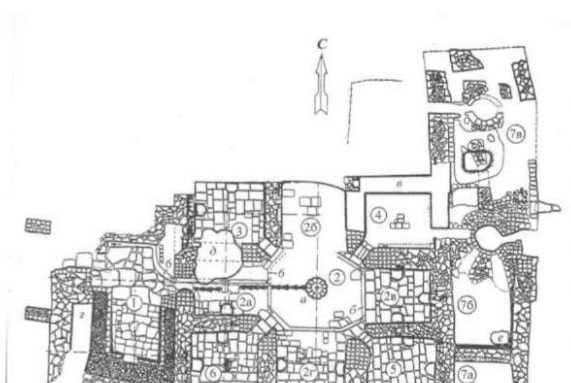
Red chamber is located at the foot of the left riverside of the river Volga, lower than the complex of Cathedral Mosque. It was built in XIV c. Many details have remained intact: the building foundation and the basis of walls at the height of 1,5-2 meters, the system of the under floor heating, water pipe and sewage systems, stone bowls of water reservoirs, etc. The building is I-shaped in plan. Red chamber represents the remains of the ancient bathhouse, which was called “red” owing to red coloured interior walls. Nowadays the Red chamber is hidden under the ground.

Red chamber is the evidence of well-developed building technique of Volga Bulgarians and the high level of accomplishment in the capital’s central part.

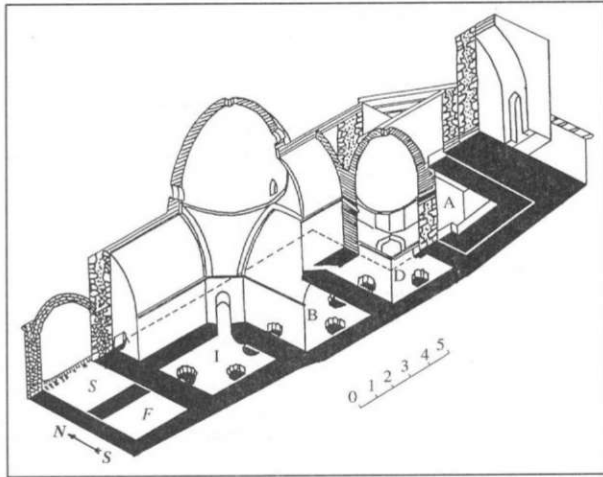
Red chamber was examined by archeologists in 1938-1940 and later was conserved (was covered with soil and was fenced with stone dam from the river).



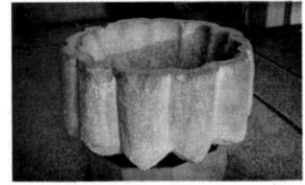
1. Interior



2. General plan

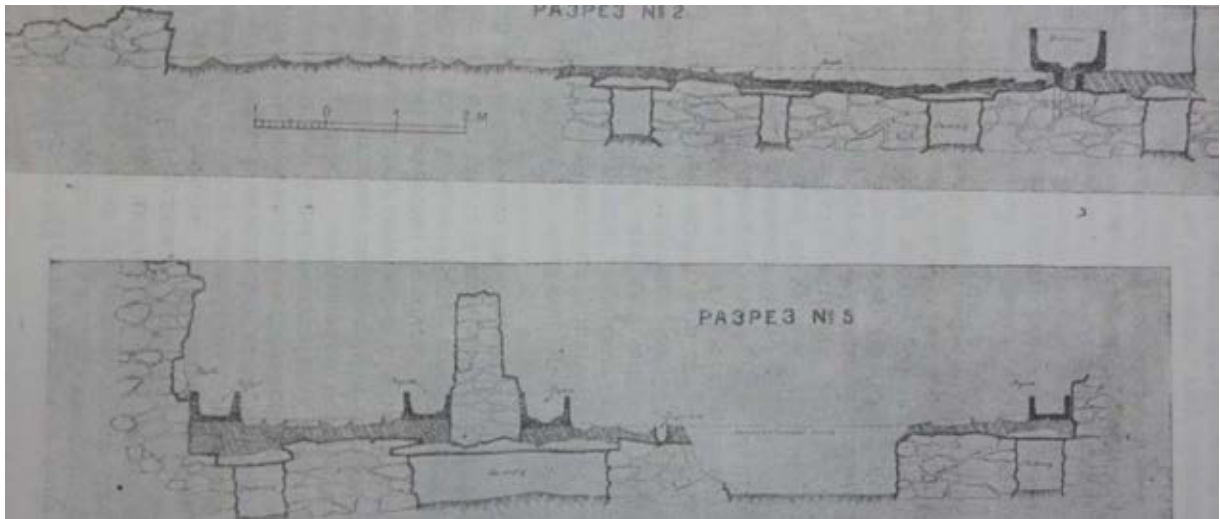


Аксометрическое сечение Красной палаты (авторы: А.П. Смирнов, Н.Ф. Калинин?) (Смирнов А.П. Отчет Болгарского отряда Куйбышевской экспедиции 1940 года. Л. 23 // АОА ГИМ. Оп. № 135. Д. № 5. Л. 63)



3. Axonometrical section

4. Architectural constructions

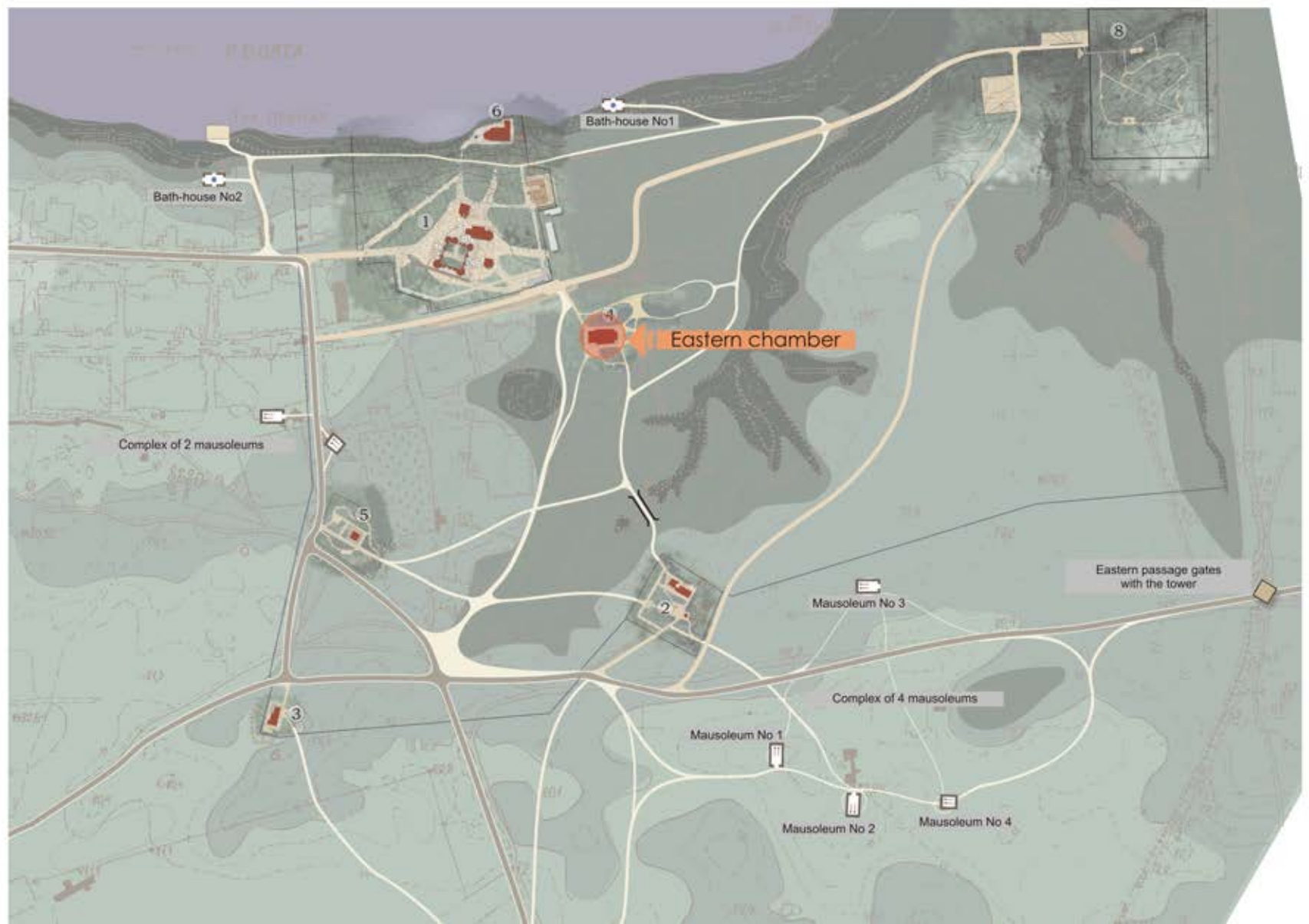


5. Sections No 2 and No 5



Russiansauna (Redchamber) in Bolgar. In the upper part- the view to the fountain from the corner room ,
in the lower part – the eastern part of the Russian sauna.

Research of Prof A.P.Smirnov



6. Eastern chamber («Khan's chambers and a bathhouse») XIV c. (ruins)

Eastern chamber is located in about 200 meters south-east from the Eastern mausoleum. It was built in the middle of the XIII – at the beginning of the XIV cc. This construction has some traces of destruction, caused by stones laying-in from ancient ruins at the end of XIX c. The general building plan resembles the Red and, especially, White chambers. Eastern Chamber's sizes are 39x19 m. Armored masonry of the foundation and basement of building's outer walls are made of large pieces of limestone and the internal blocks of walls are filled with small rubble and macadam. The building represents the remains of the largest and earliest public bathhouse of Bolgar.

Eastern chamber was examined by archeologists in 1984-1991. Conservation work was performed at the end of 1990-s.



1. General view

2. Side view of the Eastern wall

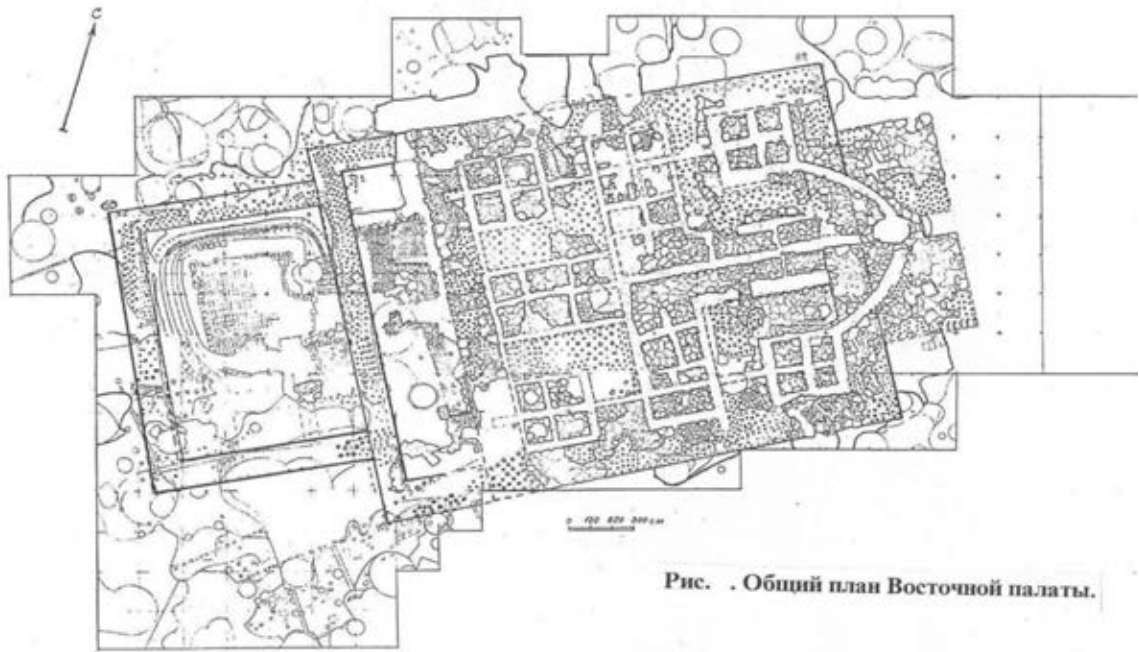


Рис. . Общий план Восточной палаты.

3. General plan of the Eastern chamber

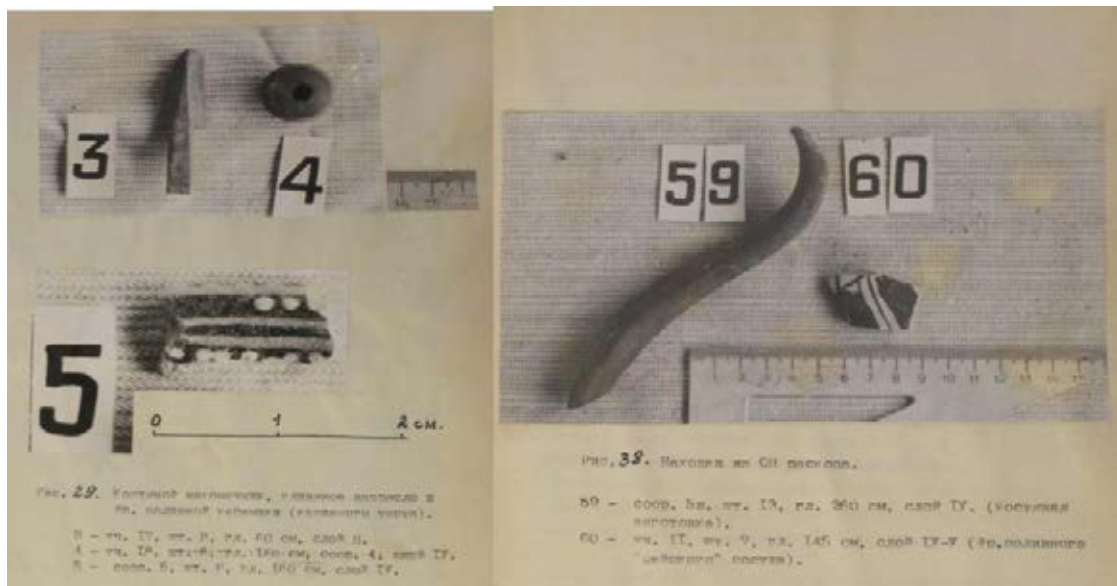
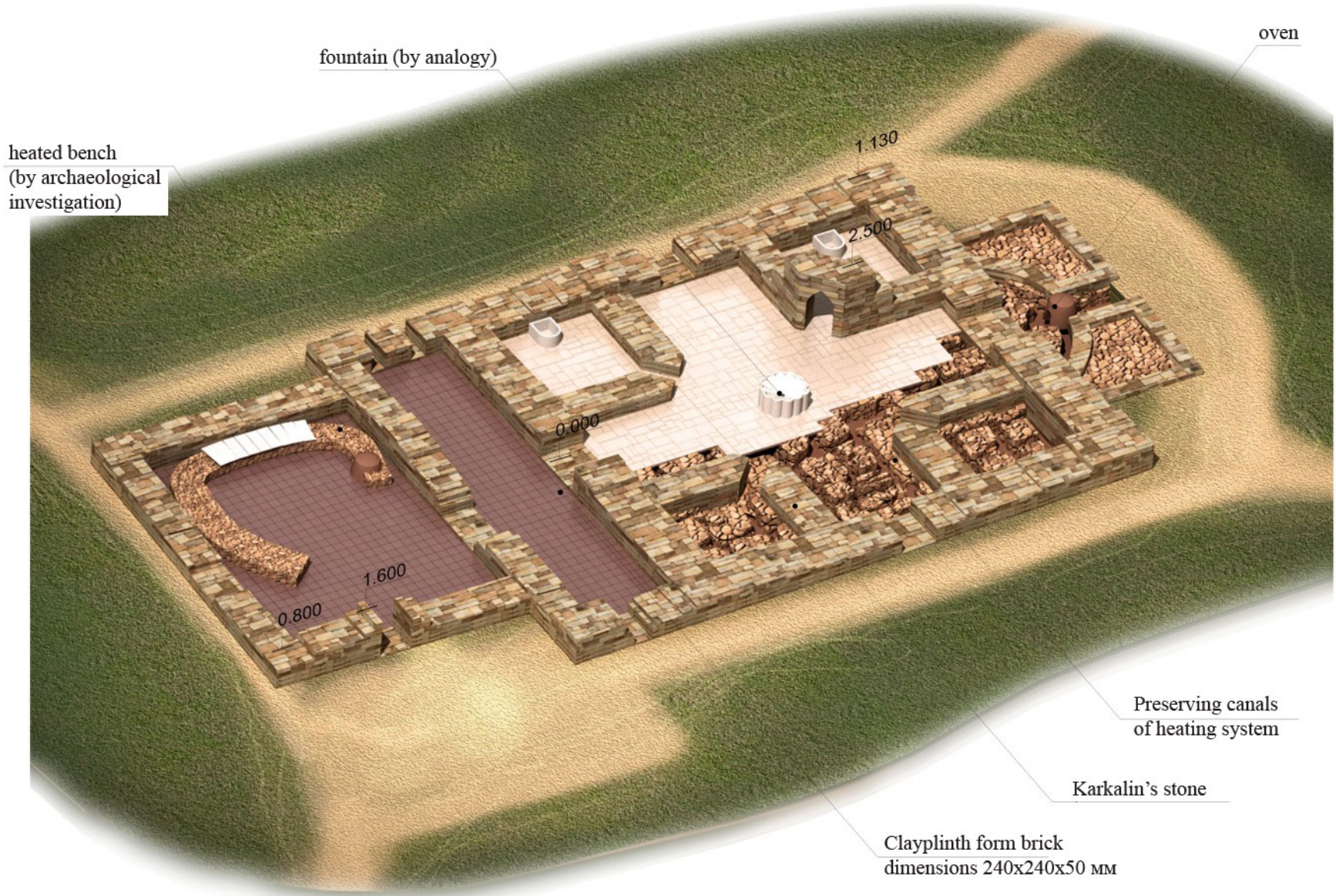


Рис. 29. Угловая колоннада, южная половина в па. восточной палаты (капитолия царя).
 3 - ст. IV, ст. 2, в. 60 см, слой II.
 4 - ст. IV, ст. 2, в. 120 см, слой 4; ст. IV.
 5 - ст. V, ст. 2, в. 120 см, слой IV.

Рис. 30. Находки из СИ павлово.
 59 - ст. V, ст. 13, в. 360 см, слой IV. (восковая напольная плитка).
 60 - ст. IV, ст. 9, в. 145 см, слой IV-V (др. керамика "дальнего" периода).

4. Photos of findings from excavation CX 1990.





fountain (by analogy)

heated bench
(by archaeological
investigation)

oven

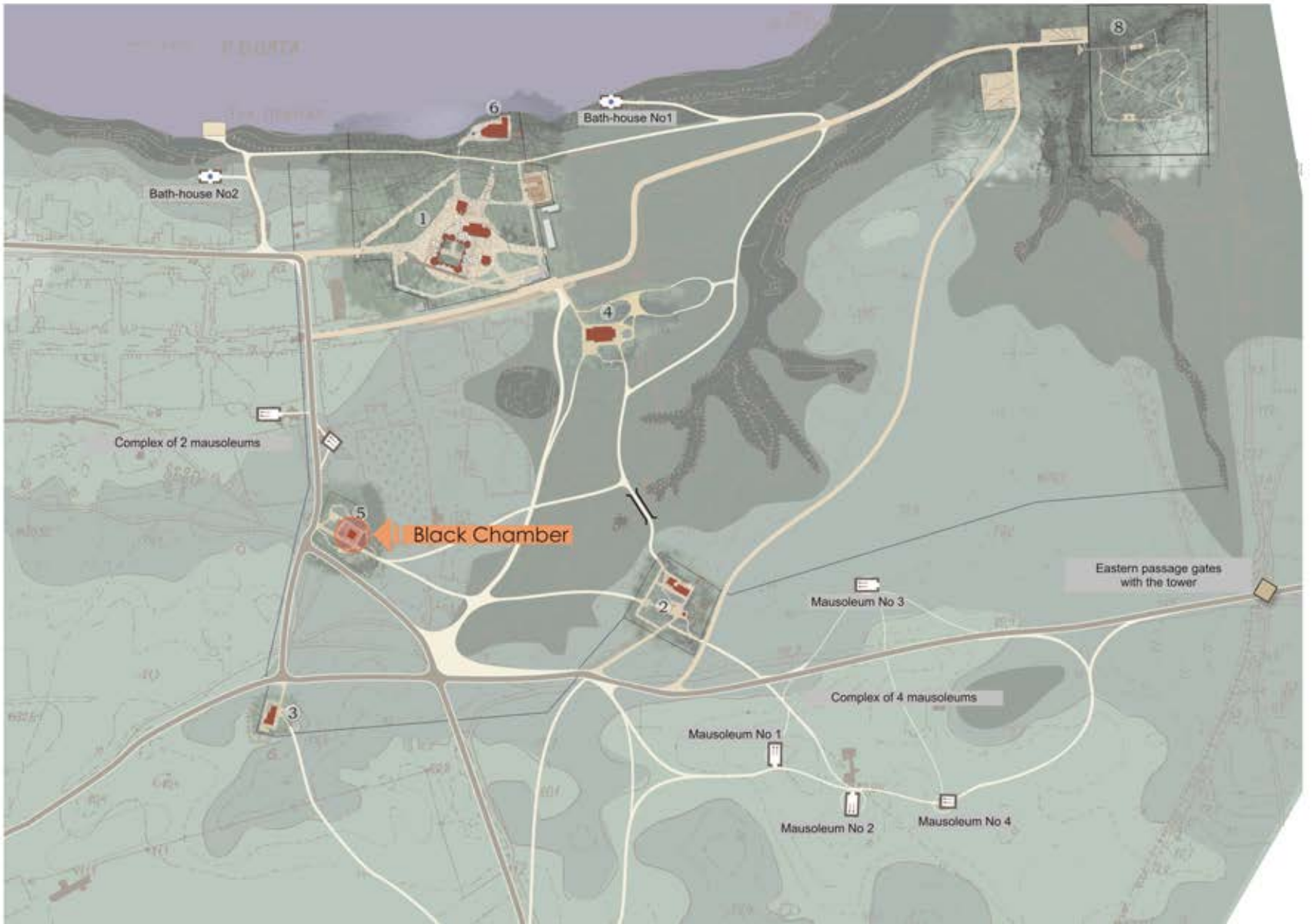
Preserving canals
of heating system

Karkalin's stone

Clayplinth form brick
dimensions 240x240x50 mm

Eastern chamber
12/09/2012





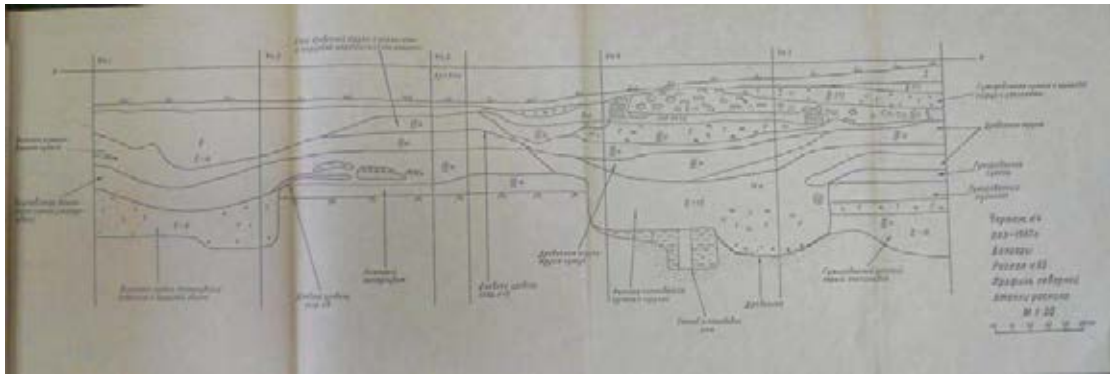
7. Black chamber XIV c.

Black chamber is located in about 400 m to the south of the Cathedral Mosque complex and in about the same distance to the east from the Small town complex. It was built in the middle of the XIV c from the white limestone. A part of central area of the most extensive construction remained intact. Inside the building there was plastered and decorated with alabaster molding fretwork which consisted of shaped rods, stellate rosettes, columns with capitals, stalactite tramp chamfers. The dimensions of the remained quadrangle are 10x10 m. according to the plan, including a gallery of 15-16 m. The black chamber was the Khans' tribunal.

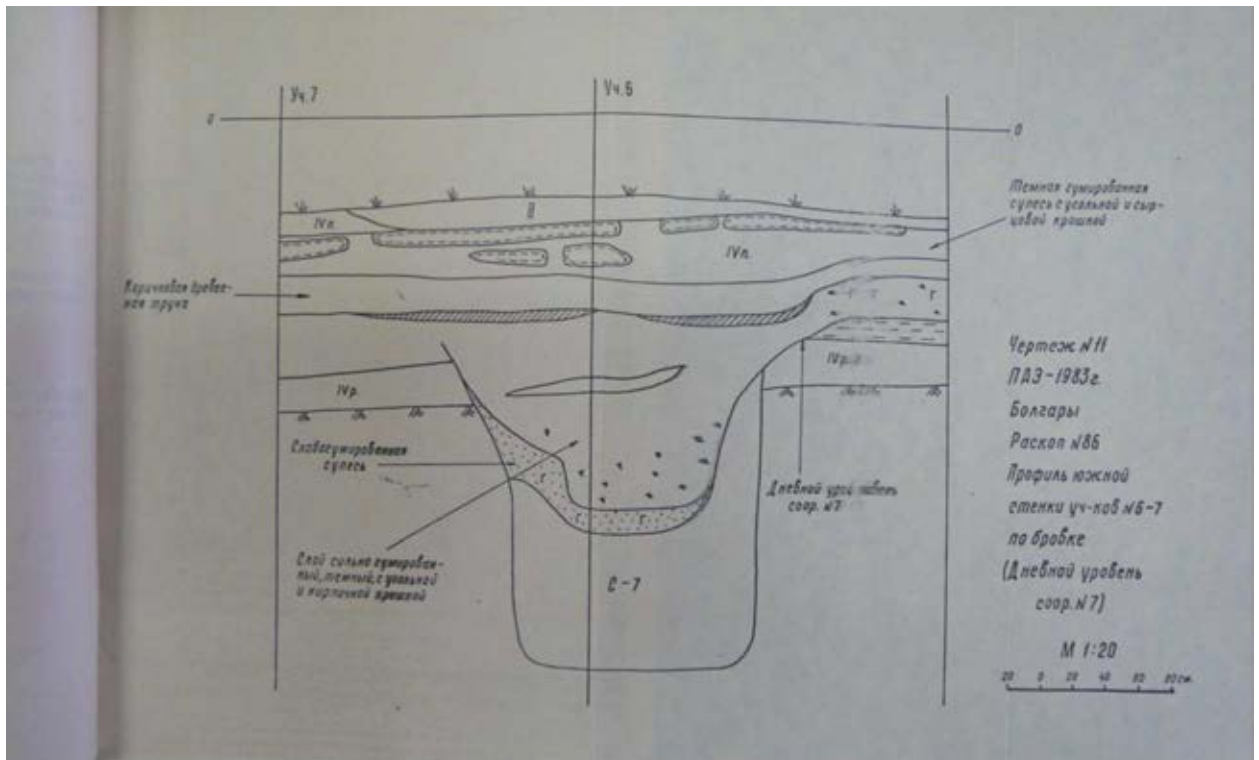
The Black chamber is the unique remained civil construction of XIV c. Archeological research near the Black chamber was carried out in 1957 and 1966. In 1956-1957, in 1977-1984, 1999 the conservation and partial restoration of this monument were performed.



1. General view



2. Cross -section of the excavated North wall LXXXVI 1983.



3. Cross -section of the excavated South wall LXXXVI 1983.







8. White chamber XIVc. (ruins)

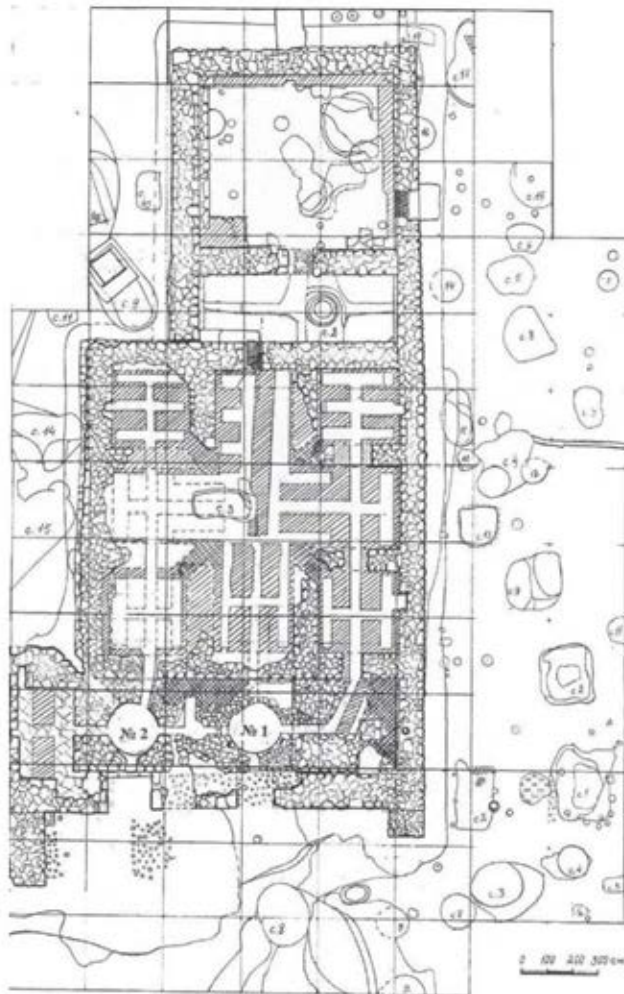
White chamber is located in about 250 meters south-east from the Black chamber. The building was constructed in the 1340-s. Its walls are made of the white stone – limestone with the quadral blocks covering the exterior side, with the backing in thickness of maconry and usual rubble maconry and limestone parget of walls inner surface. The northern part of the building is built from the bricks. The building consists of some different-sized rectangular volumes. Its dimensions are 33x17 m, according to the plan. White chamber was one of the public city bathhouses.

White chamber is the example of Bolgar buildings of XIVc., being constructed as the type of Eastern bathhouses, widespread in the Middle Ages in Central Asia, in Crimea and Transcaucasia; it's the evidence of the well-developed construction engineering of Bulgarians and the evidence of the high level of city landscaping.

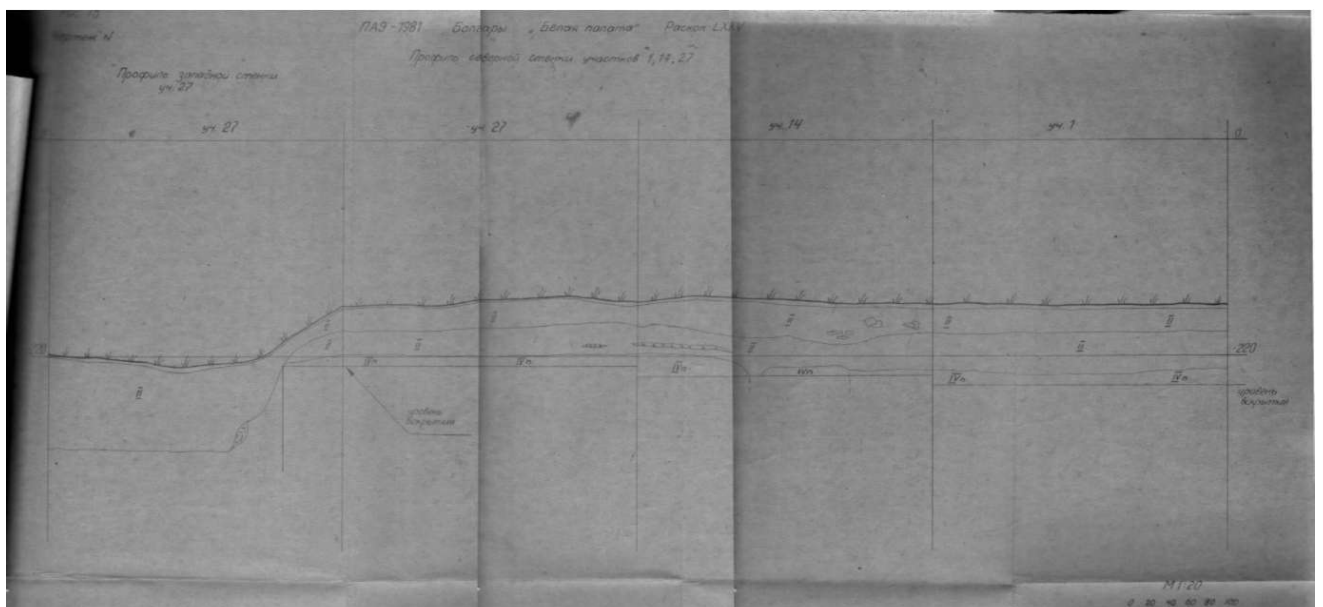
In 1982-1984 some archeological research of the White chamber was made and in 1990 - it's conservation.



1. General view of the White Chamber



2. General plan of the White Chamber



3. Cross section from Excavation LXXV (1981) of the White Chamber

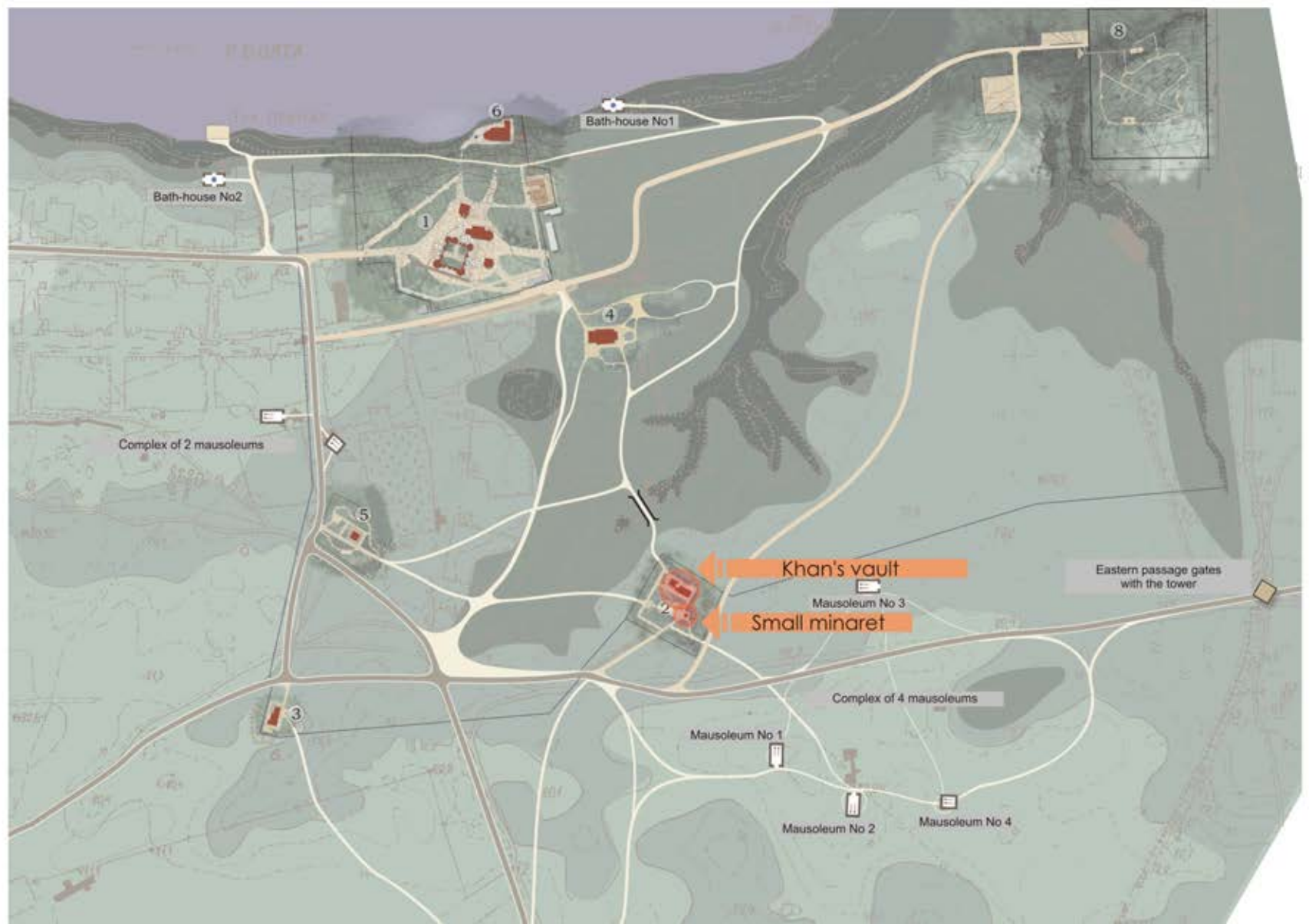


28/09/2011
White chamber



23/09/2011
White chamber





9. Khan's shrine and Small Minaret XIV c.

Small Minaret is located in about 500 m. south from the central complex of Cathedral Mosque close to Khan's shrine. The Minaret was constructed in the second half of XIV c. according to the example of the Big Minaret of Cathedral Mosque. It was built from the hewn sinter and limestone blocks. The Minaret is made of massive column, the lower cubiform foundation of which goes into the octahedral intermediate tier by lane triangular bevel. Inside the Minaret there are the circular stone stairs of 45 steps which lead to the upper tier. Actual dimensions are 4,8x4,8 m., according to the plan Its height is about 10 m. without marquee. The Small Minaret is the unique medieval architectural Bolgar monument remained till present days in its' original appearance.

The region of the Minaret location was researched during archeological excavations in 1914 and in 1968-1969. In 1968-1970 some monument restorations were performed.

Khan's shrine is located in about 15 m. north from the Small Minaret at the territory of former graveyard. Before the complex of a mausoleum was constructed a small stone bath of the beginning of the XIVth century located on this place (with remains of oven and gipokaust). On the basement of this bath the complex of the Western mausoleum was constructed. The building was built at the beginning of XIVc. In the middle of XIV c, the Khan's shrine was reconstructed into the whole shrine complex. It was built from the white limestone. The building is moderate quadrate Dome building without doorways in the plan. Its dimensions are 8,5x8,5 m. In the shrine there were found 8 entombments in special boxes called "tabuts", some of which were under brick headstones. Khan's shrine is an example of central-Dome type of cube-form mausoleum being traditional in Muslim Eastern countries.

In 1968 there was archeological monuments' research made, in 1968-1971,1990,2006 conservation and partial restoration were performed.



1. Small minaret. General view.



2. Khan's shrine. General view.

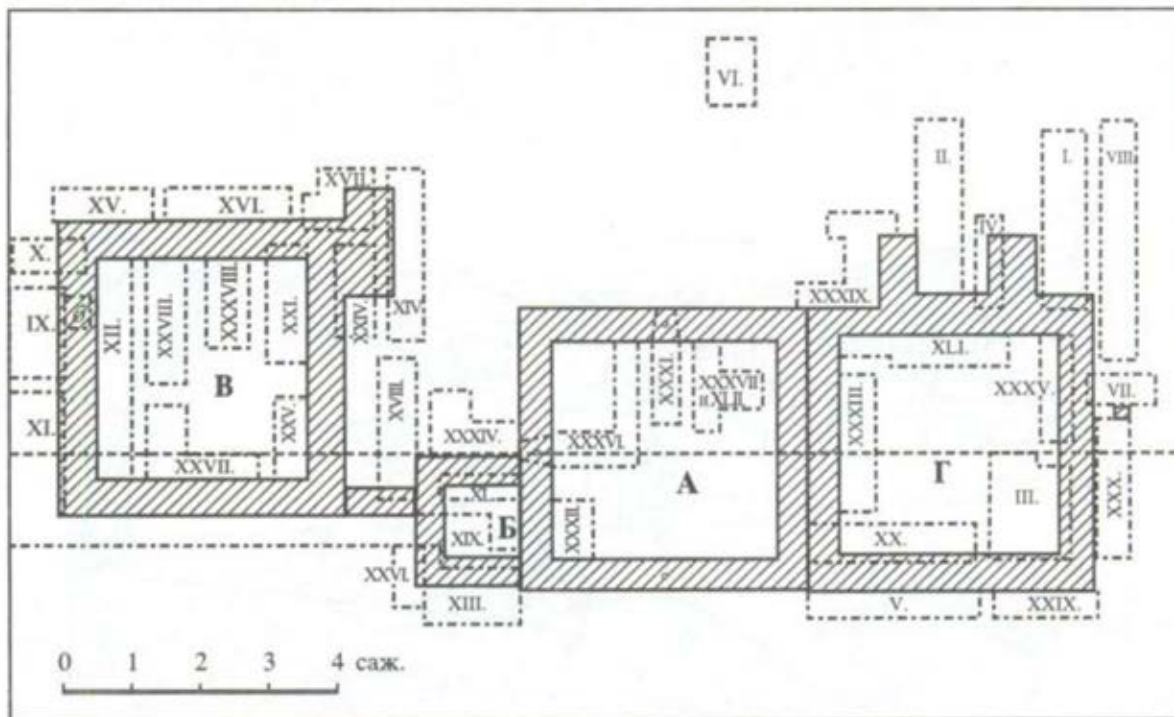


Рис. 102. План мавзолеев Ханская усыпальница, Восточный, Большой и Малый западные мавзолеи

3. The plan of the mausoleum with excavations.





12/09/2012

Small minaret and khan's vault



10. Mausoleums, 14th century (ruins)

Among monumental stone constructions of Bolgar historical and archaeological complex a special place is given to ritual facilities, i.e. the mausoleums. Except for the Eastern, Northern mausoleums and the Khan's burial vault, there are 9 mausoleums – extant at level of the foundations – located on the territory of complex: south of central part, in the south-east zone of the Small minaret area and in the southern zone, and 4 mausoleums – tucked under the hills. The mausoleums were built of limestone in the middle of the XIV century and at the beginning of the XV century. The entombments in the mausoleums testify that those are the burials of the notable and especially esteemed people. All the interments were made according to the Muslim rites and are identical to the entombments of municipal cemeteries.

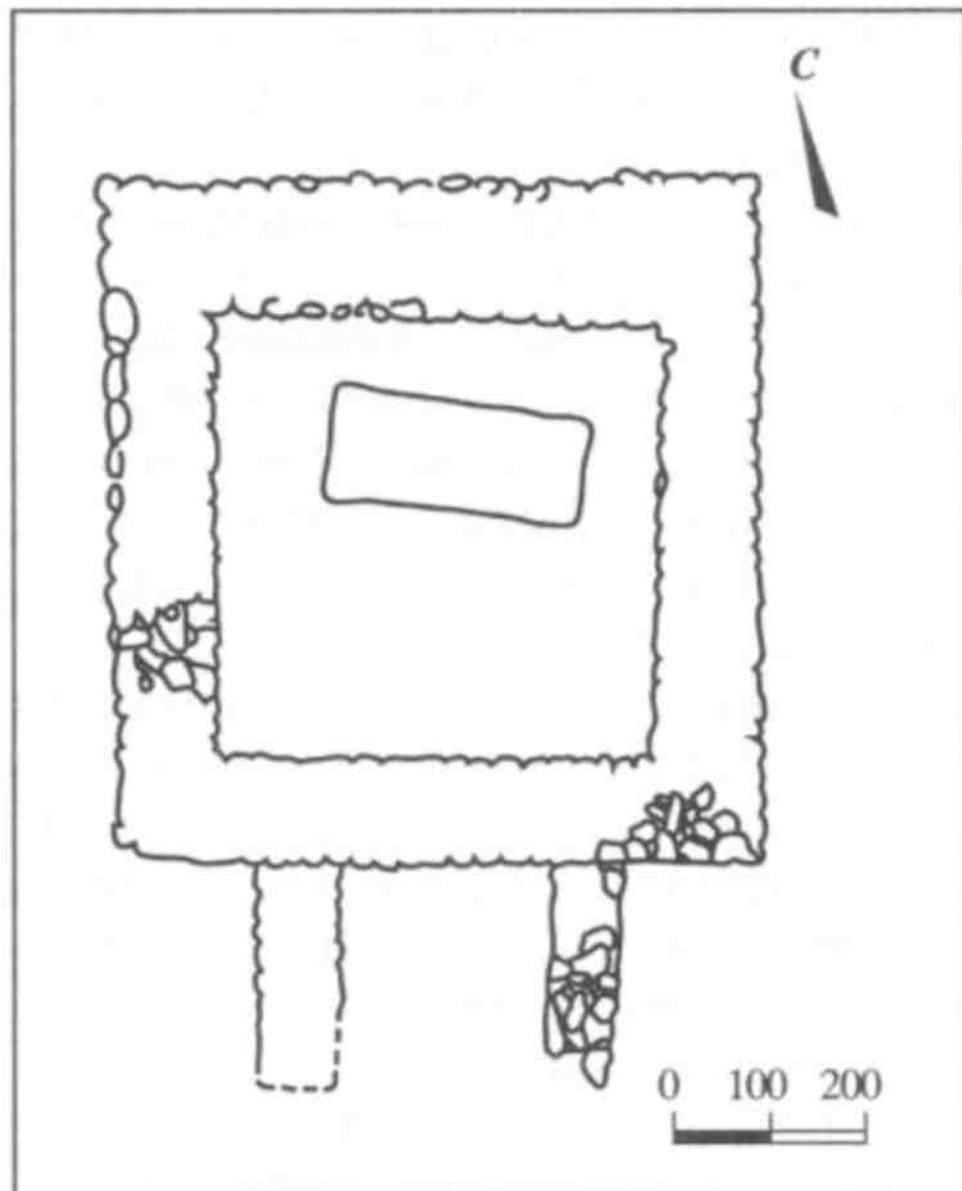
The mausoleums were archaeologically explored in 1970 and have been preserved.



1. General view of one of mausoleums

10a. Mausoleum No. 1

It is located at a distance of several hundred meters south-east the Small minaret. It was opened in 1970-1971 by excavation XXXVII (the researcher N. D. Aksenova). There was left a foundation ditch from the structure and, partially, the foundation of masonry and heap of construction waste. One entombment was made in the mausoleum. It was built in the last decades of the XIV century, which is defined by stratigraphic data and by the coins.



1. General plan "Mausoleum No. 1"

10b. Mausoleum No. 2

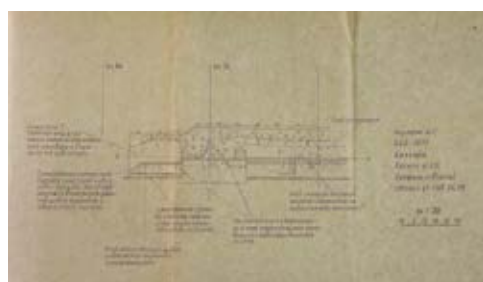
It is located in the area of the Small minaret as well, not far from the mausoleum No. 1. It was opened and cleared in 1976-1977 by excavation LIV (the researcher N. D. Aksenova). Seven entombments were opened; two of them were designated as children tombs and one – as an infant. The structure is dated back from the last decades of the XIV century. The building was constructed on the ruins of Mongolian-type house, at the place, which townspeople had left by the time.



1. General view and the entombments of the mausoleum No. 2



2. Cross-section of the excavation LIV in the mausoleum No. 2



3. Cross-section of the excavation LIV in the mausoleum No. 2

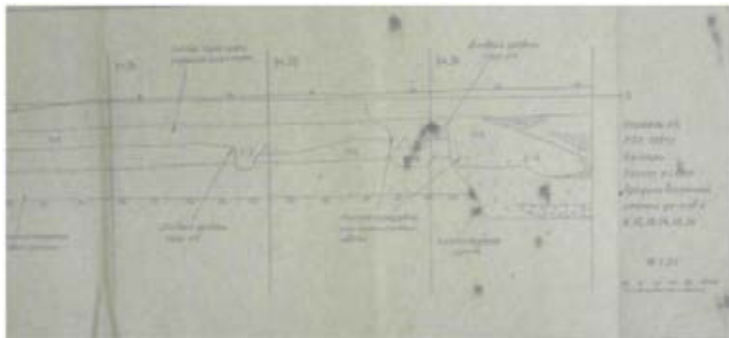
10c. Mausoleum No. 3

It is located approximately at a distance of 200 m of the Small minaret, to the north-east from it. It was opened by excavation LXXVII in 1981 (the researcher N. D. Aksenova). As a result of excavations, the ditch of the band foundation, the fragments of the foundation walling and entrance pillars, residuals of construction material in the form of mortar blocks and calcareous stones were revealed. Four non-simultaneous burials in the building were made. The mausoleum can be dated back from the second half of the XIV century or even the beginning of the XV century, it was erected on the wasteland.

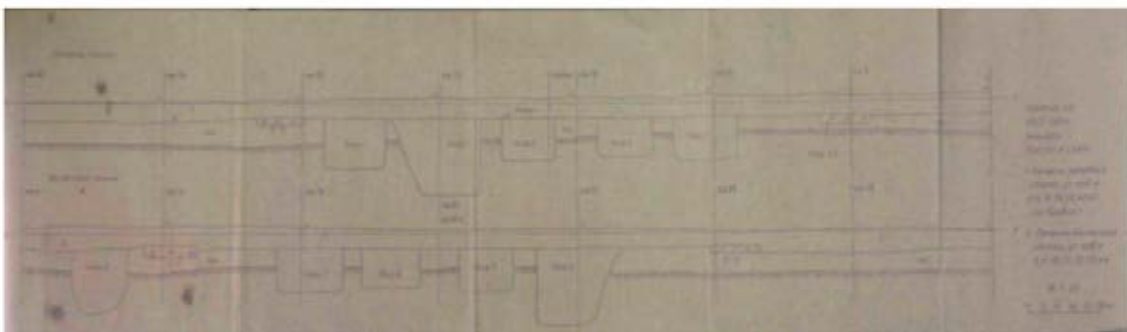


Fig. 108 Mausoleum No. 3. Floor plan (LXXVII 1981)

1. General view of the mausoleum No. 3



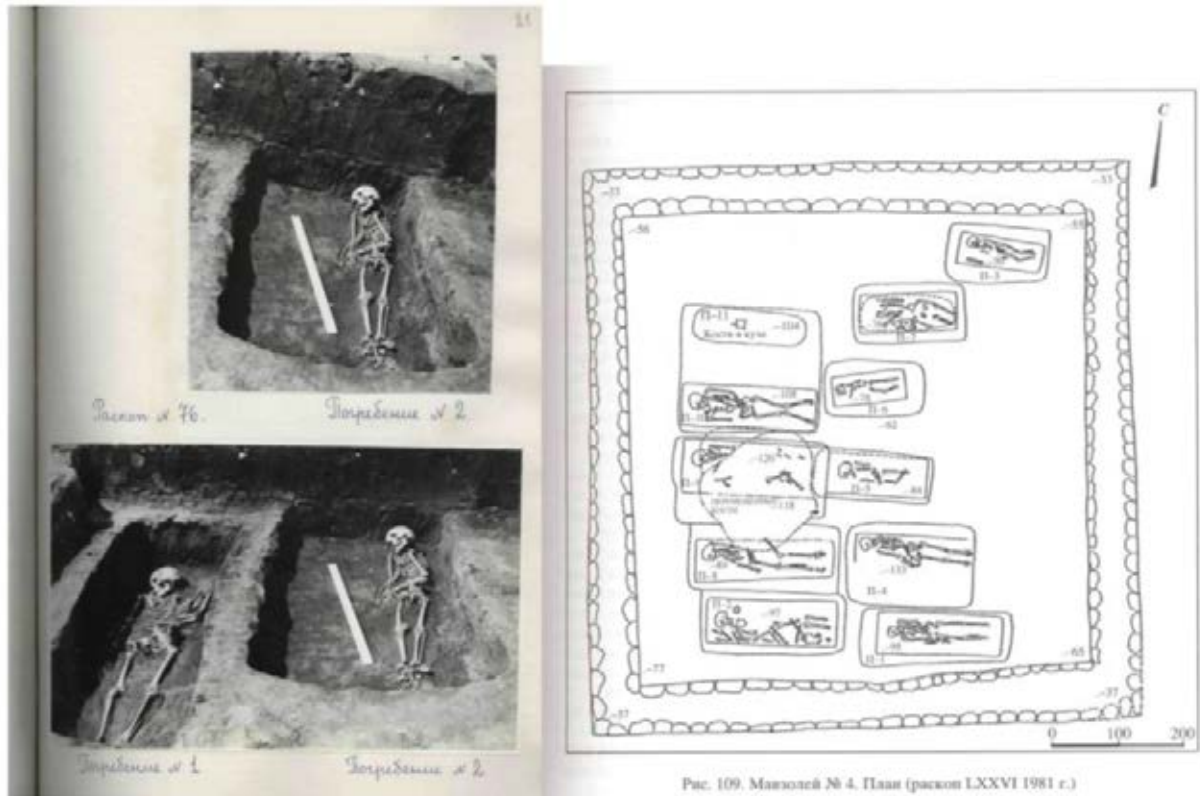
2. Cross-section of the excavation LXXVII in mausoleum No. 3



3. Cross-section of the excavation LXXVII in mausoleum No. 3

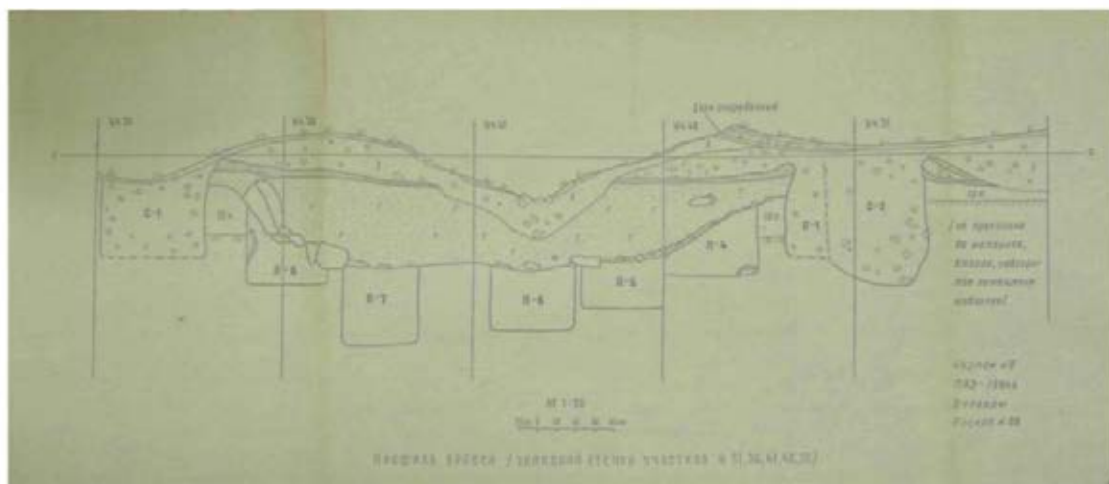
10d. Mausoleum No. 4

It is located at a distance of 600 m south-east from the Small minaret, and it was opened by excavation LXXVI in 1981 (the researcher N. D. Aksenova). There were the ditch of structure's band foundation and construction waste left. In the mausoleum there were 11 entombments, 3 of them were designated for children, 4 entombments were partially damaged at later burials. The mausoleum construction is stratigraphically dated back from the second half of XIV - the beginning of the



1. The entombments in the mausoleum No. 4

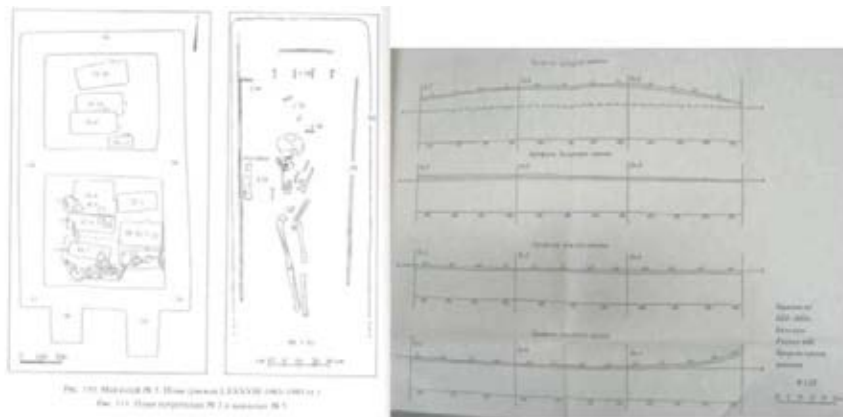
2. The plan of the mausoleum No. 4



3. Cross-section of the excavation LXXVI

10e. Mausoleum No. 5

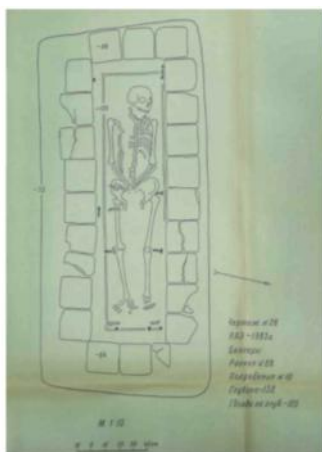
It is located in the outskirts of the town, near to the southern city gates. It was opened by excavation LXXXVIII in 1983-1985 (researcher N. D. Aksenova). The building was erected on the eminence surrounded by the waterlogged lowland. The 2 entombments of 12 were aimed at children and other 2, apparently, for adolescents. Stratigraphically, the burials are dated back from the last decades of XIV century – beginning of the XV century.



1. The plan of the mausoleum
2. Cross-section of the excavation LXXXVIII in the mausoleum No. 5



3. Cross-section of the excavation LXXXVIII in the Mausoleum No. 5



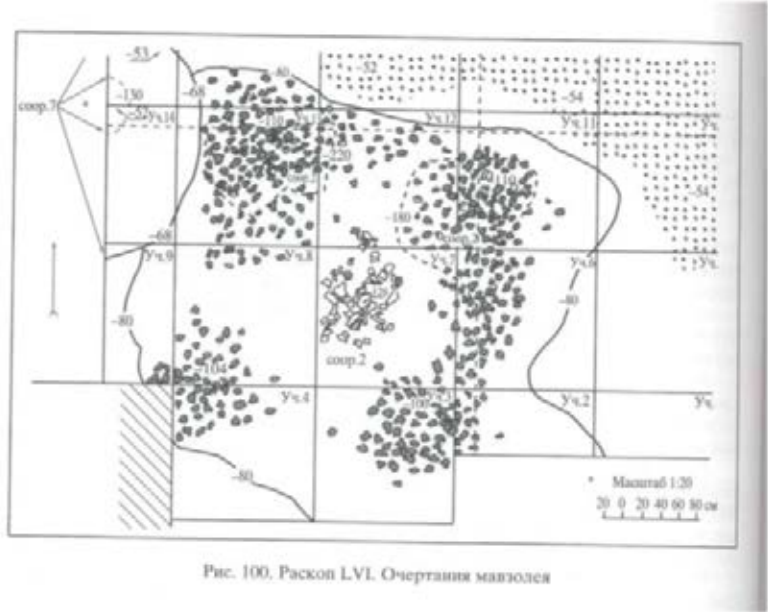
4. The entombment of the excavation LXXXVIII in the Mausoleum No. 5

10f. Mausoleum No. 6

It is located at a distance of 150 m south of central complex of the town. It was opened by excavation LIII and LVI in 1976-1977 (Researcher G.F. Polyakova). The mausoleum was destroyed by Bulak-Timur's troops in 1361. In a thick layer of site of fire, overlapping building traces, the out of order lying skeletons, the particular bones and the humans' skulls were found there. The foundation of the mausoleum was destroyed as a result of predatory stone extraction in XVIII century.



1. Cross-section of the excavation LIII in mausoleum No. 6



2. Outline of the mausoleum No. 6



3. The excavation plan LIII in the mausoleum No. 6

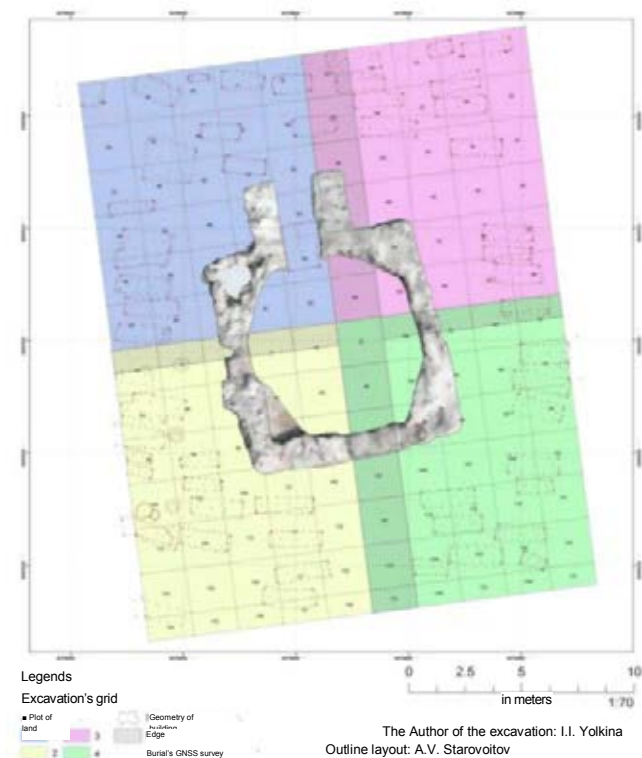


4. Cross-section of the excavation LVI in the mausoleum No. 6

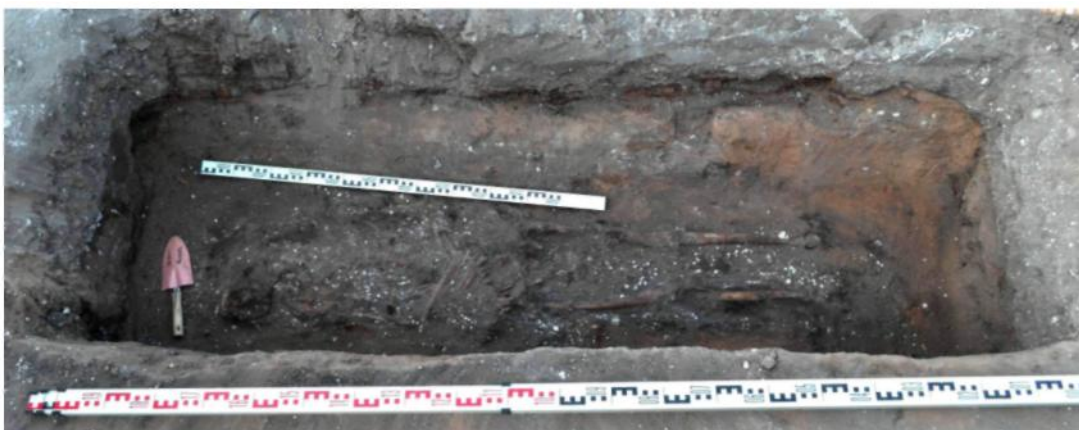
10h. Mausoleum No. 8

One of the results of 2012 research is the excavation of newly found mausoleum (excavation CLXXIV) beside the Southern gates (researcher I.I. Yolkina). The entombments, which have been opened, testify that those are the burials of notable and especially respected people. All those interments have been made according to the Muslim rite.

Outline of the excavation CLXXIV



1. Outline of Mausoleum No. 8. found during the excavation CLXXIV



2 The burial place of Mausoleum No. 8. The excavation CLXXIV



3. The findings from the burial place of the mausoleum No. 8



11.Small town XIII-XIV c.(ruins)

The Small town is located in the southern edge of Bolgar ancient settlement and also outside its borders, to the west from the Southern exit city gates in XIV c., in 2 km from the riverside of Volga.

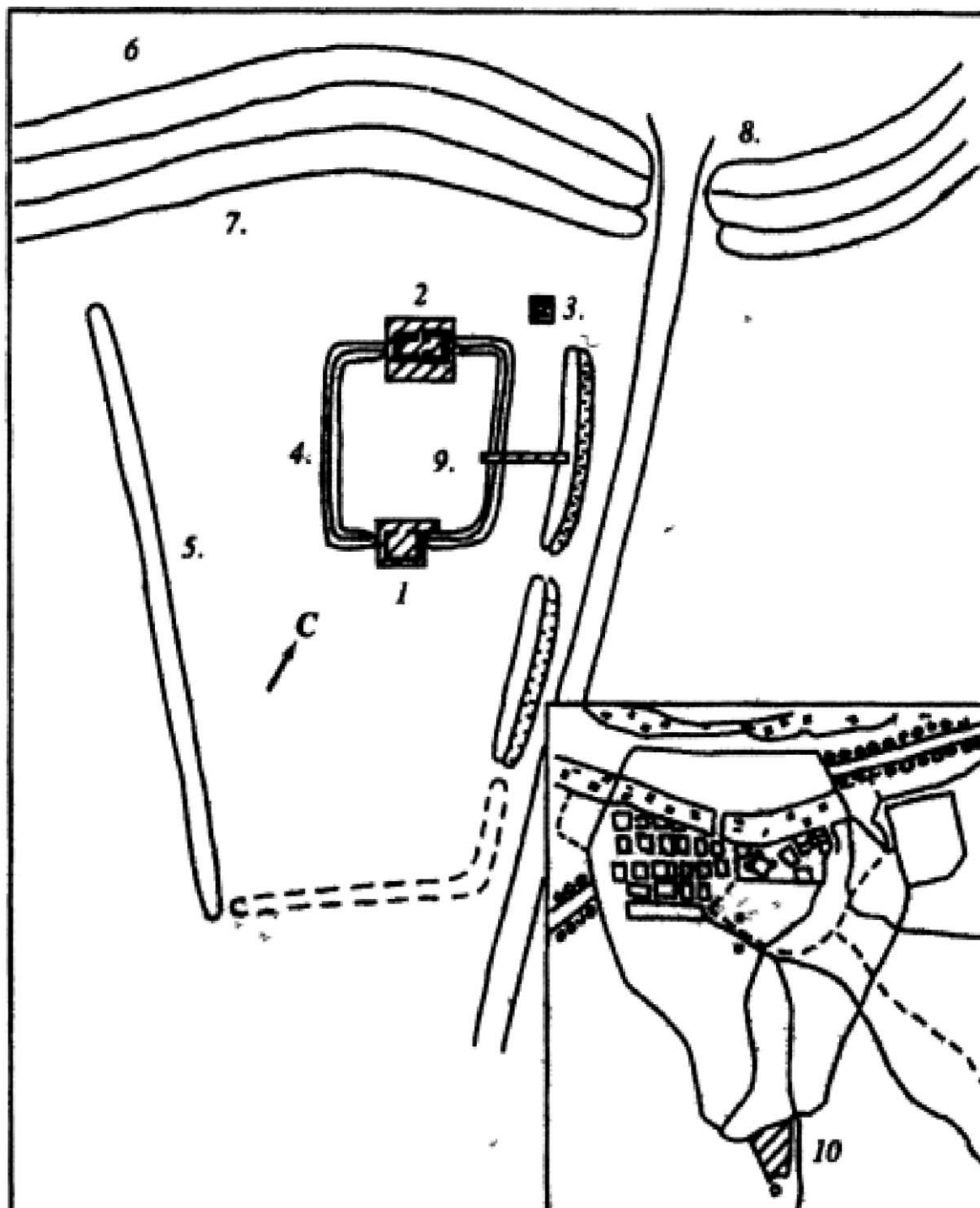
It's a moderate territory extended from the North to the South and surrounded by the low-level bank and rather shallow ditch. Inside the Small town there is a rectangular square surrounded by the bank and the ditch with stone buildings (northern and southern). External dimensions: 290 m – the eastern side, 330 m. - western, 300 m. - northern, 150 m. – southern. The second level – is inner level.

The Small town was built in about XIII-XIV c. That construction is the fort built at the most vulnerable side of city. After the construction of the urban strengthening in the first half of XIV c., that fort was included into the military-engineering constructions of Bolgar, which protected and controlled southern main gates.

The Small town was archeologically researched in 1982, 2011 and partially restored.

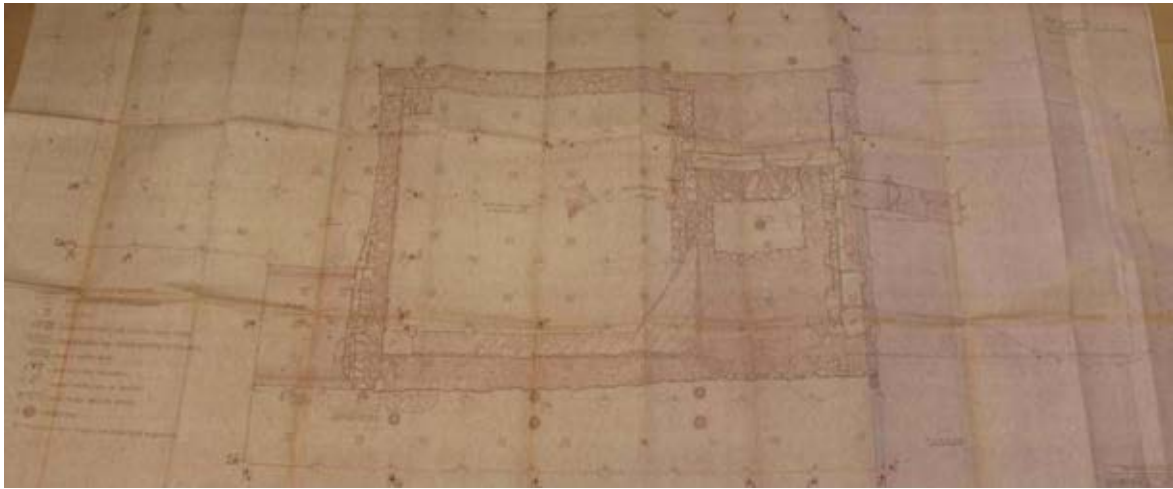


1. General view of entrance gates of Small town



2. Plan of Bolgar Site and Small town (according to L.A.Belyaev)

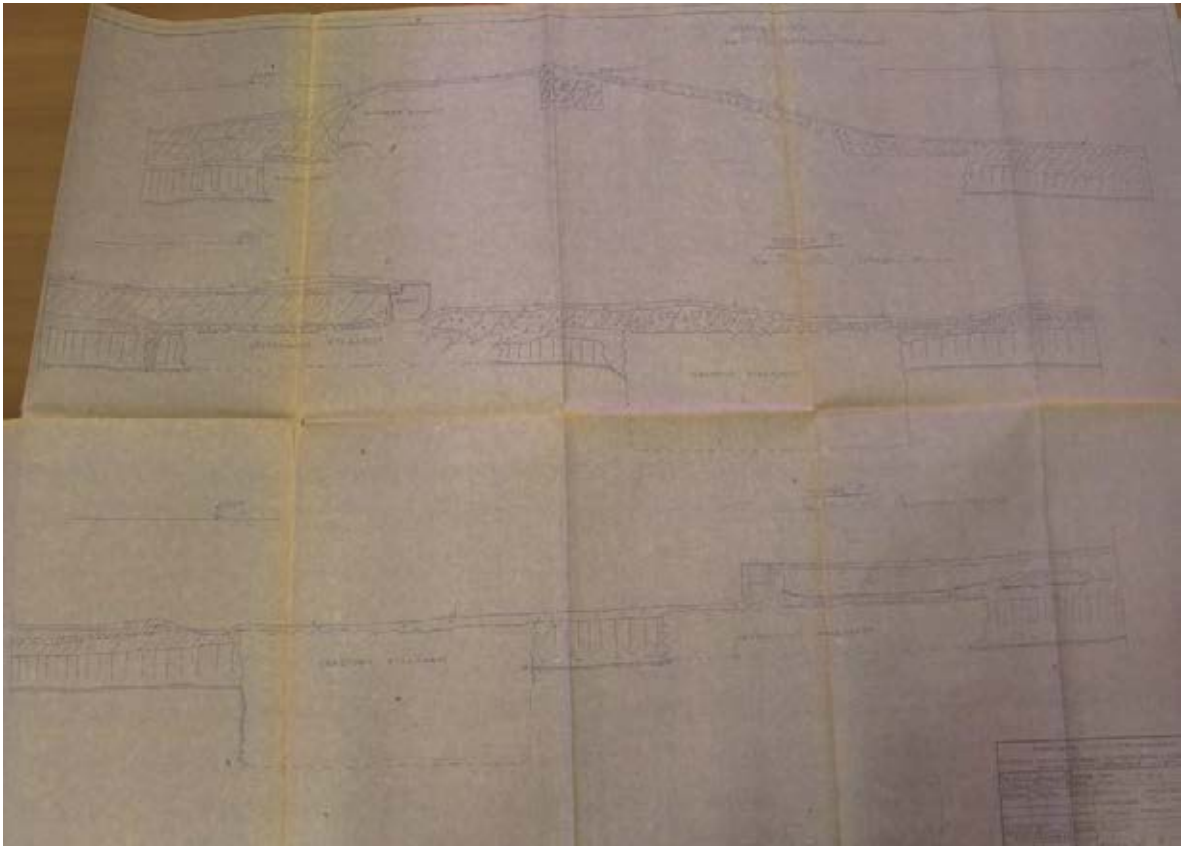
1 — The Southern building; 2 — pylons of gates; 3 — the building with a basin; 4 — inner ditch; 5 — outer ditch; 6 — bank of the settlement; 7 — ditch of the settlement ; 8 — gates of Bolgar; 9 — Trench of the bank and the ditch; 10 — Small town as a part of Bolgar ancient settlement.



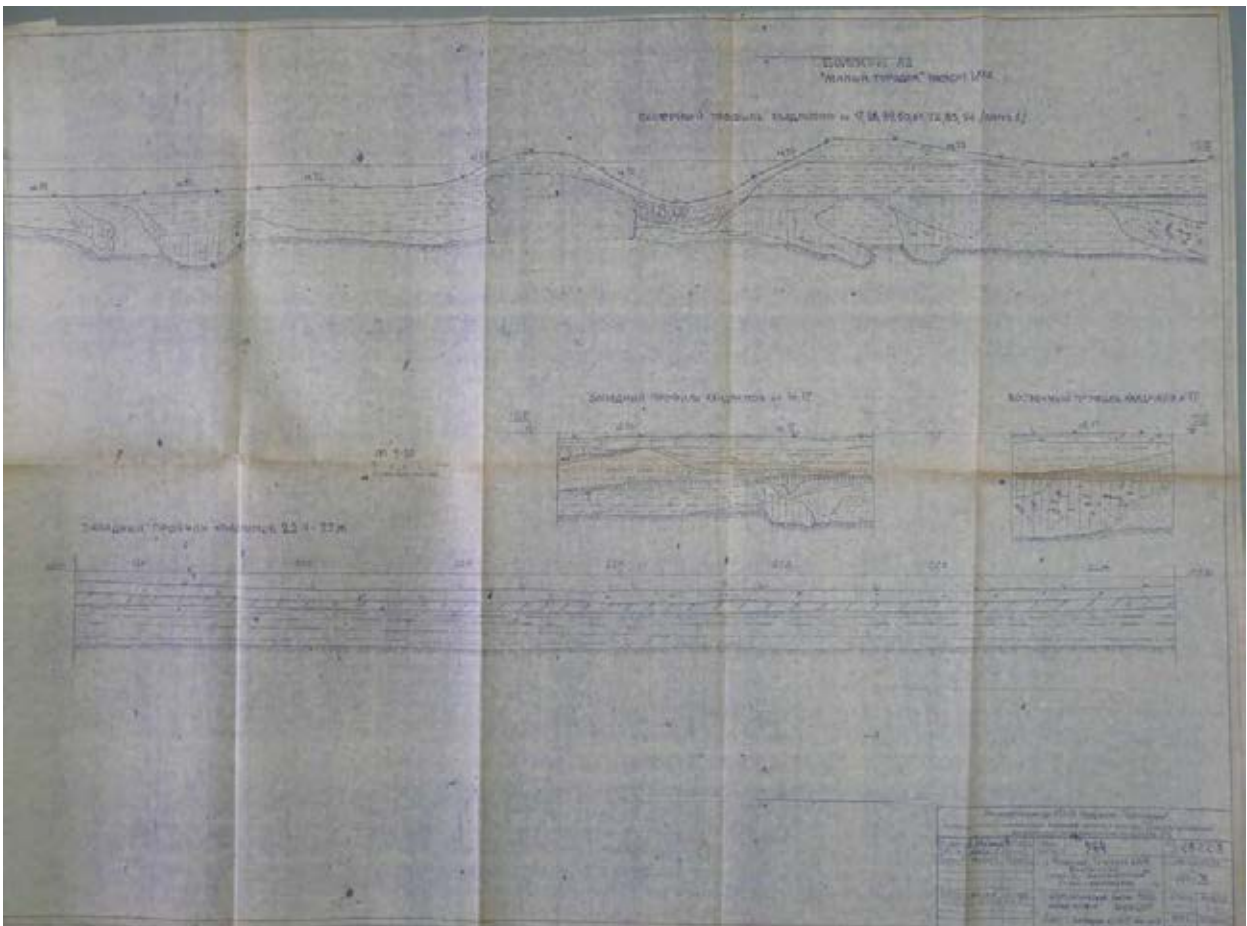
2. Plan of the building for ablution from excavation LXXX (1982)



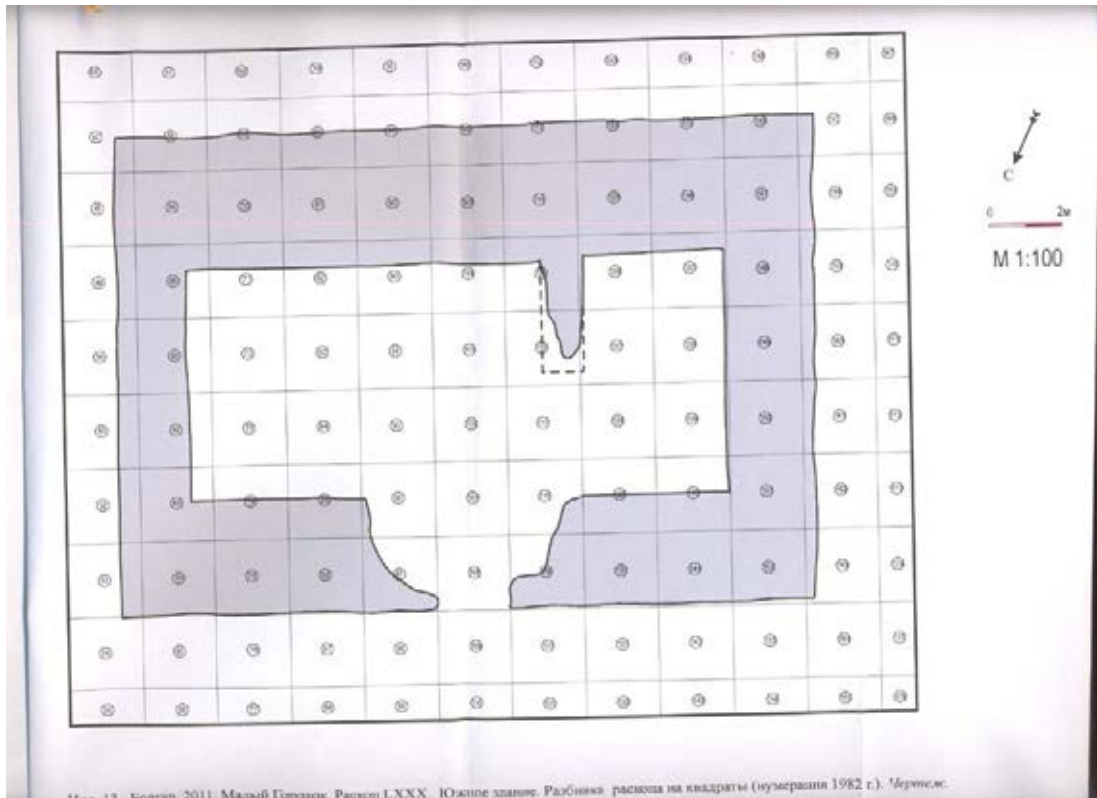
3. The photo the building for ablution. Excavation LXXX (1982)



4. Cross-section of the excavation LXXX (1982) of the entrance gates of a Small town



5. Cross-section of the excavation LXXX of ablution facilities (1982)



5. The plan of the Southern building of Small town. Excavation 2011



6. Finding of the XIV c. from the excavations of the Southern building of a Small town (2011)

12/09/2012
Minor town



12/09/2012
Minor town



12/09/2012
Minor town





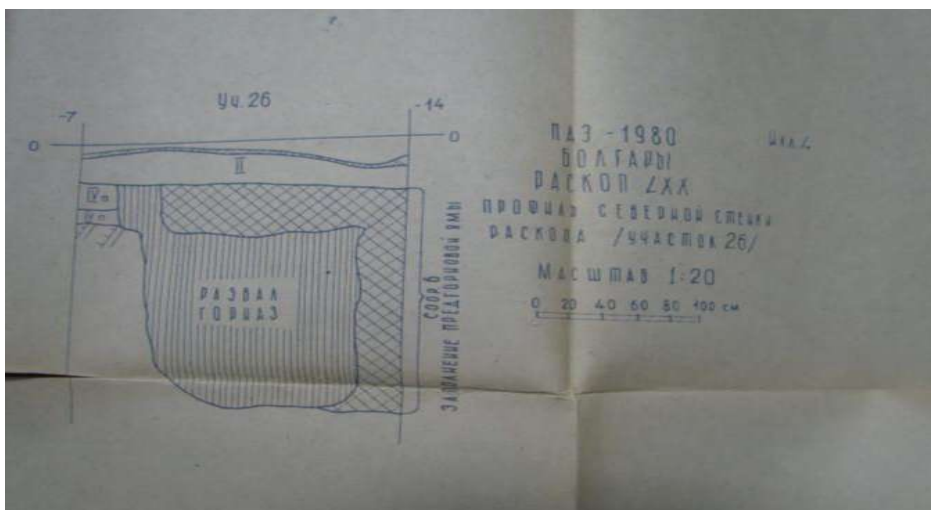
14. Galanskiy lake and potteries.

Galanskiy lake was located at the territory of Bolgar ancient settlement. The riverside was clayey. The abundance of ceramics, that was found at the sides of the lake, draws our special attention. These facts allowed archeologists to assume the existence of pottery production there. At the sides of the lake they researched and examined 4 pottery manufactories with 1,2,3 and 4 double-storeyed forges with circle and oval foundations. Forges were made of raw blocks and were put into specially excavated basins.

The area around the lake was an interesting part of medieval environment of the city with traces of manufacturing activity.



1. General plan of excavation LXX 1980, near Galanskiy lake with pottery forge

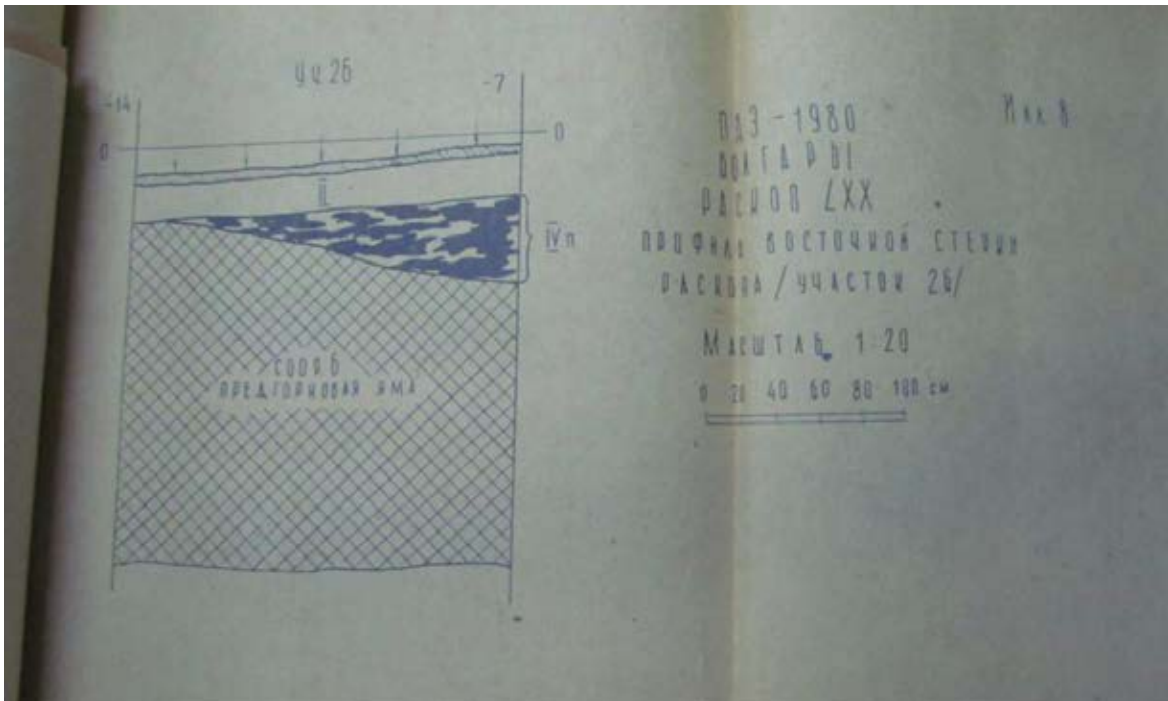


2. The cross-section of excavation LXX 1980, near Galanskiy lake



Илл.18. ОБЩИЙ ВИД СЕВЕРНО-ВОСТОЧНОЙ ЧАСТИ РАСКОПА LXX.

3. General view of the forge excavations LXX 1980 , near Galanskiy lake with pottery forge, XIV c.



4. Cross section of excavation LXX 1980, near Golanskiy lake

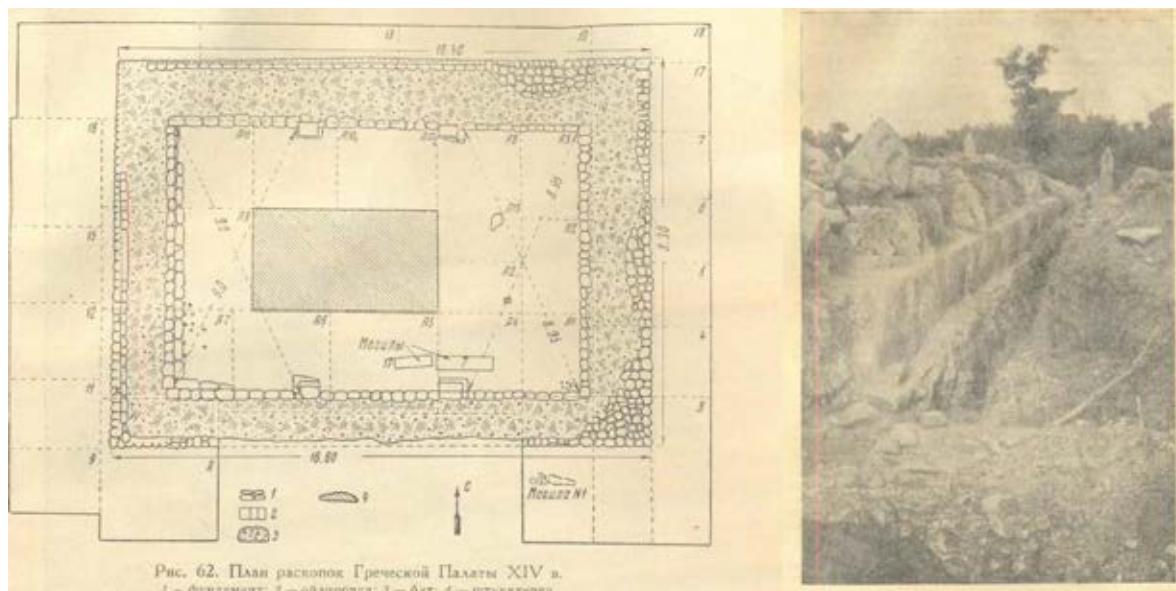


5. Industrial defect of pottery XIV c. near Galanskiy lake

16. Greek chamber

To the West from the city fortifications, on the Volga terrace, at the place of trade colony of Armenian people there was a Christian temple – the Greek chamber. It was built in XIVc. from the specially hewn limestone blocks. It remained intact at the level of the foundation and one-two rows of stone walls masonry. That building was rectangular in the plan 16,4x12,6 m in dimensions and extended a little from west to east. It didn't have an altar ledge in the eastern wall which was a typical element of one storey Christian temples. Armenian colony and Greek chamber were close to the main city of Volga Bulgaria and it was the evidence of the stable and extensive international relations of this medieval state in Eastern Europe.

The building was archeologically studied in 1916 and 1945.

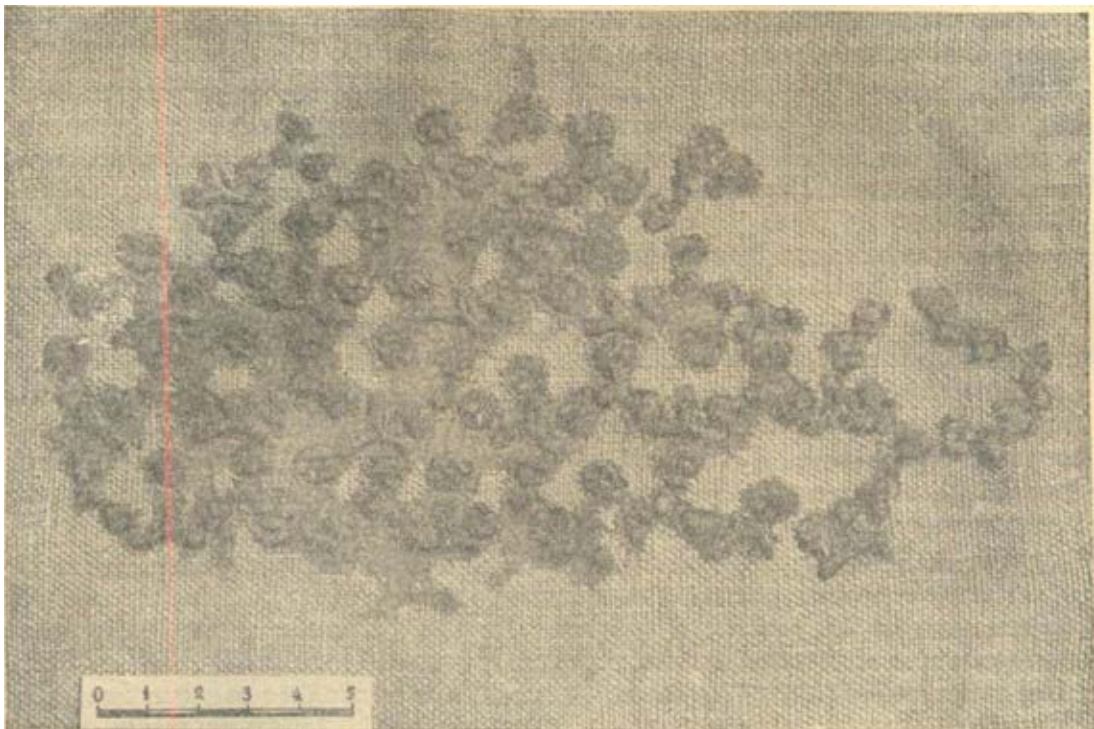


1.General plan

2.Excavation photo



3. Cross-section of the Northern wall



4. Finding: embroidery

City market of the XIV century

Excavations, started at the end of the 1980-s at the territory of supposed city market in Bolgar, were continued by the research works during the last years. All research was directed to the continuity of uncovering of the object with the following clearing. The excavation was made at the area of about 190 m. During the process of excavation there were found the remains of stone walls foundations, which created North corner of monumental building. Besides, the forge was found during the process of research of 2012.



1. Furnace and flooring in the building of the XVIII century.



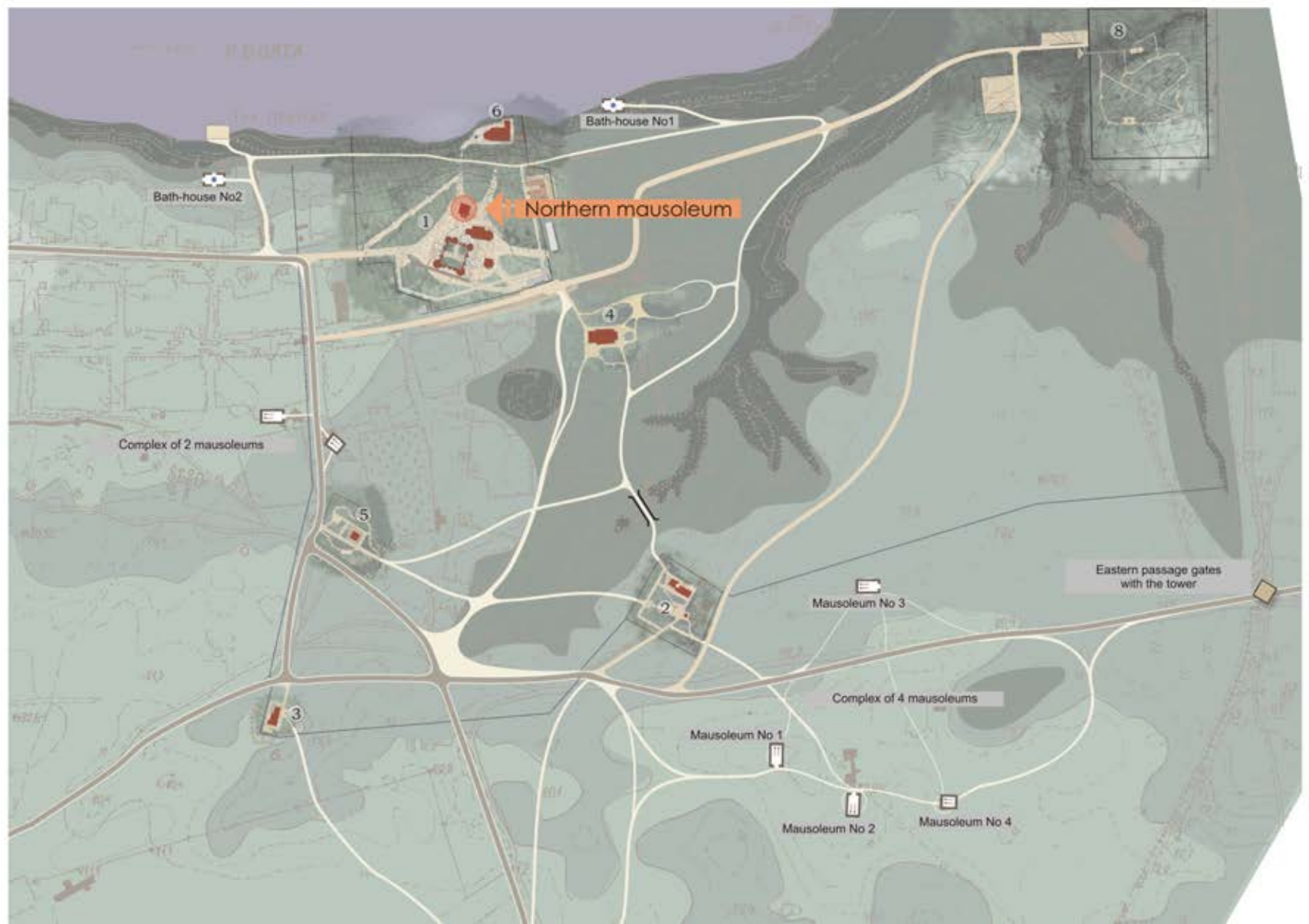
2. Excavation on the market of the XIV.



3. Forge of the X century



4. Findings: molds of the XIV century

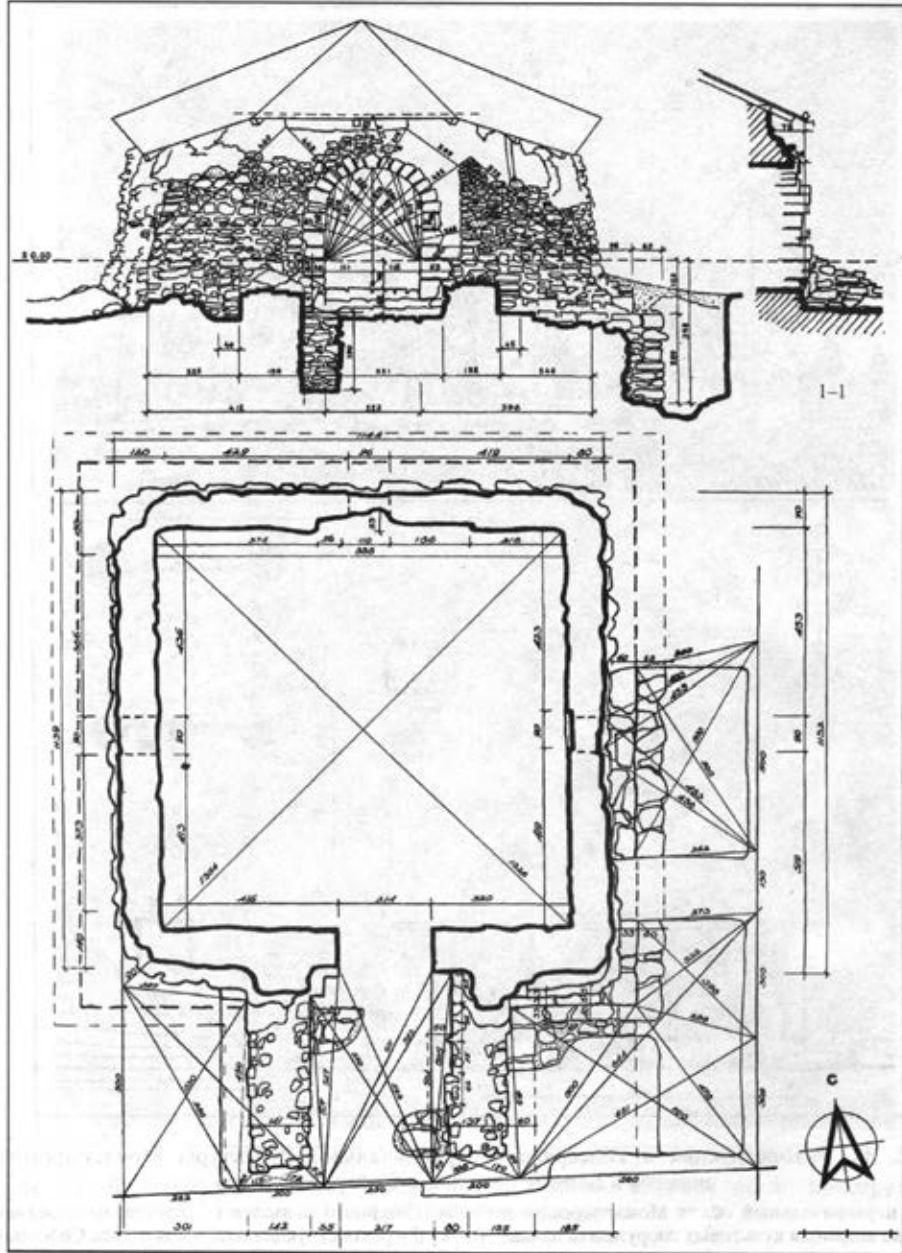


12/09/2012

Northern mausoleum



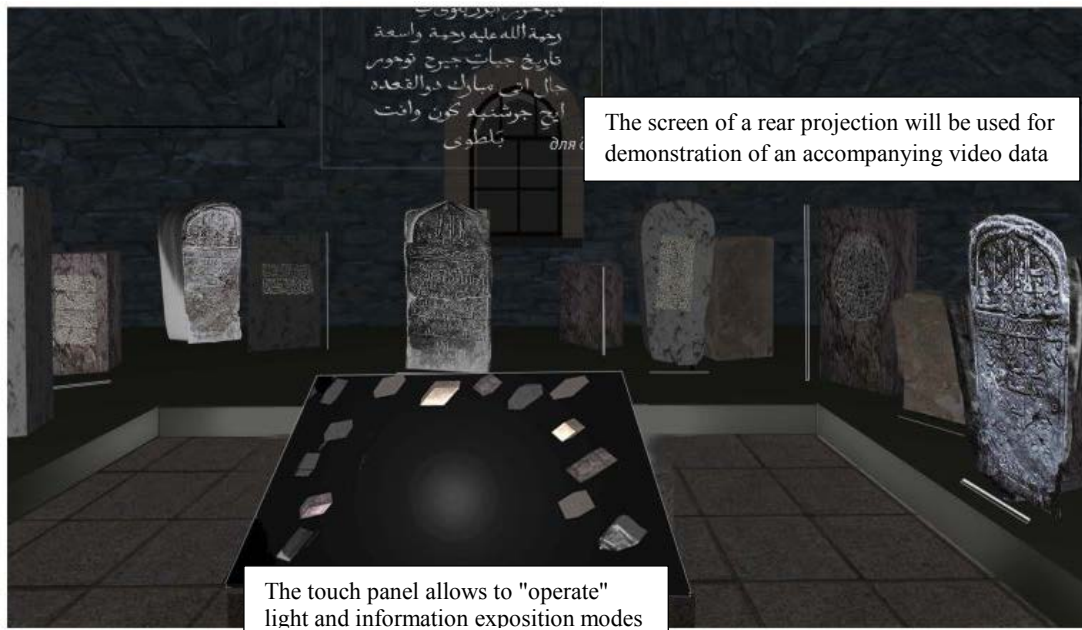




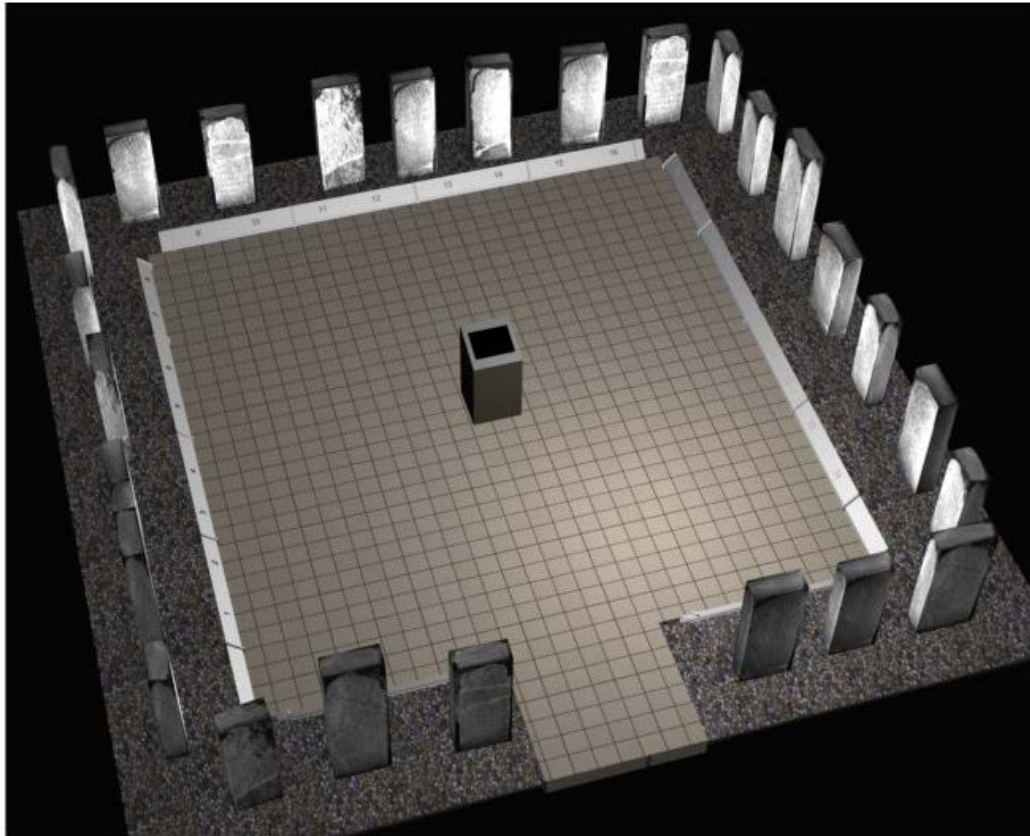
Monastery cellar.

Measurement of the southern facade and the plan in the course of archaeological opening of the basis of walls with a portal ledge in the middle of 1960s.

Art concepts of the draft design of an exposition of the Northern mausoleum



For demonstration of the exhibits of this kind it is supposed to create a system of lateral individual illumination both built in perimetritic exposition basis, and placed on it in the form of separate light elements. In the center of the room is supposed to place the touch panel with the exposition on it that will allow to choose the activation of a defined exhibit and to receive all necessary interactive options with individual illumination and audio support in defined language.



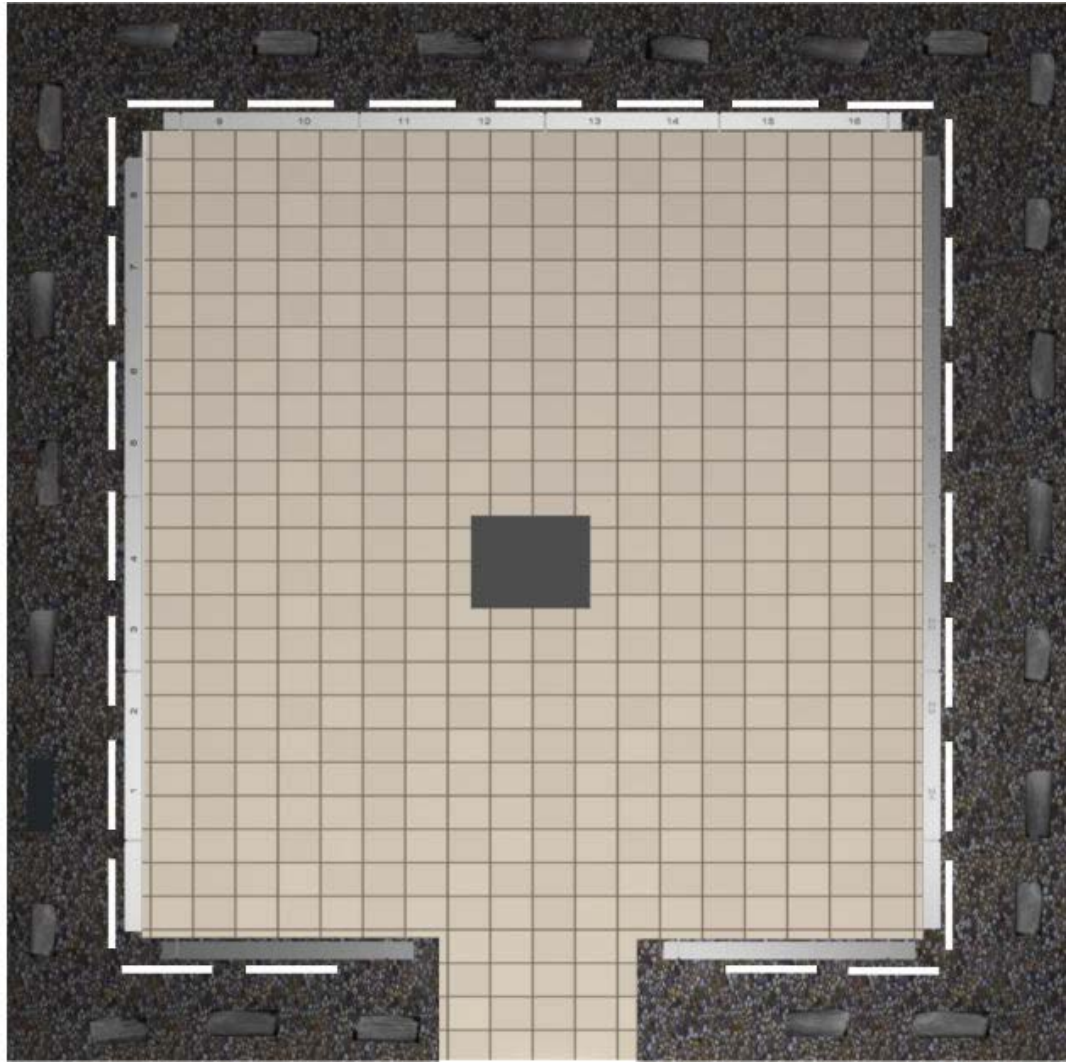
Draft design of the main sections of the **Northern mausoleum**.

Perspective of a general view without dome space

Dome projection as possible development of information and entertainment filling of mausoleum space

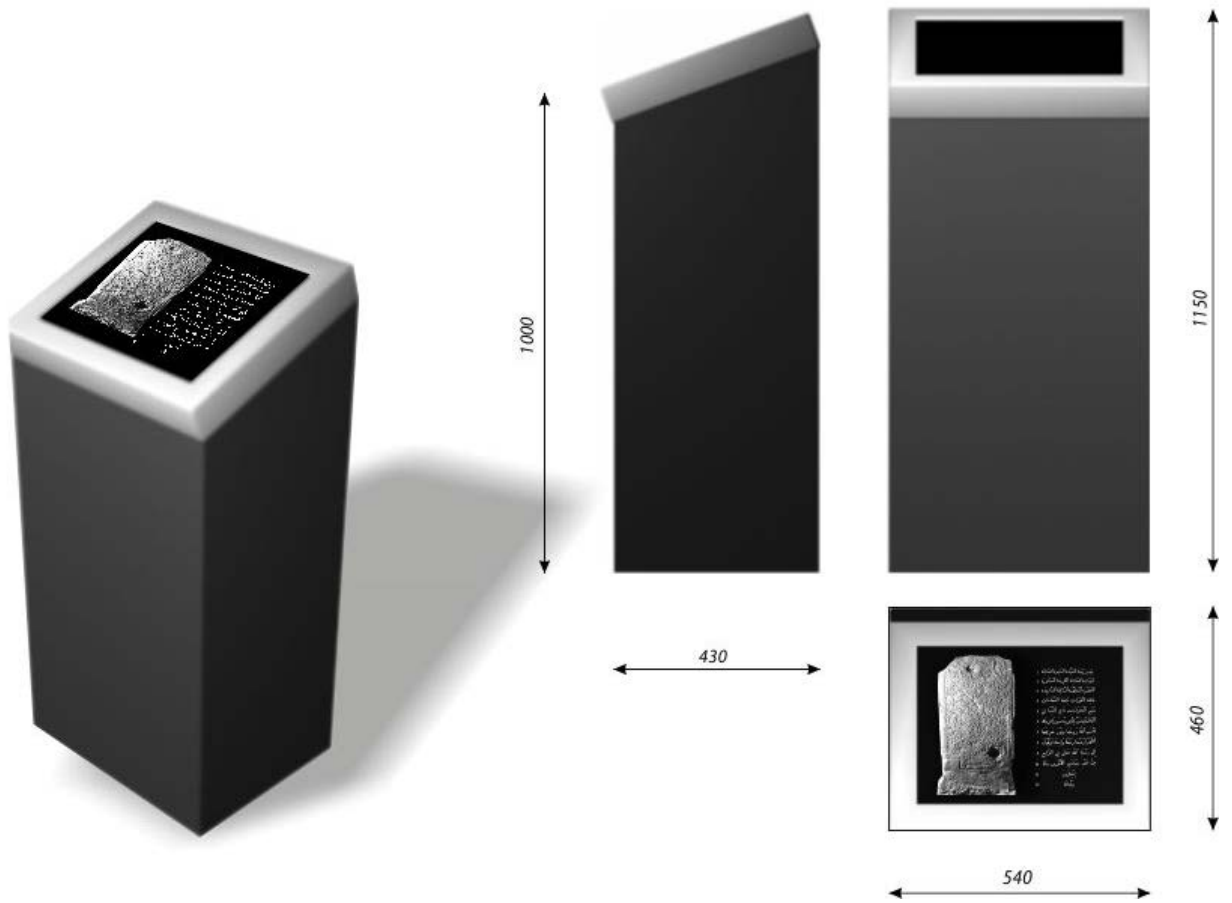


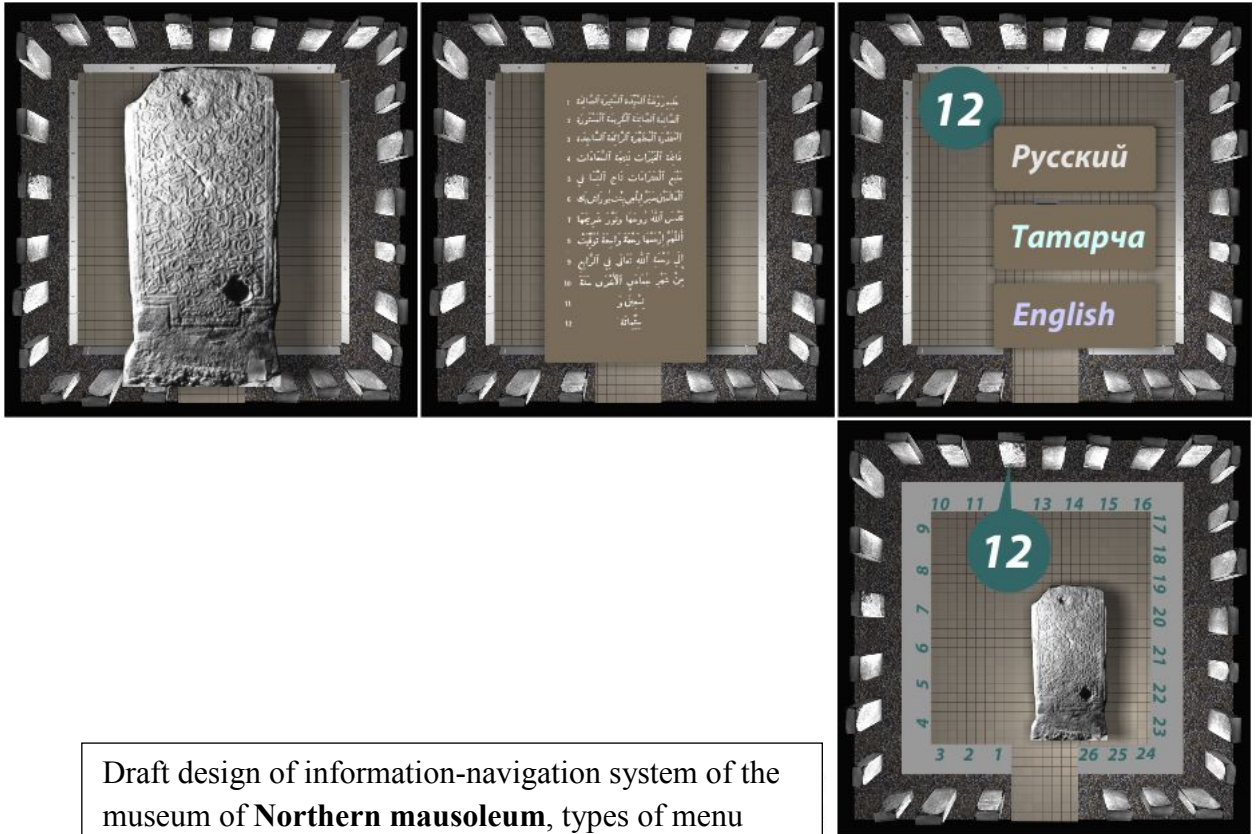
Draft design of the main sections of the **Northern mausoleum**, prospect of a general view



Draft design of object of the environment formation, **Northern mausoleum**, light dynamic system, planning. Lamps are installed in the bottom exposition belt and are powdered with **pebble gravel**

Draft design of information-navigation system of the museum of **Northern mausoleum**, sign and information system touch kiosk, views, plan 3D model.





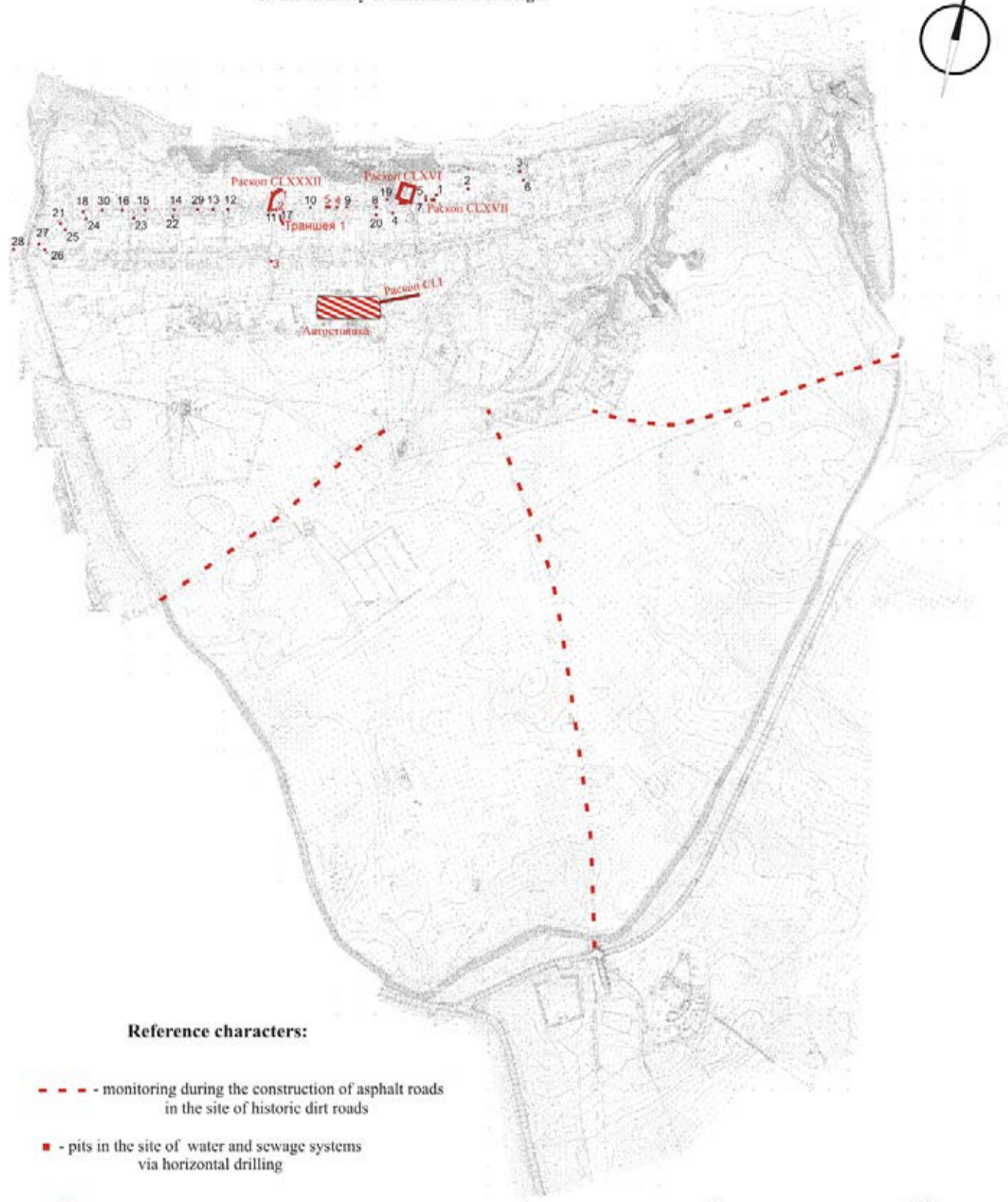
Draft design of information-navigation system of the museum of **Northern mausoleum**, types of menu interface.





Conservation and rescue operations on the spot of reconstruction and laying on the territory of ancient town of Bolgar

Conservation and rescue operations on the spot of reconstruction and laying on the territory of ancient town of Bolgar



Reference characters:

- - - - monitoring during the construction of asphalt roads in the site of historic dirt roads
- - pits in the site of water and sewage systems via horizontal drilling
- - excavation on the construction of asphalt roads and area improvement
- ▨ - monitoring during construction of parking lots

0 500 м



Location of CLXXVIII excavation in the place of road construction towards the car parking.

CLXXVIII excavation founded on the site of the upcoming asphalt road construction towards the car parking in the center of the ancient town of Bolgar. Excavation area of 500 sq.m. Average depth of 1.8 m. Cultural layers of XII – XXI centuries were revealed. About 150 residential, industrial and commercial facilities were registered.



General view of CLXXVIII excavation on the spot of road construction towards the car park.



General view of CLXXVIII excavation on the spot of road construction towards the car park.



CLXXVIII archaeological excavation on the spot of road construction towards the car park.

Clearance of an excavation area at the level of continental pits.



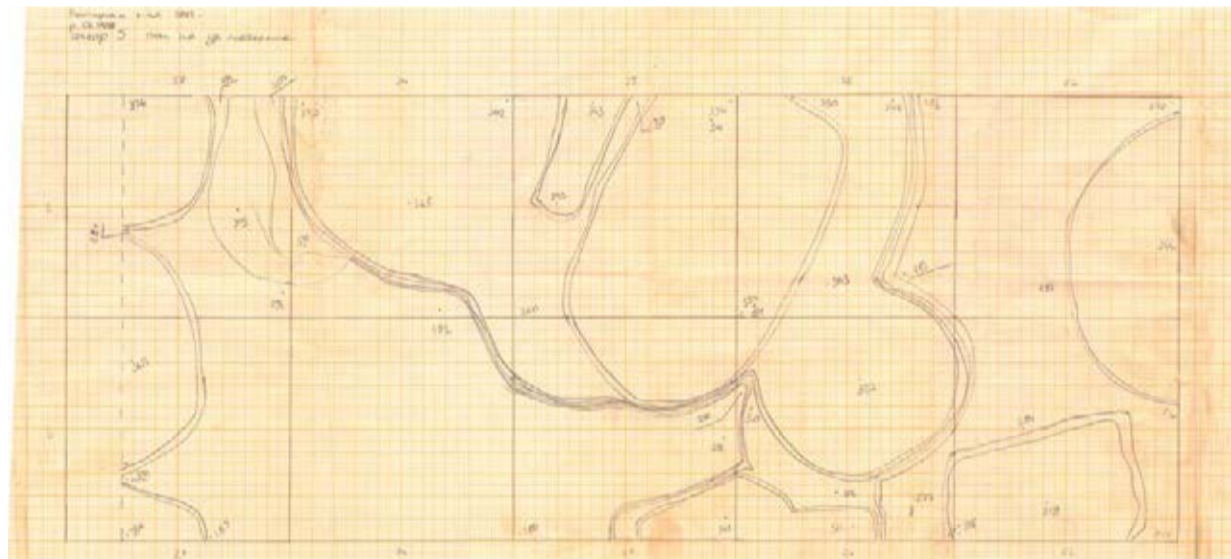
CLXXVIII archaeological excavation on the spot of road construction towards the car park.

Clearance of an excavation area at the level of continental pits.



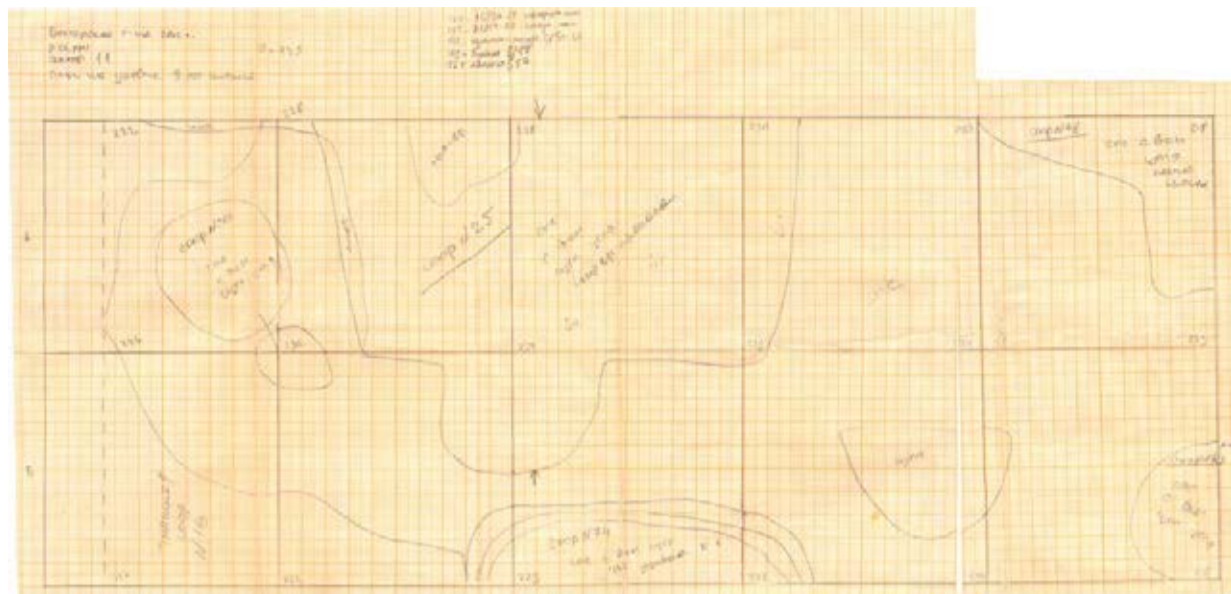
CLXXVIII archaeological excavation on the spot of road construction towards the car park.

Clearance of an excavation area at the level of continental pits.



CLXXVIII archaeological excavation on the spot of road construction towards the car park.

Sector plan 5 at the level of continental pits.



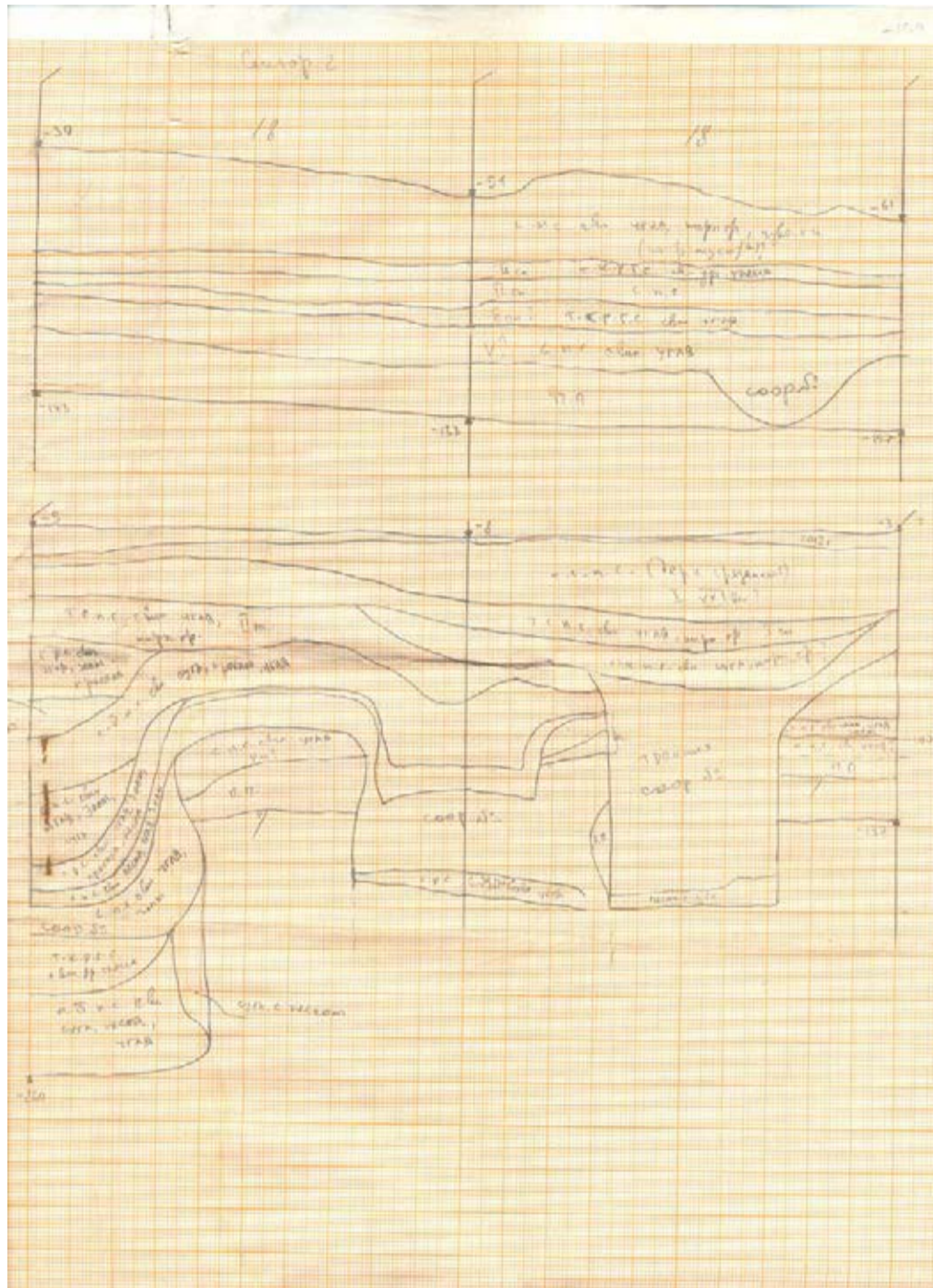
CLXXVIII archaeological excavation on the spot of road construction towards the car park.

Sector plan 11 at the level of 5th bayonet.



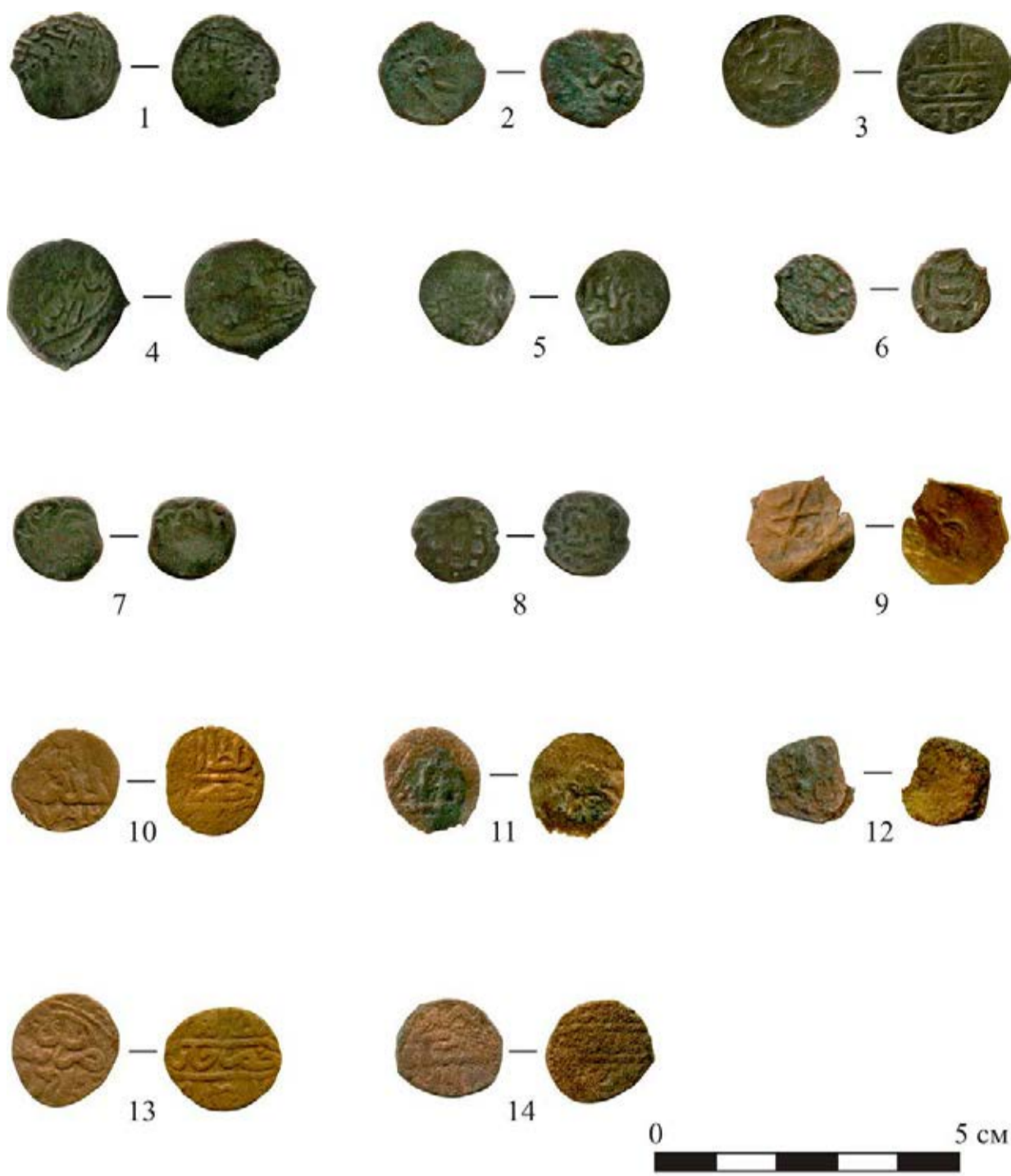
CLXXVIII archaeological on the spot of road construction towards the car park.

Sector plan 6 at the level of 4th bayonet.



CLXXVIII archaeological excavation on the spot of road construction towards the car park.

Wall section profile.

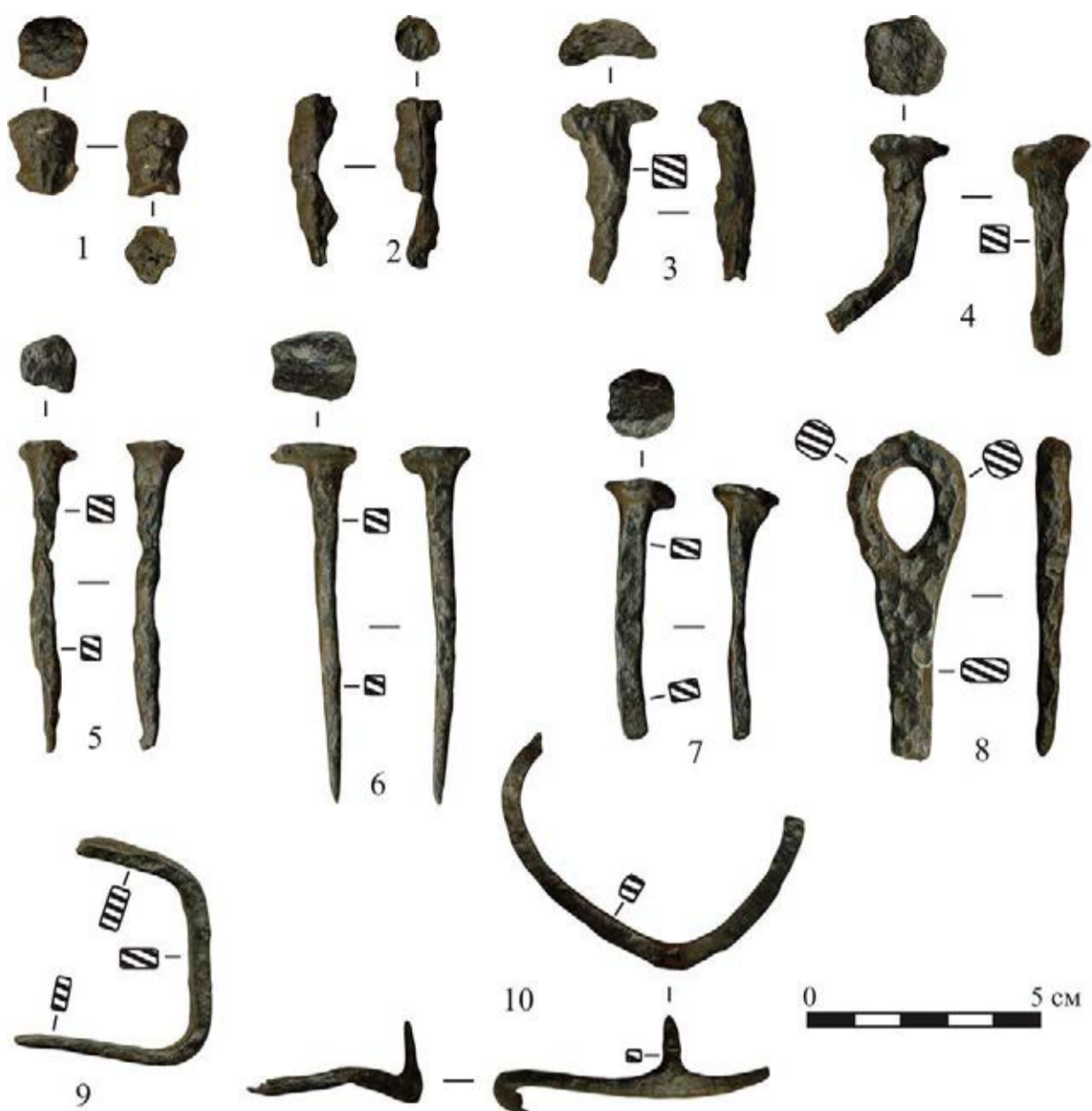


Findings. Copper coins (pools)

XIII-XIV centuries



Findings. Copper and bronze articles: 1. Strap-hanger 2. Knife holder 3. Clinch 4. Ring 5. Vessel's edging 6. Scrap 7. Shackle 8. Fragment of an item. XIII-XV centuries.



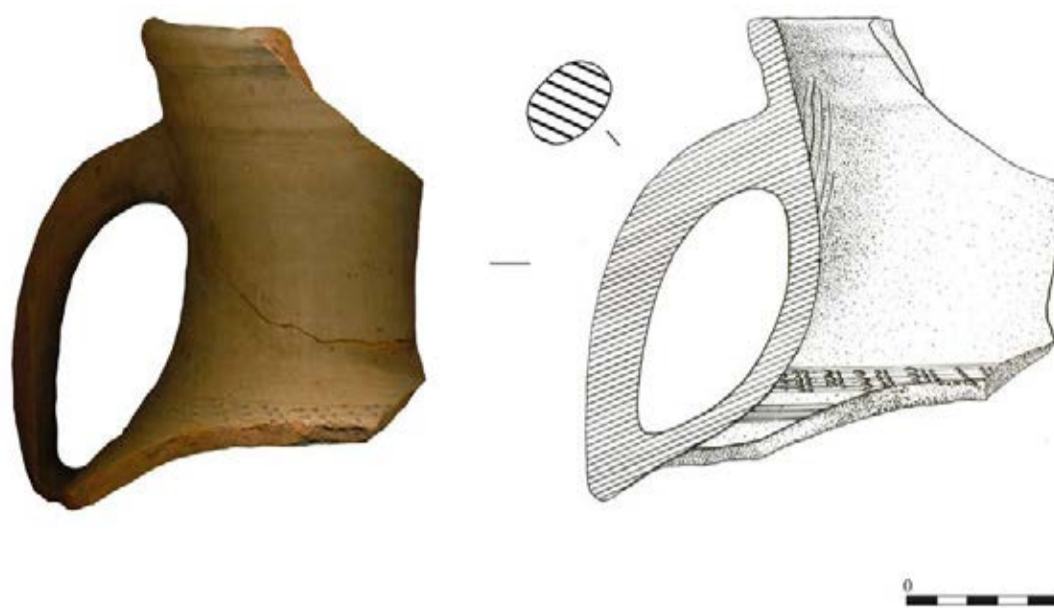
Iron articles: 1-7. Nails 8. Punch 9. Clamp 10. Fragment of a shoe calkin.
XIV-XVI centuries.



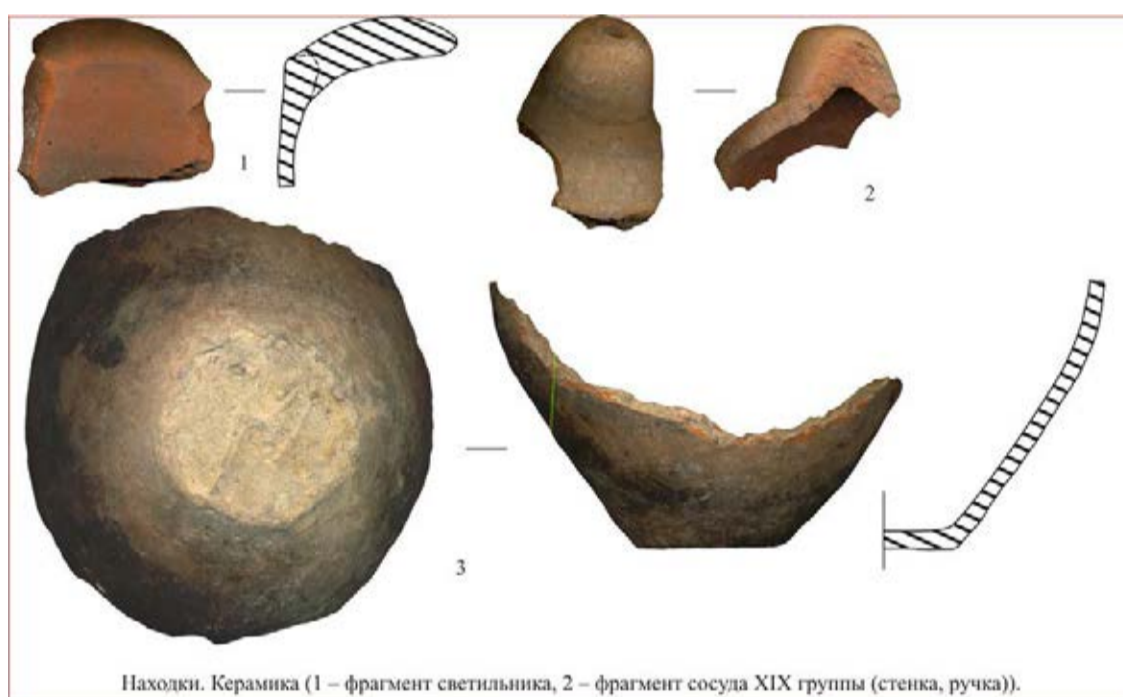
Findings. Iron articles: 1-2. Keys 3. Lock 4. Fragment of an axe. XII-XV centuries.



Findings. Glazed ceramics. XII-XV centuries.

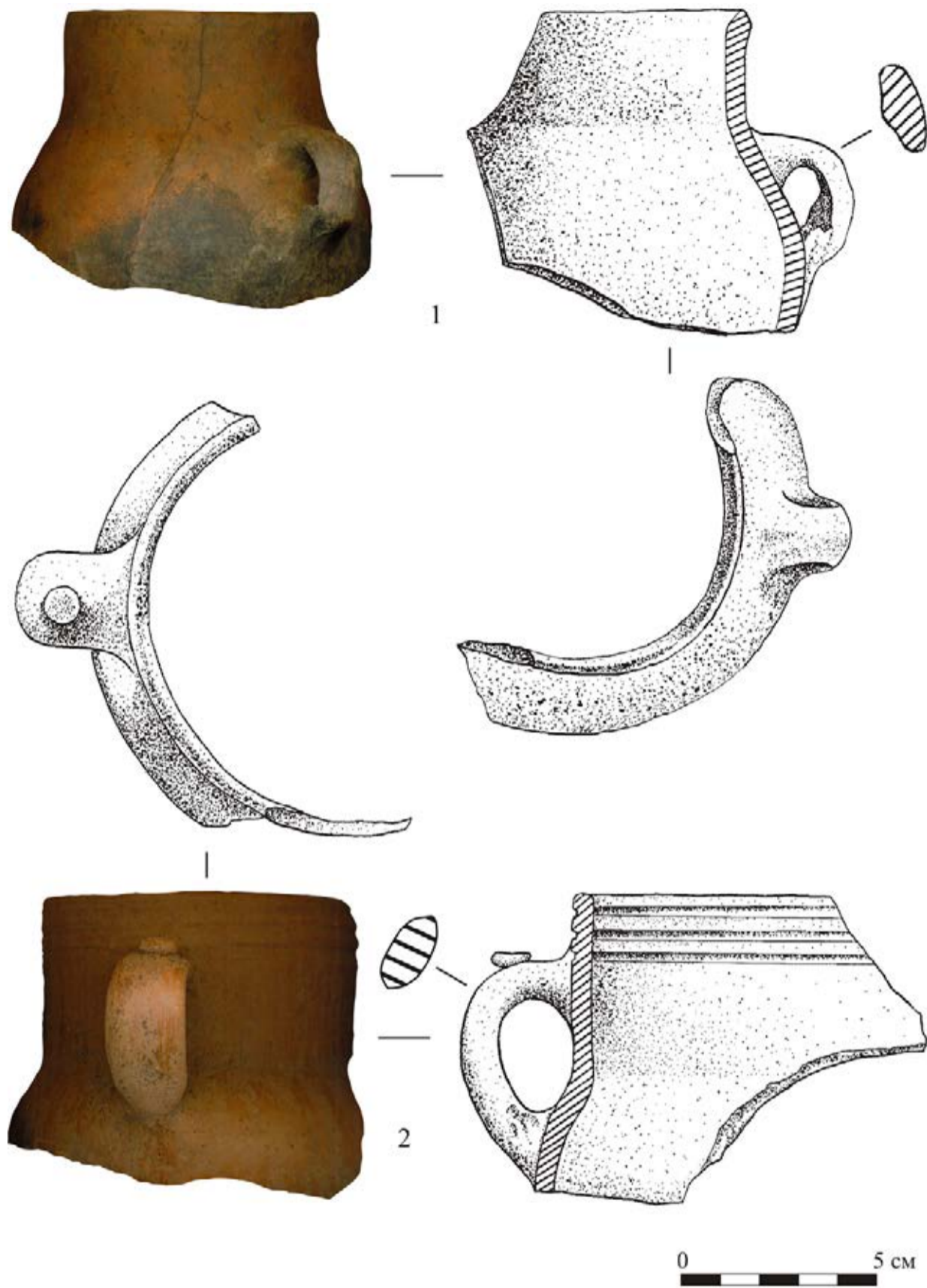


Findings. Ceramics (fragment of a jug of the 1st common Bulgarian group).
XIV century



Находки. Керамика (1 – фрагмент светильника, 2 – фрагмент сосуда XIX группы (стенка, ручка)).

Findings. Ceramics: 1. Fragment of a lamp 2. Fragment of a jar of the XIX group (wall, handle) XIII-XV centuries.



Findings. Ceramics 1-2. Fragments of common Bulgarian 1st group vessels (scyphus, wall, handle) XII-XIII centuries.



Location of CLXXXII excavation on the spot of road construction towards river station.

CLXXXII excavation was carried out in the place of oncoming asphalt road construction towards river station in the north-western part of the ancient town of Bolgar. Excavation area of 506 sq.m. Average depth of 1.8 m. Cultural layers of XII – XV and XVIII-XXI centuries were revealed. About 200 residential, industrial and commercial facilities of V-VII, XII-XV and XVIII-XXI centuries were registered. Among them of special interest are kilns for firing of late XIII – early XIV centuries are of special interest.



General view of CLXXXII excavation on the spot of road construction towards river station.



General view of sector 3 of CLXXXII excavation on the spot of road construction towards river station.



General view of CLXXXII excavation on the spot of road construction towards river station.

Clearance at the level of continental pits.



General view of CLXXXII excavation on the spot of road construction towards river station. Clearance of 1 and 2 sectors at the level of continental pits.



CLXXXII excavation on the spot of road construction towards river station.
Timber floor of Russian bathhouse, XVIII century.



CLXXXII excavation on the spot of road construction towards river station.
Half dugout of XIV century.



CLXXXII excavation on the spot of road construction towards river station.

Kiln for ceramic firing of late XIII – early XIV centuries.



CLXXXII excavation on the spot of road construction towards river station.

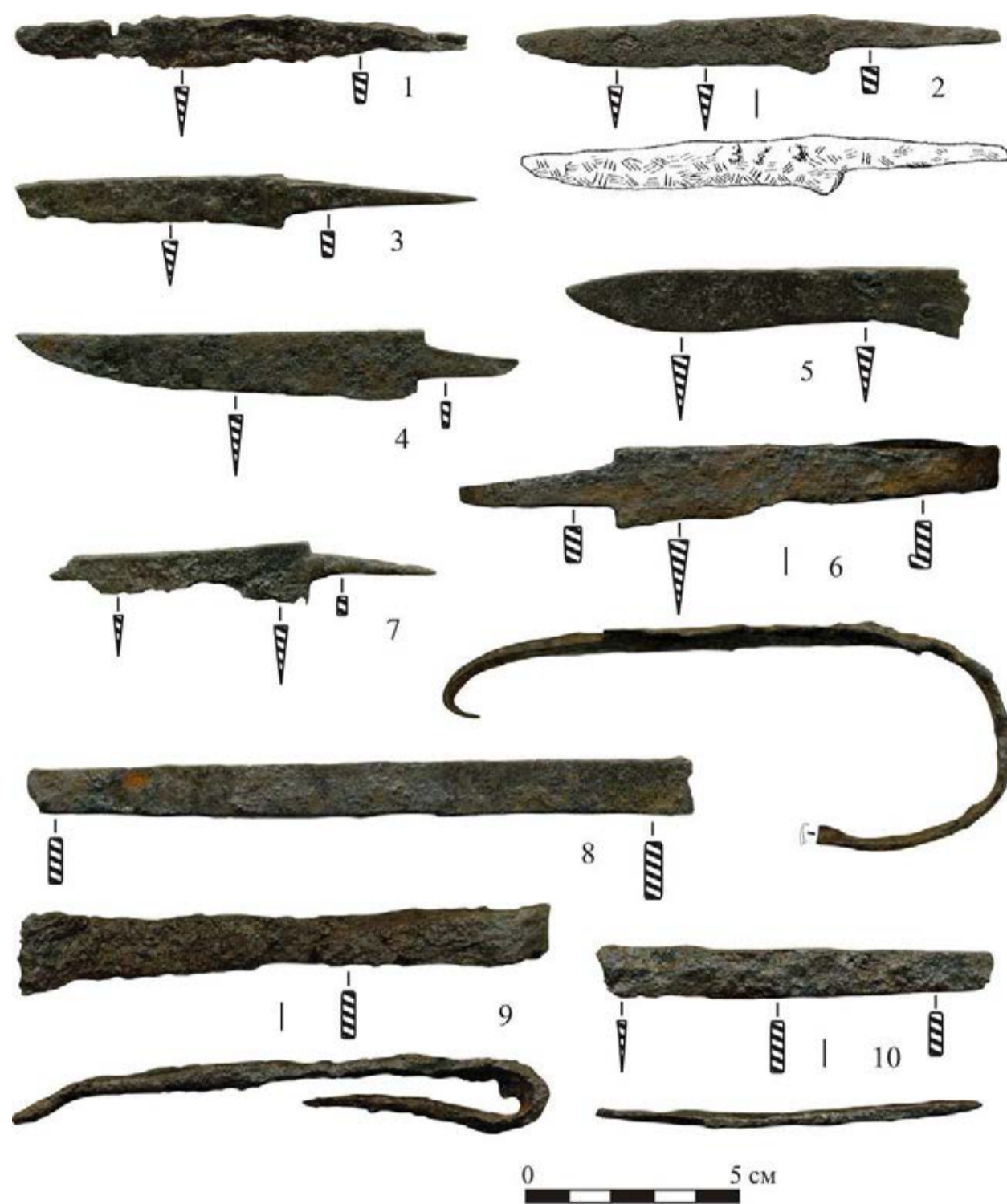
Kiln for ceramic firing of late XIII – early XIV centuries.



CLXXXII excavation on the spot of road construction towards river station.
Kiln for ceramic firing of late XIII – early XIV centuries.



CLXXXII excavation on the spot of road construction towards river station.
Kiln for ceramic firing of late XIII – early XIV centuries.

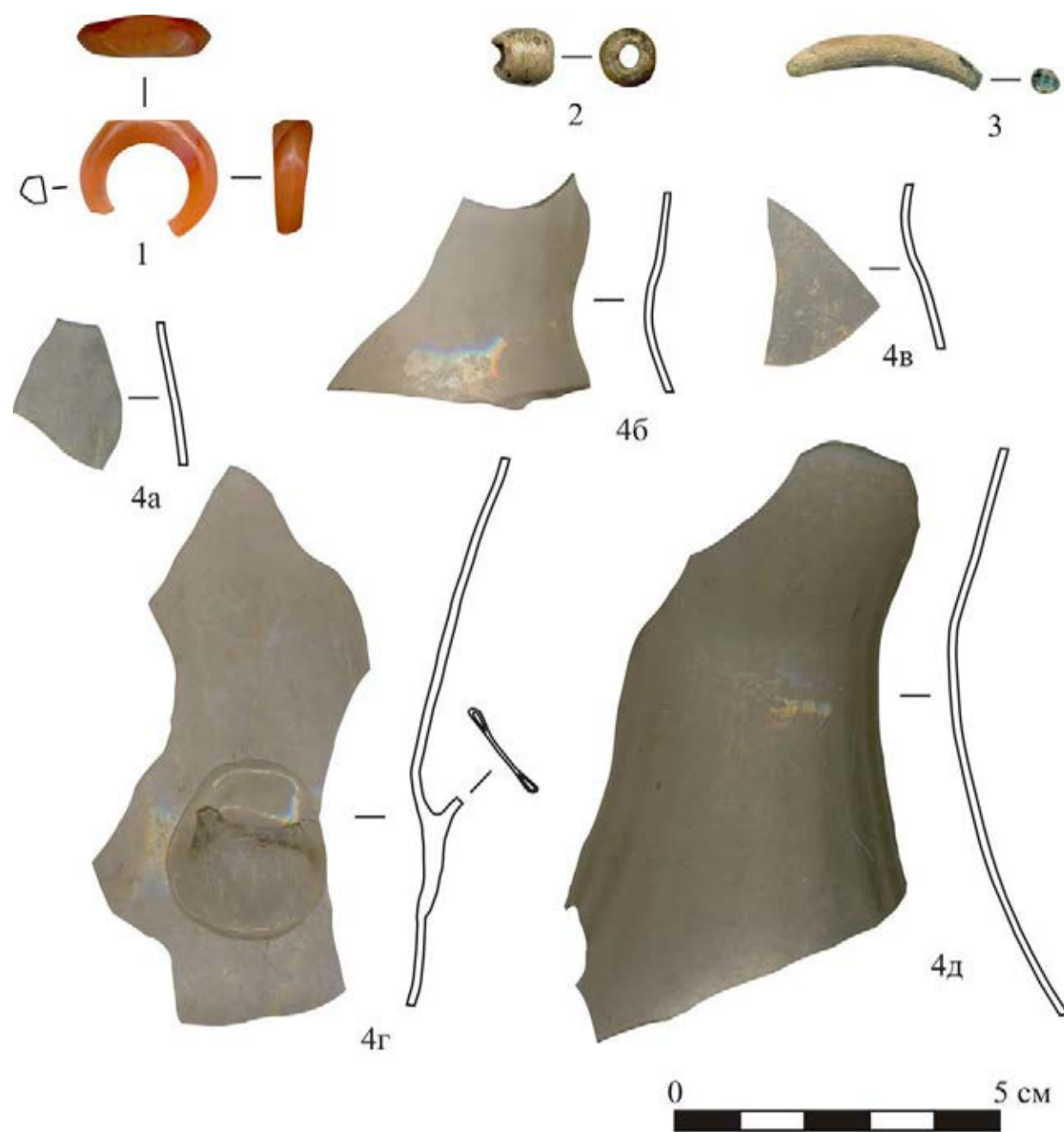


Findings. Iron articles: 1-7. Knives 8-10. Fragments of undefined items. X-XV centuries.



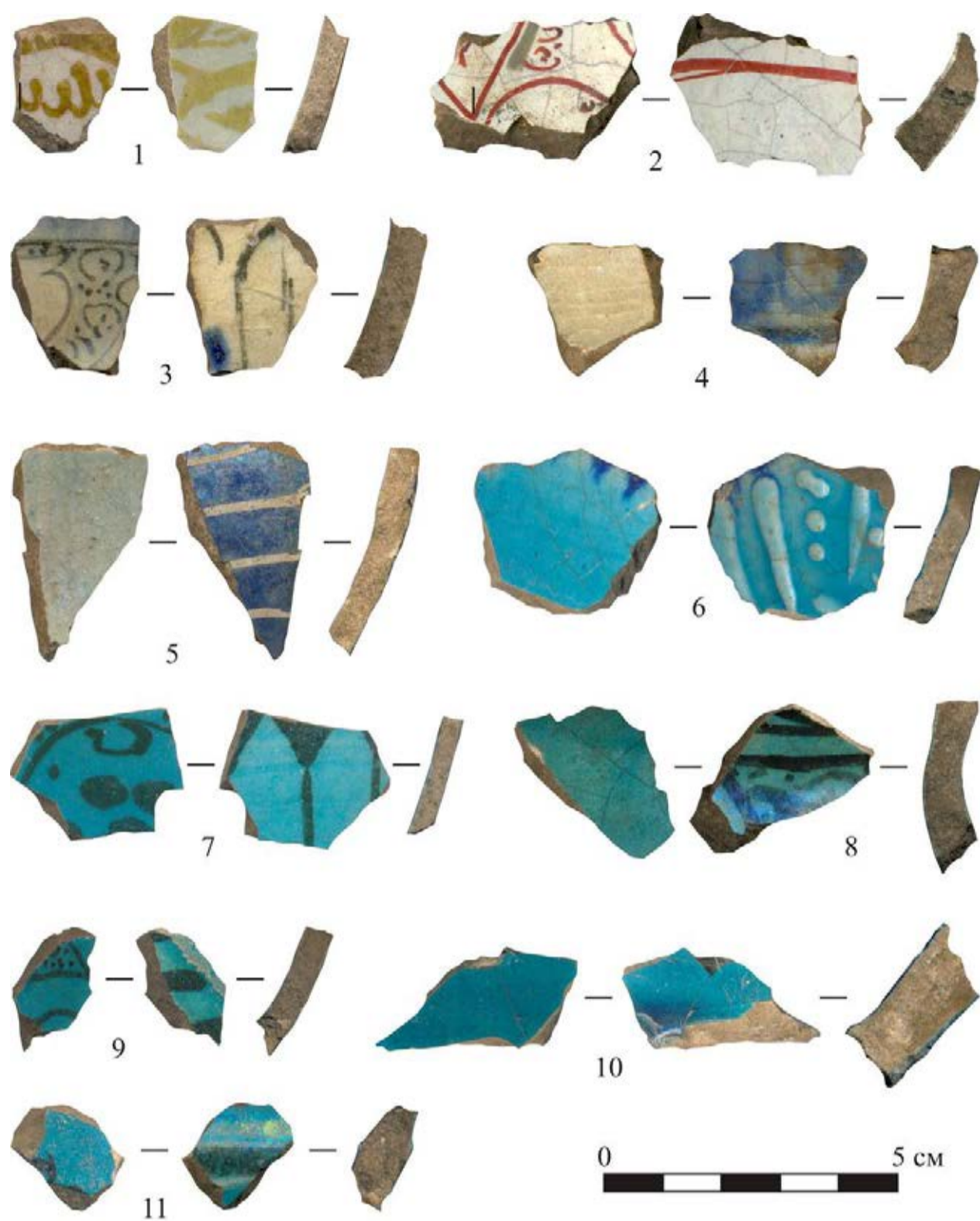
Находки. Кожаные изделия (1-6 – обрезки раскроя, 7-8 – фрагменты изделий (голешища обуви?)) с заполнения ямы (соор.№12, уч. В/1, шт.5, выб.3, сл. IV) и костяные изделия (9 – фрагмент затыльника рукояти, 10 – накладка).

Second half of XIII – the beginning of XIV centuries.



Находки. Изделия из сердолика (1) и стекла (1 – перстень, 2 – бусина, 3 – фрагмент браслета, 4 – фрагменты сосуда).

XIII – XIV centuries.

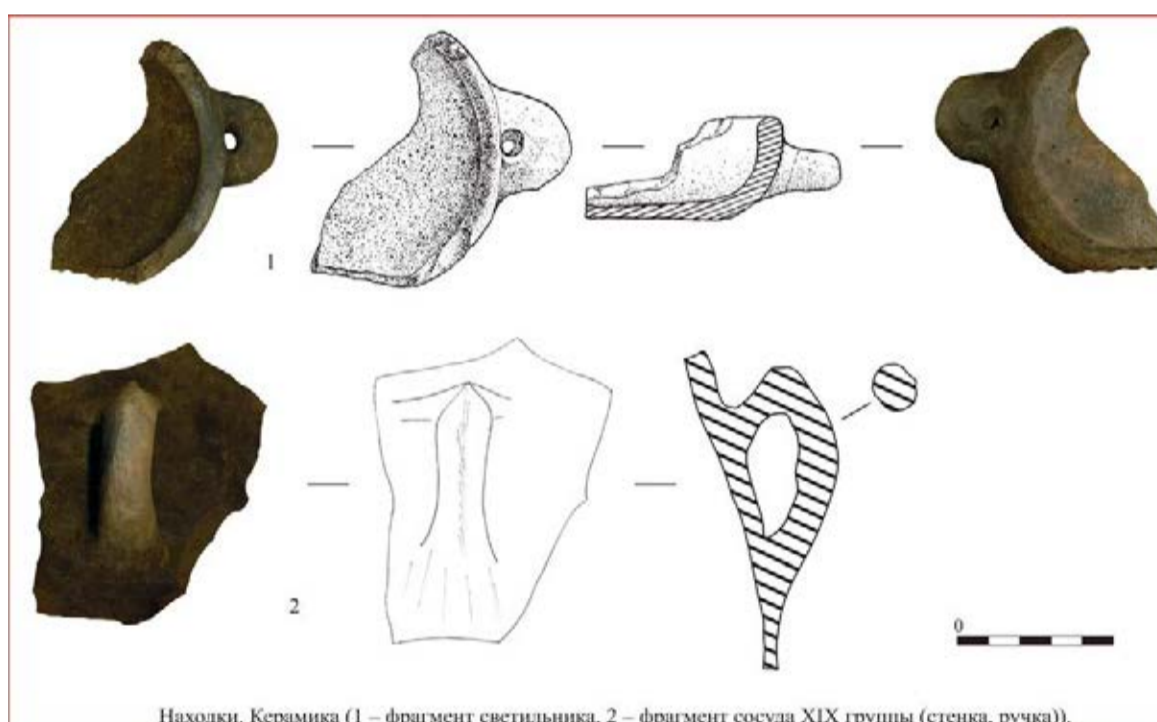


Находки. Керамика кашинная (1 – люстр, 2 – минаи, 3-11 – полива).
 XI – XV centuries.



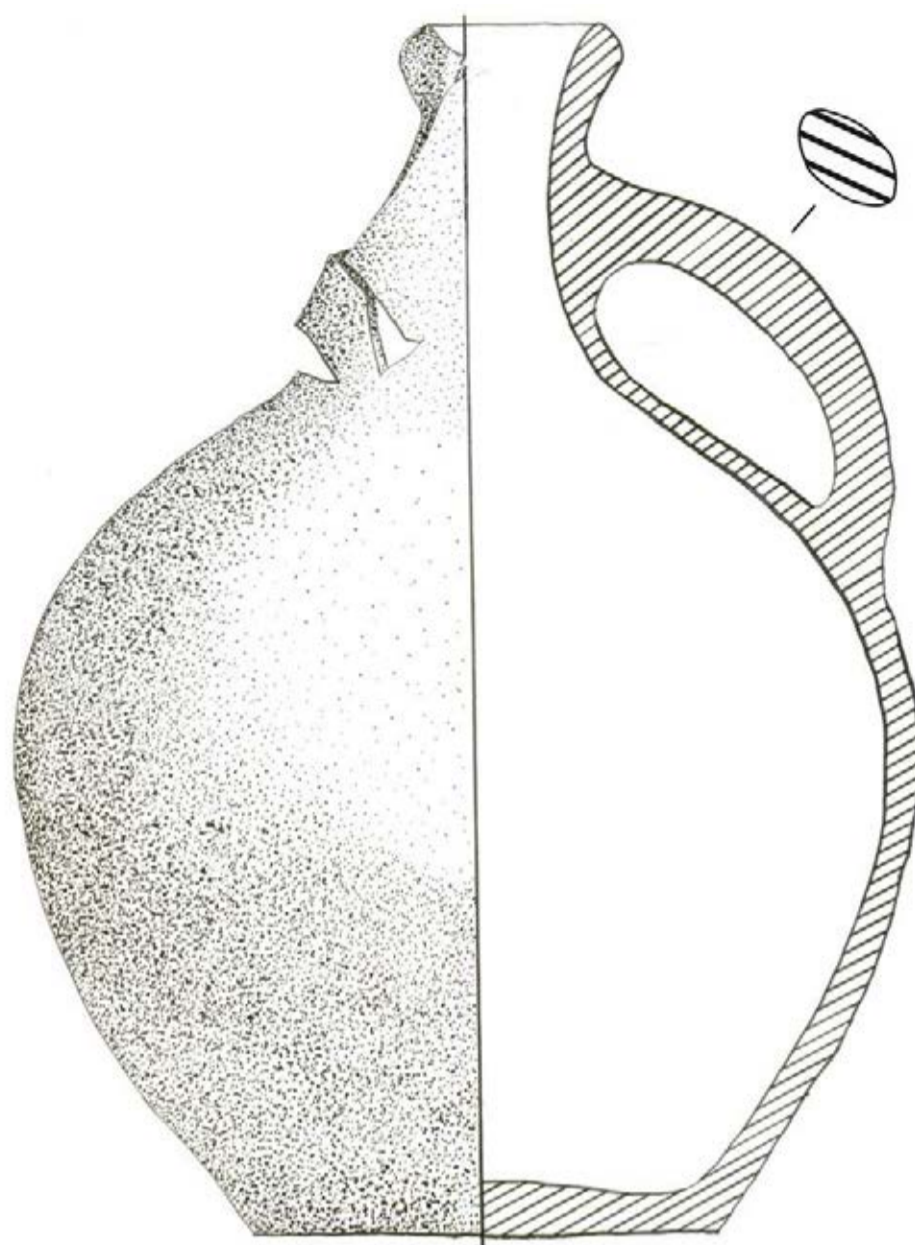
Находки. Керамика поливная.

XIII – XV centuries.

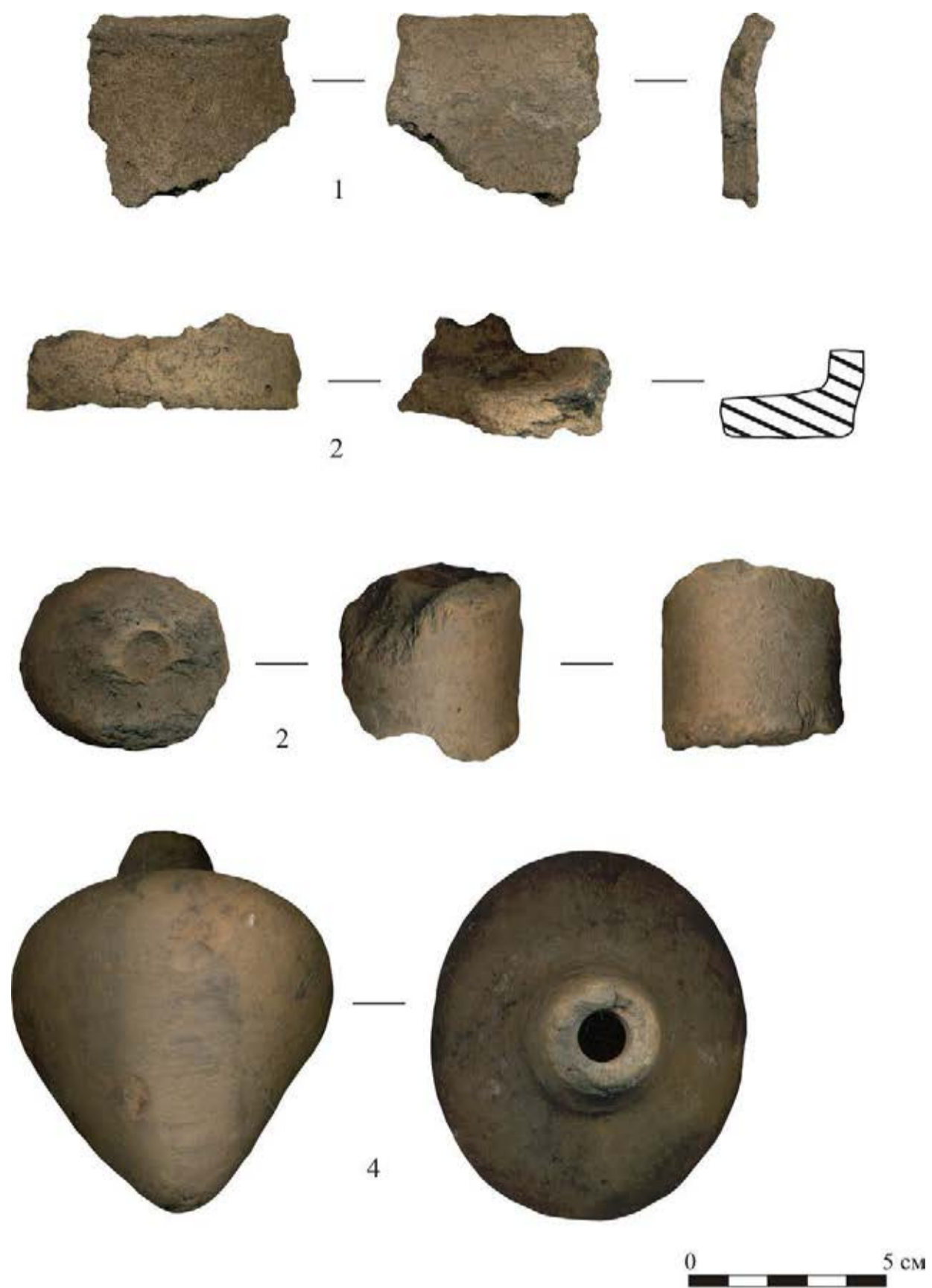


Находки. Керамика (1 – фрагмент светильника, 2 – фрагмент сосуда XIX группы (стенка, ручка)).

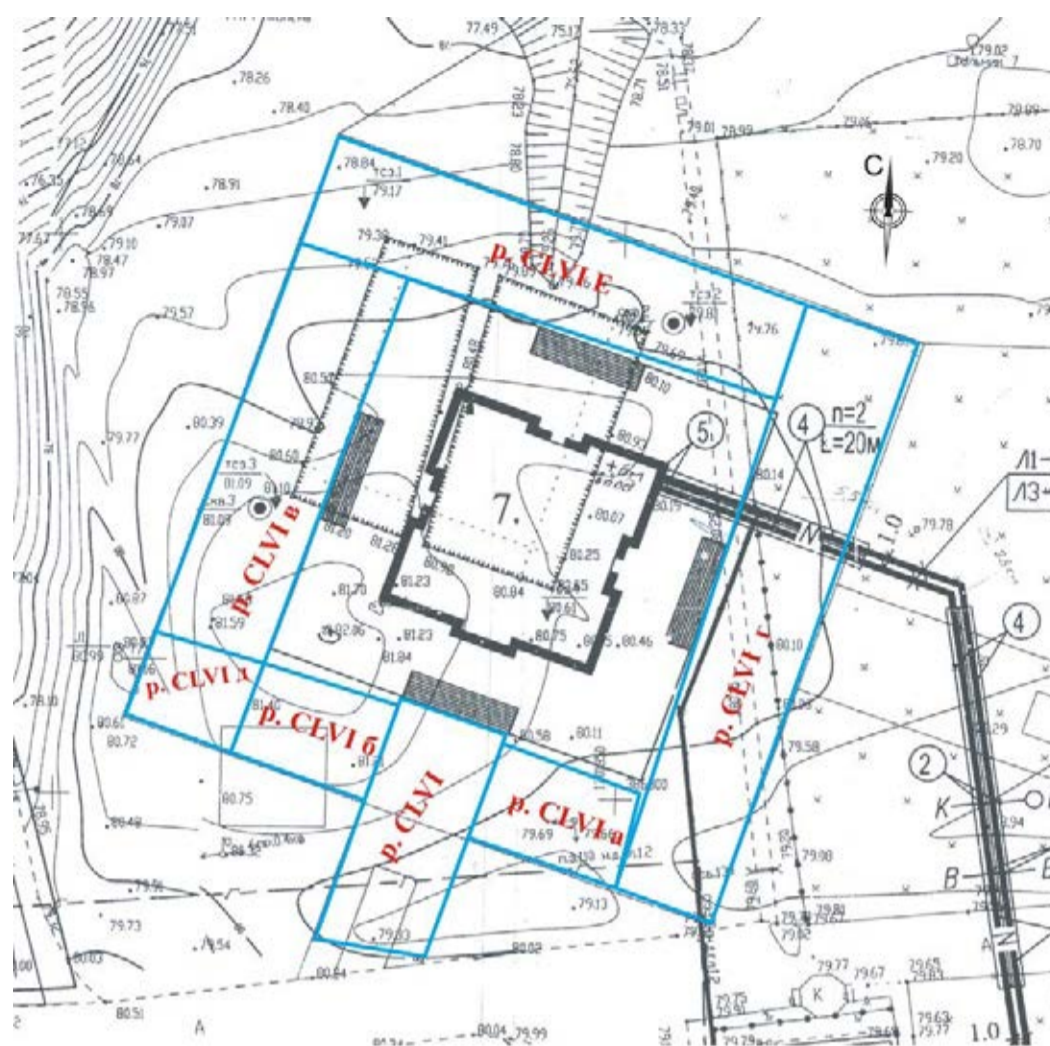
XIII – XIV centuries.



Находки. Керамика (кувшин фрагментированный I общеболгарской группы).
Findings. Ceramics of XIII – XIV centuries.



Находки. Керамика (1 – венчик лепного сосуда, 2 – фрагмент дна лепного сосуда, 3 – фрагмент пестовидной ручки, 4 – сфероконус).
 V – VII centuries. (1-2), VII – XI centuries (3) and XIII – XIV centuries. (4).



- Место проведения археологических раскопок.
 0 5 15 м

The location of excavation CLVI on the spot of the development of the Memorial sign's territory.

Excavation CLVI - laid in the northern part of the Bolgar ancient settlement on the site of the upcoming landscaping of the Memorial sign in honour of the adoption of Islam by the Volga Bulgars. Excavation area is 950 sq.m. The average depth of 1.7 m. Cultural layers of XI-XV and XVIII-XXI centuries were revealed. About 400 objects were fixed, most of them of the Golden Horde period (XIII-XIV centuries.). Found objects are the remains of wooden and brick buildings, dugouts and semi-dugouts, which served as shops, homes and cellars, as well as metallurgy and pottery kilns, household pits of different purpose of V-VII, XIII-XV and XVIII-XX centuries.

In the late Horde time (XIV-XVI centuries) a Muslim cemetery was founded in this part of the town.



General view of excavation CLVIa on the spot of the development of the territory of the Memorial sign. Cleaning on the mainland pit level.



General view of excavation CLVI on the spot of the development of the territory of the Memorial sign. Cleaning on the mainland pit level.



Excavation CLVI on the spot of the development of the territory of the Memorial sign.
Half dug-out of XIII centuries.



Excavation CLVI on the spot of the development of the territory of the Memorial sign.
Residential house of XIII–XIV centuries.



Excavation CLVI on the spot of the development of the territory of the
Memorial sign.

Imported spray hose jars of XIII–XIV centuries.



Excavation CLVI on the spot of the development of the territory of the
Memorial sign.

Imported spray hose plates of XIII–XIV centuries.



Excavation CLVI on the spot of the development of the territory of the Memorial sign.

Imported spray hose bowl of XIII–XIV centuries.



Excavation CLVI on the spot of the development of the territory of the Memorial sign.

Fragments of imported spray hose bowl of XIII–XIV centuries.



Excavation CLVI on the spot of the development of the territory of the Memorial sign.

Sphere-cones of XII–XV centuries.



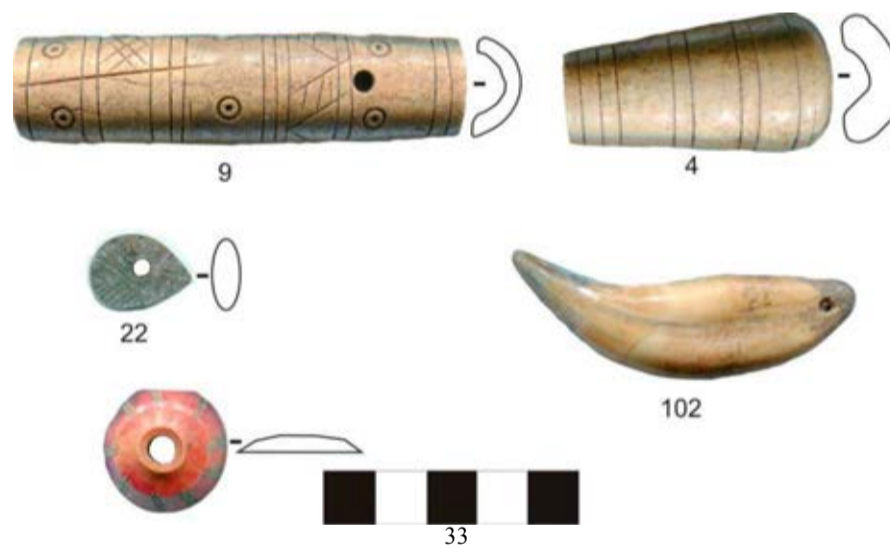
Excavation CLVI on the spot of the development of the territory of the Memorial sign.

Pot of XIII–XV centuries.



Excavation CLVI on the spot of the development of the territory of the Memorial sign.

Jar with tar XIV century.



Findings from the bones. 4,9 - fragments of handles, 22 - part of the inlaid handle 33 - colored button; 102 - amulet of the bear tooth (numbers on collectible inventory).

XII-XV cc.



Findings. Fragment of a cast-iron pot (1), a harpoon head (12), indeterminate iron items (2, 6)

XIII-XIV cc.



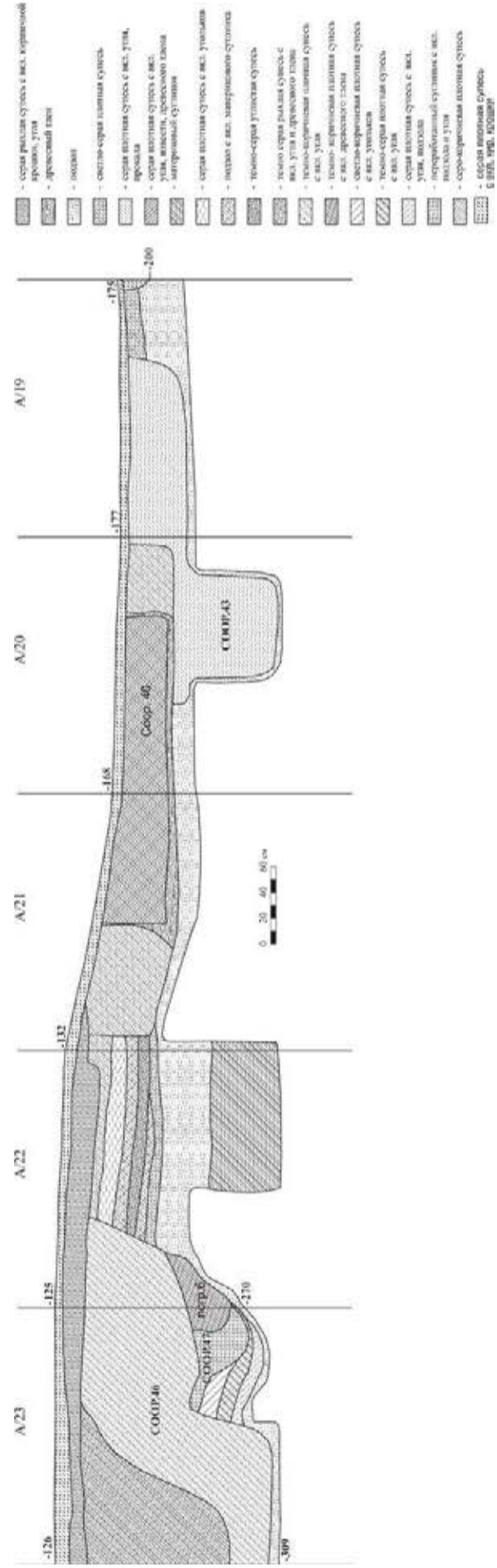
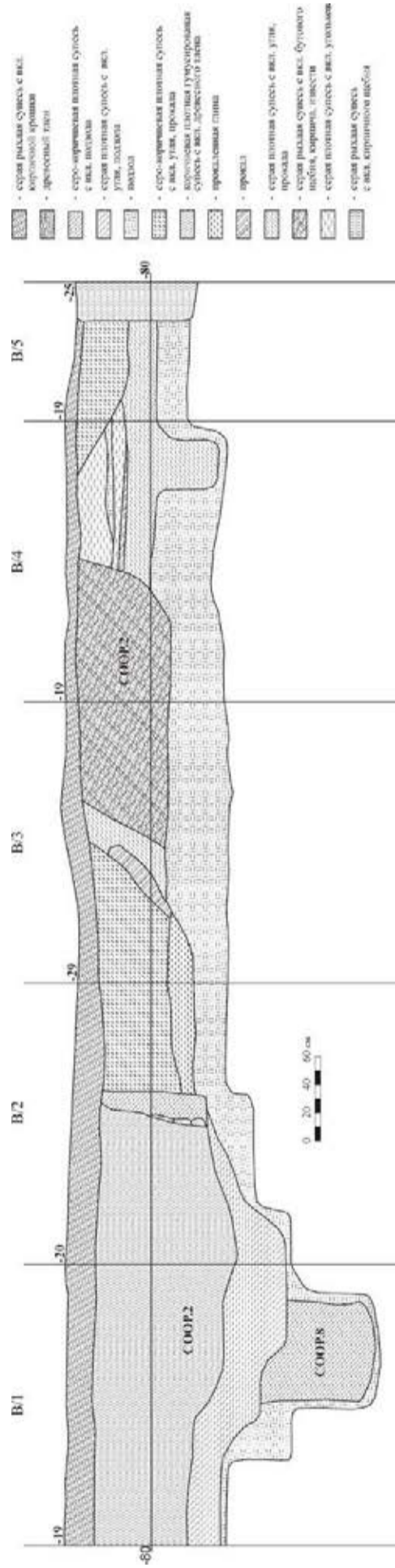
Findings. Quiver frog (17), noisy pendants (16, 18) pendant (37), fragment of a ring (35), seal (38).

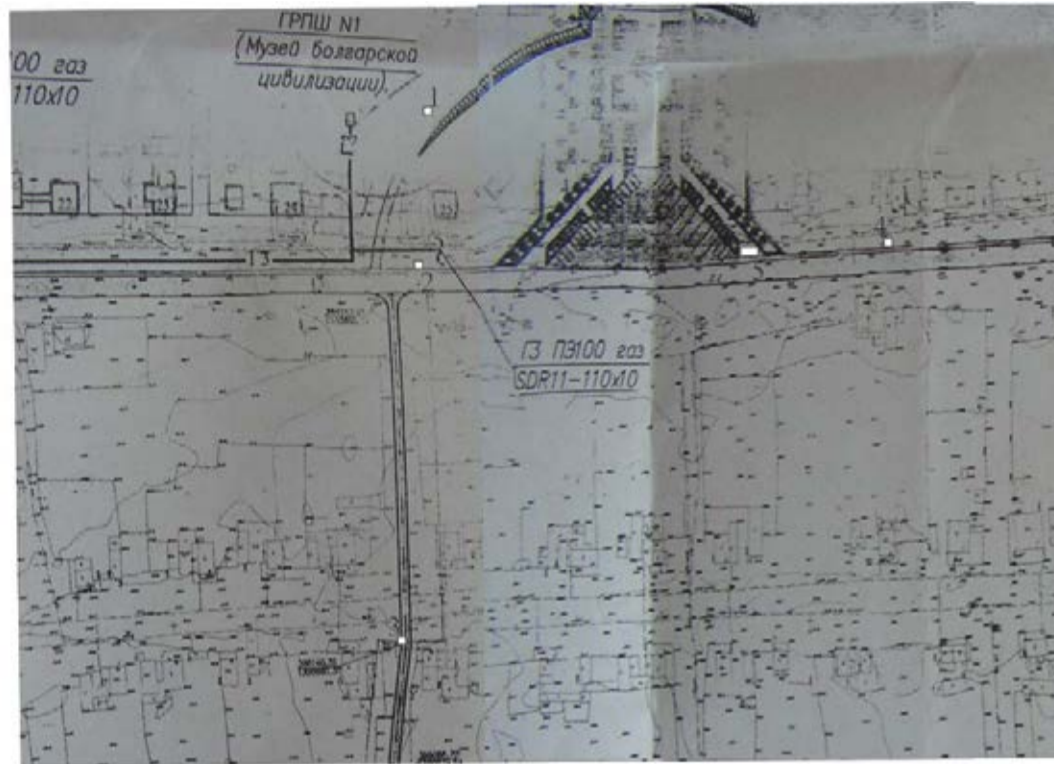
VIII-XV cc.



Findings. White metal coins 19-25,27,33,41-43 ; copper coins 15, 28-32, 34, 39, 40.

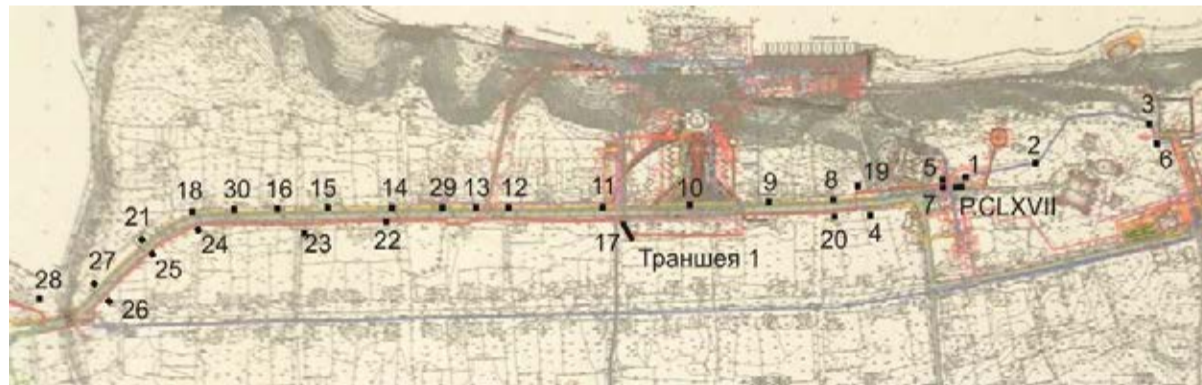
XIII-XVIII cc.





□ - место проведения археологических раскопок.

- 1-шурф.№1 Размеры: площадь 9кв.м., средняя глубина 2,2 м.
- 2-шурф.№2 Размеры: площадь 9кв.м., средняя глубина 0,8 м.
- 3-шурф.№3 Размеры: площадь 9кв.м., средняя глубина 1,3 м.
- 4-шурф.№4 Размеры: площадь 9кв.м., средняя глубина 1,3 м.
- 5-шурф.№5 Размеры: площадь 18кв.м., средняя глубина 1,4 м.



Pit-holes are laid along Muhamedyara Str. and Nazarovy Str. in the northwestern part of the Bulgar settlement on the site of the upcoming digging of pits for water and sewage system via horizontal drilling. Dimensions of pit-holes: 1x2 m, 2x2 m, 3x3 m, 2x3 m. Total area of pit-

holes is 351 sq.m. Average depth is 1.4 m. Cultural layers of XI-XV and XVIII-XXI centuries were revealed. About 100 objects of different time and purpose were registered.



Водоканал. Шурф №1 в районе котельной речного порта.



Water conduit. Pit-hole No. 1 near the boiler-house of the river port.



Водоканал. Шурф №2 по ул. Мухамедьяра.



Water conduit. Pit-hole No. 2 on Mukhamedyar Str.



Водоканал. Шурф №3 по ул. Назаровых



Water conduit. Pit-hole No.3 on the Nazarovy Str.



Water conduit. Pit-hole No.4 on Nazarovy Str. near the river boat station



Water conduit. Pit-hole No.4 on Nazarovy Str. near the river boat station



Water conduit. Pit-hole No.5 in the middle site of the settlement near the cash office.



Water conduit. Pit-hole No.5 in the middle site of the settlement near the cash office



Water conduit. Pit-hole No.14.



Водоканал. Шурф №27.

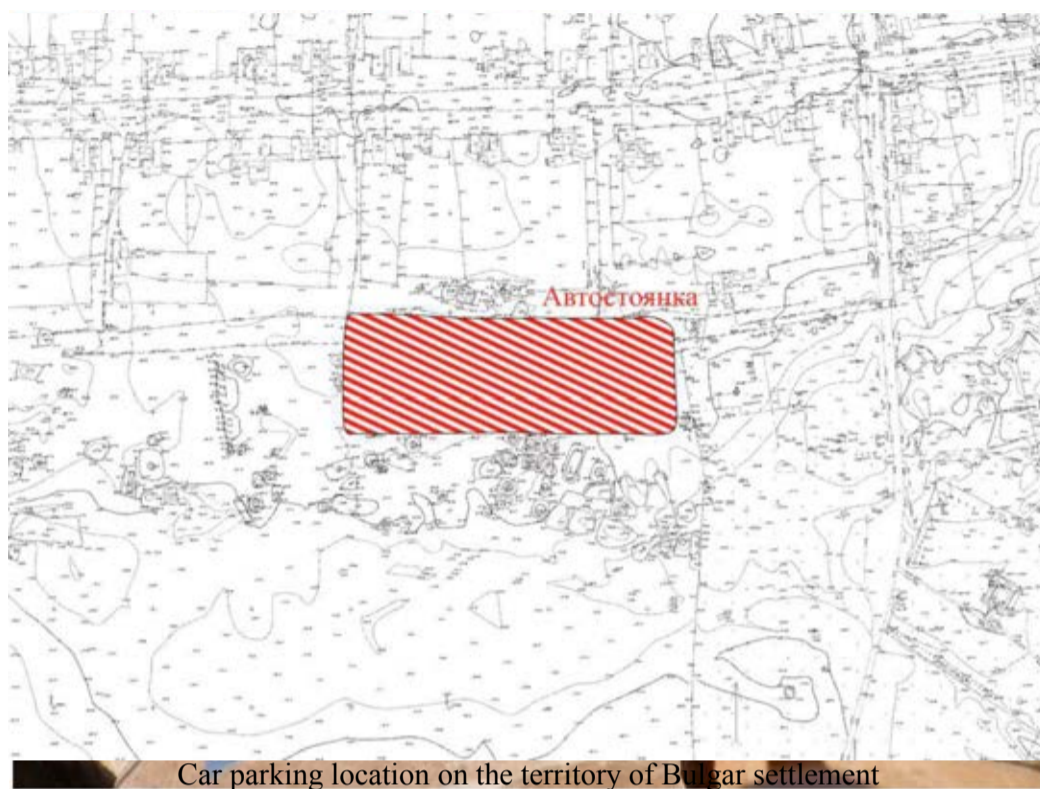


Water conduit. Pit-hole No. 14

Water conduit. Pit-hole No. 18



Водоканал. Шурф №18.



Car parking location on the territory of Bulgarian settlement

The observations were made on the place of soil cutting for the construction of the car parking lot in the central part of the Bulgar settlement. The cultural layer of the site was completely destroyed in the first half of XX century due to digging of many holes for household garbage in the Bolgar site. 10-15 cm of soil was cut mechanically and under the supervision of a specialist archaeologist. The truncated layer consists of 5 cm sod, followed by a modern layer formed due to plowing area for gardens and economic life in the XIX - XX centuries. Cultural layers of earlier period are not destroyed.



Срезка грунта на месте предстоящего строительства автостоянки.



Soil cutting on the place of the oncoming car parking construction



Asphalt road construction on the site of historic roads

The observations were made during the construction of the asphalt road on the site of historic roads on the territory of the Bolgar settlement. At these sites due to previous studies there is no urban development. The soil layer was recycled to the mainland caused by an earth-road. Soil cutting was made mechanically to a depth of 10-25 cm. The cut layer consists of a topsoil formed as a result of plowing in XIX - XX centuries. Cultural deposits earlier period due to cutting are not destroyed.



Наблюдения при строительстве асфальтовой дороги на месте исторических дорог
Observations during asphalt road construction on the site of historic roads



Наблюдения при строительстве асфальтовой дороги на месте исторических дорог



Наблюдения при строительстве асфальтовой дороги на месте исторических дорог

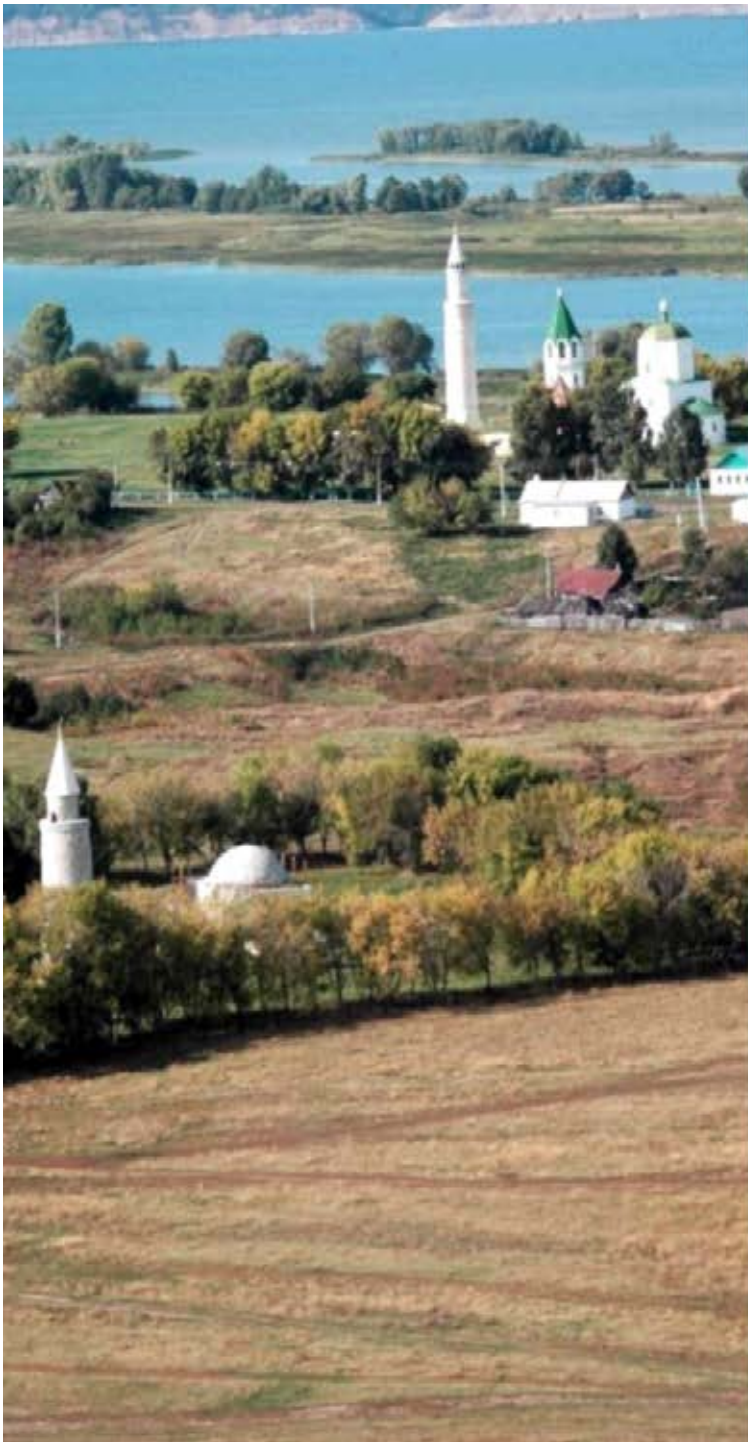


Observations during asphalt road construction on the site of historic roads



Наблюдения при строительстве асфальтовой дороги на месте исторических дорог

Observations during asphalt road construction on the site of historic road.



*Sh. Mardzhani Institute of History of the Academy of
Sciences of the Republic of Tatarstan,
Kazan (Volga Region) Federal University*

**Archaeological studies and
museumification plan of the
new objects of archaeology
within the territory of the
Bulgar ancient settlement for
2012-2019**

New stage objectives in preservation and studying of the Bulgar ancient settlement:

- complete preservation of historico-cultural and landscape potential of the Bulgar ancient settlement as one of the main social and economic resources of its existence and development
- implementation of the overall approach in studying, museumification and creation of the new museum-informational and scientific area with incorporation into the all-Russian and international projects and tour itineraries.

Priority tasks

- To form a common museum area of the Bulgar ancient settlement and of the region by turning the Bulgar Reserve-Museum into the Modern International Museum-Cultural and Scientific-Educational Center.
- To establish an international scientific-methodological center of the modern archaeological interdisciplinary researches with a wide range of scientific programs, internationalization of the research process.
- To create a Centre of excellence for personnel training in regard to preservation of historical and cultural heritage (from preschoolers to academicians) on the basis of the Academy of Sciences of the RT, the KFU, the department of UNESCO and the Bulgar Museum-Reserve. To develop the children's museum centers, teaching expositions, operating laboratories.
- To create new modern expositions that will popularize the cultural heritage. To introduce the innovative technologies into expositional and exhibition activity and restoration.

Areas of scientific researches of the Bulgar ancient settlement 2012-2014

Identification

- Creation of geoinformational system of the Bulgar and the adjacent territories
- Application of non-destructive methods for identification (geophysics, earth remote sensing, etc.)

Research

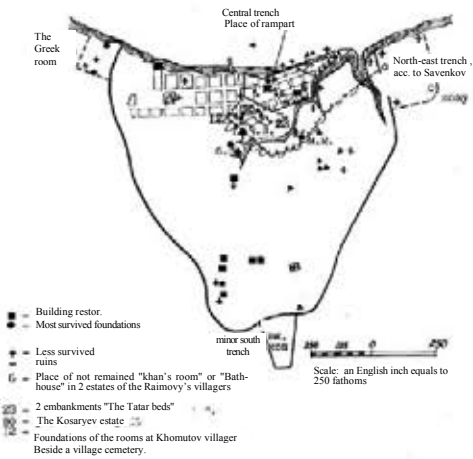
- Implementation of complex architectural archaeological and natural-science researches
- Introduction of contemporary techniques for accurate field fixation
- The habitat and economic life's reconstruction
- Formation and application of the new methods for age determination
- Renovation of ancient fabrication methods and use of ceramics, metal, stone (raw materials selection, fabrication, application)
- Anthropogenetic researches and reconstruction

The Monuments on the plans of Bolgar in the 19th century



«The plan of ruins and fortifications of the former capital of the Volga Bulgaria of Uspenskoye-Bulgars» acc. to plans of Shmit, Strauss, Savenkov, F. Surin and to research in 1892.
(Saltykov-Shchedrin library, Leningrad. 18.177.1.160)

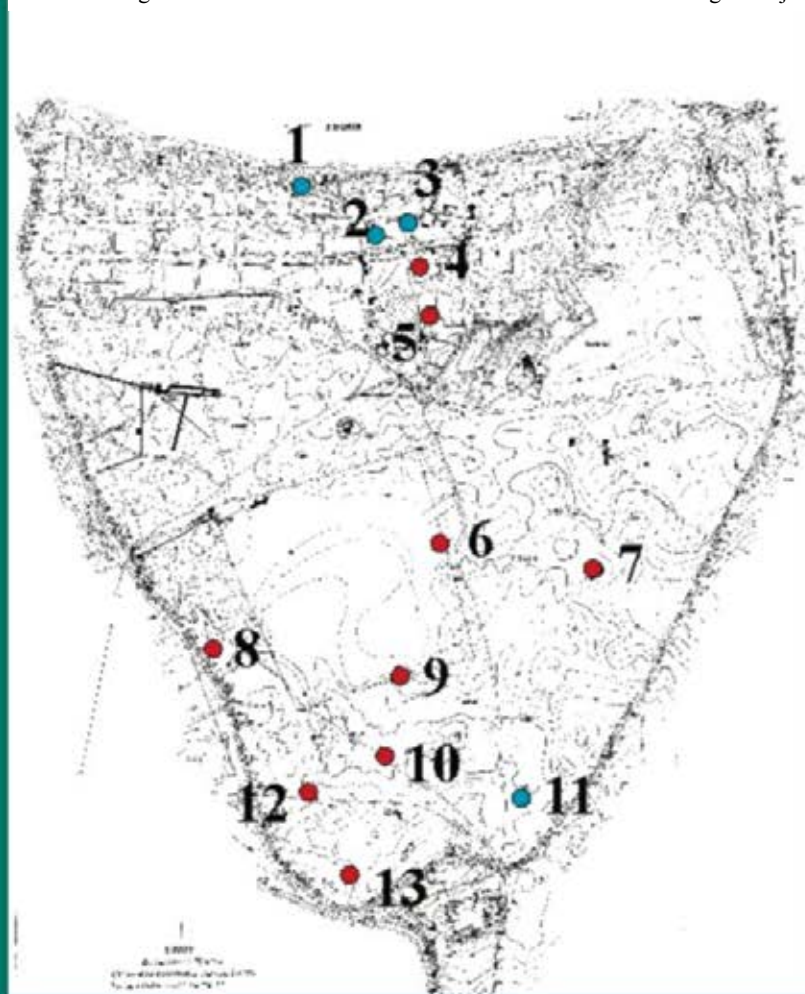
Kazan, November 5, 1892.
The annex to the Book "Across remarkable places of the Volga region. Tours of Kazan governorate and the Bulgar ruins", Published by F. Surin. K., 1896.



- Building restor.
- Most survived foundations
- Less survived ruins
- Place of not remained "khan's room" or "Bath-house" in 2 estates of the Rainmov's villagers
- 2 embankments "The Tatar beds"
- The Kosaryev estate
- Foundations of the rooms at Khomutov villager Beside a village cemetery.

Plan of the Objects for archaeological research for 2012-2019

Plan of the Bulgar ancient settlement with indication of the architectural – archeological objects



Object name

1. Bath house beside the riverside station
2. Building at market-place
3. Building beside the Cathedral Mosque
4. Building beside former estate of the Abrosimovy
5. Building beside former estate of the Krainevy
6. 6-13. 8-16 Mausoleums (?)

Progress schedule of the archaeological researches for 2012-2019

	Name of the Object	2012-2014	2015-2017	2018-2019
1	The Bath-house beside the riverside station	Excavations Conservation	Museumification	
2	Building at market-place	Excavations Conservation	Museumification	
3	Building beside the cathedral mosque	Excavations Conservation	Conservation Museumification	
4	Building beside the Abrosimovy estate		Excavations Conservation	Conservation Museumification
5	Building beside the Krainevy estate		Excavations Conservation	Excavations Conservation Museumification
6	8 Mausoleum	Excavations Conservation.	Conservation Museumification	
7-9	9 -11 Mausoleums		Excavations Conservation Museumification	
10-13	12-15 Mausoleums			Excavations Conservation Museumification
Total 16 Objects				

Museum of Bolgar Civilization

Exposition Concept

Kazan 2012

Museum of Bolgar Civilization

Main exposition sections:

Section I. Scientific research of ancient Bolgar

Section II. Sources and formation of the Bolgar Civilization

Section III. Ancient Bolgar

Section IV. Nature in the region



Museum of Bolgar Civilization

Section I

Scientific research of ancient Bolgar

The purpose of this section is to give the visitor a summary of the research and preservation of Bolgar historical and cultural monuments and its neighborhood starting from the period when Bolgar ruins first appeared on Russian maps through today's archaeological research of the site of the ancient town and from Peter the Great's Decree to preserve the ruins through the creation of the Foundation for Renaissance of Bolgar and Sviyazhsk.

The section will answer the following questions:

What is the Bolgar as a cultural and historical monument?

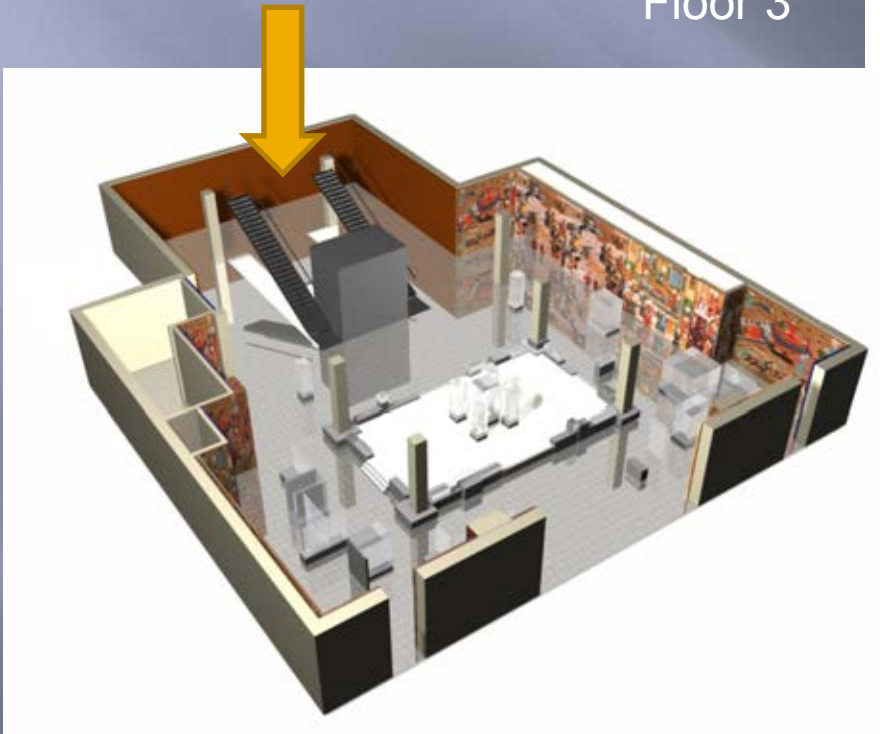
Who and when carried out conservation and restoration of Bolgar monuments?

Who and when studied Bolgar's archaeology?

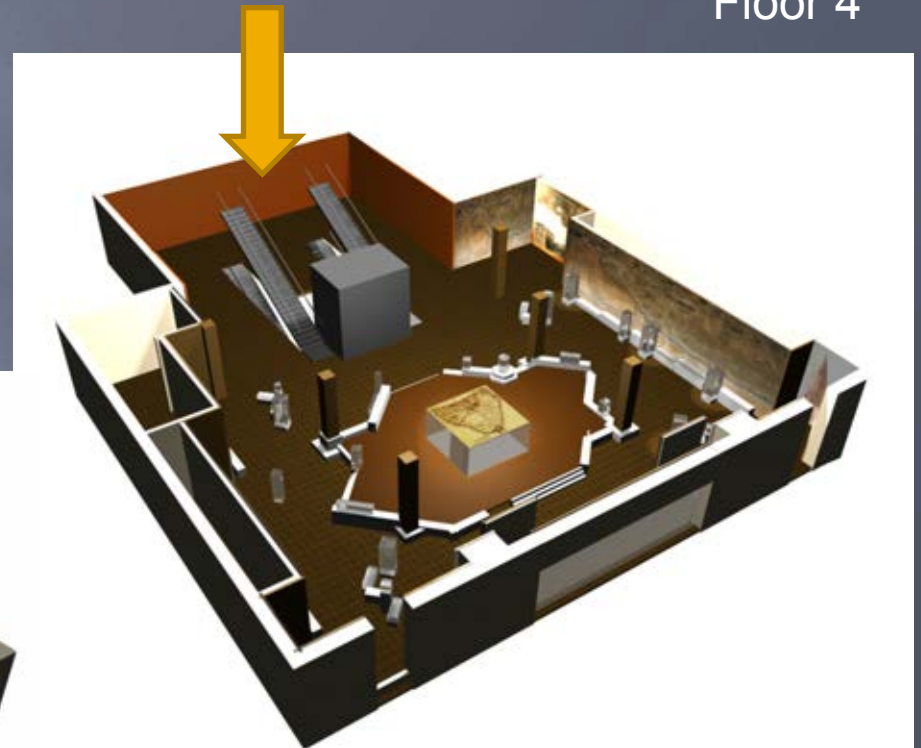
Scientific research of ancient Bolgar

You are here:

Floor 3



Floor 4



Museum of Bolgar Civilization

Section II

Origins and formation of the Bolgar Civilization

The purpose of the section is to give the idea of the Medieval Bulgarian civilization as a historical phenomenon, showing the place and role of the Bulgarians (primarily Volga Bulgarians) on the broad geographic background-from China to Western Europe for over 1,500 years – from the emergence of predecessors of Bulgarians on the historical arena through the loss of the Bulgarian statehood by their successors.

The section will give general answers to the following questions:

Where do Bulgars come from?

What are ethnic, political and cultural elements of the Bulgarian civilization?

What is the historical destiny of Medieval Bulgarians?

II Origins and formation of the Bolgar Civilization

Structure of the section :

- 1. Huns in the East and West of Eurasia**
- 1. The era of the Turkic kaganates**
- 1. Great Bulgaria and the Khazar Hhaganate**

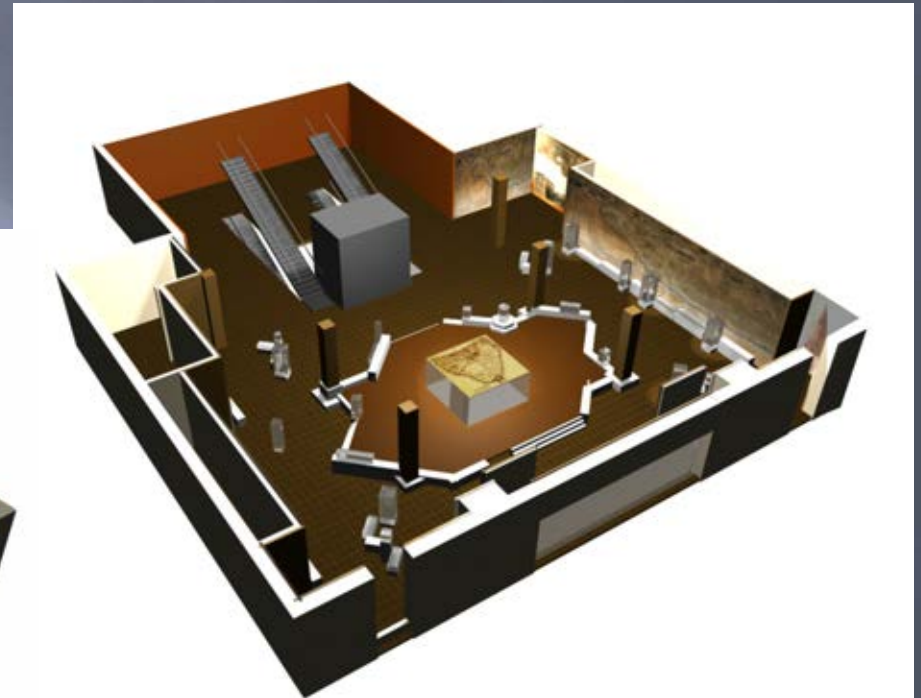
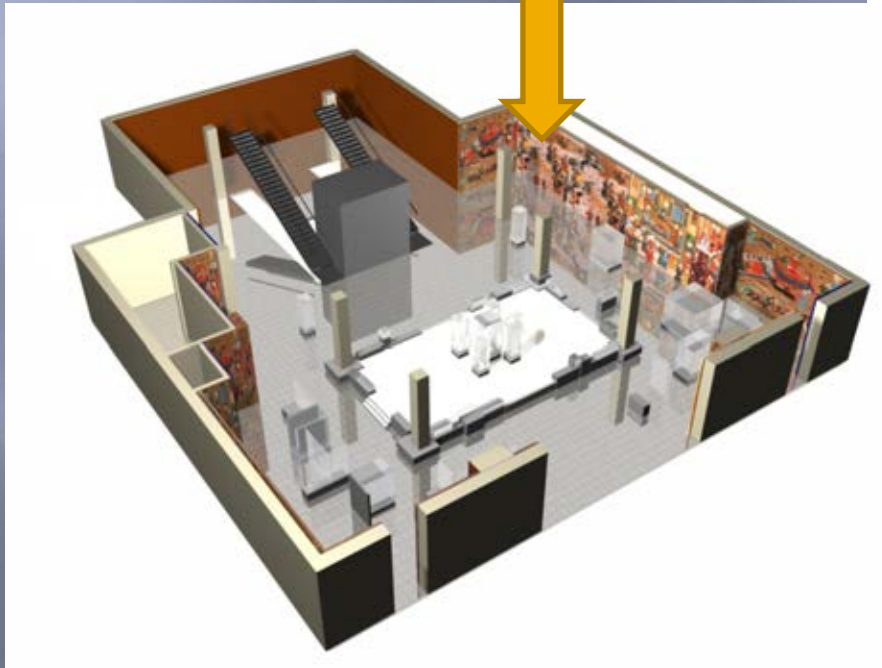
II Origins and formation of the Bolgar Civilization

1. Huns in the East and West of Eurasia

Floor 4

You are here:

Floor 3



II Origins and formation of the Bolgar Civilization

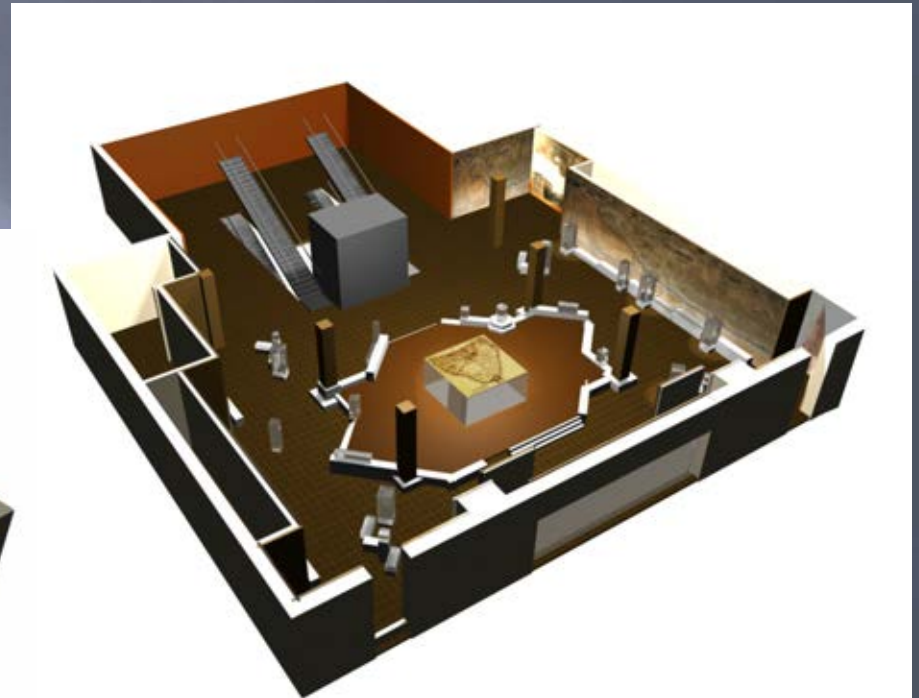
2. Era of the Turkic Kaganates.

You are here

Floor 3



Floor 4



II Origins and formation of the Bolgar Civilization

3. Great Bulgaria and Khazar Khanate

Floor 4

You are here

Floor 3



II Origins and formation of the Bolgar Civilization

- 4. Early Bolgarians in the Volga region (8th-early 10th centuries)**
- 5. Volga Bulgaria (late 10th-early 13th centuries)**
- 6. Golden Horde (mid13th-mid15th centuries)**
- 7. Tatar Khanates in 15th- early 18th centuries.**

The following three topics reflect the main developmental stages of the Bulgarian-Tatar civilization, basing primarily on the archaeological materials of the Volga region. The main idea running through these sections is the idea of understanding of the place (role) of the Bulgarians in the history and culture of Eastern Europe and Eurasia in general, Turkic-speaking peoples and the Islamic world.

A separate component of all the three sections is a prevailing subtopic "Bulgarians on the Danube". Due to the absence of genuine items, it may be presented in sensory kiosks in the form of electronic presentations.

The second subtopic "Crafts of Volga Bulgaria" is presented in volumetric reconstruction of production facilities in the central part of the room.

II Origins and formation of the Bolgar Civilization

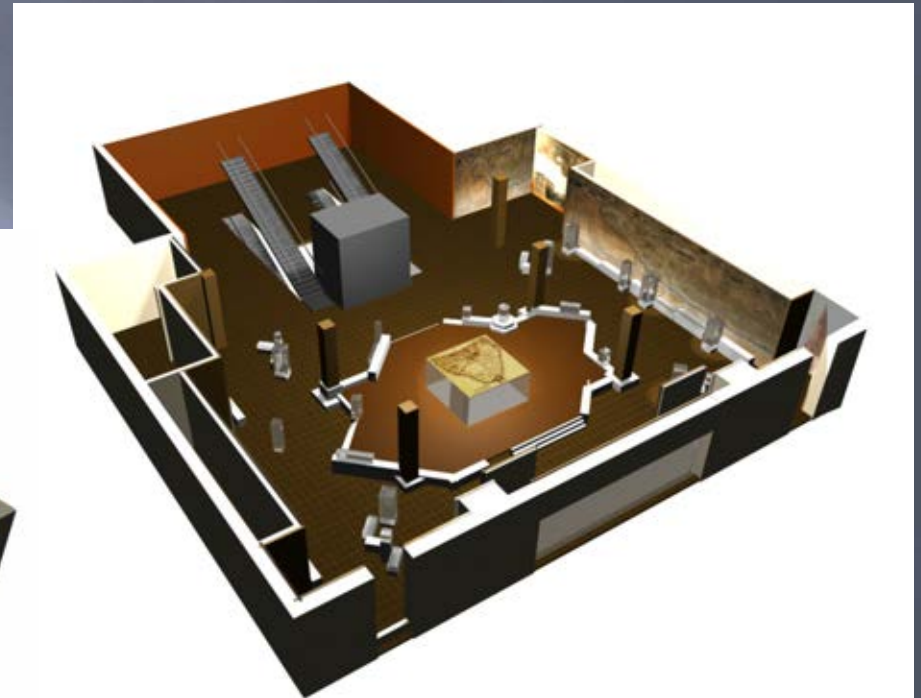
4. Early Bulgarians in the Volga region (8th-early 10th centuries)

You are here

Floor 3



Floor 4



II Origins and formation of the Bolgar Civilization

5. Volga Bulgaria (late 10th-early 13th centuries)

You are here:

Floor 3



Floor 4



II Origins and formation of the Bolgar Civilization

6. Golden Horde (mid13th-mid15th centuries)

You are here:

Floor 3



Floor 4



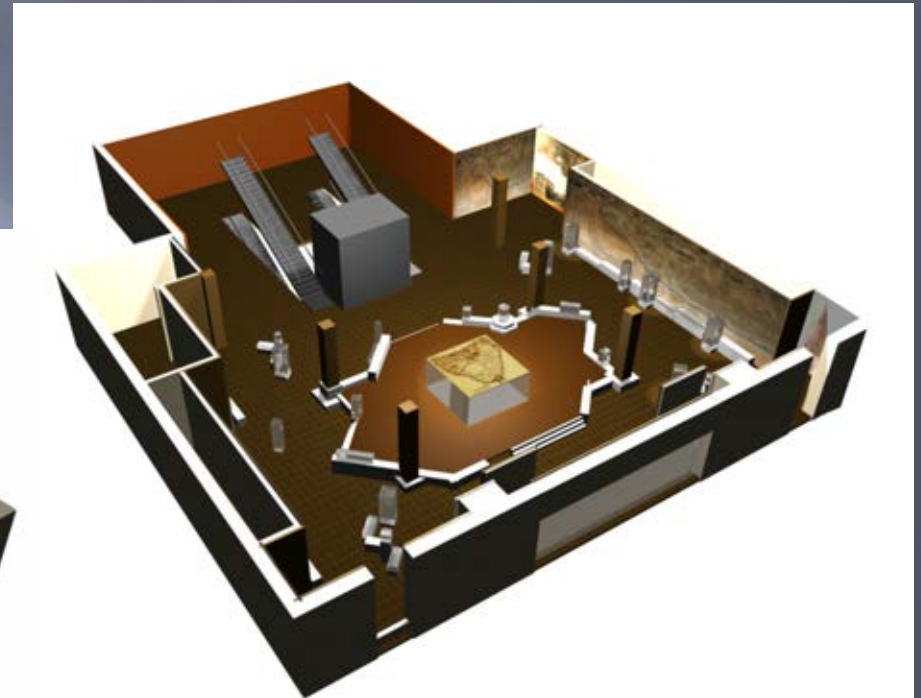
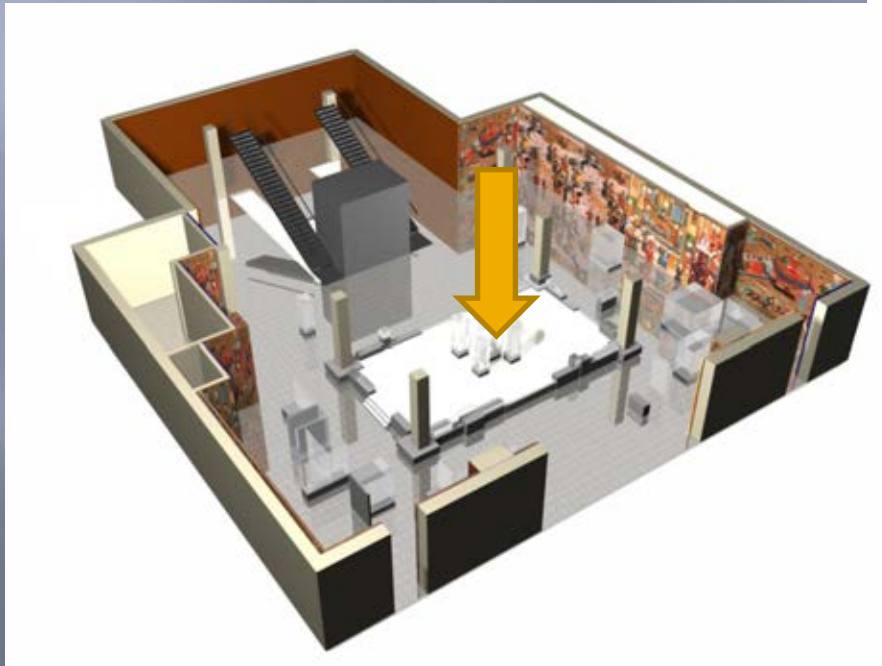
II Origins and formation of the Bolgar Civilization

Prevailing topic “Crafts in Volga Bolgaria”

Floor 4

Your are here :

Floor 3



II Origins and formation of the Bolgar Civilization

7. Tatar Khanates in 15th- early 18th centuries.

The topic reveals further history of the statehood of the Turkic-speaking population of Eastern Europe and Western Siberia. It has mostly visual and cartographic materials.

Presented electronically in the sensory kiosk connected to the server.

Museum of Bolgar Civilization

Section III Ancient Bolgar

The purpose of the section is to present the town of Bolgar as a model of the Islamic medieval urban culture using the method of thematic display that demonstrates some aspects of urban life in the city since its heyday through the period of the Golden Horde.

Structure of the section:

1. Bolgar's urban fortifications and military science
2. Urban architecture and improvement
3. Handicraft production.
4. Trade and international relations.
5. People of the town of Bolgar (Anthropology of the population)

Museum of Bolgar Civilization

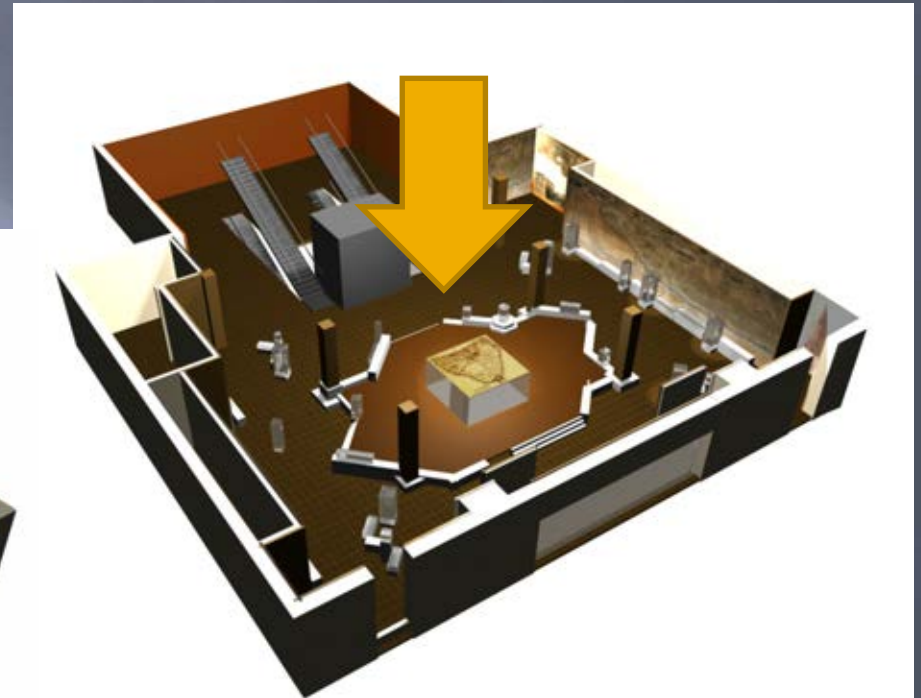
Section III. Ancient Bolgar

Your are here :

Floor 3



Floor 4



Section III. Ancient Bolgar

Structure of the section:

1. Bolgar's urban fortifications and military science
2. Urban architecture and improvement
3. Handicraft production.
4. Trade and international relations.
5. People of the town of Bolgar (Anthropology of the population)

Museum of Bolgar Civilization

Section IV. Nature in the region

The section contains information on the nature in the Bolgar area. The exhibition is at the window following the topic of "Early Bolgars in the Volga region", explaining why Bulgarian settlers found the region attractive.

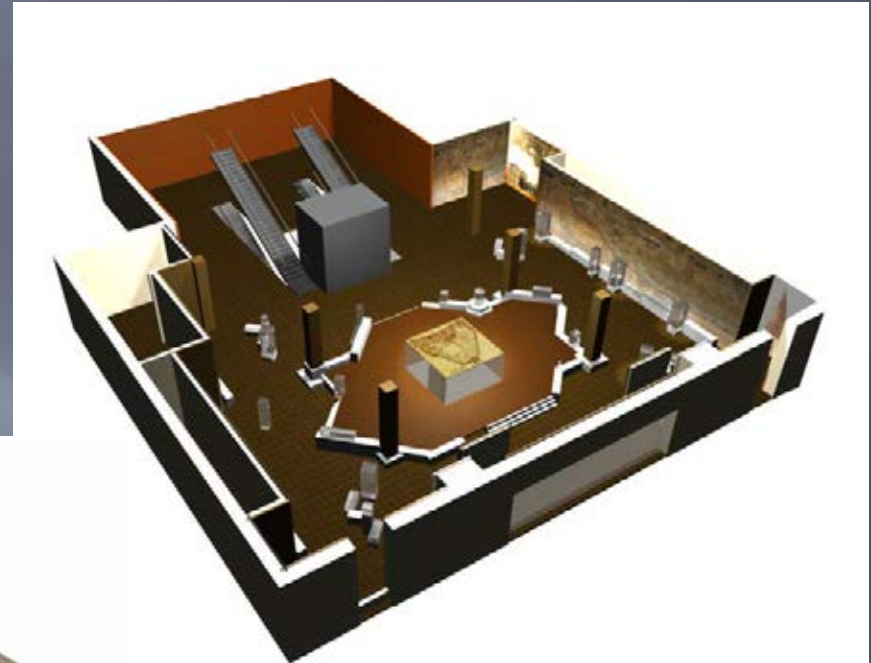
Presented electronically in a sensory kiosk connected to the server.

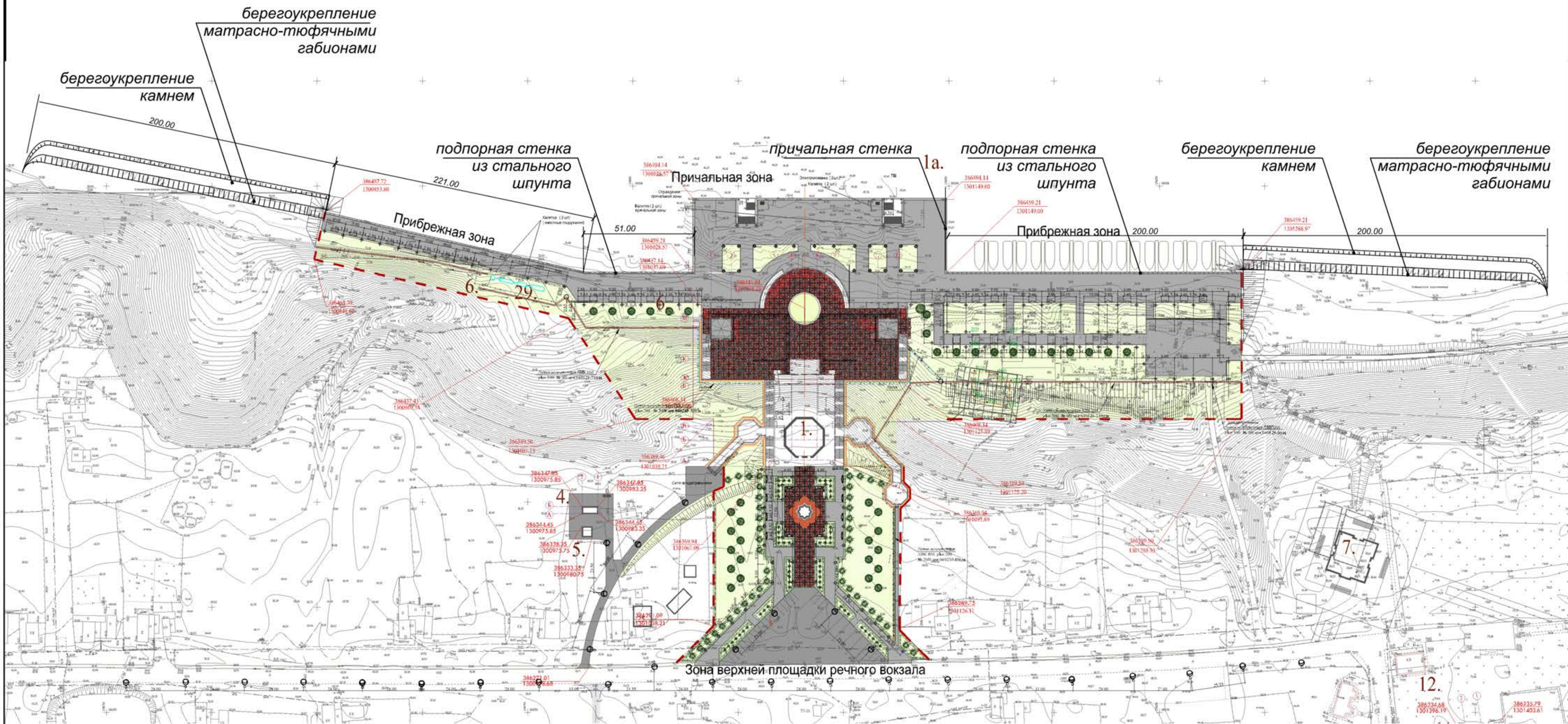
The section is here:

Floor 3



Floor 4



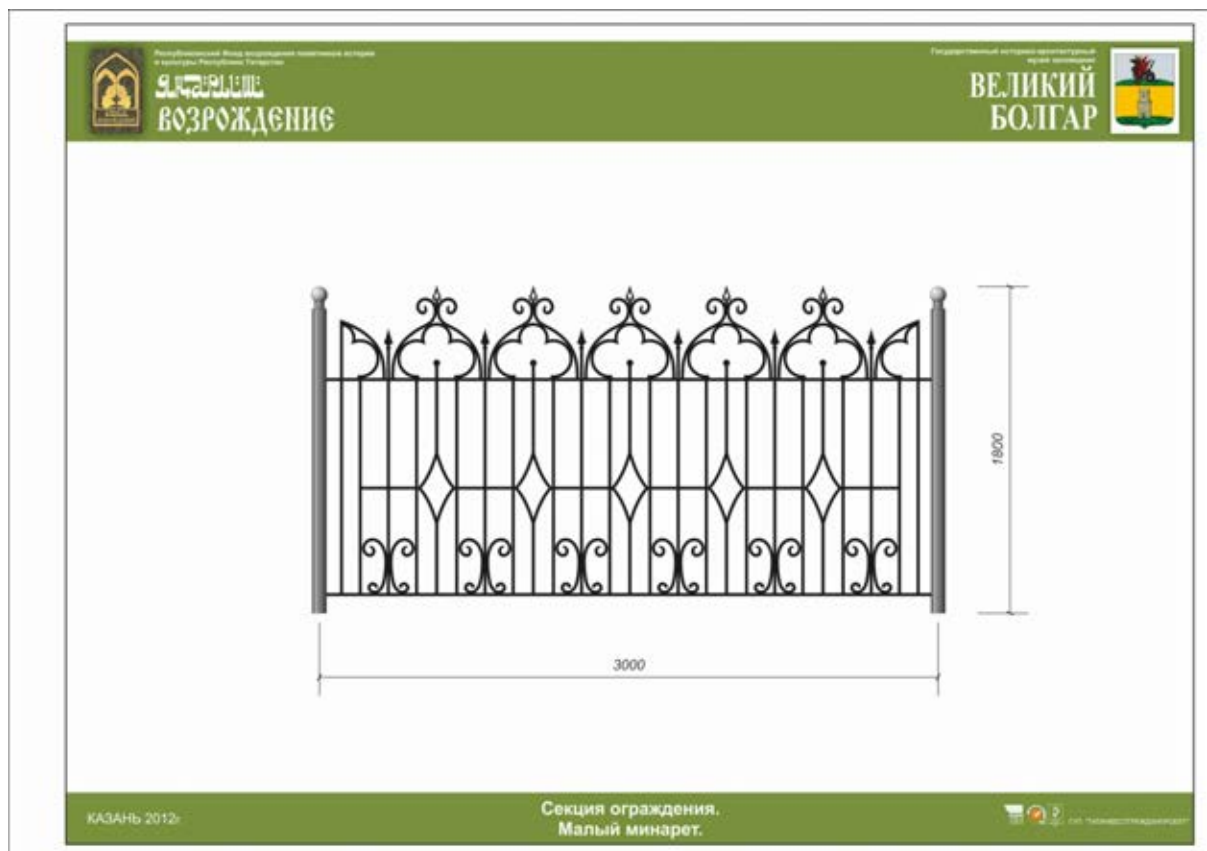


Aerial photography of the territory of the Bolgar Historical and Archeological Complex 1990





The fence around ancient Bolgar. The photo of the beginning of XX c.



The project of cross-section of the fence, Small Minaret and Khan's shrine.



The project of the site “The house of a doctor”.



General view of “The House of a doctor”. View from the west.



The project of craft workshops.



General view of Craft workshops. View from the south.



The project of the river station and the Museum of Bolgar civilization.



The project of the river station and the Museum of Bolgar civilization.



General view of the Memorial sign, 2012. View from the west.



Interior of the Memorial sign.



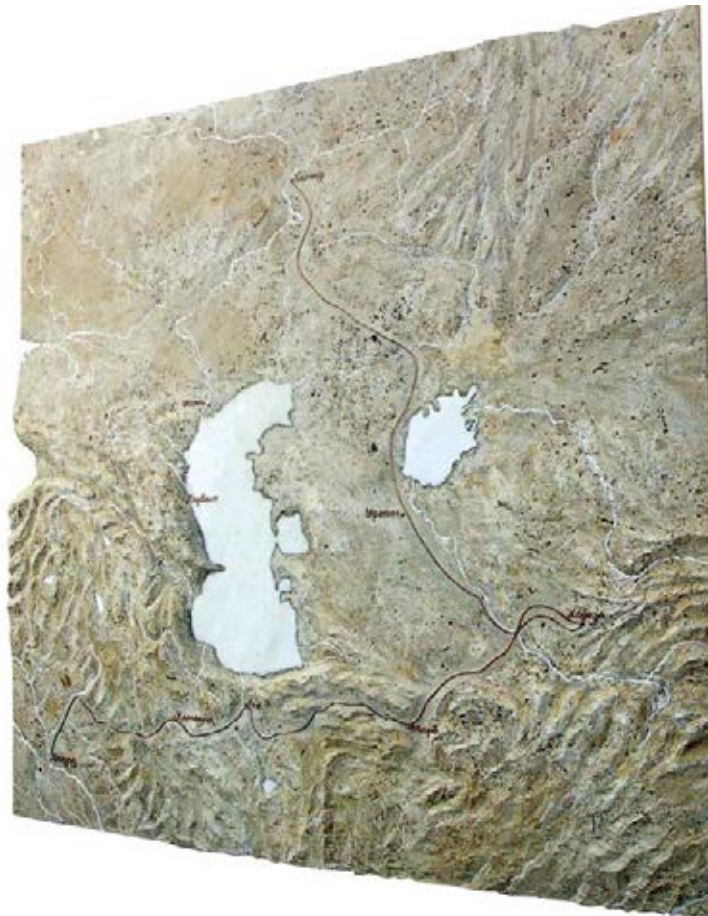
Pilgrims near the Memorial sign, 2012



Pilgrims near the Memorial sign, 2012



Pilgrims near the Memorial sign, 2012.



The journey of Akhmed Ibn-Fadlan to Volga Bulgaria



The Memorial sign. Koran.



The Memorial sign. Koran.



ПАМЯТНЫЙ ЗНАК КОНФЕРЕНЦ-ЗАЛ

The Memorial sign. The project of conference-hall's interior.



The Memorial sign. Museum exposition



The Memorial sign. Art gallery.



The Memorial sign. Art gallery.



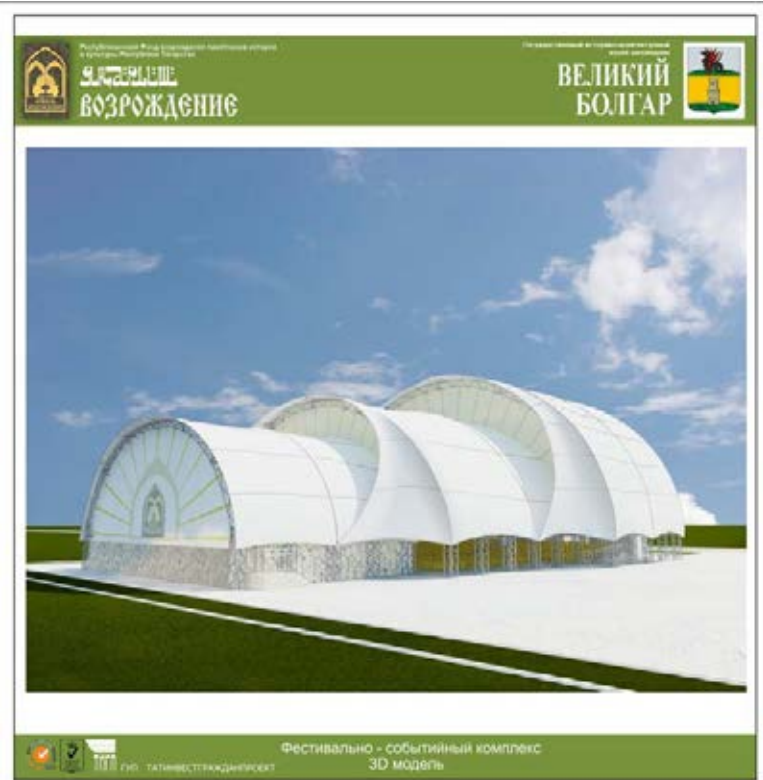
The Memorial sign. Art gallery.

Mosaic panel «The adoption of Islam by Volga Bulgarians».

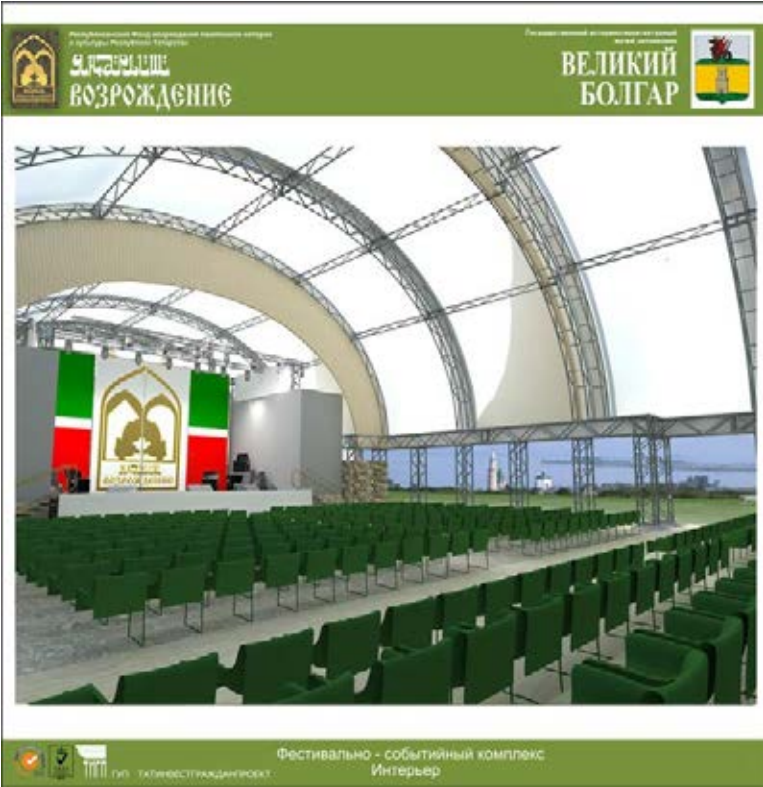


The Memorial sign. Art gallery.

Mosaic panel «The adoption of Islam by Volga Bulgarians».



The project of festival-event complex, 3 D model.



The project of festival-event complex's interior.



The project of the Camp



General view of campgrounds. South-west view.



The project of the Museum of bread.



General view of the Museum of bread. The view from the west.



The Museum of bread. The Windmill.



The Museum of bread. The house of a miller



The project of the White Mosque in Bolgar.



General view of the White Mosque in Bolgar. The view from the north.

REVISED MATERIALS OF THE
NOMINATION

**“BOLGAR HISTORICAL AND
ARCHAEOLOGICAL COMPLEX”**

(THE RUSSIAN FEDERATION,
THE REPUBLIC OF TATARSTAN)



INTRODUCTION

Draft Decision: 37 COM 8B.43

The World Heritage Committee

1. Having examined Documents WHC-13/37.COM/8B, WHC-13/37.COM/INF.8B.1 and WHC-13/37.COM/INF.8B.4,
2. Recognizing the Outstanding Universal Value of the object, directs back the nomination of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex (the Russian Federation), to the Member State in order to allow it, in collaboration with the Advisory Board (ICOMOS), in particular by inviting an advisory commission to the site, to take necessary measures for including the complex into the objects of world heritage on the basis of criteria (ii) and (vi) at the next session.

Advisory mission of the ICOMOS consisting of Mrs. Britta Rudolf and Mr. Willem Villems, with participation of Mr. Francesco Banderin and Mr. Mounir Bushenaki took place from 30.08. till 03.09.2013 with the site visitation. The purpose of the Mission was to consult the Member State to recommend it further actions to enable the participating State to provide the additional materials related to the issue of inscription of “The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex” into the List of the World Heritage of UNESCO. The Advisory mission was organized to render assistance and to start the dialogue between ICOMOS and the governments of the Russian Federation and the Republic of Tatarstan, in order:

- to study an issue of in what way, concept and limits “The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex “ can demonstrate its Outstanding Universal Value, including conditions of the authenticity and integrity assessment, according to criteria (III) and (VI);
- to recommend necessary actions to revise the nomination profile which should be submitted by the member state no later than on February 1, 2014;

The Report of Advisory mission of ICOMOS (October 15, 2013) summarized the main results of undertaken work including the recommendations to the member state to rewrite the concept of the nomination due to the fact of recognizing Bolgar complex importance and its religious and cultural value during several centuries in particular and to provide the revised profile of the property according the criteria (II) and (VI).

Thus, following the recommendations of the ICOMOS Advisory mission and the revision of the above state criteria the dossier of the nominated object is resubmitted for inscription into the World Heritage List.



IDENTIFICATION OF THE OBJECT

1a. Country

The Russian Federation

1b. State, Province or Region

The Republic of Tatarstan, Spasskiy Raion (District), the town of Bolgar

1c. Name of Property

The Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex

1d. Exact geographical coordinates up to the second

N 54° 58' 44" E 49° 03' 23"

1e Maps and plans, showing the boundaries of the nominated object and the buffer zone

1f Area of nominated property (in hectares) and proposed buffer zone (in hectares)

Area of the nominated property is 424 hectares

Buffer zone is 12101 hectares

Total area is 12101 hectares

2. DESCRIPTION

2a. Object Description

The settlement of Bolgar dating back to the X-XV centuries

The settlement of Bolgar with preserved earth ramparts and moats is situated on the left bank of the Volga river at the distance of 40 km from the place of the Kama and the Volga rivers' confluence, and the settlement occupies the edge of the Volga terrace of 30 meters height. It adjoins the modern town of Bolgar from the east, which is the administrative center of Spasskiy Rayon (District). The area is 424 hectares.

Bolgar settlement as a unique and integrated phenomenon was founded in the X-XV centuries within the boundaries of preserved ramparts and moats. As a result of natural expansion of the urban area due to historical urban development, the boundaries have reached their maximum.

Fortification

Fortification buildings presented in the settlement landscape are shown as a few fortified barriers built in different times. Before the Bolgars on Koptelev hillock there were entrenchments which have remained from the settlement of Imenkovo culture period (the V-VII centuries) as the moat of 10 m width and about 4 m in depth. In the X century the



fortress was protected by two moats each 2.5 m deep; along the internal moat Bolgar was protected by 4 to 7 m wide wooden walls.

The entrenchments of X-XIII centuries have remained archaeologically. The area of entrenched territory reached 9 ha in the beginning of X century, 12 ha in the X- the first half of the XI century. By the beginning of the XIII century the city had expanded to 25 ha. By the middle of the XIV century the entrenched territory reached 400 ha. The length of the entrenchment made up 5.63 km. Original ruins of the fortifications have been preserved, and now they enclose an integrated historical and cultural landscape.

The shape of the site is triangular, and its “apex” is located on the south, where an extra fortification called “Small Town” is standing.

An earth wall (called “Big” in the XVIII century) was preserved, with the wall height of 5 meters and a 2 m deep moat. In the north, the “Big” rampart and the moat come against the slope of the terrace. The north-eastern part of the site is surrounded by two ravines, the Big and Small Jerusalem (Ierusalimskiy) ravines, which form three capes near the edge of the terrace. The western one, formed by the Big Jerusalem (Ierusalimskiy) ravine and the terrace edge with steep slopes and several westward spurs of the ravine, was inhabited by the Imenkovo culture in the V-VII centuries and the original site of Bolgar (X-XIII century). During all periods the city was skirted by unfortified settlements making up the trading quarter of the city.

The defensive fortifications of the Bolgar settlement were investigated by archaeological excavations in 1946, 1949, 1953, 1967, 1969, 1972-73, 1976-77, 1979, 1980-81, 1984, 1994-98.

Occupation Layers

The occupation layers of the Bolgar settlement which can be found on the whole site present an integral and authentic object reflecting the Bolgar city’s formation from the X till XV centuries, and includes seven strata of the period preceding the town foundation to modern time.

- I** - the layer of the modern XX–XXI century village;
- II** - the layer of the Russian history period of the late XVI–XIX century;
- III** - the layer of the Kazan Khanate period, mid-XV to XVI centuries;
- IV** - the layer of the Golden Horde period, late XIII – early XV century.

This layer is subdivided into layer IVI (the late Golden Horde period dating mid-XIV to early XV centuries) and layer IVe (the early Golden Horde period, mid-XIII to early XIV centuries);

V- VI the pre-Mongolian period of the town’s history, with layer V being dated to the second half of the period, but its beginning to the XI century. Layer VI is dated to the first half of the period (IX-X centuries and partly the XI century)

VII - pre-Bolgar settlements dating to the middle of the second half of the 1st millennium.



The stratigraphic scale is associated with the division of the history of Volga Bulgaria and of medieval Eastern Europe as a whole into different periods. The materials and layers of the archaeological site of Bolgar reflect all the characteristics of the political history, culture and ethnic mix of the population i.e. Turkic, Finno-Ugric, Slavic and other peoples of Eurasia as a part of Volga Bulgaria and the Golden Horde, the Kazan Khanate, and the Russian state.

General structure, sequence and dating of the layers are proved by long-term researches started in 1864 by V. G. Tizengauen in Babiy Hillock area.

Continuing scientific researches on the Bolgar settlement were conducted by academician A. P. Smirnov himself and further by his followers since 1938.

As a result of the research works new knowledge about material culture covering different life periods of Bolgar city was found, including data about historical and social topography, territory development process, building activity, handicrafts, trade, and ways of living and the intellectual culture of the population. Great public buildings and places of worship were examined and excavated (mosques, baths, mausoleums); also craft blocks of potters, bone-carvers, leather workers, steel-workers, blacksmiths, blocks of houses, necropolises, defensive constructions, and city amenities (wells, water pipes, coast protective structures and drainage systems). In 150 years of archaeological study only 3 % of the cultural layer of the whole area has been explored, totaling approximately 7 hectares.

The local archaeological objects located on the territory of the Bolgar ancient settlement and in its vicinity

According to criterion (ii) offered by recommendations of the Mission of ICOMOS, additional information on earlier known local archaeological objects situated on the territory of the Bolgar ancient settlement is given.

The group of 13 local archaeological objects studied on the territory of the Bolgar ancient settlement and in its direct proximity, characterizes both the period before the building of the Bolgar town dating back to the middle of 1000 AD, and the period of its existence in the X-XV centuries, showing the synchronous monuments of the vicinity, with an inclination to city building. All these objects allow one to monitor the city life in a complex system of time and dimension relations forming a historical and topographical situation of the origin and existence of Bolgar; to show consecutive change of universal values during different historical periods within one cultural region, and also to track the impact which is produced during the interaction “city – vicinity” on the uniform cultural and historical environment.

Ancient settlement and burial ground “Babiy Hillock” (V-VII centuries AD)

The monument is located in the north-western part of the Bolgar fortress, on the territory of “Babiy (women’s) Hillock”, on a small cape on the left valley side of the



Volga. The monument has been known since the XIX century. Archaeological research was conducted in 1864, 1880, 1913, 1920, 1947 and 1948. A layer of rural settlement related to Azelian and Imenkovo cultures was studied there. Azelian materials are mainly ceramics. Half-dugout huts, the remains of pit-closets, stone hearth, and numerous ceramic materials can be attributed to the Imenkovo culture. Back in the pre-Mongolian period “Babiy Hillock” was used as the cemetery for many years during the history of the town, even when it was on its territory. The cemetery belongs to the Muslim period, although the earliest burials show divergence from Muslim ceremony. The most recent grave is a common grave in which 19 skeletons with signs of violent death were found. The remains of craft workshops were found in the vicinity of the “Babiy Hillock”. In the XVIII and XIX centuries the “Babiy Hillock”, which overlooked the River Volga, became part of the cultural topography of the village as a place of girls’ and women’s festivals.

**Bolgar ancient settlements of the IV-Vcc. “Ust-Jerusalem settlements I-II”
(first half of the X century)**

They are located at the mouth of Little Jerusalem ravine on its right and left banks. The cultural layer depth is from 0.3 to 0.4 m. The excavations uncovered the remains of several residential and household buildings. Finds, among which are silver Samanid dirhams, allow us to date the settlements to the first half of the X century. They were studied in 1986-1993.

**Imenkovo villages on the territory of the Bolgar settlement.
(V-VII centuries AD)**

A number of villages which can be related to the Imenkovo culture were found at different times in the Bolgar settlement. They linked on to the ancient settlements “Babiy Hill” and “Koptelov Hill”.

1. One of them was found during the excavations in 1967, carried out in the north-eastern edge of the Bolgar settlement when the defense buildings of the XIV century were studied. The settlement occupied an area of approximately 125 x 75 m.

2. Another settlement was found at the edge of the upper terrace, east of “Babiy Hill”. During the excavations in the summer of 1957 pit-closets with Imenkovo pottery were found.

3. The remains of the third settlement in Zarechye were studied by the Kazan Archaeological Expedition in the summer of 1953. Among the excavated buildings is a large pit containing Imenkovo pottery.

4. The fourth settlement was found on the upper terrace of the Small Jerusalem ravine.

Bolgar ancient settlement I (X-XIII centuries)

It is located on the island, 0.5 km north of the church of the former village of the Bolgars. It has been washed out by water. Surface material such as Bolgar pottery, iron objects (bits, knives, chisels, drill, arrowhead, the key to the lock), non-ferrous metal finds



(a lock in the form of animal figure, plaques, the handle of the boiler), and a carnelian 6 - faceted prism (flattened) bead were found on the area of 100 m x 20 m..

Studied by Tatarstan archaeological expedition in 1966.

Bolgar ancient settlement II

It is located on the island to the north-east of the church of the former village of the Bolgars. The material is recorded on an area of 70 x 60 m and consists of pottery of the Late-Bolgar period, iron objects (bits, staples, punch, key, etc.) and a Jochid coin.

Studied by P. N. Starostin in 1966.

Bolgar ancient settlement III (X-XIII centuries)

Bolgar pre-Mongol pottery and iron products were collected 1.5 km to the north-west of the Bolgars village church on the eroding remains of the terrace (90 x 20 sq. m.). The monument is washed out.

Studied by Tatarstan archaeological expedition in 1966.

“Koptelov Hill“

“Koptelov Hill“ is a cape between the left valley side of the Volga River and the Jerusalem ravine in the Bolgar settlement. Its name is connected with the name of the peasant Koptelov, who lived in the area. All seven layers of the main stratigraphic column of the settlement were found on the territory of “Koptelov hill”. Archaeological excavations in 1938, 1972 and 1979 resulted in finding remains of the pre-town layer related to the Imenkovo culture. In 1972 and 1979 the archaeologists studied the remains of defense constructions in the form of a moat and a rampart crossing the cape and enclosing the settlement from the field side. The moat was about 4 m deep and 15 m wide. During the Golden Horde period the remains of the ancient defense constructions on the “Koptelov hill” were leveled and the land was used for residential and household buildings. The collected material from “Koptelov Hill” is presented by finds related to the middle of the 1000 AD and up to the late Middle Ages.

Ceramic workshops at Galanskiy Lake (the first half of the XIV century)

The area, which is interesting in archaeological respect, is located close to the small lake Galanskiy that dries up in summer time. Archaeologists have found big resources of grey clay on the lakeshores. Numerous finds of Bolgar tableware make us suppose that a potters' settlement was situated here. Ceramic production functioned in the middle of the XIV century, in the period of the town's prosperity. On the lakesides archaeologists explored 4 potteries with one, two, three and four double-level kilns with round and oval bases. The kilns made of adobe blocks were placed in specially excavated pits. Masters produced large earthenware pots, jugs, *kumgans* (vessel for ablution), moneyboxes, spherical cones, water supply pipes and smoke tubes, *napryaslos* (details of distaffs) and other wares. They were covered with glazes and decorated with linear, wavy, scalloped or comb-shaped ornaments. No living houses have been found.



Remains of bone handicrafts were found on the lake's north shore: plates with complicated geometrical ornament, knife handle moldings, spikes and numerous half-finished products for handicrafts. It is supposed that in the first half of the XIV-th century a house belonging to a master coppersmith was located on the same shore. It was a modest structure 4 m by 4 m in size. Remains of a bowl with droplets of some copper on its sides, copper slags, cuttings of copper plates and wires, fragments of bronze handicrafts of mirrors' covers were found here. Ruins of production hearths and pits were found.

The territory around the lake is an interesting area of a medieval town environment with extant remains of production activity. It has good potential for museification. Discovered archaeological materials demonstrate the whole process of pottery-making from clay storage on the lake shore, kept in special pit-storages with wooden flooring, to the puddling and forming of different products on the manual and foot wheels.

For this purpose preservation and restoration of the clay kilns for the firing of ceramic ware of the XIV century were carried out in 2012. For the objects to be protected from environmental influence they were confined in a special isolating hangar of a light design with a translucent covering made from polymeric materials.

The object is adapted for limited target show.

Stone and brick buildings of the Golden Horde period of the XIII-XIV centuries

30 buildings of cult and public and secular character have currently been revealed, preserved and restored on the territory of the Bolgar ancient settlement. Among them are mosques, minarets, mausoleums representing tombs of various types, buildings of public baths and administrative constructions. In the central part of the ancient settlement, the southeast part, and also near the Small town they form developed architectural complexes.

The Cathedral Mosque (“Rectangle”) and the Big Minaret

The Cathedral Mosque with the Big Minaret is the main building of the complex, forming an ensemble of the social center of Bolgar in the XIII - XIV centuries, which included the Khan's Palace, the East and the North mausoleums known as the St. Nicholay Church and the Monastic cellar.

The rectangular building of the mosque made of limestone with the size of 32x34 meters had 20 columns and wooden gable roof. An arched entrance portal and a high minaret flanked to the main north facade. All sides of the mosque walls were plastered and reinforced with buttresses. On the south side there was a mihrab, framed with rich ornamental carving. At the beginning of the XIV century the Cathedral Mosque underwent renovation, including interior remodeling. The prayer hall was divided into aisles by six rows of six octagonal columns. In the 1440s corner towers were added to the building; windows and doorways, lobbies, and exterior decorative niches were made in the side walls, and the surrounding grounds were landscaped.

At the beginning of the archaeological works the building was completely excavated. At present the object is presented by the remains of the walls, corner towers, basement



of the portal and footings of the columns, and the minaret, re-created in recent years. As an archaeological building this site was studied during excavations in 1892, 1915, 1946, 1964 – 1966 which revealed information about its urban history and chronology. The scientists carefully studied the sequence of the cultural layers in accordance with the stratigraphic scale of the Bulgarian fortress. In 1965-1966 and 2003-2005 conservation works were carried out.

Although there are numerous projects for recreating the Cathedral Mosque based on analogies and assumptions of researchers, its reconstruction is not planned.

In 1964 – 1967 the remains of the Cathedral Mosque were subjected to preservation and partial restoration within the preserved height of the walls and towers. At that time the authentic white stone masonry was covered by one conserving layer through the signed joint was made, white stone floor and the perimeter pavements were laid, and water was drained along the gutters around the walls. The conservation of the three towers was done in the form of reconstruction of the lost slab facework. The northwest tower as the most ruined one was not changed: instead a canopy was erected on metal piles over it. One column with a capital was assembled of original blocks, and separate preserved column bases were set. The places of the lost blocks were marked.

In 2010 – 2012 the following restoration work was done:

1. Conservation:

- preservation of authentic parts, with the use of restorative materials developed by experts;
- partial dismantling of conservation brickwork and concrete facing, replacement of the facing by historically appropriate white stone slabs;
- clearing of the destroyed construction joints without removing the original plaster;
- concrete blocks were dismantled and replaced by the white stone blocks;

2. Anastylis

3. Protection:

- floors from a white stone on the discrete (from elements and materials with possibility to transform covering water to the earth) basis are paved;
- metal roofs over towers were dismantled, the conservation laying for water discharge was renewed;
- (grading was made to organize moving of covering water (rain, snow in spring) from the monument.

The Big Minaret

According to evidence and iconographic documents, the 24-meter “Big Pillar or Big Minaret” had substantial similarity with the extant “Small Pillar or Small Minaret” (it



was twice as big as the Small Minaret and had Arabic inscriptions at its facade, which were quotations from the Koran). It crashed down in 1841 and its materials were quickly plundered by locals. Professor of Kazan University I. Berezin wrote: “Now the big pillar, i.e. Minaret, does not exist anymore: its remains lie on the place it fell down. When passing through the Bolgar land in 1846, I saw several stones with scripture from the Koran that belong to...the fallen minaret”.

A project for the restoration of the Big Minaret of the Cathedral Mosque was developed and implemented in 2000 on the basis of analysis of the following historical, literature and iconographic materials of the XVIII-XIX centuries: N.I. Savinkov and I. Krapivin (1732); V.I. Tatischev (the 1730s); G.R. Derjavin (1761), A.M. Svechin (1762); P.S. Pallas (1768), I. Lepekhan (1767); N.I. Kaftannikov (1819); P.P. Sviny (1823); F.Kh. Erdman (1825); E. Tournerelli (1837); G.G. and N.G. Chernetsovs (1838); A. Durand (1839), I.I. Vtorov (1840); an album by architect A. Schmit :Architectural Drawings of the Ruins of the Ancient Bolgars. Made on the site in 1827” (“Round Tower or Minaret” (life view), “Plan and Profile of the Big ... Tower”.

Restoration of the minaret was carried out on the original limestone foundation in accordance with the International Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites” (the Venice Charter). Limestone from the *Sukeevsk* field (situated opposite Bolgar, across the Volga river in the neighborhood of the village Sukeevo) was used for the minaret restoration. All the architectural monuments are constructed from this limestone.

Restoration of the Big Minaret considerably improved the general perception of the Complex and provided integrity and potential unity with the Cathedral Mosque, the North and the East Minarets (color, tone, structure, shape and proportionality) lost in the XIX century, and did not make any discrepancy in its original (traditional) environment.

At present the view of the central part of the Complex is in line with the iconographic documents of the XVIII-XIX centuries. The observation deck of the minaret is available for tourists and pilgrims; the deck provides a fine view of the site of Bolgar and its architectural monuments, and the boundless water space of the Volga and green meadows with groves.

Restoration of the Big Minaret was also justified by religious interests (Muslims’ pilgrimage to the holy places; the annual celebration of the adoption of Islam).

Comparative analysis has showed that the material of the brickwork, technical and decorative techniques of the Cathedral Mosque and the Big Minaret are similar to the stone buildings of the Caucasus, the Crimea, the Asia Minor and Northern Mesopotamia. At the same time, the architecture of the mosque, especially in its later form, reflects the spacious - composition traits of buildings in Central Asia, mainly of the Golden Horde period, as well as local traditional techniques used in the construction of the mosque in Bilyar and a fortress mosque in the town of Yelabuga. On the whole the architecture of the monument is a kind of a stylistic branch of oriental architecture that developed in the Volga region in the Golden Horde period.

At present, the Cathedral Mosque with the Big Minaret in the centre of the architectural complex is one of the major tourist sights.



The North Mausoleum (“Monastery Cellar”)

The North Mausoleum is located in the northern part of the complex, in front of the northern facade of the Cathedral Mosque. It was built in the 1330s and was used as a cellar by Uspensky (Dormition) Monastery’s monks in the early XVIII century. The building is made of white limestone. Tuff blocks are used in its facing. It is square in plan, with the sides measuring 13x18 m.

Remains include the foundations, the inner filling of the walls with some of the original facing reaching to the base of a totally lost dome, and several courses of outer facing inside the occupation layer; pointed arch door and window openings, and corner chambers passing from the square base of the inner room to the octahedron, and the circular base of the dome that retains the original spatial impression. The mausoleum was built in connection with completion of the second reconstruction of the Cathedral Mosque and improvement of the central square of the town of Bolgar. The mausoleum was the family shrine of a noble Bolgar name.

The monument was studied by archaeological excavations in 1964, 1966. The monument underwent conservation and was partly restored in 1968-1969. Recently it is used as a lapidary, containing an exhibition of the epigraphy of the VIII-XIV centuries.

The North Mausoleum is a sight included in a guided tour together with such monuments as the Cathedral Mosque and the East Mausoleum.

The East Mausoleum (“St. Nicholay Church”)

The East Mausoleum is situated in the northern part of the complex, in front of the eastern facade of the Cathedral Mosque. It was built of white stone (limestone and tuff) by analogy with medieval Muslim burial vaults with a projecting portal (mausoleum-*durbe*) in the 1330s and was converted into a Christian church dedicated to St. Nicholay in the early XVIII century.

The mausoleum is square, measuring 10.8x10.8, with a portal entrance on the southern side. An octagon is placed on a rectangular prismatic base, with trumpet vaults passing up to it. The octagon is covered with a hemispherical dome. Along the sides of the octagon there are traces of decorative niches. The walls in certain places have built-in pottery resonators.

The mausoleum was built in connection with completion of the second reconstruction of the Cathedral Mosque in the XIV century and the development of the central square of the town of Bolgar. The mausoleum was a family burial vault of the noble Bolgar family of the Burashbeks. Here were excavated the remains of 7 wooden and stone crypts of the Golden Horde period with human remains discovered in some of them.

It was studied by archaeological excavations in 1964-1966 and 1991. The East Mausoleum was partly restored in 1967-1968. The last conservation and restoration works in the mausoleum were conducted in 2006. At present the monument is used as a museum for displaying objects of the archaeological cultural layer in the interior of the historic cult buildings of the XIV century.

In the XVIII century the ancient construction of the East Mausoleum was used as an Orthodox church. Because of that a small tent covering the building was installed as well as



a cupola on a round drum with an orthodox cross. In such condition the building survived until the middle of the XX century. In 1965 the roof and the cupola were damaged by a hurricane but later restored. In 1967-1968 the monument was partially restored. During the conservation and restoration works an open display method was used, as well as during the recent works.

In 2011 the decayed tent roof was repaired, the walls were dewatered with the device for sectional water isolation, the masonry was repaired with white stone and tuff, stone fungus treatment was done, as well as injection of cracks, grouting of joints and water-repellency treatment of the masonry inside and outside of the monument.

Inside the mausoleum a circular gallery was constructed and the burial-place was opened as an element of museification.

The East Mausoleum is a sight included in a guided tour along with such monuments as the Cathedral Mosque and the North Mausoleum.

The original look of both sights in comparison with a wide range of memorial buildings of the Muslim East belonged to a very common type of tent mausoleums with a projecting forward portal. Chronologically and partly compositionally the close analogies are the following mausoleums: Baytak in Kazakhstan (XI-XII centuries), Fahreddin-Razi in Khorezm (XII c.), Yusuf, the son of Kuseyir, Azerbaijan (XII c.), the mausoleum in the complex of Sultan Alaeddin Mosque in Cania (XIII c.), Seyid mausoleum in Amol (XIII-XIV c.), the mausoleum in Qom (XIII-XIV c.).

Related motifs of cutting of the outer corners of the quadrangle in the North and East mausoleums can be seen in such early buildings as mausoleums Gunbad-e-Surkh in Marat (XII c.), Nasir-ul-Haq in Amol (XV-XVI centuries), Gulistan in Azerbaijan (XIII c.), the Big mausoleum in Ahlat (XIII c.).

The portal of the mausoleum of the central complex of Bolgar is projecting forward: it has an extensional element, attached to the main facade. At about the same time, when these mausoleums were built, imposition of the portal is used in mausoleum building in Central Asia. This is illustrated by the portal-hipped mausoleums of Khorezm - Najm-ed-din Kubra and Tyurabek Khanum in Kunia-Urgenche, which were built with the help of Kutluk Timur (1321-1333), and portal-domed mausoleums in Kyrgyzstan, Kassan.

By its construction technique and fragmented similarity the Mausoleum is related to the stone buildings of the Caucasus, the Crimea, and Minor Asia. Related motifs of the cutting of the outer corners of the quadrangle above the trumpet arch can be seen in hipped buildings without portals – in the mausoleum of Gulistan in Azerbaijan and the Great Ahlat mausoleum in ancient Armenia (the second half of the XIII c.). The latter has some similarity with our monument also in a part of the decor of the second tier of the facade. There are no portal-hipped mausoleums in these countries, and portals in domed mausoleums can be seen in the buildings of a later period than the Bulgarian monuments. The Crimean mausoleum of Mohammed-Shah-Bey (the second half of the XIV c.) is similar to that of Bolgar, not only in the planning and the external entrance portal solutions, but also in the division of the main building into the outer quadrangle and octagon by the identical cutting of corners above the trumpet vaults.



The closest analogy of the mausoleums in the centre of Bolgar is the Bashkir Kishene Mausoleum near the village of Chishma, which makes it possible to consider this monuments as a manifestation of the Bolgar architectural school with possible local flavour.

The House with Towers (“Khan’s Palace”)

It is a brick and stone monumental building with corner towers and is square in a plan (with internal dimensions of 24x29 m). It is located at the edge of the upper plateau of the site at 90-100 m height, to the northeast of the Cathedral Mosque above the “Red Chambers”. It was explored at intervals between 1994 and 2012. More than 1000 m² of the site are excavated. The material accumulated within excavation works provides evidence about the time of its construction - the middle of the XIII century. It has a rich complex of finds: part of a numismatic collection includes coins of 1240-1259.

A project for turning the territory of the monument into an open-air museum was implemented for museification of the site. Its goal was to preserve the integrity of the architectural remains of the building, to demonstrate features of the early Golden Horde monumental construction, and also to exhibit archaeological objects, artifacts, and remains of the cultural layer of the Bolgar settlement using methods of graphic reproduction and modeling.

To protect the site from rain and snow and to enhance the aesthetic impact of the monument on visitors, a safety dome, stylistically reproducing the features of light architectural constructions of the Middle East was erected.

The Black Chamber

The Black Chamber is located 400 meters to the south of the mosque complex and the same distance to the east of the Small Minaret. It was built of white limestone in the middle of the XIV century. It is a two-storied building that had a quadrangular cubic base, turning into an octagon, then - in a hemispherical dome (with the height of the dome hall 9.50 m). The central room that is a part of the big building with the portal, a grand staircase and the side galleries are remained. The building is in the dome room of the second tier plastered and decorated with alabaster moldings, consisting of profiled rods, star-shaped rosettes, columns with capitals and stalactites of trumpet batters. The sizes of the plan of the preserved quadrangle are 10x10 m, and 15-16 including the galleries. The brickwork of the Black Chamber is made of limestone tuff on cement mortar. Traces of different period stone and brick haunching on different cement mortars were visible outside and inside the building before its restoration. The cupola is made of tuff blocks held together by dense, high-quality mortar.

The Black Chamber is the only surviving civil construction of the XIV century. Its exact purpose is not established, presumably - the court house, or pilgrims inn.

The original look of the Black Chamber is reconstructed as a building with galleries encircling the central interior, with a portal entrance and the eight-part close dome, similar to the building of “Sofa khan” in Baku (Azerbaijan), constructed in the XV century, approximately a century after the Black Chamber.

Archaeological research of the Black Chamber was conducted in 1957 and 1966. In 1956-1957, 1977-1984, 1999 restoration of the monument was held. During conservation



works in 1955 - 1957 the protective cover was erected over the original stone dome.

Currently the site is undergoing conservation work, and technological research is also conducted.

The open way of showing the monument was selected during the works. The conservation work included measures to prevent penetration of moisture into the masonry walls and the exclusion of the adverse effects of natural factors on the monument. The Black Chamber is included into the tourist route, which runs from the Cathedral Mosque to the White House complex and the Small Minaret with the Khan's tomb.

The object reveals a general resemblance to the extensive range of oriental facilities - both secular and religious - of the historical period under consideration, observed in the construction of the central sub-cupola space, most obviously with the Central Asian constructions belonging to the middle and second half of the XIV century such as cell mausoleums Tyuryabek Khanum in Old Urgench and Shirin - bika in the ensemble of Shah-i- Zinda. The construction technique also shows kinship of the Black Chamber to the Central Asia buildings as the tuff blocks of the internal and partially of the external facing are cut in the forms and sizes which are close to that of a brick. Stalactite overpasses are made by preliminary hacking of three diagonal blocks (close to the size of a brick) in the technique of "a honeycomb-stalactite sail" which was used in the Central Asia in Khazar Mosque already in the VIII-IX cc.

It became widespread in the Central Asian buildings of the XIV century. - Gumbaz Manesa mausoleums, the central of the Kasan group, Hasan-i- Saurane near the fort Vaengan in Khorezm, Najmeddin Kubra in Kunja Urgench, Khiva Seyed Alaeddin, Khazreti — imam in Shakhrisyabs, etc. By its structure and artistic interpretation of its central part the Black Chamber is closest to the central Asian architecture. In this regard, it is important to note that in the architecture of Central Asia only mausoleums had outside tent (conical or pyramidal) cover. This pattern may have extended to construction in other Muslim countries in the period of time under, including the Volga Bulgaria.

The Small Minaret

The Small Minaret is located 500 meters southward of the central complex of the Cathedral Mosque, near the Khans' Shrine. The minaret was erected in the second half of the XIV century and took the Big Minaret of the Cathedral Mosque as model. It has been mentioned in historical reviews since 1712. It was built of joined tuff and limestone blocks. It is a massive stone pillar, consisting of two cylinders of different diameter, the lower of which is through octagon rests on cube-shaped foundation and transitions from it to the shaft of the minaret are made by flat triangular batters. A stone spiral staircase of 45 stairs leads to the upper part, which is a low drum of the upper layer currently covered with conical roof on wood roof timber.

The dimensions of the foundation according to the plan are 4.8 m by 4.8 m. It faces the cardinal directions. The height of the minaret is about 10 meters without the tent top.

The arched entrance to the minaret located in the north and ornamental niche in the western part of the foundation are richly decorated and are performed in the fine stone



carving technique. The traces of decoration are still preserved in the upper cloister, where a spiral stone staircase is located.

The Small Minaret is the one of medieval architectural cult monuments to survive till today.

The area of the Minaret location was studied during the archaeological excavations in 1914 and in 1968-1969. The monument was restored in 1968-1970.

Preservation and restoration works were conducted in the first half of the XVIII century and in the last decade of the XX century. In the mid-1990s, at the request of the Muslim population Crescent was installed on the minaret.

The Khans' Shrine

Khans' Shrine is located 15 meters to the north of the Small Minaret within the territory of a former cemetery. The building was built in the beginning of the XIV century. According to some historical sources in the middle of the XIV century the Khans' Shrine was reconstructed to form a complex of 4 vaults (shrines) forming a line from the east to the west. It is made of white limestone. The building is a small portal-less dome structure, square in plan. Its dimensions are 8.5 m by 8.5 m.

At the time of disclosure the integrity of the walls was different, the best preserved were the southern and western parts of masonry. The maximum preserved part is represented by four layers from 0.35 to 0.40 metres. The brickwork is three-ply double-face and irregular from different size limestone on cement mortar. A stove and underfloor heating channels were discovered in the mausoleum extension. Foundations of architectural constructions, including not only different size mausoleums, but also other buildings, which were used for different purposes, as the remains of their heating system show, were excavated in this region to the south and the east of the Small Minaret. All of them have all undergone conservation and are open for tourists.

Eight graves in *tabut* boxes were uncovered and some of them lay under brick gravestones. The Khans' Shrine is an example of the central-dome type of cubic mausoleums so widespread in the countries of the Islamic East.

At the time of its archaeological studies the monument was excavated. It was studied in 1914, 1968-1969. In 1968-1971, 1990, 2005-2006 the last conservation and fragment restoration works of the monument were held.

Mausoleums

Ritual buildings, mausoleums hold a special place among the monumental stone structures of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex. Besides the East and North Mausoleums, and Khans' Shrine, other nine mausoleums' foundations and four mausoleums concealed beneath hills are preserved southward of the central part of the complex, in the south-east area of the Small Minaret and in southern areas. The mausoleums were built of limestone in the middle of the XIV and the early XV centuries. The graves in the mausoleums are evidence of the fact that the people buried here were noble and deeply venerated. All the burials were done by the Muslim ritual and are identical to the town cemeteries graves.

The mausoleums were archaeologically explored and preserved in the 1970-2000.



Mausoleum №1

Mausoleum 1 was built in the last decades of the XIV century 150m to the south-east of the Small Minaret. Strip foundation pit, separate insignificant masonry and great amount of construction waste were preserved. The area of the construction is 6.60m x 7.00m. The thickness of walls varies from 0.90m to 1.00m. The southern wall was linked on a portal 2.50 m long and 2.0 m wide, the remains of pylons of which have been found.

Trench of the strip foundation is filled with tuff chip with fragments of pottery and topped up with mortar. Such a foundation carried a three-layer double masonry made of different-size uncut limestone and tuff stones bound with lime mortar. Finely pounded ceramics were added into the mortar because of which it acquired a pink color. The foundation depth is 0.80m with the earth floor. Plaster pieces were found in the layer. The only burial in the mausoleum was made by the Muslim ritual.

Archaeologically the monument was studied in 1970 - 1971.

During preservation and restoration work in the 1970-s the open method of monument demonstration was used. Conservation of mausoleum remains was made with the use of original stones from excavation after its archaeological discovery in 1971. Masonry was made analogous to Bolgar one - three-ply one: exterior sides were made from big treated stones, midst was filled with rubble and mortar. By 2012 masonry had been repaired, grout used in 1970-s had been removed, a line to mark the borderline between stonework of different periods had been added.

To protect the building from risk of damage from root system of plants drainage was made. All the beds are made discrete for cumulative passing of moisture.

Mausoleum 1 is a part of excursion show and tourist tour from the Small Minaret to the Eastern Gates of the city.

Mausoleum №2

The second mausoleum is located 350 m south-east of the Small Minaret and 110m of Mausoleum 1. The period of construction dates back to the last decades of the XIV century.

Only the pit of the clay strip foundation, some small areas of the foundation and walls, parts of floor and skirting of the construction have survived. Also survived are parts of clay and plaster.

The construction is square in plan. The size of the construction is 9.60 x 9.60m. The depth of the foundation and the wall thickness is 1.00 m. The northern wall was adjoined by two pylons of the foundation of arched portal 2.0 m long and 3.0 m wide. The floor of the entrance was on the same level with the floor of the building and was made of a layer of lime mortar 0,12 m thick.

Inside the room the floor was paved with wooden planks. A pavement of gravel filled with lime mortar was found around the walls of the structure.

The masonry is three-layer double fixed with lime mortar. Large blocks of limestone were used for facing bond. Interior of the building was carefully plastered.

There are seven graves by the Muslim ritual in the mausoleum.

The monument was studied in 1976 - 1977.



During the conservation and restoration work in 1976 – 1977 a method of open display of the monument was chosen. The masonry was analogous to the Bolgar one and consisted of three layers: the face layer was made of large worked stones and the middle layer was packed and fixed with mortar. By 2012 the masonry had been repaired; the grout had been removed; a line to mark the borderline between stonework of different periods had been added.

In order to protect the building from damage by the roots of plants, a blind area was made around the site, and the central area was covered with granite rubble. All the areas were made discrete to allow free circulation of moisture.

Mausoleum 2 is one of the landmarks of a guided tour and lies on the tourist route between the Lesser Minaret and the Eastern Gate of the ancient settlement.

Mausoleum №3

The mausoleum dates back to the second half of the XIV century. The third mausoleum is located 250 m east of the Small Minaret.

The construction was found due to white spot of construction waste. Only the pit of the clay strip foundation, some small areas of the foundation and pylon, pieces of mortar and small limestone rocks of the construction have survived.

The mausoleum is rectangular in plan. The size of the construction is 5.50 x 5.30m. The width of the foundation walls varies from 0.70m to 1.00m. The depth of the foundation is 0.80m. The northern wall was adjoined by the entrance 2.00m long and 1.70 m wide.

The laying of the foundation was made of small rocks of tuff and limestone. It was covered with lime mortar, very fragile and not qualitative. The surface of the outside of the building was leveled with lime mortar.

It had the earth floor. The mausoleum has four graves according to Muslim rites.

The funerary monument was investigated in 1981.

During the conservation and restoration work a method of open display of the monument was chosen. After the opening of the site in 1981 the remains of the mausoleum underwent conservation. The masonry was analogous with the Bolgar one and consisted of three layers: the face layer was made of large worked stones and the middle layer was packed and fixed with mortar. By 2012 the masonry had been repaired, the grout widely used in the 1980s had been removed.

In order to protect the building from damage by the roots of plants, a blind area was made around the site, and the central area was covered with rock stone. All the areas were made discrete to allow free circulation of moisture.

Mausoleum 3 is one of the landmarks of a guided tour and lies on the tourist route between the Small Minaret and the Eastern Gate of the ancient settlement.

Mausoleum №4

The mausoleum dates back to the second half of the XIVth - early XVth centuries. The fourth mausoleum is located 600 meters of the south-east of the Small Minaret and 230 meters of Mausoleum 1.



Only the pit of the clay strip foundation and waste limestone chippings and rubble of the construction have survived. The construction is square in plan. The size of the pit of the construction is 8.60 x 8.60m. The width of the walls varies from 0.70 to 0.90m. The preserved depth of the pit is 0.10 – 0.12 m. The bottom of the pit does not reach the mainland layer and lies in the late Golden Horde layer. There are no traces of the entrance. Presumably it was situated in the north wall, as it was the only place not occupied by graves.

There are eleven graves in the mausoleum. Three of them are children's ones, four graves were fully or partially destroyed by the burials of the next deceased.

The funerary monument was investigated in 1981.

During the conservation and restoration work in the 1980s, a method of open display of the monument was chosen.

After the opening of the site in 1981 the remains of the mausoleum were conserved. The masonry was analogous with the Bolgar one and consisted of three layers: the face layer was made of large worked stones and the middle layer was packed and bound with mortar. By 2012 the masonry had been repaired; the grout widely used in the 1980s had been removed.

In order to protect the building from damage by the roots of plants drainage was made. All the areas were made discrete to allow free circulation of moisture.

Nowadays Mausoleum 4 is one of the landmarks of a guided tour and lies on the tourist route between the Small Minaret and the Eastern Gate of the ancient settlement.

Mausoleum №5 (two-chamber)

The mausoleum dates back to the second half of the XIV century. The fifth mausoleum is situated on the southern outskirts of the town, 300 meters north of the Southern town gate. The building was erected on a hill, surrounded by swampy lowlands. Only a small hill of debris of the mausoleum has survived. A strip pit of the construction has been found. The mausoleum is rectangular in plan. The size of the construction is 14.0 x 8.0m. The width of the walls varies from 1.20 to 1.30 m. The entrance was located on the south side. Foundation pits for the arched tower entrance have been found. The entrance was 2.00 m long and 2.50 m wide.

The interior of the mausoleum consisted of two rooms. The first had a size of 6.0 x 6.0 m, and the second - 5.0 x 5.0 m. The larger room had eight graves, and in the smaller one there were four graves. The foundation pit was filled with pieces of broken limestone and coated with lime mortar. Fragments of cut limestone blocks and traces of plaster were found.

The funerary monument was studied in 1983 - 1985.

After the opening of the site the remains of the mausoleum were conserved using the authentic stones from the excavation site. During the conservation and restoration work in the 1980-s a method of open display of the monument was chosen. The same method was used during the recent restorations in 2012. The masonry was analogous with the Bolgar one and consisted of three layers: the face layer was made of large worked stones and the middle layer was packed and fixed with mortar. By 2012 the masonry had been repaired; the grout widely used in the 1970s had been removed; a line to mark the borderline between stonework of different periods had been added.



In order to protect the building from damage by the roots of plants drainage was made around the site, and the central area was covered with rock stone. All the areas were made discrete to allow free circulation of moisture.

Mausoleum 5 is one of the landmarks of a guided tour and lies on the tourist route between the Black and White Chambers and the Southern Gate of the ancient settlement.

Mausoleum №6

The mausoleum dates back to the middle of the XIV century and is located in the central part of a medieval urban area of Bolgar. Only the pit of the building formed as a result of dismantling the foundations for stone quarrying in XIX century has been found. The main criterion for the reconstruction of the building was archaeological monitoring of the spread of debris. The depth of the foundation ditch is about 1.40 m. The preserved remains of the mausoleum are not impressive. The entrance to the building most probably was formed by pylons. The width of the ridges is 1.20 - 1.25 m. The space between them is 1.50 m. They mark the location of the entrance in the southern part of the building.

The construction is square in plan. The size of the pit was 8,60 x 8,60 m. The width of the walls varies from 0.70 to 0.90 m. Judging by the filling of the late middens, the mausoleum walls were built of limestone and tuff and mortar. Pieces of alabaster suggest the possibility that the walls of the buildings were plastered.

The funerary monument was studied in 1976 - 1977.

After the opening of the site in 1980-s the remains of the mausoleum were conserved with the use of authentic stones from the excavation site. During the conservation and restoration work a method of open display of the monument was chosen. The same method was used during the recent restorations in 2012. The masonry was analogous with the Bolgar one and consisted of three layers: the face layer was made of large worked stones and the middle layer was packed and fixed with mortar. By 2012 the masonry had been repaired; the grout widely used in the 1980s had been removed.

In order to protect the building from damage by the roots of plants drainage was made. All the areas were made discrete to allow free circulation of moisture.

Nowadays Mausoleum 6 is one of the landmarks of a guided tour and lies on the tourist route near the Black Chamber.

The Southern Mausoleum

The Mausoleum was discovered in 2012 during the archaeological excavations of a low hill which is situated in the south-eastern part of Bolgar ancient settlement, not far from the Southern Gate.

The hill concealed the mausoleum ruins of the middle of the XIV century known since the XVIII century. The mausoleum is rectangular in shape (10,2 x 9,7 m). The entrance of the mausoleum is situated in its northern part and is marked by 2 huge stone pylons 2,7 m high. The inside of the building was octagonal. The foundation bed was made of long rough-cut stones with the dimensions of 45-50 x 20-30 cm. The stones were laid dry without mortar.



Nine graves have been found in the southern part of the mausoleum. They are located in ground chambers of rectangular form, placed in two rows, close to each other. Three of the graves were destroyed by grave robbers. All the bodies of the dead were put into box-like coffins made of thick wide boards or blocks.

An open cemetery was formed around the mausoleum. The excavation has revealed more than 90 graves. The majority of them are Muslim dwellers of the settlement buried according to Muslim rites. In the north-western corner of the excavation, in the layer of the cemetery, a white gravestone with relief Arab epitaph has been found.

A round ditch in plan (about 10 m in diameter) has been revealed under the mausoleum foundation. Its purpose is difficult to explain. Probably the mausoleum was built on the territory of a more ancient structure; perhaps it was a burial mound with a ditch around the basement. This is proved by the sterile layer of the mound. The location was chosen deliberately. Yet we cannot speak about the direct funeral 'succession' or a religious and ideological struggle.

Nowadays a conservation method of an open display of the monument has been chosen. Conservation works were held in 2012. Since the mausoleum ruins mainly represent the filling with badly preserved masonry, it was decided to make the conservation by filling the walls with crushed stone and pouring it with mortar for consolidation and protection from destruction. The best preserved masonry will be consolidated by a layer of conservation masonry made of grey limestone. The conservation masonry will be made analogous to the original masonry. Preservation represents a two-dimensional plane form.

According to the beautification project of the Bolgar ancient settlement, the Mausoleum near the Southern Gate is one of the landmarks of the exhibition tour and lies on the tourist route between the Black and White chambers and the Southern Gate.

Bathhouses: an overview

The remains of six buildings in Bolgar have been so far identified as public baths and fully researched. They have many similar construction details, but are widely different in location, size, layout, construction materials and date of their construction.

The Bolgar bathhouses (except No.1, which was a suite of rooms leading from the entrance to the furnace) are typical Oriental hammams. Their layout is usually as follows: a rectangular (or, more frequently, square) space with a cross-shaped hall built into it and a square soap-room between the sides of the cross. This central space is the basis of the construction and has an underfloor heating system. Services and other auxiliary premises flanked the building on two opposite sides. Service rooms were utilized for the supply of heating and water to the central space, and other premises, often separated from soap-rooms by a small anteroom, were used as places where visitors could undress or relax. Bolgar bathhouses were a very close version of this classic type, which puts them in the same category with their counterparts in the Lower Volga, Azerbaijan and Central Asia, erected at the same time.

All known constructions with underfloor heating in the central regions of the Volga Bulgaria, built both in Pre-Mongol period and during that of the Golden Horde (except



Bathroom 1 in Krasnosyundukovsky settlement and those in Mohsha-Narovchat) have their heating systems shaped as a network of underfloor heating conduits combined with vertical smoke ducts. This system of forced circulation of heat and smoke is typical for most Oriental hammams. Taking into consideration the cross-shape of Bolgar bathroom interiors (which is also common among hammams), the influence of Central Asian architectural traditions, noted by a number of researchers, is quite possible.

The Eastern Chamber

A mixed stone and brick building of a XIII century public bath has been known from historical sources since XVIII century. Layout of its interiors can be traced, as well as some remains of the maintenance structure (a network of heating and smoke ducts, water supply and sewage conduits). On the whole, it is similar to the Red, and even more so to the White Chamber. The presence of some construction elements suggests that these are the remains of Bolgar's largest and earliest public bathroom.

The building is aligned along the NW-SW line. Its total dimensions are 39.0 x 19.0 m, and the general outline includes three rectangular spaces, different in their respective size.

The central space (24.5 x 19.0 m) comprises a second heated dressing-room, a central cross-shaped hall and four baths

The western premises (14.0 x 10.0 m) includes a first heated dressing-room and a soufa which consisted of a tandyr (stove) and two warm air ducts inlaid with sun-dried bricks and fixed to the north and south walls of the first dressing-room. This western dressing-room adjoined the south-western wall of the central space.

The eastern premises (4.5 x 11.0 m), the third and final in the building, housed a heating furnace with three air conduits and adjoined the north-western wall of the bathroom on the east.

A detailed study of numismatic sources obtained during the clear-up of the halls, has allowed us to specify the construction and service dates of the bathroom. It has been found to have been used extensively as early as in the 1290s and until the 1330s or 40s.

The ruins of the bathroom were consecutively uncovered during 9 years from 1984 to 1992.

When covering layers of earth had been first removed, the bathroom's several interior spaces were found to be in various stages of decay. The building's layout was reconstructed after the uncovering of the adobe belt-type foundation strengthened with footer stubs. The masonry was best preserved in the eastern part of the building, where some wall fragments up to 1.37 m high with air ducts were preserved. The air ducts leading from the furnace pit were made of differently-shaped sandstone slabs (with the average size of 0.35 x 0.30 x 0.10 m). On the average, the preserved fragments of the masonry were 0.30 to 0.60 m high.

As for the first dressing-room, we have to note both a good condition of the soufa's heating ducts (three layers of masonry, up to 0.32 m high) and the plinthiform brick floor of the anteroom (a type of red-earth medieval bricks). Plinthiform bricks have been found to cover the area of at least 3.5 x 5.0 m.

The remains of the bathroom underwent conservation shortly after the excavation and then in late 1990s.



During the conservation in the late XX century, the monument was chosen for open display. The recent restoration has continued with this method. After the uncovering of the monument in 1996, the remains of the building underwent conservation with the use of authentic stones from the dig site. The masonry was analogous with the Bolgar one and consisted of three layers, with two surface sides of large boulders of worked stone, and the inside backfilled with smaller stone bound by cement mortar. In 2011 the stonework was repaired, the XX century grout was removed. Several layers of conservation stonework were raised up. To improve the informative wealth of the object, the heating conduits have been set up and the outline of the furnace marked on the basis of actual finds during the excavation.

To preserve the construction from being undermined by plant roots, a stone paving was added around the object, and the central floor covered by plinthiform bricks and white stone. The main washing area floors were partly left uncovered to reveal the heating conduits. The whole foundation was made discrete to allow free circulation of moisture.

The restoration project includes the construction of access paths paved with discretely laid white stone, adding benches, skywalks, vandal-proof announcement boards displaying graphic reconstructions of the object and information on the archaeological excavation of the site.

The Eastern Chamber has been added to the excursion list and is currently part of the tourist route in the vicinity of the Cathedral Mosque and the House of the Khans.

The Red Chamber

The Red Chamber is the ruined medieval bathhouse known for the colour of its interior walls. It is located at the foot of the left bank of the Volga, below the Cathedral Mosque. The Chamber was built in the XIV century and completely ruined in the 1430s. The earliest L-shaped part, as well as the foundation and wall bases up to 1.5-2 m height, the underfloor heating system, sewage and water supply facilities, stone basins and other details are the few elements that survived of the building that stretched almost 32 m west to east (including the entrance arch piers) and was 24 m wide. The walls of the bathhouse have survived up to the average height of 0.2-0.35 m to 2.45-3 m, with brick cornices found at the level of 1.9 m. The stonework of the walls is three-layered, double-faced and irregular, consisting of various-sized limestone slabs bound by lime mortar. The walls are 0.8 to 1.0 m thick, with the doorways inlaid with 0.20 x 0.20 m –sized bricks up to 0.06 m thick. The interior side of the stonework was several times plastered with a lime mortar with the addition of some opus signinum, which gave the wall a reddish-pink color. The floor of the dressing-room was covered with limestone tiles bound by lime mortar with sand bedding below.

The erection of the Red Chamber is a testimony of the high level of construction techniques in Volga Bulgaria and good urban development of at least the central part of their capital.

By the moment of the beginning of archaeological work, the building has been completely archaeologized. The Red Chamber was studied extensively in 1938-1940 and underwent conservation shortly after that (covered with earth and separated from the river with a stone dam). At present the Red Chamber is covered with earth.



Judging by the size and rich interior decoration, the Red Chamber was a public bathhouse catering for the needs of the wealthy citizens of Bolgar, albeit not the very top of the society, as proved by an insignificant amount of glazed pottery and numismatic finds in the area.

The layout of the bathhouse was typical for the Moslem East: it consisted of a number of closed spaces, separated from the central cross-shaped area with thick walls. In the middle of the cross-shaped area stood a white stone fountain. Analogous constructions can be found in Turkey, Iran, Trans-Caucasia and the Crimea (e.g., Biyuk-Hammam in Karasubazar). The heating system shaped as a network of underfloor heating conduits combined with vertical smoke ducts to enable forced circulation of hot air, reveals the continuity of the Bolgar construction traditions both in the Pre-Mongol period and during that of the Golden Horde.

The White Chamber

The White Chamber was one of the city's public bathhouses. It is located 250 m south-east of the Black Chamber. The building was constructed in the 1340s and abandoned in 1460s. The White Chamber has been mentioned in historical sources since the XVIII century.

The walls are made of variously shaped blocks of limestone, with a facing of square blocks on the outer side, backfilled masonry, course rubble masonry, and lime plastering on the inner surfaces of the walls. The stonework is three-layered, double-faced, 0.85 to 1.15 m thick, with the rows of stonework quite well-kept. The depth of the foundation is up to 1.4 m. In several cases, hewn masonry wall blocks were laid in the external corners of the buildings and in the doorways.

The building, 33 by 17 m, consists of several rectangular areas of different size. The cross-shaped central hall was topped with a dome and has preserved some of its interior decoration: the remains of the washing area with a basin, a fountain and soap-rooms in the corner. A network of underfloor heating conduits, sewage and water facilities can be clearly seen.

The bathhouse heating was provided by two round stoves 0.2 m in diameter and covered with dome vaults, one of which is estimated to have been 1.4 m high. The furnaces and air ducts were made of medium-sized sandstone slabs. The mouth of the second stove had an arched covering 0.8 m high and has a stepped ramp into the stove pit (1.6 m below the bottom of the stove). The causeway down the stove pit is made of hewn limestone blocks.

The White Chamber is a sample of the XIV century Bolgar buildings modeled by Oriental baths of Central Asia, the Crimea, and Trans-Caucasia. It is an evidence of advanced construction engineering skills of the Volga Bolgars and high level of urban development.

The White Chamber was studied during the excavations in 1887-1888 led by the team headed by V.V. Glinsky and I.I. Vashchuk. During the excavation the building was uncovered along the whole perimeter of the walls down to the bottom of the foundation,



with a selective study of the interiors. The ruins of the chamber were re-opened during a five-year excavation in 1979-1983. By the moment of the beginning of archaeological work, the building has been completely archaeologized. About 85% of the stonework of the outer perimeter walls and the inner areas has been preserved, from 0.6 to 1.4 m high, including the foundation and bases of the walls.

Conservation and restoration of the ruin was undertaken in early XVIII century and in the last decades of the XX century.

During the conservation in the 1990s, the monument was chosen for open display. The recent restoration continued with this method, including the recent works on the site in 2011, when the remains underwent conservation with the use of authentic stones from the dig site. The masonry was analogous with the Bolgar one and consisted of three layers, with two surface sides of large boulders of worked stone, and the inside backfilled with smaller stone kept together with cement mortar. To reveal the authentic stoves and heating ducts the ground level was lowered on the southern side of the building. In 2011 the stonework was repaired, the XX century grout removed. To preserve the construction from being undermined by plant roots, a stone paving was added around the object, lowering by a stepped causeway to the southern side. The main washing area floors were left uncovered to reveal the heating conduits. The whole foundation was made discrete to allow free circulation of moisture.

The White Chamber is now part of the excursion list and is located on the tourist route in the vicinity of the Black Chamber.

Bathhouse № 2

Bathhouse 2, excavated in 1951 on the left bank of the Melenki river, west of the Red Chamber, was situated on the second upper-grassland terrace. It was excavated in June 2012.

The building, which in the plan had a rectangular shape, stretches in the direction of south-east and north-west. The northeastern wall, running along the bank of the Melenki river, is straight, while the southwestern wall has stepped ledges because of a lesser width of the dressing room. The thickness of the walls, built of rubble stone, sometimes with traces of scabbling, does not exceed 80-90 cm. The overall dimensions of the building are 20 x 11 m. In plan it has a three-part division, characteristic of most Bulgarian baths: a dressing room, the main room and the heating room.

The entrance is located in the southeastern wall of the dressing room. The doorway was lined with blocks of well-finished white limestone. To the left of the entrance, in the corner of the room, there is a heated brazier-bench. The dressing room was 6.2 x 3 m in dimensions and has relatively well preserved in the southwestern part with the brazier. The north-eastern half of the room was completely disassembled and its plan is being restored only by the mold of setting on the sub-soil.

The main room, which is also much destroyed in the north-east part, was adjacent to the dressing room in the north-west side. The overall size of the room (including the branches) is 10.0 x 9.0 m. In plan, it consisted of a cross-shaped central hall and four corner rooms, which were located between the sides of the 'cross'.



The fire-room of the bath, or a duty room, is a rectangular extension of the structure adjacent to the north-west wall of the room. It consists of two unequal parts, separated by a blank stone wall. The southwestern part of it was a tank with cold water. Northern-eastern part of the room with the stove was meant for the tank heating and hot water delivery.

The stove was built of large blocks of sandstone fixed with clay solution in the shape of a truncated dome vault arched with a built-in copper cauldron, the fragments of which were found when clearing the stove – it is a well-known method of heating hot water in the so-called Turkish baths. The mouth of the stove was made outside the building where there was a small pit. The floor and the sides of the pit, with the exception of the south-west side, were laid with flagstone, while the southwestern wall was lined with burnt bricks.

The underground heating system of the buildings starts at the stove with a three T-shaped arrangement of fixed channels that were made and covered with blocks of red sandstone near the stove. The central channel, extending along the axis of the building, was connected with the dressing room underfloor and with the channels of the brazier-benches. The other two pipes go in opposite directions away from the stove (perpendicular to the central channel), and then under the tanks at a straight angle turn south-east and then parallel to the central channel cross the underfloors of the side soap rooms and the branches of the cross-shaped hall.

The main channels had side branches. The side branches had a square cross section and sometimes ended in vertical clay pipes built in the core of the setting of exterior walls.

The floor of the side rooms had a slope towards the central hall, which, in its turn, lowered towards the dressing room. Further the wastewater was discharged through the pipes with a diameter of 10-11 cm, buried under the threshold, but the bulk of water from the corner rooms still was drained away by the pipelines laid in the underground flues where it got through vertical pipes with a knee-bend at the bottom. Outside the building the underground sewer pipes were connected with an oak gutter covered with flagstones and soil. During the excavation there were recorded traces of repeated repair and renovation of the external drain.

There have only been preserved the masonry of the south wall of the bath as well as the masonry of two southern bath rooms. The settings are three-layer, double, irregular. They were made of limestone rocks fixed with cement mortar. The protecting structure from transparent material was built after finishing the archaeological works on excavation of Bath 2 in 2012. The object fits in the landscape and suits the panorama of Bolgar town.

The site is included in the tourist route. It is exhibited in a glass pavilion and together with sightseeing through the glass the entrance inside is also provided. The south wall is used as the information stand where visitors can see the research materials and the diagrams.

Bathhouse № 3

The brick and stone building of a public bath of the second half of the XIVth century was discovered during the excavations of 1950 - 1951 under the supervision of A. Smirnov. It was located on the bank of the river Melenki in the lower part of the settlement. The integrity of the walls is very poor - less than 10%. There have been preserved only some



parts of the southern and western walls, as well as the floor supporting structures made of slabs of limestone. The fixed masonry is three-layer double irregular made of lime rocks of different sizes fixed with cement mortar. The masonry has been preserved to a height of two rows – maximum 0.30-0.35 m.

The layout of the bath was defined by the remains of the clay strip foundation with short piles.

The area adjacent to the bath from the south-east side was paved with stone slabs.

The structure stretches in the north-east - south-west direction. The total size is 15.0 x 12.0 m. The total lineament of the building consists of two rectangular in plan and different-sized rooms.

The central room (9.5 x 12.0 m) consisted of a main hall (cross-shaped in plan) and four bath rooms.

The north room (6.5 x 11.0 m) consisted of a fire-room with a stove. The stove had an oval shape in plan with the size of 1.2 x 1.8 m. It was made of slabs of sandstone fixed with clay mortar and has been preserved to a height of 0.20 m.

The monument has not undergone any conservation and restoration work. It is flooded.

Bathhouse 1

In 150 meters to the East from Red Chamber and in the lowland part of the left coast where ruins of stone buildings were drawn on the A.Shmit's plan of 1827, O.S.Khovanskaya studied the remains of the construction further known on materials of publications as a bathhouse № 1. The complex of findings and the construction horizon level made it possible for researchers to refer the time of construction and functioning of the brick and stone building, cleared in the southern part of the dig, to the first quarter of the XIVc. According to its small sizes (14m x9m), simplified layout and interior design, paucity of personal belongings and almost no tiles of glazed ceramics proved that it was a common town bathhouse.

The preservation of the building was not carried out. The building was flooded.

The Market square (Gostiny dvor (shopping arcade), Caravan-serai)

Archaeological site named as the Market square is located 100-150m south-west from the Cathedral Mosque of Bolgar city at the crossroad of the Nazarovs street and Shkolny (school) by-street on the territory of former lands of the Bushuyevs and the Kursins. It is archeologised remains of a monumental building which consisted of a fundamental subsquare moat 1.2m wide and 1m deep on a basement level and raw block constructions located in this "square".

The stretch of the north-eastern wall of the construction is 34m. Judging from heaps of body bricks of typical size for the Golden Horde period, it was brick walls that were erected on the foundation. The widest brickwork could be 4 bricks, following the width of the foundation moat. Bricks were fixed with clay mortar. In several cases it was possible to see remains of cement mortar and alabaster probably used for binding different structures.

Dimensions of the building found seem to be comparable with one of the Cathedral mosque (32m x 34m). The secular nature of the building is obvious: its simplified design



(with no towers at its corners), relatively thin walls and not deep foundation as well as absence of column and pole supports in interior space does not allow to consider it as a building with a cupola or other stone-brick vault. It also cannot be considered as not finished as in its interior volume strip brickwork of interior partitions made of raw bricks was found. These bricks were laid inclined on clay mortar (as a herring-bone layout) or vertically (on the edge) in one row which can be seen on their cross-section. Traces of longwise laid boards, from which only wooden dust was preserved, were found under some of the laying.

In other cases they found thin layers of yellow loamy soil similar to raw bricks material but rich in lime, which show the horizon of construction of a limestone foundation and the entire construction as a whole, as well as individual re-used white blocks the task of which was to enhance raw brick walls. Four rectangular structures made of raw bricks, which were located symmetrically in the central part of the building could also be found; another wall of raw bricks stretched around the internal perimeter of the building. These raw brick structures could have been a base for wooden constructions with roofs where trade was carried out. Such structural elements are well traced by ethnographic materials from Central Asia.

The nature of the finds makes it possible to say for sure that the building was used for trade: numerous weight weights, cups and other details of the weights, seals, including lead and bronze ones (with embossed images), small stones with traces of gold on the surface of the ingot, silver and gold, copper and silver coins were found here. The number of coins found in the destruction layer of the building in its foundation, is approximately three times more than the number of finds outside its boundary. Judging by the dates on the coins of the horizon of the construction and its underlying horizons, the erection of this monumental building can be attributed to 1340-50-m, and the destruction to the second half-of the 1360 or 1370.

The question remains concerning the reconstruction of the exterior appearance of covering of this building, but it was clear that it could only be made of beams. Detection of the white quarry rock or hard-burnt bricks on the interior walls joints allows to presume that light (wooden) support pillars were used for such covering. The question of the decoration of the building entrance, which is still archaeologically not found, has also remained unanswered.

The architectural features of the structure (the use of burnt and raw brick) are typical of the buildings of the lower Volga Golden Horde towns, as well as Central Asian and Iranian buildings of the XIV-XV centuries.

Research of the building was carried out in 1989-1993, 2000, 2011.2012, 2013.

Small town

Small town is located on the southern tip of the Bolgar settlement, to the west of the south entrance gate of the city, at 2 km from the shores of the Volga River. It is a complex of stone structures surrounded by a rampart and a ditch. Trapezoidal in plan, it stretches from north to south. It has two belts of fortifications with traces of a shaft and a shallow



trench around the perimeter. External dimensions: 290 m-east side, 330 m-West, 300 m North, 150-South. The second zone is internal.

Rampart and moat separate the inside rectangular town square of Small town with stone buildings.

The compositional center of the ensemble is monumental double-tower gate with width of more than 4.0 meters passing from the north side of the complex. Tower-pylons flanked the entrance symmetrically and were rectangular (8.0 x 9.0 m). Inside the towers were narrow passageways (shutters gate). West Tower within the monolithic column had a spiral staircase and a hall with a vaulted ceiling. The building is constructed from white limestone. Both towers have a form of rectangles, roughly equal in size to square (about 8 x 9 m). West Tower has a spiral staircase inside, from which the lower four stages and a base remained. The pedestal of the building was formed by masonry, only one layer of which has been preserved, and was made of large square sandstone blocks. The pedestal stretched to the height of 0.50 m above the ground surface. All blocks were covered with 0.05 m of white lime mortar, and the same mortar topped up the foundation laid of tiles and banked with sand. The main part of the tower was monolithic of a half-quarry-rock type. At first s row of façade layer was made with the selection of rocks and their vertical bonding. Then small crushed stones and cobblestone were put inside the masonry and covered by cement mortar 0.03-0.05 m thick. Internal moellon is preserved to a height of 0.90 to 2.20 metres. Foundation of the building was investigated to the depth of 2.10 meters.

The second monumental construction of the Small town, also built in to the ditch line, roughly in the middle of it so that it does not come out of the front wall of its border, was located on the opposite, southern side inner territory. The building is constructed of white limestone. Mostly remained is the underground part of the building, its foundation. It is a rectangular building stretched in the ditch from the East to the West with dimensions of 18.9 m to the south, 19.10 m to the north, 13.15 m to the east and 13.05 m to the west. Inside the building was divided into two rooms by a partition. Studies have shown that the construction was not completed.

Brickwork of the upper part of the foundation and the walls is not regular made of quarry rock with binding of the external corners of the building. The stones used were tuff, lestone and sometimes limestone. The average size of stones is 0.20 x 0.30 m. Laying of the foundation has survived to a height of six to seven rows of a laying (1.20 m). Masonry walls have been preserved to a height of two to three layers (0.30-1.10 m). Purpose of the building is unknown.

The third stone building (5.20 x 5.30 m) construction is a small square with a wide (2.70 m) inlet opening from the East. The building was located between the two zones of defense, opposite the north-eastern corner of the inner court. Along the side walls of the room were stone sofas-benches, and the wall opposite the entrance there was a mihrab, marked on the outside of the building by counterforce. Remains of a small water basin with water drainage have been cleared in front of thee niche. Thus, it is the remains of a small room designed fro ablution which was an important component of most medieval Oriental rituals both of religious or secular, ceremonial nature. Integrity of the building



is not homogeneous from two to five layers of masonry. The wall brickwork, which is double-faced three-layers and irregular and made from limestone and lestone on clay mortar, has been preserved to the height from 0.30 to 0.90 centimeters.

All the studied structures of the Small town were built in the technique of rubble stonework in alabaster mortar with a compilation of facial surfaces of stones with further plastering. There are traces of secondary use of construction materials from earlier dismantled monuments. Archeologists-researchers note that work on the construction of the ensemble was clearly made following a single plan and lasted only for a season. The finds from the excavations are extremely limited, which also shows the fragility of their accumulation, but nevertheless they are sufficient to confidently date this period by the middle of the 14th century. The name of the Small town was first recorded in 1712 in inventory of Deacon Mikhailov. It was repeatedly mentioned by different authors when describing the Bolgar settlement.

Researchers did not have consensus on the Small town function because its construction was interrupted, possibly due to the capture of the town by Bulaq - Timur in 1361. It is believed to be the remains of an unfinished representative, ceremonial complex or a Caravanserai. Its fortification and religious uses are also discussed.

At the start of archaeological works all three buildings in the complex were archaeologically fixed. The complex was investigated in 1893, 1946, 1981-1984, 2011.

The Greek Chamber

It is located in the “Armenian colony” in 150-200 m to the west from entrenchment of the Bolgar ancient settlement, on the bottom terrace of the left coast of the Volga and lasts as a strip (50 m wide from the coast) in the direction of the natural boundary “Aga Market” for 3 km.

Excavation revealed wooden dwellings and a series of burials. The analysis of the received materials testifies to existence here of a trade Christian colony and a cemetery in the XIV century. A Christian church, called the Greek Chamber, is situated on the Volga terrace westward the town fortifications, on the side of what used to be an Armenian merchant colony. It was built in the 14th century of carefully drafted limestone blocks. Possible prototype of the building is the Church of the Virgin (Surb Astvatsatsin) in a monastery Noravank (Armenia), the construction of which ended in 1339.

Only its foundations and two-three courses of the masonry have survived till our days. The building is rectangular in plan, measuring 16.4 m by 12.6 m, and slightly elongated along the west-east axis. It has no altar projection in the eastern wall, a characteristic element of single-storied Christian churches.

An Armenian colony and the Greek Chamber near the main town of Volga Bulgaria are evidences of the lasting and extensive international relations of this mediaeval state of Eastern Europe.

The building was archaeologically studied in 1916, 1945-1947 and underwent conservation.



The Dormition Church

The church in the Name of Dormition of the Virgin is situated in the historic centre of the archaeological site, in its northern part near the Cathedral Mosque. The verticals of the temple part and the belfry can be seen from a distance, providing a kind of reference point in the surrounding natural landscape. It was built in 1732-1734 with the money contributed by a Kazan merchant Mikhlyaev. During the construction of the church, ruins of the Bolgar monuments were used for its foundations, and the wall plinths were made of the Bolgar gravestones with Arabic and Armenian epitaphs, which are of great scientific value.

This architectural monument of provincial baroque is of interest as an element of a historically established complex.

The Village of Bolgary

The existing village rose as a monastic settlement of the Church of the Dormition founded in the early XVIII century. In the middle of the XVIII century 120 people resided in the monastic settlement (future village of Bolgary). Population was Russian but Tatars who had adopted Christianity were settled here too. In 1764 the cloister had been abrogated and settlement became the state settlement.

At the present time the village of Bolgary has preserved aspect of rural settlement with a traditional single-story buildings; original planning of the village is also preserved. Major part of the buildings dates to the Soviet period, but some buildings can be related to the XIX -beginning of the XX century because of stylistic signs.

Architectural environment of the village, with its extant historical and traditional development, typical way of life of habitants is by itself interesting as an object of a tourist tour.

Cultivated landscape

The cultivated landscape has remained intact through a thousand years. The territory of the Bolgar complex is located on the boundary of natural zones: zones of deciduous forests and steppe zones. The combination of forest and steppe landscapes created a unique place for the development of forest and steppe cultures of Eurasia. Originally, the steppe Bolgar culture, on the one hand, found in these places close steppe motives, but on the other hand it had been forced to develop new forest lands.

The Jerusalem (Ierusalimskiy) ravine exists from the pre-Mongolian times. This part of the landscape is an important detail of the town of Bolgar and, at the same time, it is a place of the most ancient settlement of the Imenkovo culture at its territory (settlement is situated in the mouth of the ravine). From the ancient times and during all period of existence of the medieval town, the ravine was a part of its defense system. The archaeological site of Bolgar has kept its boundary and its fortifications (a moat and a rampart) to this day. The boundary of the village, founded in the XVIIIth century, has remained unchanged

This area is located in the heart of the natural knot, formed by the confluence of the Kama to the Volga. The broad valley of the Volga has created unique panoramas and spread visual perception of the area. Three natural habitat of plants that are dyer's-broom (*Genista tinctoria*), mat-grass (*Stipa gen.*) and young oak-grove are valuable ecological objects.



PROJECTS OF DEVELOPMENT (infrastructures)

River station and the Bolgar Civilization Museum

The River Station has been functioning in the area of the Bolgar settlement since 1992 and is an important infrastructural element in the reception of numerous passenger vessels. The reconstruction of the existing pier for river vessels was carried out alongside with the bank enforcement works to stop and prevent landslide processes caused by construction of the Kuibyshev Reservoir. The distribution of passenger and tourist influx with the view of ensuring the complex conservation required the introduction of tourist services.

Before the programme was implemented, there were no facilities meeting museum and other special requirements. The collection of the museum-reserve accounts for 100 thousand storage units. In this situation the best way out was to create a museum space that would not destroy the historical and cultural landscape of the monument. After the large-scale bank-enforcement works, necessary rooms were built in the slope; they meet strict museum storage and display requirements. The slope ends abruptly in the Volga. According to engineering and design, the new building should perform the task of strengthening the hill and prevent the landslide processes caused by natural factors threatening further preservation of the settlement. It was constructed on the territory of the old and shabby river station.

Thus, a new entrance zone on the territory of the reserve through the exposition of the museum was established. The Museum of Bolgar civilization represents the territory of the site and its Outstanding Universal Value. Being of high didactic potential, the Museum of Bolgar civilization is considered as a valuable contribution to the site. It provides necessary information to the arriving visitors, ensures good understanding of the monument site before seeing the architectural and religious constructions. It also minimizes the possible interpretations upon further acquaintance with archaeological remains of the buildings of the settlement. The River station and the Museum of Bolgar civilization hardly ever had a negative impact on the Outstanding Universal Value of the property, but revealed, emphasized it and made it more accessible to visitors.

The Memorial sign

The erection of the Memorial Sign in Bolgar has become the manifestation of social initiative and idea, which is based on recognition of the fact that this place is the only authentic data source of the outstanding and milestone event – adoption of Islam by Volga Bolgars, that preserved the authenticity of the event, its spirit and sense that fully meets the criterion (vi).

For centuries, Bolgar was considered by the Russian Muslims as worship and pilgrimage site, even during hardships of the Russian history, in the era of forced conversion into Christianity (XVI - XVIII cc.) and Soviet times (1917-1991), associated with the imposition of an atheistic ideology. That is why Muslim community and centers of pilgrimage pay considerable and sustained attention to the issue of glorification of



Islamic holy sites in Bolgar. At the turn of the XX - XXI centuries social demand had been raised in public consciousness to perpetuate the unique phenomenon of the Muslim culture development in the Volga region in the northernmost region of spreading of Islam in the form of a Memorial Sign - monumental building, an architectural site as a visual embodiment of this event, historic memory, cultural heritage and traditions, and spiritual values of the Tatar people.

The need for the Sign erection was also due to the necessity to implement specific and numerous requests from representatives of religious communities and organizations, individuals aimed at funds rising for the construction of a symbolic sign, which finally resulted in mass public donations for that purpose along with the establishment of the National Fund "Renaissance". Moreover, the choice of location for the Memorial Sign construction is the result of the Muslim Ummah initiative, as the result of a broad public debate.

Consequently, taking into consideration the sacred and religious-spiritual significance of Bolgar in the history of the Tatars, as well as the special role the city played in the adoption of Islam by Volga Bolgars in 922, in the period when ethno-religious and multi-cultural relationships characterized by tolerance began to evolve in the Volga-Urals region, it was decided to erect a Memorial Sign.

It represents an octagonal building with a round dome of titanite and the Muslim crescent on its top, reduplicating ancient Bolgar architecture.

The Koran, made by the Italian masters, is placed on a special pedestal in the central hall. This unique book is recognized by the Ministry of Culture as Cultural Value due to the high level of its artistic manufacture. The Koran, located in Memorial Sign, is the world's largest printed edition of Muslims' holy writings, confirmed by Guinness World Records certificate. It has record dimensions: its length is 2 m, width – 1.5 m, and weight – 800 kg. A 3D map of the route of the Abbasids Caliph Al-Muktadir embassy made of dolomite, limestone, marble and steel is also placed in the hall.

The ground floor accommodated a picture gallery, exhibits of which accounts for more than one hundred works of Tatarstan painters, museum and exhibition complex intended for exhibitions and conferences. The exhibition of the complex has archaeological finds, originals and copies of written sources, numismatics and jewelry craft items, as well as samples of fine art, including mosaic, featuring the day when Volga Bolgars adopted Islam as the state religion (the year of 922), and the ceremony of Bolgar Khan Almush meeting with a delegation of the Baghdad Caliph.

The author of the panel painting design is Farit Valiullin. "The record" about the journey of Akhmed Ibn-Fadlan was the main and the most important source of the painting. The heritage of the great Tatar artist Baki Urmanche, who profoundly studied the Bolgar period of history of the Tatars, was also used for the design preparation. The panel painting shows a recognizable panorama – a picturesque bank of the river where Almush-khan in the presence of many representatives of Bolgar families and different nationalities living on Bolgar land met with ambassadors of the khalif. Almush-kha and his wife and Ibn-Fadlan himself are standing in the centre while the message of the khalif al-Muktadir is read.



The result of enormous joint research work of artists, historians, archeologists, ethnographers and clergy was the exceptionally authentic depiction of clothes, footwear, objects of everyday life, flags and gifts on the paintings and each of them has scientifically substantiated real analogue.

The main and, probably, most important historical evidence of this event is Ahmad Ibn Fadlan's "Note" about travel to Volga, who visited Volga Bulgars as one of the ambassadors of the Abbasid Caliph Al-Muqtadir. Ibn Fadlan gave a detailed description of the journey, which provides unique information of historical and ethnographic character. Publications of the "Notes" in Arabic, Tatar, Russian and German are also represented among exhibits of the Memorial Sign.

The spread of Islam in the Volga region was associated with the Khazar Khanate (VII—IX c.). At the height of its power, the influence of Khanate extended to the whole Volga region. By the beginning of the tenth century, Islam spread further in Volga Bulgaria—a new powerful state in Eastern Europe.

In 921 AD the Bolgar Khan sent ambassadors to the court of the Caliph in Baghdad. The Bulgars requested military assistance against the Khazars and asked for auspices of the caliphate. Ambassadors of the Caliph of Baghdad arrived in Volga Bulgaria in May of 922, and at the same time they held a ceremony recognizing Islam as the official religion of the Bolgar state.

This event became a landmark in the history of peoples of the Volga region, gave further impetus to their cultural, economic and political development. The adoption of Islam by Volga Bulgars – the ancestors of modern Tatars — as the state religion was an outstanding historical event that had a decisive influence on the fate of the many peoples of modern Russia. Humanistic potential of Islam became one of the most important factors in the emergence and development of the spiritual and material culture of the multinational state.

Muslim laws, ideology and culture helped Bolgar sovereign – Khan Almush – overcome contradictions between various tribes and communities, strengthen government institutions, develop the economy, military affairs, establish diplomatic relations.

Volga Bulgaria became known around the world as the country of cities, excelling in its architecture, trade, manufacturing, science and literature. It developed metallurgy, jewelry craftsmanship, leather, pottery and other crafts, agriculture, livestock husbandry, which together with the intense foreign and domestic trade shaped the developed diversified economy of the state.

High level of Muslim urban culture development stipulated vigorous activity of educators, teachers, and scientists. Numerous Islamic schools gave the light of knowledge, famous theologians and philosophers preached in the mosques, thinkers wrote treatises and poets created their wonderful works in the city of Great Bolgar. And today, the works of Bolgar scientists in medicine, astronomy, mathematics and other sciences are well known far beyond Russia.

Famous Bolgar scholar and polymath Hodga Ahmad al-Bolgari lived and worked in the XI century. Works of the philosopher and historian Hamid bin Idris al-Bolgari



dated back to the second half of the XI – beginning of the XII century. The first “History of Bolgars” ever was written by Yaqub ibn al-Nugman Bolgari in the first half of the XII century. Outstanding theologian Sulaiman bin Dawood al-Saksini was one of his contemporaries. Famous lawyer Burhan al-Din Ibrahim al-Hanafi lived in the first half of the XIV century. He was the author of “Fundamentals of Discussions”. Hodga al-Bolgari (XI - XII centuries), as well as brothers Tadzhdin and Hassan bin Yunys (XIII c.) became famous due to their works on pharmacology.

At the beginning of XIII century one of the prime movers of the medieval Bolgar-Tatar literature Kul Ghali wrote an outstanding serene poem “Kyssa and Yusuf”, acknowledged as a masterpiece of world culture. In a period of several centuries of its history Volga Bulgaria had turned into a developed Islamic state that supported various economic and cultural ties with the Russian principalities, good neighborly relations with which were an important precondition for its prosperity. In the Golden Horde times, Great Bolgar was considered the largest urban center, dazzling the contemporaries with its wealth, splendors of architectural and urban ensemble. After many centuries and even in modern times, ancient monuments attract many pilgrims, people of Muslim culture, rightly considering Bolgar the city which much contributed to peaceful (voluntary) spread of Islam in Russia, to the formation of the Russian branch of the Islamic civilization.

Islam contributed to the ethnic consolidation of many peoples in Russia. In challenging situations, often against very heavy odds, it helped them survive as unique ethnic groups, preserve the treasures of their unique national cultures, traditions, and protect national character and identity from devastation. All this happened because the Islamic moral and spiritual values became part of the national identity and mentality of the Muslim peoples of Russia, contributed to literacy and education development. At the same time, being a part of the Islamic civilization, the Muslim peoples of the country, including the Tatars, have always been an integral component of the Russian civilization, having substantially influenced the formation of its social and cultural identity.

Considering this fundamental context, the decision, made by the World Heritage Committee to nominate the Bolgar historical and archaeological complex, based on criterion (vi) makes it possible to fully take into account the importance of Bolgar in the spread of Islam in the most northern reaches of the Islamic civilization, as well as the role Bolgar played as an important alternative center of pilgrimage for the local Muslims. When viewed in this religious context, the Memorial Sign underlines the potential Outstanding Universal Value. It is the main symbol of the religious significance of the place which reflects the fact that for the majority of Muslims in Russia and for Tatar Diaspora in foreign countries, the religious significance of Bolgar exceeds its archaeological value.

Campground (Pilgrimage Village)

Campground is a temporary construction that provides accommodation for thousands of pilgrims during the annual pilgrimage at the end of May. In summer tents are partially used by archaeologists. Tents are made from light metal frames and covered by canvases that serve as weather shelter.



Following the recommendations of Advisory mission of ICOMOS (The International Council on Monuments and Sites) it was decided to move the campground outside the site and outside the buffer zone, to the festival-event complex area, outside the Bread Museum. Temporary constructions dismantling has already been executed, and camp will have been erected at a new location by the beginning of tourist season of 2014. Short-term existence of the campground on the ancient settlement did not affect archaeological cultural layer as well as did not break free draining from the territory.

Festival-event complex

Festival-event complex is situated outside the object, to the east of the Bread Museum. It is a canvas covering over the stage and spectator's seats. Its location and dimensions were planned like these not to have a negative effect on the Bolgar ancient settlement and surrounding landscape. Festival-event complex plays an important role in the infrastructure of historical archaeological complex service and together with the White Mosque and the Bread Museum is designated for reducing the effect of a big stream of pilgrims and visitors on the ancient settlement territory in days of mass events holding.

The White Mosque

The White Mosque is located outside the object, in close vicinity to south-west border of the ancient settlement, and is harmonically inscribed into the surrounding landscape. It is built of white marble and its colour personifies peace and purity.

The Complex has a generalized character. The best examples of the world Islamic architecture were used for its construction and the composition was stipulated by the task and in addition to the Mosque and the madrasah included the (Islamic centre of the Tatarstan Muslims Religious Board).

The mosque is topped with three cupola and two slender minarets. The mosque minarets are built in the style of the Prophet Mosque located in the famous pale of pilgrimage of all Muslims – in Medina as most pilgrims, who come here, might never be able to visit Medina.

The walls of the Mosque are embellished with traditional decorative elements – tulips, arabesques, mukarnases and geometrical ornaments and create a unique atmosphere inside the building. Diffused light gives symbolism and mystique to the two-layer prayer hall and monochromic colour palette of the walls and the cupola in combination with wooden elements underline the beauty of the carved décor.

The White Mosque personifies the symbol of religious renaissance on the Bolgar land. The new mosque will become the attraction centre for pilgrims as in its time received pilgrims the Cathedral Mosque.

Undoubtedly, the construction of the temple complex in Bolgar can be called a milestone event of the Islamic community of Tatarstan and Russia. It is for the first time that a citadel of Islamic worship, education and enlightenment is revived on the sacred prayerful land of Bolgar. It is especially important that it is not only the mosque but also the madrasah. The constant presence of shakirds (students) on this blessed territory will



reflect connection of periods of history and generations and be the symbol of the revived Muslim Bolgar.

The White Mosque and some other infrastructural objects are erected outside the monument for the purpose to unload the territory from mass influx of pilgrims and tourists. Before the construction of the White Mosque and Memorial sign there was an influx of pilgrims who stationed on archaeological objects and near then to perform religious rites connected with namaz ritual, sacrifice and etc. The absence of expressly provided places for mass external acts of worship destroyed the monument integrity and had adverse effect on the archaeological objects safety. The solution of this task was directed on enforcement of requirements to provide integrity and authenticity of cultural heritage objects. The load on heritage objects decreased considerably as a result of these conditions fulfillment. Functional zoning increases safety and authenticity of urban medieval layout and cultural layers as well as provides maintenance of authenticity, the site, spirit and senses.

In estimating the influence of the White Mosque on historical landscape it is necessary to take into account the magnitude of the area and maximal remoteness of the mosque from key monuments of the ancient settlement. Within line-of-sight distance, viewed away from ruins of the Cathedral Mosque or the Black Chamber, it is perceived as a small silhouette on the horizon. At coming to the southern part of the ancient settlement the mosque complex is partially hidden by banks and is seen in space on the place of lost city gates. The White Mosque architecture based on recognizable Muslim architectural symbols, and a visual link of the ancient settlement with the mosque underline the religious importance of the place which World Heritage Committee offered to acknowledge as the main component of the Outstanding Universal Value according to the criterion (vi).

The Bread Museum

The Bread Museum complex is situated outside the property boundaries between the White Mosque and the Festival Hall. It is designed for the purpose of catering for visitors of Bolgar historical archaeological complex, as well as for the purpose of creation of museum directed first of all on the younger generation. Here children learn about the bread production process, starting from harvest and corns getting to the final process of baking. The Bread Museum is intended to present in a museum form the Tatarstan deep agricultural traditions which have been formed on the territory of the republic for centuries.

Cattle-breeding and agriculture in the Volga-Kama region is reliably traced from the Late Bronze age (more than 4 thousand years ago) and later these branches have been developing in the region continuously up to the present. Volga Bolgaria and the Golden Horde occupy a special milestone place in the agriculture development on the territory of Tatarstan and East Europe in general. Their population possessed a high level of knowledge about agriculture and influenced the development of farming and animal breeding of many neighbouring nations. Traditional economy of modern Tatars formed exactly in the period of these two states existence.

Rich history of agriculture of Turkic-Tatar nations and first of all of Volga Bolgaria and the Golden Horde could not be reflected in the exposition of Bolgar Civilization Museum.



Several sections of the Museum exposition are devoted to different aspects of cattle-breeding and agriculture development of ancient population of the land (in connection with the life support system, military science, trade, arts and crafts and so on.). Logical continuation of these sections is the exposition of the Bread Museum, which allows tracing the further history of agriculture in the region up to contemporary history and creates a real opportunity to reveal the rich past of this branch on the Tatarstan territory and its special place in the development of Russia.

The whole agricultural cycle from corn growing to bread baking with demonstration of ethnographic peculiarities of life and economic management of Bolgars and Kazan Tatars with preserved Tatar village flavour is recreated in the museum complex. The total area is about 5 hectares.

The Bread Museum principal exposition: miller's farmstead, windmill and watermill, granary, barn, bakery, forge, trade rows of arts and crafts masters.

The principal exposition of the Bread Museum is located on the area of 320 m². Exhibits that show the historical role of bread in Tatarstan nations' life are presented here.

The principal exposition introduces the history of development of material and spiritual culture, connected with agriculture and bread production, national traditions, dynasties of famous grain growers of Tatarstan.

Unique exhibits dated to the Bronze Age, the early Iron Age and the early Middle Ages show a difficult way that the first farmers passed from a poking-stick and hoe to field agriculture. Types of agricultural work are shown together with evolution of agronomic knowledge, farmers' skill, through the development of their tools and techniques, from hand and draught tools to machinery. The second hall introduces the history of bread production in Tatarstan from the earliest times to the early XXI century.

Expositions are also situated in other buildings of the Museum complex.

Bakery is a special interactive object of the Museum complex created in order to demonstrate the process of bread baking and other traditional national farinaceous dishes in stove to the visitors. Exhibits connected with bread baking and traditional Tatar tea drinking - household items, forms for bread baking, the dishes which are presented here.

In the bakery of the Museum complex one can not only see the bread baking technology, but also taste it.

Windmill. One of the sights of the Museum complex is active windmill.

All mechanisms are made from pine, maple and redwood. Millstones were ordered from Holland. The mill includes three blocks of rooms: the mill proper is situated in the middle. On the right is the room for corns' bags storing, on the left is the room for placing of ready-made production - flour and cereals bags. In the mill exposition visitors can get acquainted with the grain milling process, feel themselves in miller's shoes.



Watermill. Three-dimensional model of the mill is presented in the Museum complex. Watermill is near to the hammer-ponds system. Running wheel is included in one volume, overhanging a pond, and millstones, bunker and corn bins are inside.

Miller's farmstead. It is one of the main objects of the Museum complex, constituting a relative reconstruction of farmstead of a well-to-do Tatar miller of the late XIX-early XX centuries. The interior of Tatar house is created on the basis of genuine photos of Tatar houses interiors from the funds of the National Museum of the Republic of Tatarstan, with the use of replicas of the preserved household items, ornamentation, clothes, tools dated to the late XIX-early XX centuries.

Miller's farmstead is traditionally located near the mill. Farmstead consists of the following constructions: residential house, sheds, storage-closets, bath-house, bath-house and stable.

2b. History and development

The history of Volga Bolgaria, the Golden Horde, the Kazan Khanate and Russian empire – these powerful states of the X-XXI centuries located on the junction of Europe and Asia, the place that we name Eurasia, has an outstanding importance in the world and is connected with Bolgar. Having come to the Volga region from the Khazar Khaganate, the Bolgars who were nomads in the VII-IX centuries settled down and in the X century founded Bolgar, which became the capital of their state. Having conquered the Bolgar state, the Tatars, who were also nomads, turned Bolgar into the first capital of the Golden Horde in the XIII century. And it is in this object that huge number of material remains in the form of archeological and architectural monuments and the spirit of history have survived till today.

The complex of Bolgar not only personifies but also reveals the long process of historical development in the X-XX centuries, forming the essence of the national regional and local identity and being inseparable part of modern life of Tatarstan and Russia, but also characterizes its Outstanding Universal Value. The historical-archaeological and architectural heritage of Bolgar, the existing collective memory about ancestors of modern Tatars – the second largest nationality in the Russian Federation, the sacred character and successive development of Muslim and Russian Orthodox cultures cannot be replaced by anything and represents the foundation for preservation and development of this territory.

The spirit of the site, its character and quality as the place of adoption of Islam is an important determinant trait of Bolgar that defined the civilization choice of the state and its people and that possesses the main conceptual and symbolic meaning.

The history of Volga Bolgaria, the Golden Horde, the Kazan Khanate and Russian empire – these powerful states of the X-XXI centuries located on the junction of Europe and Asia, the place that we name Eurasia, has an outstanding importance in the world and is connected with Bolgar. Having come to the Volga region from the



Khazar Khaganate, the Bolgars who were nomads in the VII-IX centuries settled down and in the X century founded Bolgar, which became the capital of their state. Having conquered the Bolgar state, the Tatars, who were also nomads, turned Bolgar into the first capital of the Golden Horde in the XIII century. And it is in this object that huge number of material remains in the form of archaeological and architectural monuments and the spirit of history have survived till today.

The Outstanding Universal Value of Bolgar is also in the fact that in 922 AD the embassy from the Baghdad Khalifate reached Bolgar after having traveled for more than 2,500 kilometres, and this journey, which left wonderful record by Ibn Fadlan, was exceptional by itself. As a result the names “Bolgar” and “Rus” became known in this Arabic document. The journey also resulted in official voluntary adoption of Islam by the Bolgars and in spreading of Islamic faith in the north far away from the centres of Islamic civilization. Islam easily spread in all directions – to the west, to the east and to the south – to Iran, Central Asia, Malaysia, India, Egypt and Spain (Asia, Europe and Africa). However it is an exceptional fact that Islam penetrated so far to the north. Up till now it has defined the character of faith, customs, traditions, social and moral life norms and the culture and spirituality in the whole in this geocultural region.

In the beginning Bolgar was situated on the cape of the high Volga terrace, was naturally and artificially well consolidated and had rich waterscape. Simultaneously with the time of construction of fortifications, people settled down within the distance of 300-700 meters around the entrenchment. Expansion of the trading quarter of Bolgar with ironworks, honey production, tanning and other manufactures dated back to the XI century. Typical feudal city was being formed. Aga-Bazar, a market place located in 7 km from Bolgar on the banks of the Volga and known from written documents of the X century, is of special interest among other settlements along the rock Volga terrace. In the XI-beginning of the XII century the west part of the trading quarter was developing, e.g on the skirts of the town iron workshops with catalan hearths were sprang up and the building construction made a big progress. The trading quarter was further expanding and to the end of the pre-Mongolian period its territory tripled compared to the original.

At that time a neighbouring south settlement was joined to the city. The slope of the third terrace was also allocated for house building. The western one which was located on the Babiy Hill natural landmark became a burying place. In the east smith craft was developing. Till the end of the pre-Mongolian period the trading quarter was not fortified and it was only in the end of the XII - beginning of the XIII century that the defense system was constructed in the most populated areas. The second half of the XIII - beginning of the XIV century is considered to be a time of Bolgar reconstruction. As an old economical centre of Volga region Bolgar was given the status of the main city by the khans of the Golden Horde in the XIII century. In the Golden Horde period the boundaries were enlarged, craft works developed, trade achieved dominant position, monument building started.

To the 30s of the XIV century the architectural complex of Bolgar centre consisting from the Cathedral Mosque and two Mausoleums with a square between them was completed.



On the south-west the merchant court was built and gold and glass work was functioning. In the piedmont and over the river territory along the river Melenka 3 public baths worked, blocks of houses and a Russian settlement were formed. A ceramic workshop was active in the piedmont part in the early Golden Horde period. Brick houses with underfloor heating system were built in the south-east of the city and the nobles with their manufactures lived in this region. After 1361 the major part of this territory became a place for burying and worshipping – shrine complex and the Small Minaret. A lot of necropolises were in the southern part of the city. Different crafts had been functioning in western and north-western regions till 1361, e.g. ironworks, pottery, brass founding, gold works. The region around Galanskiy Lake was marked with numerous manufacturing units, accumulation of ceramic hearths and other artifacts of pottery mass production.

The Small Town fortified by moats and ramparts and with the front gate formed by stone pylons from the north part and with stone buildings on the south was located to the south from the settlement rights after the rampart. Armenian settlement, which rose on the site of a Bolgar suburb village, adjoined the north-west of the city. Burying place and a church called the Greek Chamber were located here.

Thus during the period of its flourishing the territory of Bolgar made about 400 hectares.

City development and changes in building system, emergence of manufacturing, trade units, places of worship and administration state buildings in particular took place under the dictated conditions of equal historical and cultural development of Middle Volga region and Foreland Ural region.

Historical topography of the settlement, natural artifacts and building elements, natural landscape are proved by the works of medieval authors and evidences of XVIII and XIX centuries.

References in historical sources and descriptions of the XVIII and XIX centuries

Medieval Bolgar of the X century is mentioned in the works of the Arabic historians, geographers, preachers and travelers (Abu-Ali Ahmed ibn Omar ibn Rusta “Precious values”, Ahmad Ibn Fadlan “Note” (“Risala”) about travel to Volga, Abu-Zayd Ahmad ibn Sakhl al-Balkhi “Views of the countries”, Abu-Abdallah Mahomed ibn Ahmad ibn Nasr al-Dzhaykhani “The book of ways and the states”, Abu-Iskhak al-Farisi al-Istakhri “The book of ways of the states”, Abu-l-Hasan ibn al-Hussein al-Masudi “Tossing of gold and mines of semi-precious stones”, al Abu-l-Kasim ibn Haukal an-Nisibi “The book of ways and the states”, Abu-Abdallah Mahomed ibn Ahmad ibn Abu-Bakr Shams-ad-din is scarlet - Bann al-Mukaddasi “The best division for climate knowledge”).

In the XII century it is described by Abu-Hamid Mahomed ibn Abd-are-Rahim al-Garnati al-Andalusi in “Selection of memories of the wonderful countries”. West European travelers of the XIII century (Gilyom de Rubruk and Marco Polo) had some information about the city of Bolgar.

Extensive data is presented in the Old Russian chronicles covering the events of the X-XVII centuries (Lavrentyevsky, Ipatyevsky, Tipografichesky, Tverskaya, Novgorod to



IV, Sofia I, Nikonovsky, Nikanorovsky, Voskresensky, Lvov, Holmogorsky chronicles, “The Kazan history” (“The Kazan chronicler”), the Piskarevsky, Mazurinsky and Arkhangelsk chroniclers, the Reduced annalistic arch, the Russian chronograph, Avraamka’s chronicle), etc.

A clerk Andrey Mikhaylov was the first who described more than 70 medieval constructions i.e. stone buildings and ruins of ancient Bolgar settlement in 1712. In 1719 the Bolgar ancient settlement was visited and described by an expedition under the leadership of the Danish scientist Daniel Gotlib Messerschmidt, sent by Emperor Peter I.

During the XVIII and XIX centuries the ancient settlement was visited by many travelers, writers, poets, journalists, military men, scientists, architects, artists and regional specialists – P. S. Pallas, I.I.Lepyokhin, F.I.Erdman, P.I.Svinyin, N. N. Kaftannikov, M. S. Rybushkin, I.A.Vtorov, A.Schmidt, E.P.Turnerelli, I.N.Berezin, brothers of N.G. and of Chernetsova, I.I.Shishkin, A.K.Savrasov who left valuable descriptions, drawings, plans of buildings and ruins, the majority of which did not survive.

The place of Bolgar in culture and history

The site of Bolgar has acquired the universal character since long ago and is connected with the history of the city during the Volga Borgaria and the Golden Horde and characterizes its Outstanding Universal Value. It has become a kind of a symbol of people and the state similar to Paris in France, London in Great Britain and Rome in Italy. Having been formed in interaction of different groups and communities populating it for a long period in history, it reveals the successive development of material and spiritual cultures in the X-XV centuries, which most brightly manifested themselves in numerous archaeological artifacts, the cultural layer and architectural objects. The establishment of Bolgar in the beginning of the X century completed the process of settling down of Bolgar and Tatar nomadic tribes and the uprising and development of urbanization of Eurasia. An international trade port which connected the East and the West, the North and the South and where Muslim, Scandinavian and Russian merchants met, the metropolitan character of Bolgar in the X-XI centuries and later in the XIII century after it was included into the huge empire – the Golden Horde also underline its outstanding role.

Since the Kazan khanate the ancient Bolgar settlement is highly significant as a core of religious worship and the centre of ancient constructions which were comprehended as monuments of Islam and the Bolgar state in Bolgar and Tatar folk art. Evidences include bright pictures of urban life in the poem of Kol Gali “Kyssa –i - Yussuf”, mentions of Bolgar in the epos “Idegey”, national legends and fables, works of the Tatar poets and Mukhammedyar’s educators (XVI century), Movly-Kolyya (XVII century), Sh. Mardzhani’s works on history (XIX century). The custom of adding “al-Bolgari” nisba to a name of Tatar clerisy till the X century also shows that Tatar people were highly connected with Bolgar city and its ancient monuments. Speaking about traditions and culture of the Kazan Tatars it is worth mentioning that the motives of the Bolgar ornaments, ways of managing household and cattle breeding are still presented as their roots in the culture of the Volga Bulgars.



The first decree about saving and repairing the Bolgar antiquities in the letter of the Russian emperor Peter I emerged in 1722 and became natural recognition of the importance of the Bolgar ancient settlement. Since 1880 Society of archaeology, history and ethnography at the Kazan University has monitored the condition of part of monuments of the ancient settlement. The establishment of a local history museum in the settlement and then turning it into a reserve (in 1923 – it was called the regional reserve, in 1934 – the Bolgar reserve, since 1969 - the national historical and architectural reserve) allows to speak about the state preservation of monuments of Bolgar during the Soviet and Post-Soviet periods when the main set of actions for their restoration and preservation was carried out. The new stage in the history of the ancient settlement of Bolgar is connected with the beginning of implementation of the “Cultural Heritage — the Island -city Sviyazhsk and Ancient settlement of Bolgar” project, the aim of which was to turn the ancient settlement of Bolgar into a modern historical, cultural museum and spiritual-sacred centre with the developed infrastructure according to the highest world standards not only of the Tatarstan Republic, but of Russia and the whole world.

Bolgar’s population was ethnically mixed, i.e. Bulgars, the Rus’ people, Finno-Ugric people (representatives of Kushnarenkovsky (ancient Magyars), Petrogromsky, post-Petrogromsky, Chiyaliksky archaeological cultures; Mordva, Maris, Udmurts), Alans, Oguzes, Kipchaks, Mongols, Tatars, Russians, Armenians, “Shirvan and Shemakhsky natives” and many other other peoples and ethnic groups.

Ibn Fadlan left a well preserved description of a prayer of overseas merchants from Rus and a burial ritual of one of their leaders which stunned him. Burial-mounds excavated near the settlement of Balymery not far from Bolgar in the end of the XIX century are most probably connected with these events. Numerous visitors - Muslim merchants from the East countries (Merv, Nishapur, Khoesm, etc.), Ancient Russia and the Russian principalities, handicraftsmen (even tailors) from Baghdad, India, steppe nomads, representatives of the northern peoples, each of which was interested in Bolgar in particular in furs, coins, slaves and other products and goods, had their interest in Bolgar.

Turbulent ethno-cultural processes happening in the IX-XV centuries gave rise to two tendencies: on the one hand they promoted formation of “Syncretic material culture” which was general for all participants of such events, and on the other hand, they led to emergence of the mixed groups of the new population, i.e. promoted development of cultural diversity.

Islamisation and Christianization (namely on the territory of Finno-Ugric tribes settlement, though very close to Bolgar) of urban and settled population, a little later of nomadic population, consolidated the occurred changes, forming essentially new social systems and relationship in the XIV century. A peculiar “melting pot” is formed where separate innovative elements of the various social and cultural systems are synthesized, which gradually transform into bright city culture.

It was here that a real knot of contact zones and intersection of civilizations and cultures was formed, the place of contact of the Turkic-Islamic and the Slavic-Orthodoxy worlds which together with Finnish-Ugric nationalities broaden this palette. After the



Kazan khanate joined the Russian Empire, gradually the balance of large confessions – Islam and Russian Orthodoxy was formed. Tolerant inter-confessional and multi-cultural relations developed historically through these complex stages of development.

The outstanding Universal Value of this property is also in the fact that in 1722 for the first time in Russian history Emperor Peter the Great issued a state decree on preservation and restoration of the Greater Minaret, the Cathedral Mosque and the work on the property preservation has been going on since then.

The Outstanding Universal Value of the site possessing the highest tangible and intangible value is also in the fact that rarely is it possible to see a place in the world where a mosque and a church are located just in 30 metres from each other. This testifies to tolerance and peaceful coexistence of different peoples.

The methodology of study of this outstanding monument has been developed for more than 150-year old history of archaeological research of this ancient settlement, the scientific school of Bolgar-Tatar archeology appeared and a galaxy of architects and restorers was formed.

The Bolgar-Tatar and Russian cultural tradition has comprised in itself a symbiosis of Turkic, Muslim, Russian and European civilizations. It was united by statehood, social-economic traditions including the developed Trans European-Asian trade, philosophy and the unique culture which combined the urban and the nomadic, the forest and the steppe cultures, the unity of symbols, norms and characters as well as tolerant existence of different nationalities and religions in the poly-cultural society.

It was in this unique and amazing historical-architectural complex that the Islamic culture, architecture and religion as well as the Russian Orthodoxy went together from the X to the XXI centuries and reached the peak of their development. Ancient monuments of Bolgars started living the life in the fullest. Every year tens of thousands pilgrims come to pilgrimage here and hundreds of thousands artifacts are kept in many museums of the world.

The existence of the ancient settlement of Bolgar in the X-XV centuries and on the same place of the settlement of the XV-XVI centuries is testified by archaeological objects and artifacts covering different historical eras (the period preceding the city building, time of pre-Mongolian Volga Bulgaria, the Golden Horde, the Kazan Khanate), and fixed in monuments of non-material culture as national legends and the fables of the XVII-XIX centuries. It gives evidences of the uniqueness of Bolgar culture and history that was a prominent cultural area of the world, influencing the development of architecture, technologies, arts, city building, and intellectual culture of the Middle Volga region, Foreland Ural region and Eastern Europe for more than 15 centuries.

Bolgar settlement represents unique evidence of an ancient civilization, which existed in Central Volga Region and Foreland-Urals in the X-XV c. It was called Volga Bulgaria, the ancient state of Bolgar. The paradigms of culture and religion in Bulgaria defined the character of faith, customs, traditions, social and moral norms of life in this geocultural region of the Volga and the Urals and gave rise to the modern Tatar ethnos,



which nowadays became the second nation in Russia, and other ethnicities of the Volga-Urals region.

Bolgar was one of the most important cities in Volga Bulgaria in the pre-Mongolian age. Some of the researchers believe that in the X-XI c. it was the capital of Volga Bulgaria. In the XIII century Bolgar became the first capital of the Golden Horde.

The city structure of ancient Bolgar represents advanced urbanism in Volga Bulgaria, which is considered to be a primary evidence of civilization. Another sign of civilization is that there were systems of currency circulation and coin minting, having more than 1 100 year-old tradition in Bolgar.

Bolgar is a sacred place for all the Muslims. Considered to be the place of adopting Islam by Volga Bulgars in 922, the complex is a site of religious worshipping and pilgrimage of Muslims starting from the XVI century. Nowadays many Tatars regard Bolgar to be their ancient cultural and religious capital that represents Bulgarian lifestyle before the Mongolian invasion to the Volga Bulgaria.

Bulgarian historical and archaeological Complex is an excellent example of Muslim architecture in medieval Europe. It is the northernmost monument of the Muslim architecture of the XIII-XV centuries in the world formed at that period from the Trans Dniester and the north Black Sea regions in the west to the Urals and Khoresm in the east, from the Caucasus in the south to the Urals and Syberia in the north and demonstrating high level of construction technology and the unique character of this architecture. Architectural traditions of ancient Bulgars are reflected in modern Tatar religious buildings.

The status of a federal monument protected by the state, helped to maintain good condition of all architectural objects and cultural archaeological layers, connected with the medieval life of the town..

The monument occupied its own special place as a unique evidence of existence so far little known but original Bolgar - Tatar civilization and important aspects of history of relations and cultural exchange between nomadic civilizations Asia, Europe and the Middle East.

The Bolgar-Tatar civilization became the first highly developed Islamic civilization in Eurasia

3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

Criteria under which inscription is proposed (and justification for inscription under these criteria)

Criterion (ii)

Proposed Statement of Outstanding Universal Value

Bolgar is the unique symbol of geopolitical and historical transformations of Eurasia in the XX – in the beginning of the XXI centuries that played the pivotal role



in the process of states and civilizations formation, Moslim and Orthodoxy expansion, customs and cultural traditions interaction of modern Tatar and other peoples of the Eurasian continent.

The Bolgar historical and archaeological complex is the remarkable evidence of historical continuity and cultural diversity, mutual influence of cultural traditions of Turkic, Finno-Ugric, Slavic and other peoples of Eurasia in the part of the Volga Bolgaria, the Golden Horde, the Kazan Khanate and the Russian state, of tolerance and interchange of universal values during the long period of time.

The Bolgar complex which is located on crossroads of trade, economic, cultural and political communications reveals the unique interaction of nomadic and urban cultures.

Justification of criterion (ii)

The Bolgar historical-archaeological complex is a unique evidence of historical succession and cultural diversity, which were formed in the cultural region of the Middle Volga and the Urals under conditions of existence of the ancient civilization of the Volga Bolgaria – the historical state of Bolgar in the X-XV centuries.

The paradigms of culture and spiritual life formed in the conditions of the Bolgar civilization project have defined characteristic features of faith, customs, traditions, social and moral life norms in this geo-cultural region many years ahead till today. Transforming and changing during the time of the Golden Horde the Kazan Khanate, during the Moscow kingdom and the Russian Empire, they were preserved in the traditional culture of Tatars and studied and understood professionally.

Today the Bolgar historical-archaeological complex is the only material trace of existence of the Volga Bolgaria during the period of its prosperity.

Occupying the exceptionally important region of Eurasia located on the cross-section of trade-economic, cultural and political communications, the Volga Bolgaria became a necessary intermediate link in civilization contacts between the East and the West, sedentary and nomadic cultures between the Forest and the Steppe worlds.

The result of these processes was formation of the unique character of traditional culture, which reflected in the development of economy, technology, city-building, architecture, monumental and applied arts and spiritual culture of the region.

The Bolgar historical-archaeological complex, which for more than ten centuries personifies the visible image of city-building, cultural and landscape developing activity as well as the following understanding of this activity in the sphere of spiritual culture, folklore and scientific knowledge, has become a bright and unique manifestation of ideas of cultural interaction and interrelation, which resulted in unique and original character of culture of the Volga Bolgaria.

The cultural heritage of Bolgar and the geocultural region is defined by the combination and interaction of five main genetic-stylistic components:

1. Local regional component representing architectural traditions of wooden architecture;
2. Eurasian steppe component of Turkic language tribes;



3. Oriental component connected with the adoption of Islam and belonging to the Islamic world;
4. European-Russian, which strengthened after joining the Russian state;
5. International component.

These stylistic components in the architecture of the Bolgar historical-archeological complex have interacted with each other and reflect diverse influence for a long period of history.

Nearly all types of buildings formed in the Muslim medieval architecture are represented in Bolgar and the Volga Bulgaria: a mosque, a minaret, a madrasah, a turbe (mausoleum), hammam (a bath) in Bilyar, Bolgar and Suvar; khanaka or takiya (Sufi mansions, hospices) in the Yelabuga ancient settlement and different types of complex constructions such as the kasr (a castle-palace) in Bolgar, Kazan and Bilyarsk, mashkhad (memorial-commemorative complex) or caravan-saray in Bilyarsk and the Small Town in Bolgar.

Having mastered and using traditions of Islamic architecture of the Arabic Khalifat, Bukhara, Khorezm, Derbent as well as architecture of the Khazar Khaganate, the Seljuks State, Byzantium, Armenia, India and the richest cultural heritage of Pre-Islamic Pagan cultures, Bolgar architects developed their own esthetic concepts, original methods and techniques determined by local climatic conditions. An original floral architectural décor was formed which was based on local construction materials, Pre-Islamic and Islamic religious traditions and impacts.

Thus, nearly all types of public and living facilities are represented in the Bolgar historical-archeological complex. In the first half of the XV century, when the Bolgar ulus of the Golden Horde decayed, the significant part of towns and villages continued their existence. During the Kazan Khanate period, some boundary fortresses, which actively developed in the second half of the XV century, such as Arsk, the Settlement of Chally became towns. From written sources it is known that the capital of the Kazan Khanate was called “Bolgar-al-Djadid” (“the New Bolgar in Arabic), stressing the deep historic roots and succession with the city-building culture of Bulgaria and the legendary town of Bolgar.

Monumental architectural monuments of the Bolgar historical-architectural complex are the most striking instance of creative and fruitful use of Oriental constructional traditions, which were adapted to local conditions after they came to the Middle Volga region. The stone built mosques, minarets, mausoleums and bathes not only defined the town image of Bolgar in the XIII-XV centuries, but also influenced the architecture of the Kazan Khanate, whose architectural traditions had successive development during its being joined to Russia. Even after the life faded away in the town of Bolgar, memories about its architecture were preserved in Tatar folk tales and the Turkic-Tatar epos “Idegey”, and the ruins of the buildings together with their surrounding landscape became the place of religious worship, esthetic gloat and then of scientific study. We can see similar processes also when analyzing other constituents of the culture of Bolgar, preserved in monuments of the Bolgar historical-architectural complex, its projects and artifacts, which were excavated in the cultural layers of the Bolgar ancient settlement. Elements of ornaments,



technical and technological methods of craftsmen, traditions of organizing the craft and forms of products sublimated the best achievements of the West and the East, nomadic and sedentary peoples of Eurasia and formed not only a unique picture of the cultural heritage of the Volga Bolgaria during the Pre-Mongolian period and the Golden Horde epoch, but also significantly enriched following cultures: those of the Kazan khanate, the Moscow kingdom and the Russian Empire.

Still continuing mutual exchange of values, born in the process of inter-cultural, inter-regional and inter-ethnic contacts and which significantly enriched the culture of the region and the world culture in the whole, has been the result of this processes which for the Middle Volga and the Urals regions had its origins in the culture of the historical Bolgar state.

The cultural tradition formed in Bolgar and the Volga Bolgaria with its more than 190 towns known in medieval Scandinavian countries under the name of “Gardarika” and which laid the foundation for urbanization of this geocultural region, was improved in large towns of the Golden Horde. In the XIII – beginning of the XIV century its spread to the Lower Volga region and the steppes of the Ciscaucasia, its planning elements were taken into consideration when building such towns as Saray al Makhrusa, Saray al Djadid, Ukek, Tyulistan, Madjar and others. Development of Kazan, Yelabuga, Arsk and other urban centres, their prosperity during the Kazan khanate as well as of towns in other Tatar khanates achieved successive development in the Russian state spreading to the north-east, where they became military-political, trade and Russian Orthodoxy centres.

Active development of Bolgar as an international trade point, which connected the West and the East, the North and the South and which was one of the main towns in the north part of the Great Silk Route, was consistently followed by Kazan in the XV century (Bolgar-al-Djadid, the Shopping arcade), then by Nizhniy Novgorod in the XVI century (Makaryevskaya Fair) and later by Moscow.

The tradition of establishment of madrasahs as highest religious educational institutions existing in Bolgar and Bilyar (Muhammed-Bakiriya and others) continued in the Kazan khanate, in the capital of which there was madrasah “Muhamed-Alamiya” the rector of which was an outstanding state figure, philosopher and a poet, a religious leader (seid) Kul Sharif, and also in other large towns of the Crimea and Astrakhan khanates. Noble traditions of these madrasahs were revived in Apakov, Akhundov, Madjani, Muhammediya and other madrasahs in Kazan, Khusaniya in Ufa, Kasimiya in Orenburg and many other cities of the Russian state in the XVIII – XIX centuries. Muslim Reformation Djadidizm was formed in Kazan in the end of the XIX century and spread all over Eurasia to people confessing Islam.

Religious content inscriptions on epigraphy monuments and mausoleums, separate burials near the mosque walls – all these rites connected with Sufism became wide-spread in Bolgar during the Golden Horde period, in Kazan during the Kazan khanate time and in villages and towns in the Russian state.

Interaction of Muslim and Christian religions, considerable amount of archeological artifacts related to life of Russian population in Bolgar, separate cemetery with grave stones with inscription in Armenian language, archeological remains of a Christian church, known



as the Greek Chamber and other visual material objects testify to the possibility of keeping different religious rites and mutual influence and religious values in Bolgar. Christian prayers constitute majority of texts of the «Codex cumanicus», created in 1303. Diversity of cultures was actively manifested also during the Kazan khanate period and in the Russian state.

Royal marriages between ruling families for strengthening inter-state and international relations is also a cultural tradition dating back to the early Middle Ages. It is known that daughters of Byzantium Emperor Michael Palaiologos were bestowed in marriage to representatives of the Genghis Khan family. The Golden Horde khan Uzbek bestowed his daughter in marriage to the emperor of Byzantium.

Being mostly Muslims, the Tatars have always shown great respect to representatives of other religions. All this is based on Suras and Ayats of the Sacred Koran and is the part of mentality of seven million Tatars who are striving to live in peace and concord with other nationalities. Blood is running in hot spots (The Middle East, Afghanistan and others) on our beautiful but so vulnerable planet of Earth. At the same time the House of People's Friendship is opened in Kazan, Tatarstan, the Institute of the UNESCO Chair is established and Sviyazhsk and the Ancient Bolgar are revived, where the UNESCO chair branches were organized.

Still continuing mutual exchange of values, born in the process of inter-cultural, inter-regional and inter-ethnic contacts and which significantly enriched the culture of the region and the world culture in the whole, has been the result of this processes which for the Middle Volga and the Urals regions had its origins in the culture of the historical Bolgar state.

The prominence and value of the ancient settlement of Bolgar as a unique monument demonstrating a significant mutual influence of human values in the culture of Eurasia was defined by the following factors:

1. The historical landscape of the ancient settlement of Bolgar is a striking example of unique medieval monuments and entrenchment i.e. ramparts and moats preservation in their original form throughout the millennia.

Outstanding places of worship and public buildings (mosques, baths, mausoleums), craft blocks of potters, bone-carvers, leather workers, steel-workers, blacksmiths, blocks of houses, necropolises, defensive constructions, city amenities (wells, water pipes, cost protecting structures and drainage systems) are connected with the settlement. There is a village founded in the XVIII century in the boundaries of the ancient town.

2. Occupation layers of Bolgar settlement found on the whole site area are an integral and authentic object. These include seven layers covering the period from before the appearance of a town to modernity representing the most valuable archaeological heritage which illustrates the history of the site.

The whole complex of archaeological heritage is an object of particular importance both from the point of view of giving new and unique knowledge about historical processes in Eurasia, and being extensive and powerful evidence of the monument's existence in different historical periods



3. As a result of the natural expansion of urban areas due to urban development in the X –XV centuries, the boundaries of the Complex have reached their maximum. Under the influence of historical and cultural development it reflects all stages of the settlement life, the main events of its history, culture evidences that has been dictated by regularities of its historic and cultural development.

The spatial organization of the town is an outstanding example of the developed urbanism in medieval Eurasian culture, reflected in architecture, technologies, arts, city building, cultural heritage and occupation layers covering the periods from the first millennium A.C. till the modern times. City development took place under the dictated conditions of equal historical and cultural development. The historical topography of the settlement, natural artifacts and building elements, and natural landscape are referenced in the works of medieval authors and by evidence of the XVIII and XIX centuries.

4. Authenticity of the property lies in the consecutive and complete self-expression of architecture and material culture of the different historical periods, which have a successive character and represent exclusive value as both uniform historical and a historical - cultural phenomena, showing its prominence not only in the region, but also in Eurasia as a whole.

5. Bolgar with its surviving architectural and archaeological monuments of the Golden Horde civilization of the XIII-XV centuries is a unique complex in the world, evidenced by: the Cathedral mosque, the East and Northern mausoleums, the Khans' Shrine, The Small Minaret, the Black and White chambers and other archaeological sites.

These surviving elements of original culture are symbols of the uniqueness of the medieval urban life expressed in planning of the space, the intensity and scale of contacts, the symbiosis of cultures; and of universality, integrity and continuity.

6. It is a unique territory where the combination of different landscapes promoted the development of steppe and forest crops of Eurasia and where steppe nomadic and urban settled cultures united in the time of the early Bulgarian, pre-Mongolian and Golden Horde periods. In the XVIII century initially forest Russian traditional culture was spread into the steppe territory.

7. It is the only territory in the world where more than 1100 years ago silver coins (dirhems) were minted, in Volga Bulgaria in 902-908, and in the 1240-50s Jochi dirhems were minted in the Golden Horde period.

8. The uniqueness and value of the Bolgar complex was reflected even in medieval sources of the XVII, XVIII centuries and following historical eras, and was also stated in the state laws on provision of its preservation since the beginning of the XVIII century, which became the first regulatory documents on objects of cultural heritage in Russia. The first documentary confirmed data in the history of Russia is the evidence of repair and restoration work on architectural monuments of Bolgar carried out in the middle of the XVI century both by the state and the community and representatives of different confessions and ethnicities.



Criterion (vi)

Nominated statement of Outstanding Universal Value

Bolgar is the unique example of a Muslim civilization of Outstanding Universal Value, whose paradigms of culture and spiritual life formed an understanding of bases of belief, ideas, customs, social and ethical standards of life in Muslim ummahs of the region since the beginning of the X century.

The Bolgar historical and archaeological complex is an outstanding example of medieval Islamic culture in the Muslim Renaissance era. It is the only evidence of the earliest and northernmost Muslim enclave of the world, connected with official acceptance of Islam by the Volga Bulgarians as the state religion in 922 A.C.

Bolgar is a place of religious worship and pilgrimage for the Turkic Muslims of Eurasia. This place possesses a special spiritual aura, being a place of cultural heritage of the highest level. Bolgar represents the spiritual unity, the sacral center, and the ancient political and religious capital for the many millions of Tatar people.

Justification of criterion (vi)

Spiritual and religious importance

During the era of the Muslim Renaissance (the IX-X centuries) Islam and Muslim culture spread to the north far away from the centres of Islamic civilization. The conditions for broad spreading of Islam among Bolgars were formed at the end IX – beginning of the X century and in many respects they were connected with a political situation, and ideological unions of various tribes and the people in the region of the Volga and the Urals of that time. The first archaeological evidences of Islam were traced even in pagan burials of the Tankeevsky burial ground of the second half of the IX in, located in 20 km of Bolgar city.

Active trade and economic contacts of the Volga and the Cis-Ural regions with the countries of Central Asia – Khoresm and the state of the Samanids created favorable opportunities for penetration of Muslim preachers and emergence of sustainable ummahs. The author of the beginning of the X century Ibn Rusta (903) wrote about mosques and madrasahs in Bolgar settlements. In the headquarters of Almush, who accepted a Muslim name Jafar ibn Abdallah, ‘there was a special staff of clergy, including muezzin. The embassy of the Baghdad caliphate which entered the World history under the name of Ibn Fadlan, promoted not only the official acceptance of Islam, but also a diplomatic recognition of Bolgaria as the Muslim state. The ethno-confessional situation sharply changed the Volga and Urals region, having defined its originality for centuries to come. Not only in the east, but also the Russian, West European documents and consciousness of the people, the name of Volga Bolgar, and then Tatars was strongly associated with the concept “Moslem”.

The adoption of Islam resulted in the fact that the ancient Turkic runic writing of Bolgars was replaced by Arabic letters. In those conditions the transition of Bolgaria to Arabic ornamental script was more preferable as it opened wide possibilities for Bolgar



science and culture to reach the international level as since the time of its establishment Bolgaria actively participated in international economic and cultural relations and first of all with Oriental countries. Gradually Arabic language alongside with the Bolgar became the language of the Bolgar science and diplomatic correspondence, and Farsi (Persian) alongside with Turki (Bolgar language) – the language of Bolgar poetry.

Strengthening of trade and economic relations with Oriental countries brought about spreading of Arabic letters in the system of education of Bolgars.

Paper brought from China and Samarkand was the main material for writing on in Volga Bolgaria and the Golden Horde, while parchment was rarely used similar to western peoples in the west. This explains poor preservation of written monuments of the Ancient Bolgar and the Golden Horde periods.

Islam gave new impetus to fast development of Bolgar science and culture in the whole... At the turn of the XII century there lived a scientist-historian, the chief judge Yakub ibn Nygman in the town of Bilyar, who wrote the book “History of Bularia” which was highly estimated by Arabic traveler and geographer Abu-Khamid al Garnati (al Andalus), who visited the great town in 1135. Unfortunately it did not survive till our days, but thanks to Al-Garnati, who came from the far away Spain and who gave quotes from the book of Yakub ibn Naguman, we have an idea of this book.

Bolgar-Tatar literacy had such a high authority and acknowledgement that a scientist Khodja Akhmed Bolgari was appointed a teacher and a tutor of the most powerful sultan in the world Makhmud Gaznevi, as in his time the famous ancient Greek philosopher Aristotle was the teacher and the tutor of Alexander the Great. It was not by chance that Bolgaria was named “the kingdom of reason” and “the gold throne of the east”. Having moved from Bolgaria to Afghanistan, Khodja Akhmed Bolgari treated people in Gazni. Many of them recovered after his wonderful treatment. Poets praised him in their verses and his name became legendary. A white marble mausoleum (durbe) was built on his grave in 1971.

However Khodja Akhmed Bolgari was not just a famous doctor. He was also famous for his philosophy and history treatises. Most well-known among them were “Tarihate Bolgaria” (History of Bolgaria), “Fenandel Bolgaria” (Science in Bolgaria), “Jamigyl Bolgaria” (Philosophy of Bolgaria). Many modern Muslim scientists read his works created in the XI century.

The adoption of Islam resulted in the fact that the ancient Turkic runic writing of Bolgars was replaced by Arabic letters. In those conditions the transition of Bolgaria to Arabic ornamental script was more preferable as it opened wide possibilities for Bolgar science and culture to reach the international level as since the time of its establishment Bolgaria actively participated in international economic and cultural relations and first of all with Oriental countries. Gradually Arabic language alongside with the Bolgar became the language of the Bolgar science and diplomatic correspondence, and Farsi (Persian) alongside with Turki (Bolgar language) – the language of Bolgar poetry.

Strengthening of trade and economic relations with Oriental countries brought about spreading of Arabic letters in the system of education of Bolgars.



There are also famous big religious projects. Thus, Beykhaki (XI c.) reports about the ruler of Bolgar sending money to the Nishapur region for construction of two mosques in Sebzevar and Khosrovdjerd and “wonderful gifts” to the ruler Khorosan in 415 of Hijra. (1024/1025). He adds that this money was used for construction of those two mosques. Another report dating back to 1041/1042 underlines that a man from the Bolgars with his escort of 50 people visited Baghdad when going to Hajj.

There is much information about trips of religious preachers-Sufis, about origin of a number of outstanding theologians, lawyers and doctors who achieved recognition in the Muslim world. Trade and diplomatic contacts with countries in the east were regular and stable.

The historical memory of people keeps a legend about the arrival of three companions of the Prophet Muhammad to Bolgar, about miraculous healing of Tuibike, the daughter of the Bolgar tsar and about the adoption of Islam by the Bolgar Tsar and his close associates.

As it goes in the old Bolgar manuscript rendered in the XIX century by the rector of the Kazan university, a scientist and a doctor, an honorary citizen of Kazan, a German by his origin Karl Fux, it all began in the ninth year of Hijra when Prophet Muhammad started sending his Sahabahs (associates) for spreading Islam to peoples and state of the world.

Three such Sahabahs of the Prophet, imams Abdur-Rakhman, son of Zubir, Khantal, son of Rabiya and Subeyra, son of Djad came with the dagwat (call for Islam) mission to the Bolgars.

Karl Fux described rather in detail how there mission passed among the Bolgars.

The Bolgar ruler (Elteber) and his subordinates adopted Islam. According to the legend this happened already in the first half of the VII century in the sacred month of Ramadan in the 12 year of Hijra.

They brought gifts from Prophet Muhammad – an imamah, a cane and a pen.

Coming to Bolgar as doctors, they healed many sick people. Having leaned on the Prophet’s cane, one of them prayed for the first time on this land. Twelve years later, two of the Sahabahs returned to Medina, and the third staid in Bolgar, married the tsar’s daughter and was buried there.

Graves of the Prophet companions and 33 “Tabigins” (people who adopted Islam due to companions) were well preserved in Bolgar till the second half of the XVIII century. M. Ramzi says that these graves were located to the west from the Smaller Minaret close to it.

The memorial dedicated to the Sahabahs symbolizes the peaceful way of spreading Islam on the Bolgar land.

High level of the Muslim urban culture caused active work of enlighteners, educators and scientists. Numerous Islamic educational institutions were carrying the light of knowledge in the Great Bolgar, famous theologians and philosophers preached in its mosques, thinkers wrote scientific treatises and poets created their wonderful pieces. Works of Bolgar scientists in medicine, astronomy, mathematics and other sciences as well know far beyond Russian even today.

A famous Bolgar scientists-encyclopedist Khodja Akhmad al-Bolgari lived and worked in the XI century. Works of a philosopher and historian Khamid bin Idris al-



Bolgari are dating back to the second half of the XI – beginning of the XII centuries. The first “History of Bolgar” was written by Yakub bin Nugman al-Bolgari in the first half of the XII century. An outstanding theologian Suleyman bin Davud al-Saksini was his contemporary. A famous lawyer Burkhan-ad-din Ibrakhim al-Khanafi who wrote the book “The basics of Discussion” lived in the first half of the XIV century. Hodja al-Bugari (XI-XII cc.) and brothers Tadjddin and Khasan bin Yunys (XIII c.) became famous for their works in pharmacology.

Archaeological and numismatic evidences found in a course of excavation of Bolgar show how widely Islamic religion and Muslim culture was spread. Examples include either objects connected with the Islamic countries of Central Asia, the Middle and Western Asia (Kufi coins, metal ware with Arab inscriptions, mirrors, lion-shape locks, belt inlays, jewelry, etc.), and sacred objects made in the region (cases for Koran and Surahs storage, Bolgar and Jochi coins, household subjects with the Arab inscriptions - rings, mirrors, lamps, jewelry, bronze locks, fragments of vessels and especially the items characterizing “the high culture” - writing-materials, book cover details, etc.)

Muslim burial grounds and funeral rituals are sharp evidence of spreading of Islam. Nowadays more than 80 burial grounds are investigated among which 52 are dated from the pre-Mongolian period (X-XIII centuries) and other grounds including those which are located in Bolgar and neighbouring territory (Aga-Bazar tract etc.) are related to the Golden Horde period. Analysis shows that Muslim funeral ceremony in the period of the beginning of the X-XI centuries till the middle of the XIII century becomes dominating and gets integrated “iconic” forms. Due to the changes in religion within the Golden Horde period there are certain changes in a funeral ceremony and establishment of stone epigraphic monuments and constructions of mausoleums-durbes.

At the beginning of 1840 a famous Russian orientalist I.N.Berezin studied the inscriptions on the medieval epigraphic monuments that remained on the territory of the ancient settlement. For the first time the interpretation and the analysis of inscriptions were published in his book “Bolgar on the Volga”.

Integration processes and spiritual unity in the country defined no as much by the kinship and common pantheon but more by Koranic ideas and understanding of their place in the Muslim world are sharply accelerated on the bases of the Islamic state. A new socio-cultural community and its culture-bearers, the nobility, kinsmen, rich citizens, population as well as the identity and mentality of Bolgars and Tatars are formed and developed.

The Tatar people calling Bolgar city («Шәһри Болгар») a sacred place (“изгеләр жире”) remembered, honored and chanted the praises of it in their historical bayads, legends and munadzats. As it was considered the sacred property of the people it was sacrosanct and highly protected territory lands of which could not be either plowed or developed and which was carefully protected. Already at the time of the Kazan khanate (the XV-XVI centuries) and later there was a Tatar settlement near the town of Bolgar, whose inhabitants were responsible for the mausoleums-durbes and other outstanding monuments preservation. Specially employed people lived in certain mausoleums for the



sites' protection.

In the XV century Bolgar became the centre of religious worship and pilgrimage to these holy sites. The Russian empress Catherine the II writes about it in her letters to the count N.I.Panin and to the great philosopher educator Voltaire. In 1767 on her way from Kazan to Simbirsk she visited Bolgar and wrote that «Tatars have great respect for this place and go to pray in these ruins».

Russian outstanding artists brothers G.G. Tchernezov and N.G.Tchernezov having visited Bolgar in 1838 noted: "... it is a place in which ... their prophets are buried; Tatars hold veneration to them and come to worship from the remote places ... from Ufa, Orenburg, Kazan, ... Bukhara, ... Khiva. Bolgar residents saw black people (dark-skinned) among those who prayed: they spend here about two days and more, sometimes bringing mullahs for keeping their religious rituals."

After visiting the city in the 30th of the XIX century, E.Turnerelli from Great Britain published the book "Russia on the Border with Asia" in 1844 where he emphasized that it was "... the capital which certainly could be equal to ancient Palmira, Troy, Carthago, Tyre and other glorious cities at the time of its brilliant existence..."

There are numerous other evidences of travelers, outstanding representatives of literature, art, the state and public figures emphasizing religious, spiritual and sacral character of Bolgar.

At the end of the XIII – the beginning of the XIV centuries the Stone church (The Greek chamber) was constructed in Bolgar and a churchyard started working. The building is rectangular in plan, measuring 16.4 m by 12.6 m, and slightly elongated along the west-east axis. It has no altar projection in the eastern wall, a characteristic element of single-storied Christian churches. In the Muslim city a Christian church showed the state policy, the formation of inter-religious tolerance traditions in the period of the Middle Ages, and during the subsequent periods of new and latest time (the church of the Dormition– the XVIII century, Saint Abraham's church of the XIX-XX centuries).

A Muslim mosque of the X century in Bolgar, known from the Arabic and Persian written sources, the Cathedral mosque of the XIII-XIV centuries, mausoleums-durbe are bright evidences of the Middle Age period.

Preservation and protection of mausoleums and other Muslim objects of the XV-XIX centuries during the difficult times of the Soviet era when atheism became the dominating direction of a state policy, active pilgrimage of Muslim Tatars of Russia, construction of the Memorial sign and the White mosque reveal the main burning issues of a Muslim civilization, features of ummahs evolution in the northeast of Europe, as well as traditions and a current state of Islam throughout the entire period of its development in the Volga-Urals region.

Bolgar settlement and its territory are striking examples of development of whole Islam religion and its institutes, dogmatic, legal madhhab schools. It demonstrates the stages of city development as a part of the Volga Bolgaria, the Golden Horde, the Kazan khanate, the Russian state and shows the progress in relationships within Russian Muslims community and between the Muslims and state.



The property possesses great spiritual and religious value and is an objectification of the whole spectrum of intangible values which directly indicate to the Outstanding Universal Value of the Complex. There are many different ways of preservation of intangible values. For example, the religious activity of the White Mosque, in the Cathedral Mosque, near the Smaller Minaret and the Khan's Shrine during Muslim holidays will provide continuous preservation of the tradition of the site spirituality and sanctity and that is one of the components of the Outstanding Universal Value of the property.

The continuing educational work of the Islamic centre will provide preservation of traditions and principles of educational and learning, thus increasing the importance of the property. Thus intellectual intangible values and the importance of the property are preserved by perpetuation of knowledge by using educational programmes and popularizing it. Much of this knowledge is inseparable components of the Outstanding Universal Value and include such valuable aspects as spirituality, pilgrimage and shrines, religious rites and purity and a number of historical events (adoption of Islam in 922 AD and arrival of the embassy of Ibn Fadlan, being the capital, etc.). However, each of the above listed intangible values also has a practical aspect such as:

- Active support of continuous pilgrimage undertaken by Muslims and probably by representatives of other confessions from all over the world;
- Preservation of the central role of the White Mosque and the Memorial Sign as symbols of revival of spirituality after long years of domination of atheism and totalitarianism and the place of Muslim rites and rituals;
- Preservation of the importance and meaning of this site objectifying the return to the origins, a feeling of spiritual nearness to the people who used to live in this place and due to whom the Tatar ethnos – the Volga Bolgars heritage keeper was formed, as the place of amazing spiritual aura for Muslims and the supreme form of intangible heritage;
- The Cathedral Mosque with the Big Minaret and the Dormition church standing side by side as witness and a mark of tolerance and peaceful coexistence of Muslim and Christian religions;
- Bolgar as the bright model of Islam development in the region confirms centuries-old traditions of inter-religious tolerance, good neighborliness and mutual respect of the people of the Volga-Ural region and the Russian Federation. In the conditions of multi-religious and multicultural society, the tradition of the Russian Islam and centuries-old experience of coexistence with Orthodox and other religions, received a new impulse.

The exclusive place in culture of the Tatar people is taken by outstanding works of literature and arts created by the representatives of Bolgar aristocracy of talent. The great poet Kul Ghali, the author of the poem "Kyysa-i Yosyf" written in 1233 ("The legend on Yousaf") undoubtedly is one of them. He is equally eminent in art as such known poets of the East, as Omar Khayyam, Hafiz, Nizami, Navoi, Shotaa Rustaveli. In 1983 by the initiative of UNESCO the whole world celebrated the 800 anniversary since the birth of Kul Ghali as the great poet who contributed a great treasure into the world culture fund.



Spiritual heritage of the Bolgar, bright and rich history of the capital of the Volga Bulgaria and the Golden Horde gave strong impetus for development of Tatar graphic, theatre and musical arts, fiction and poetry and the national culture in the whole. The period starting from the beginning of the 1990 became a powerful impulse for appearance of numerous works by Tatar historians, writers, poets and artists, musical culture workers, when keen interest to real history free of ideological stereotypes, to cultural heritage, traditions and spiritual values of their nationality appeared and became strong in the public conscious in the process of national revival in Tatarstan.

In the recent years with the beginning of the large scale work carried out by the Regional fund “Renaissance”, legends and history of the Bolgars became the basis for new outstanding masterpieces of National culture. Among most interesting works and new creative successes one must mention the opening night of the ballet “The Golden Horde” a heroic poem telling about the death of great world civilization staged at the Tatar academic opera and ballet theatre after Musa Djalil in 2013.

The ballet libretto was written by the national poet of Tatarstan Renat Kharis and the music by a gifted composer Rezeda Akhiyarova. The clash of strong human emotions formed the basis of the ballet: elated and at the same time tragic love peripeteia, persistent lust for power and treacherous betrayal, the triumph of victory and bitterness of defeat and at the same time learning experience of the historic past very important for today.

Another wonderful event of 2013 was the one act opera “The Black Chamber” staged by the choreographer Grigoriy Kovtun on the music of Elmir Nizamov. The libretto to the opera on legendary plots of the Bolgar history was also written by Renat Kharis. The opera is specially prepared for being performed in the Bolgar ancient settlement, in setting recreating palaces and mosques of Bolgar. Interest of Renat Kharis in historical past sprang to life in numerous poetic works, the poem “An Oath Chalice”, essays and librettos. Thus in 200 one of the large works of the poet, the ballet “The legend of Yusuf” was awarded the State Prize of Russian Federation in literature and arts. In his libretto Renat Kharis used a legend about Joseph the Fair which has been told in many languages for ages. The performance – parable about beauty and meaning of human life has become one of the most successful projects of the Tatar academic opera and ballet theatre.

Historical novels of Nurikhan Fattakh, Musagin Khabibullin, Romand Vakhitov and many other writers have received people acknowledgement as well as works by artists Baki Urmanche, Ravil Zagidullin, Kanafi Nafikov, Rifkat Vakhitov and Ferinad Khalikov.

Folklore, finding and registering new intangible values and the meaning of the property solves the task of understanding this intangible heritage of the X-XX centuries for the modern society, of evaluation of efficiency of different ways of communication and methods for increasing understanding of meaning of this heritage in the modern society. All this creates possibilities for developing a consistent strategy of preservation the integrity of the property heritage.



The factors defining the role of the complex as a centre related to the events, traditions, ideas and works having the world importance.

1. The complex is the unique evidence of the journey of the embassy of the Baghdad Caliph to Bolgar, described by Ahmed Ibn-Fadlan. His traveling notes are a masterpiece of medieval Muslim literature of the “Risalya” genre, translated into various languages (Tatar, Russian, German, French, English, etc.), shown in works of art, and also in the world cinema (“The thirteenth soldier”).

2. Bolgar is a spiritual and sacral center for all Muslims. It is the place of the voluntary official adoption of Islam by the Volga Bulgars at the state level in 922 A.C. that resulted in the rise and spreading of Islamic faith and Muslim culture to the far north from the centers of Islamic civilization. Material archaeological and historical artifacts relating to the town of Bolgar show the wide expansion of Islamic religion and Muslim culture.

3. Bolgar is a remarkable physical demonstration of historical continuity and cultural diversity over a long period of time, with the tolerant coexistence of Muslim and Russian Orthodox religions, evidenced by the Cathedral Mosque of the XIII-XIV centuries peacefully standing side by side with the Church of the Dormition of the XVIII century.

4. Bolgar is a cultural and spiritual center attracting many well-known people of the world such as travelers, writers, poets, scientists, artists, regional specialists, architects, restorers, etc. Outstanding and historic figures lived and stayed herein the beginning of the XIII century: the Bolgar-Tatar poet Kul- Ghali, khans Batu, Berke. After having visited Bolgar, Peter the Great issued one of the first decrees in the Russian Empire about preservation of monuments, and Catherine the Great described its spiritual value in her letters to the French philosopher and educator Voltaire. Outstanding Russian artists I.I. Shishkin, A.K. Savrasov, both brothers Chernetsov and many others left drawings, plans of buildings and ruins of the ancient town.

5. The property is the unique evidence of the formation and development of state and public forms of preservation of cultural heritage objects in Russia and in the world. The methods of studying of monuments of history and culture have been mastered on this territory for 300 years and Bolgar-Tatar archeology and history have been developed. The fact that systematic archaeological researches of the site starting from the middle of the XIX century, which gave rise to “Bolgar studies” as a scientific trend in archeology in the first half of the XX century, is outstanding by itself.

Establishment of the first archaeological museum-reserve in the history of Russian museology in the middle of the 1850s became confirmation of the Complex’s uniqueness and public recognition. From the second half of the XIX century state and public institutes provided preservation and research of Bolgar site monuments. Objects of the complex are integrated by the historical and architectural memorial estate since 1969.

6. The complex is characterized by such traits as universality, integrity and mutual influence of cultures not only in material-architectural, household and style levels, arts and crafts, but also in the spiritual sphere and intangible heritage such as ideology, language, writing, literature, and folklore; in the unity of ideas, symbols, norms and images.



INTEGRITY AND/OR AUTHENTICITY

Integrity

Taking into account that criteria (ii) and (vi) (mutual influence of human, cultural and religious values, and also their meaning) are defined as the main components of Outstanding Universal Value, it is these criteria that are central and defining for Bolgar.

Integrity of the complex. The integrity of characteristic features and the values reflecting its Outstanding Universal Value are confirmed by the fact that within its borders there is sufficient territory to include all elements which allow one to imagine the course and the results of its evolution, formed in the process of the activity of various ethnicities in Bolgar and the region in the V-XXI centuries. The majority of the territory of the complex, namely 97%, has not been archaeologically excavated. Therefore the occupation layers and the potential of unexcavated archaeological material are put forward as evidence of integrity.

Implementation of interdisciplinary complex archaeological researches including use of nondestructive methods give extensive and powerful proof of the site's existence and future potential contribution to the knowledge of historical periods.

Methods of archaeological research in the territory of the complex meet international standards. In recent years active use of nondestructive methods (geophysical, space) gave new opportunities for the visualization of buried archaeology. New research with the use of modern methods of conducting archaeological work has allowed scientists to receive new outstanding data on the Complex; to develop a long-term program of research in the most important areas for archaeological studies; to involve Russian and foreign specialists from leading scientific centers using new methods for studying physical, chemical and biological materials received during archaeological excavations, and to create restricted reservations for field excavation research.

Complex restoration of the areas found during excavation is being carried out. Preservation methods for newly found architectural and archaeological objects are applied taking into account the integrity of the object and its particular location in the ancient settlement.

Conservation of newly found structures is carried out by creating the constructions on the ground surface without a physical link to the original ("two-dimensional restoration") and this extends the possibilities of the site for tourists and pilgrims.

All above-mentioned activities have created conditions for the implementation not only of the full realization of a strategy for the preservation of archaeological remains and a careful approach to excavation, but also preservation of the integrity of the Complex's territory. This will prevent the possibility of the reduction of authenticity, and will expand knowledge levels.

Ramparts and moats with a height of up to 5 m survive all along the nominated property, which allows one to visualize and imagine the site in the XIV century outlined by historical fortification constructions. These are a striking element of the integrity of the territory, and are a determinant, important and significant attribute of the complex.



Expansion of the boundaries of the nominated property and the buffer zone, inclusion of the early settlements identified on the first river island, and expansion of the buffer zone to the north for protection of the panorama across the Volga River are important confirmations of the aspiration of the state to maintain the integrity of the nominated property. All this as a whole will allow to cover all territory, all elements and values, unique specific points and prospects, and also to prevent large multistoried construction and violations of historical visual perceptions of the property.

Considering the application of criterion (vi) and Bolgar's characteristics as the territory connected with the adoption of Islam in 922, construction of the White mosque and the Memorial sign support the nominated property's function as the regional center of pilgrimage. It will also contribute to preventing the erosion of the integrity of the Complex, creating a considerable focus for visitors and pilgrims, especially on peak days, reducing the load on the ancient settlement territory.

The Memorial sign, the White mosque and some other historical constructions supplement Bolgar's spiritual and religious value, creating necessary infrastructure and comfort for the performance of ceremonies and for the satisfaction of the religious feelings of Muslims, and strengthening key aspects of religious use and the worship on the nominated property. In order to avoid the degradation of the nominated property and to strengthen its integrity and authenticity, a change of transport system is foreseen.

The majority of all attributes expressing Outstanding Universal Value are in the territory of the nominated property and they are still preserved. They have not been seriously damaged, were not lost, and most important they have not lost their value. Thanks to the protective measures undertaken in the XVIII-XXI centuries, establishment of the museum-reserve, measures for its development directed on the accounting and heritage preservation, provision of the competent organization of the territory, proceeding from its cultural and landscape and functional zoning, development of the museum complex and of the museum-reserve as a center of social and economic development of the surrounding territory, to creation of the Scientific academic center on studies of history and culture of the Volga Bulgaria, the center of local history and ecological education, the Complex is in a satisfactory condition and nothing threatens its values. The development of the museum-reserve as one of leading Russian and in the future the world tourist centers, the significant Muslim spiritual and sacral center is carried out alongside with preservation of this unique cultural heritage object.

Authenticity

The authenticity of the nominated complex is well exposed in the profile sent to the UNESCO World Heritage Center. Following the recommendations of the World Heritage Committee, a thorough analysis and thematic review of the authenticity of the nominated property was carried out, based on the changed Outstanding Universal Value statement due to the move to criteria (ii and vi), and to changes to the boundaries, buffer zones, methods and corrective measures.

Distinctive characteristic and analysis of the attributes and values of the Complex in accordance with criteria (ii) and (vi) allow us to represent the property's authenticity in a broader



context of the historical period of fifteen hundred and not just five hundred years of development of the region and Eurasia as the whole, in the history of which the nominated property played a prominent role. For more than 15 centuries the area of the site, as the centre of intersection of continuous chronological and space characteristics, reflected the material, spiritual and architectural values, the cultural landscape and technologies of Finno-Ugric, Bolgar, Tatar and Slavic communities, different governance and state epochs, and of interaction and mutual reference in urban and architectural self-expression. At the same time the mutual influence of cultural and religious values over this period of time is expressed in the authenticity of the cultural landscape, the historical topography of the city, the occupation layers, the rampart and the moat, the archaeological materials and the architectural monuments.

The duration of the Bolgar-Tatar traditions in this area, the development of urbanization in the region and accelerating processes of civilization for a number of peoples of Eurasia are also closely related with the Complex. All this authenticity has not lost its value. Created in the 1960s, the historical and architectural museum-reserve within the Complex has unique ruins of all periods of history and is an example of an effective mechanism of site preservation.

It should be noted that there are different approaches to archaeological site conservation based on different climates, and geographical areas of the earth. Using the same approach in various geographical conditions on the contrary may damage archaeological treasures. Therefore this is a conceptual question which requires coordinated actions of the international community. The authenticity of the unexcavated 97% of the area, which is the object of well-planned archaeological study, and of the materials therein is quite obvious.

Such measures as relocating the pilgrimage village outside the nominated property boundary, limitation of further mausoleum excavation, increased use of nondestructive methods of research as well as the establishment of archaeological finds and archives storage outside the property envisaged by the plan revised by the state-party will also promote the preservation of authenticity of the attributes of the Complex.

Since the XV century the original use and function of the object, as the sacred places of pilgrimage and worship for Muslims in Russia and abroad retained. For them Bolgar is a spiritual center with a specific aura (cultural heritage). This attribute of spirituality is still prevailing. The fact that it was the pilgrimage centre maintaining and enhancing the spirit and feelings of other tangible and intangible aspects and that in this exact place the Islam was adopted by Volga Bulgaria in 922 which is officially fixed in historical documents and that exactly this place related to the historical process of the spread of Islam in the most northern areas could be accepted as the source of information relating to the authenticity along with the Memorial Sign and the White Mosque built outside the complex according to specific and repeated request of the religious communities. Thus, the use of the criterion VI in Outstanding Universal Value property assessment helps to emphasize the crucial aspects of religious use and worship of the site as being authentic.

The complex is a source of objective information about the true level of socio-economic, cultural and spiritual achievements over one and a half thousand years of great interest. Recognition of the value of the nominated property has increased especially



after giving it the status of the Museum-Reserve, which fulfills the cultural, religious and administrative functions.

The Complex complies to the conditions of authenticity, because its cultural and religious values, in accordance with the criteria (ii) and (vi), are reliably and safely expressed through such attributes as the form and design, materials and substance, location, traditions, methods, and systems of management, use and function, the spirit and feeling, language, and other forms of intangible heritage and spiritual and physical perceptions.

Taking into consideration criteria (ii) and (vi), the Memorial Sign has a positive influence and intensifies the integrity and authenticity of the values. According to the wide context of the criterion (ii) and to the fact that Bolgar is a symbol of religious meaning for many Muslims from vast regions, which is the defining parameter, its spiritual and religious importance comes to the fore. Thus the Outstanding Universal Value of the property is expressed confidently and reliably.

Attributes relating to the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex are as follows:

Form and design: The spatial organization of the settlement of Bolgar is a perfect example of the existence of the urban ensemble of the large medieval city in the XIII–XV centuries with preserved authentic architectural objects of the Volga Bulgaria and the Golden Horde period. Places of worship (mosques, mausoleums-durbes) and public building (baths, market etc.), entrenchment (ramparts and moats), city amenities (wells, water pipes, cost protecting structures and drainage systems etc), occupation layer and landscape including the village and monuments of the XVIII century are the embodiments of form and design.

Materials and substance: Buildings and ruins within the Bolgar ancient settlement, the village of Bolgary, and monuments of the XVIII century were built with the use of brick, limestone, plaster, tuff, and quarry stone. Conservation and restoration works are also carried out by using materials authentic for this region and correspond to the historical period of the construction of monuments.

Use and function:

Heritage preservation: Measures taken to fulfill the requirements of international legislation and state norms of the state-party on preservation of cultural heritage objects include the following activities: establishment of efficient management within the functioning museum-reserve and local power bodies; carrying out conservation work on found and preserved objects; implementation of the programme of systematic, permanent complex historical and archaeological research; maintaining and creating conditions for preservation of intangible values of the property, including pilgrimage traditions and aesthetic and cultural needs.

Cultural and educational: formation of museum and tourist space by modern methods of museum exposition, and organization of tourist traffic and navigation. Broad information promotion through different mass media. Upbringing and education of young



generations in a spirit of careful attitude to cultural heritage objects, understanding and respect for different cultures.

Religious use: it is a sacred place for Moslems and one of the most active religious sites in Russia – including cultural and religious practices and rituals. The Memorial Sign, the White Mosque and other development projects actively promote the strengthening of spirit and feelings.

Management traditions, methods and systems: Traditional management – the property is a cultural heritage monument of Federal significance of the RF and is under state protection and management. Keeping cultural and religious events and rituals is also traditional.

Location and setting: The original location and surviving occupational layers, ramparts and moats, morphological structure of natural landscape and general visual perception.

Language and other forms of intangible heritage: Religious use: it is the place of the formal adoption of Islam in 922 by Volga Bulgars who were the ancestors of the modern Kazan Tatars. It has been also a place of religious worship and of pilgrimage by Muslims to their holy place since the XV century. This use involves cultural and religious practices and rituals. It is a place with an exclusive spiritual aura for Muslims that is a unique form of the intangible heritage.

The authenticity of *form and design* and *materials and substances*, as attributes expressing the Outstanding Universal Value, is provided by the negligible interference into the architectural monuments of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex. The work there was carried out using methods of museification and conservation with fragmentary restoration of those parts which would contribute to better preservation of the monuments and to the protection of the archaeological heritage under the conditions of harsh climate. The works were carried out with the use of construction techniques and materials suitable to the historical period of the monuments' construction. Current work on the Bolgar monuments is done in accordance with requirements of modern norms and the Convention recommendations. At that most historically valuable and unique are preserved elements of conservation work carried out in the complex since the middle of the XVII century, which reflect the development of principles of conservation and restoration approach to the cultural heritage objects during several centuries.

By the degree of transformations and cultural reclaiming the territory of the Complex belongs to the naturally evolved and associative landscapes. The long-range impacts did not cause significant changes of the landscape. Natural components of the landscape adapted to these changes, which formed the property of cultural heritage with interwoven processes of natural evolution and targeted activity. The territory of the Bolgar Complex comprises elements of fossil and relict landscapes. The fossil elements of the landscape are presented by archaeological monuments. The elements of relict landscape are still preserved and continue to develop.

Having found itself in very difficult historical and socio-political environment of the XV century, Bolgar survived, changing slightly due to the influence of time and humans. Many bearers of the culture that created this landscape have disappeared, but the nominated property itself in large part remains in its former shape, composition, content and interaction



of cultural, human and religious traditions. The cultural landscape of Bolgar has remained intact for fifteen hundred years. The boundaries and fortifications (moat and rampart) of the Bolgar archaeological site have remained unchanged up to the present day as has the boundary of the village founded in the XVIII century. The central complex of the Cathedral Mosque with the Big Minaret, the Small Minaret, Black Chamber, the mausoleums and the Church of Dormition are the main height dominants of the settlement.

The White Mosque which looks as a small point from the Central complex of monuments, the Bread Museum and the Memorial Sign which develop religious and spiritual importance of the complex and its cultural function do not influence the abovementioned attributes of the Complex. It is prohibited to build new residential buildings, to use contemporary construction materials, to exceed the traditional height of buildings. These and other measures are aimed to prevent threats to the integrity and the authenticity of the Complex.

4. PROTECTION AND MANAGEMENT

The Bolgar historical-archeological complex is protected by federal and regional legislation and governments. The list of its monuments has been published.

Any kinds of work except scientific research and museum activity are prohibited on the territory of the museum-reserve. Cultural layer archeological studies as well as work on preservation, conservation and museification is carried out only by permission of federal and regional monument protection bodies. There is a clear and transparent structure of the complex management including Ministries of culture of Russian and Tatarstan, the Regional Fund of Revival of Tatarstan Historical and architectural Monuments and other organizations.

According to the above mentioned documents and to the General Plan and Scheme of the Bolgar territory planning any significant changes in the buffer zone must get a permission of federal, regional and municipal executive bodies after being approved by the UNESCO Centre for World Cultural and Natural Heritage. The direction of the museum-reserve was restructured into the Office of the world Heritage Management.

Archeological studies are carried out by Russian and Tatarstan Institutes of Archeology, Kazan Federal University and other scientific organizations. The Concept and management plan of the Complex management till 2019 and the strategy of the property management for the next 20 years. They have been prepared using extensive consultations with different state and non-state structures, discussions with people's deputies, local community, International Council of the Regional Fund of Revival of Tatarstan Historical and architectural Monuments.

The management plan consists of the following directions:

4a. The Management Plan

Philosophy and policy of the Management plan



The Management Plan Framework

The objectives of the Management Plan are

- to conserve the Outstanding Universal Value of the property;
- to create appropriate conditions for the sustainable development of the area of the site;
- to reach public consensus on conservation and sustainability of the property.

The main sections of the Additional Materials and the Management Plan include

- general description of the property and proof of the Outstanding Universal Value;
- attributes of the current property protection by legislation and other forms of state protection;
- analysis of the use and sustainability of the property by the stakeholders;
- property management including social component and tools for achieving public consent;
- organizational management strategy, monitoring and resource provision for implementation;
- general plan of action to implement the Management Plan.

All the activities and projects of the Management Plan are aimed solely at preserving the Outstanding Universal Value of the property and its special historical, cultural and natural environment.

Systematic approach to identification, study, conservation, management and protection of the monuments of the Complex is the basis for property conservation. The Management Plan contains the requirements for continuous comprehensive preventive examination and maintenance of the monuments. Conservation is seen as a necessary and exceptional measure to conserve and identify historical values of the site. Experience gained during research and conservation of archaeological and architectural monuments have become the basis of the Complex, Center for Bolgar Civilization Study, archaeology and conservation.

The main component of the Outstanding Universal Value of the property is its historic environment. Landscape approach was used to plan the property management. The Management Plan defines the integrity of the landscape as well as the main criteria of conservation and landscape management principles on the basis of its outstanding value. Non-destructive technology is used as a tool for landscape management. The Management Plan provides methods for sustainability of the area without affecting the Outstanding Universal Value of the property. The Plan suggests the strategy development for the growth of tourism based on marketing study of the target group and the analysis of critical man-caused impact on the property and the historic landscape.

The priorities are to evenly reallocate the man-caused impact on the area of the Complex within a year as well as to change the programme of cruise and one-day trip tourism to a long stay allowing a more profound understanding of the culture of the region.



The development of the area around the property will be carried out on the basic principle: revitalization of the historic environment of the Complex. Social and economic development of the area is a prerequisite not only for the development but also for the conservation of the OUV in order to avoid the degradation of the area and loss of culture and traditions. However, any new project aimed at the development of infrastructure in the buffer zone of the property and the surrounding areas must undergo impact assessment for the Outstanding Universal Value of the property and the surrounding landscape as recommended by UNESCO in order not to harm the integrity and authenticity of the property.

Active interaction of the Complex with the local communities, enhancing awareness of the local community will strengthen their sense of belonging to cultural conservation and responsibility for the property, involvement in the conservation and revitalization process of the historic landscape and culture, and provide a more equitable distribution of the benefits from the use of the OUV.

The Management Plan of the Bolgar Complex is a document of integrated planning coordinating the interests of all the stakeholders and defining the aims, objectives and methods of their joint activities for effective protection, conservation and sustainable development of the cultural property. Solutions made under the Management Plan will be discussed with all the stakeholders at the Coordinating Committee which is established to achieve public consent on conservation, use and sustainability of the property.

Transparency principle of the intentions and activity of all the stakeholders is a key to development and implementation of the Management Plan.

The document provides methods for monitoring Plan implementation and the quality of its realization. These stages must be carried out annually in order to verify the selected tools as effective forms of conservation of integrity and authenticity of the property. The Management Plan will be annually revised after monitoring of the Plan implementation and discussion with all the stakeholders. The format of the Plan allows all the stakeholders to get a clear idea of the condition of the OUV and the planned tools of the property sustainability in a short perspective. The terminology meets international standards (World Heritage Convention) and is in accordance with the terminology of the Russian Federation legislation.

Management Plan Process

The development of the Plan started in 2013 in accordance with UNESCO World Heritage Convention Guidance and World Heritage Committee Recommendations.

The main developers of the Management Plan are:

- National Fund «Renaissance»,
- Kazan Federal University,
- Kazan State University of Culture and Arts,
- Archaeology Institute of the Academy of Sciences of the Republic of Tatarstan,
- Volga Region Division of UNESCO Department by order of the Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Tatarstan and Bolgar State Museum-Reserve.

The course of work comprised a detailed analysis of the situation, numerous events



including those with the participation of the stakeholders, and collection of the material. The implementation period of the Plan is from 2014 to 2019.

During the development of the Plan a lot of events took place including meetings of the Republican Foundation “Revival” and International Research and Methodological Expert Board, scientific conferences, “Bolgar” forums, seminars, regular meetings, meetings with representatives of institutional structures and the stakeholders as well as international companies for cultural conservation.

The results under the Plan are tested at international and regional scientific conferences and sessions. Experts from UNESCO, World Heritage Centre, and Ministry of Culture of Russia, Russian and foreign specialists in cultural heritage protection regularly reviewed the preparation process for nomination. In June, 2013, in Cambodia, the World Heritage Committee issued recommendations which were strictly followed during the development process. The visits of UNESCO/ICOMOS experts to examine the Complex were especially useful (end of 2013).

The development of the Management Plan is carried out under regular discussion with the stakeholders as well as on the basis of the Advisory Mission report. One of the crucial principles was involvement in the development of the interest group including the local communities. They took part in the discussion of the issues and problems related to threat identification and stating the opportunities in the activity of these subjects in the property. The documents were developed under continuous cooperation with Bolgar Museum-Reserve in accordance with the requirements of international and Russian legislations for cultural and natural heritage property protection in order to conserve the Outstanding Universal Value of the property. Considering all the requirements and wishes of the Complex the documents will become an effective tool for the property authenticity and integrity conservation in the development of the area.

Study of the settlement, its archaeological and architectural monuments, including the use of modern methods (aerospace, geophysical, radar, etc.). The use of new approaches, technologies, multichannel systems of reconnaissance by magnetometer, GPS and other methods of non-destructive investigation of the property is primarily directed to the use of this potential as a management tool, and the disclosure of the quantitative characteristic of archaeological sites, and the precise targeting of archaeological research.

All this is included in the developed and approved strategy of the research and preservation of the archaeological integrity of the site and the program presented in Appendix 2. The strategy and the program have put forward the objectives of the research program, specific areas and objects, and other research tasks aimed at the specification of the history of the territory and further strengthening of its Outstanding Universal Value.

The management plan is primarily aimed at the protection and maintenance of the outstanding universal value of the complex, protection, preservation and museification of archaeological and architectural monuments, archaeological studies, the use of tourist and pilgrim potential of this place like the unique cultural heritage, including sections of the prevention of negative impacts, risks and natural disasters, management of the facility with the task of extensive tourist display. The basis of management policy and activities



provides the effective preservation, research, conservation, museification, presentation of monuments and sustainable use of the complex and its spiritual and cultural revival.

Management plan considers not only common cultural and religious values of the Property and the changes that have occurred in the vicinity of the Property and can affect it, but also a comprehensive and integrated approach to connect and emphasize the link with other federal, state and regional plans, such as regional use of the Spasskiy district area, planning and registering territory within the Complex, maintaining its Outstanding Universal Value, criteria, integrity and authenticity. Moreover in accordance with the documents of UNESCO (2013a), given that Complex presents important ecological, scientific, educational, recreational and economic values emanating from the formulation and feasibility of the criteria of the Outstanding Universal Value of the site it is very important to manage not only the areas of the Plan, but also the stakeholders outside of the heritage system.

The Coordination Group and the Coordination Committee of the Property

The property is the part of the Bolgar state historical-archeological museum-reserve which is supervised by Tatarstan Ministry of Culture. The museum-reserve manages the property independently but in case of need the management bodies are in close interaction. Moreover, in addition to these institutions, a number of other organizations also take direct part in the property management: the Bolgar city executive committee, the administration of the Spaask municipality, Tatarstan Academy of Sciences, Tatarstan commission on UNESCO matters, the Russian National World Heritage Committee, The Russian Federation commission on the UNESCO matters, the UNESCO Chair on preservation of architectural and city-building monuments. All of them are members of the coordination group on the property management.

The task of the coordination group on the property management is to implement the property management plan according to their competences and official authorities. **National Fund «Renaissance»** established in 2010 under supervision of the first President of Tatarstan M.S. Shaymiyev fulfils the function of the Coordination committee – the governing body which combines key questions in the property management and coordinates the work on the property as well as coordinates the compliance of work with the management plan.

According to its regulations, the Fund is involved in activities directed at promotion of revival and development of the Bolgar historical-architectural museum-reserve, the state historical-architectural and arts museum “The Island-town of Sviyazhsk” and other historical and cultural monuments located in Tatarstan, of preservation and development of historical, cultural and spiritual traditions of multi-ethnic population of Tatarstan, of national-cultural originality and traditions of the Tatars and representatives of other nationalities living in Tatarstan.

The main objectives of the Fund work are:

- facilitating the preservation and restoration of the Bolgar historical-architectural museum-reserve, architectural-artistic revival of the state historical-architectural



and arts museum “The Island-town of Sviyazhsk” and other cultural values (objects) which are valuable from the point of view of history, archeology, architecture, city-building, art, esthetics, ethnology or anthropology, social culture as well as attracting necessary financial resources;

- popularization of cultural heritage objects of Tatarstan;
- helping work aimed at increasing the cultural level of the society;
- facilitating the establishment of scientific, cultural, intellectual and tourist potential of Tatarstan.

To reach these objectives, the Fund carries out any kinds of work not banned by legislation such as:

- financing of work related to preservation, reconstruction and restoration of the Bolgar historical-architectural museum-reserve, architectural-artistic revival of the state historical-architectural and arts museum “The Island-town of Sviyazhsk” and other cultural values (objects) which are valuable from the point of view of history, archeology, architecture, city-building, art, esthetics, ethnology or anthropology, social culture;
- protection and corresponding maintenance of buildings, objects, territories possessing historical, cultural or environmental protection importance and cemeteries according to the set requirements;
- facilitation in attraction of Russian and foreign investments, loans for implementation of priority directions of work of the Bolgar historical-architectural museum-reserve and the state historical-architectural and arts museum “The Island-town of Sviyazhsk”, including organizing competitions, auctions, exhibitions and lotteries;
- facilitation in organizing historical-cultural research including financing scientific research, scientific-practical conferences, symposia, meetings, competitions, exhibitions and workshops including international ones and also other kinds of activities and help in the spheres of education, enlightenment, science, culture and arts;
- facilitation in the regulated manner to the state body of the Tatarstan monuments protection in carrying out measures on state protection, preservation, use and popularization of cultural heritage objects as stipulated by legislation;
- participation in the prescribed manner in programs of restoration of monuments of history and culture implemented in Tatarstan.

The International scientific-methodical Council, consisting of acknowledged foreign and domestic specialists in study, preservation, restoration and museification of cultural heritage properties and headed by the rector of the Kazan Federal University I.R. Gafurov, plays the key function in expert provision of the Fund work.

At present the function of the symbol for Coordinating Committee is presented by the logo of the National Fund «Renaissance» .

Logo inscribed in concise form of pointed arch, designed to indicate the presence of the foundation in Tatarstan, which presents the republic with the Eastern traditions. At the same time it's a shield - the most common heraldic image.



The two mirror-symmetrical arches are inscribed in this frame, whose internal image, on the left - a triangular, which associatively sends us to the completion of the mausoleum dome in the Northern Bolgar and symbolizes the history and monuments of Islamic culture, on the right – a semicircle, which is associated with a semi-circular domes of Orthodox churches, in particular the Joy of All Who Sorrow Cathedral in Sviyazhsk.

In the gaps of these small arches the outline of two hands, nurturing tulip flower, made in traditional manner of the Tatar ornament, is placed. The flower here symbolizes the memory of our country peoples, embodied in the historical and cultural monuments, which need protection and revival. Flower passes through an open book, which means that revival of historical and cultural monuments is based on a careful study of historical material, and a vertical line passing through the axis of the flower, depicts the process of continuous improvement in the protection and revival of monuments.

The name of the Fund “Renaissance” is inscribed under small arches in two languages - Russian and Tatar in the symbolic Oriental and Old Russian styles.

Adoption of this logo is based on the symmetry of the two halves, which reflects the concept of balance between the two cultures and religions, coexisting in our republic, and brought to encourage the further work of the National Fund “Renaissance”.

An important objective of the Management Plan is to organise the work of the Coordinating Committee so that it acts as a discussion platform for the issues of site management and as a coordinating council for the Management Plan implementation. The Coordinating Committee consists of the members of the Coordinating Group for Heritage Site Management. The Coordinating Committee mainly consists of those members who contributed to the establishment of the Management Plan in the course of dialogue and debate. This Committee implements its activities on the principles of partnership and has full meetings at least twice a year, the executive body works on a regular basis, and the International Expert Council has regular meetings as needed.

The work of the Coordinating Committee is mainly aimed at:

- monitoring the condition of the property, discussion and adoption of the necessary measures to protect the property from any threats and hazards;
- development and improvement of the current methodological principles used to protect the Outstanding Universal Value and significance of the property;
- monitoring the implementation of the Management Plan;
- discussion of the issues of management and monitoring property management at local, regional, national, and international levels;
- search and implementation of possibilities to apply the skills and knowledge acquired at the site in science and education, activities aimed at enhancing interest in the property and environmental activity;
- regular updating of the action plan;
- discovering and applying new developments for better understanding of the significance of the heritage site;



- monitoring of goals and objectives of the Fund and other institutions, encouragement and motivation of relevant bodies and organizations, including international ones, that protect the site and the environment, creation of conditions for long-term protection of the site;
- keeping periodic reporting on the condition of the heritage site.

The most important objective of the Coordinating Committee is to develop and implement short-and long-term activities within the Management Plan including :

- the Bolgar Complex Management Plan until 2019;
- Property Management Strategy until 2034;
- as well as obtaining the approval of the Management Plan as a comprehensive document that contains all the necessary steps to manage the property by the Coordinating Committee, consideration and appointment of officials responsible for the property.

4b. Preservation and study

1. Study of the settlement, its archaeological and architectural monuments, including the use of modern methods (aerospace, geophysical, radar, etc.). The use of new approaches, technologies, multichannel systems of reconnaissance by magnetometer, GPS and other methods of non-destructive investigation of the property is primarily directed to the use of this potential as a management tool, and the disclosure of the quantitative characteristic of archaeological sites, and the precise targeting of archaeological research.

All this is included in the developed and approved strategy of the research and preservation of the archaeological integrity of the site and the program presented in Appendix 3. The strategy and the program have put forward the objectives of the research program, specific areas and objects, and other research tasks aimed at the specification of the history of the territory and further strengthening of its Outstanding Universal Value.

The history of the preservation of the Bolgar ancient settlement dates back to the second half of the XVII century when the Tsar Fedor Alekseyevich (1661-1682) commissioned the description of stone buildings and other ruins. Peter I visited the Bolgar ancient settlement in 1722 and issued a decree on the preservation of stone constructions. It was the first state normative act on preservation of heritage in Russia. It was not by chance that Bolgar together with the Kazan Kremlin was taken under state protection in 1959, the first in Tatarstan. Bolgar historical-architectural museum was organized in 1962 and the Bolgar historical-architectural reserve was established in 1969, and has been the Bolgar historical-architectural museum-reserve since 2000.

In 1969 the state act approved the boundaries of the protection zones and regimes of management of the Bolgar reserve territories (see the map: Zone A). Regimes of the Bolgar complex “buffer zones” were developed and approved in 2012. The boundaries of the property of the Bolgar historical-archaeological complex (Zone A) have been redefined when working on the nomination dossier and as a result of the UNESCO ICOMOS Advisory Mission in 2013. The neighbouring island, where archaeological finds of the Bolgar Pre-Mongolian period were discovered, has been included into the territory of the nominated property. The buffer zone has been significantly increased to the north by including the



water zone of the Kuybyshev reservoir and picturesque natural complexes located close to the shoreline of the high right bank of the Volga River covered by forest.

The buffer zone consists of four sub-zones differentiated by their morphological natural characteristics and land use, taking into consideration the history of the city development:

B – the territory directly bordering the ramparts of the Bolgar ancient settlement;

C – undeveloped sites outside the ramparts of the Bolgar ancient settlement;

D – the territory of the Bolgar town settlement and the village settlement “Privolzhskiy”;

E – natural landscape sub-zone (forest, the littoral zone, islands of the Kuybyshev reservoir);

F – the water zone of the Kuybyshev reservoir and the “Spasskiy” nature reserve;

FI – the water zone within the “Spasskiy” nature reserve.

The sub-zones have been marked out to differentiate the land use and management regimes, which are in line with regimes and regulations enforced by modern national city-building and monument protection legislation.

All together these sub-zones form one buffer zone limited in the north by the berm edge of the high right bank of the Volga (the water zone of the Kuybyshev reservoir from “Dolgaya Polyana” manor, which is the regional monument, to the memorial complex in the Syukeevo village). In the east its boundary goes along the water zone of the Kuybyshev reservoir along the east boundaries of islands to the foreland on the left bank of the Volga, in the south along the relief of the forested bank of the Volga – the Kuybyshev reservoir, in the east along the boundary of the village settlement “Privolzhskiy” along the west edge of the woods, in the south – along the existing highway, in the south and the west – along the boundaries of the Bolgar town settlement. In the west – along the shoreline to the north foreland which is the point of the panoramic view of the ancient settlement from the Volga. In the west the point of the panoramic view is connected with intersection of the shoreline and the historical boundary of “Dolgaya Polyana” manor.

The boundaries have been set up on the basis of the landscape-visual analysis and the sub-zone boundaries – on the basis of morphological, landscape and historical-city-building analysis.

The buffer zone which covers 12 010 hectares includes the water zone of the Kuybyshev reservoir and picturesque islands formed by flooding of the Kuybyshev reservoir.

30 sites out of the 70 stone structures known in the XVIII century have been preserved and investigated. Concerning the remaining parts there is a policy primarily aimed at the study of the unknown pages of history of the site.

The program of development envisages the conversion of Bolgar to the subject of the use of advanced non-destructive archaeological and conservation methods, which was positively evaluated by ICOMOS experts.

Longstanding researches on the Bolgar historical archaeological complex territory revealed the preeminent value of occupation layers which contain sufficient and unique facts of its history. During longstanding researches, which started 1864, no more than 5 % of the monument territory has been explored. The other part of the site represents authentic entity.

The integrity of the Bolgar historical and archaeological complex is defined by the good condition of an archaeological and occupation layer which is observed on the territory of the nominated property. The complex is a unique source of information about the history



of Eastern Europe. Bolgar's occupation layers reflect the material culture and dynamics of its development not only in its region, but also in the adjacent territories which had close links with this significant and important center of political power and spiritual attraction during many centuries.

The authentic occupation layers of the Complex reflect the condition of its formation during the Middle Ages and show all monument peculiarities and features of topography as well as functional features of any area. It remained without changes and contains the objects data, planigraphy, industrial objects and some constructions, many of which cannot be seen now, but remain under the earth.

Modern researches focused on studying relevant issues of the development of the site and on the peculiarities of its formation including changes and influence of the climate, as well as on the strategy of environmental development by humanity. The complex of inter-disciplinary methods based on a broad use of nondestructive research methods increases the quality and results of archaeological researches. The combination of these techniques for study of cultural layers develops understanding of authenticity and integrity of the nominated property, and reveals new aspects of knowledge of its Outstanding Universal Value. The program of archaeological researches developed till 2019 and aimed at ensuring integrity of the occupation layers creates conditions for the formation of a new stage in understanding the role and place of the complex in the world culture.

Preservation, conservation and museification of archaeological heritage in conditions of drastic variation of temperature, and a harsh climate involves the use of various methods of protection of the archaeological cultural layer, glazing of a number of facilities, the use of underground space with museification of archaeological objects, tourist display not only of the individual objects (the Mosque, the Khan's Palace, the public bathhouses, tombs, kilns), but also of the medieval town planning and architectural topography (the city market, streets, residential buildings etc.).

An important part of the management which began recently was the creation of the topography of structures through "two-dimensional restoration" without a physical connection to the original monument.

A good solution was preservation of pottery kilns, and the remains of public stone baths by protective covers. These good examples are included in the set of security measures and are a promising area of the management plan. Examples of the conservation of the mosque and the east mausoleum which were carried out in the 1950-70's have become a landmark in the preservation of monuments of Bolgar and at the same time they mark the complex as a place of use of different methods that are interpreted at the present time in most European countries as a model. ICOMOS emphasizes this approach, so the management plan provides a more structured approach to the conservation of the stone remains in the climatic conditions of northern Eurasia, with a reduction of conservation masonry, and using other modern techniques.

Taking into consideration necessity of preservation of the cultural landscape, the management plan has defines the measures of studying the natural heritage of the complex



and the buffer zone, the remaining sections of the steppe, forest, which can be considered as an analogue of the primary forests of the historical Bolgar-Tatar time (X - XV cc.), a combination of steppe and forest-steppe landscapes.

This approach allows to consider the entire territory of the object as a single cultural landscape complex, including archaeological and architectural monuments of the Imenkovo (V - VII centuries), Bolgar and the Golden Horde - X - XV cc. periods, and historical stratifications related to the existence of an Orthodox monastery of the XVIII c., a preserved historic village of the XVIII-XX centuries, natural monuments, and the coastal landscape of the Volga.

The specific objective of the management plan that requires a sensitive, careful and cautious approach is the development of the complex as a place of worship, as a sacred, important spiritual centre for Muslims, attracting a large number of pilgrims from all over Russia and the Tatar diaspora around the world.

The management plan has highlighted the huge potential of the non-excavated archaeological remains, increasing the boundaries of the site and the buffer zone, the expansion of already used areas by GIS administrators of the territory, completion of the construction outside the boundaries of the archive and depository for the major archaeological materials, and the dismountable camp for pilgrims moved outside the boundaries of the site. These and the above actions are provided with budgetary resources. In an effort to achieve a balance between the desire to implement the developed and approved plan and the desire to keep up with time, a revised plan for 2014-19 was prepared and approved.

4c. Archeological excavations management

Archeological study of the Bolgar ancient settlement has been carried out for 150 years and has a number of stages of development on the background of large historical epochs changing one another:

– pre-revolutionary period – from first investigations of separate monuments to the beginning of scientific systematic research of archeological and architectural complexes of the ancient settlement by the Society of Archeology, History and Ethnography by the Imperial Kazan University;

– the Soviet period – from large-scale protection-rescue and scientific-research works of the joint Bolgar archeological expedition of the Institute of Archeology of the Academy of Sciences of the USSR, the Institute of Language, Literature and History of the Kazan branch of the Soviet Academy of Sciences, Kazan State University, which was supervised by A.P. Smirnov, to the establishment of the Bolgar museum-reserve;

– modern period – careful archeological research of the ancient settlement mainly by non-destructive methods including natural sciences technologies and methods, aerial mapping and processing the space satellites information by researchers from a number of organizations and scientific institutions – the archeological service of the Bolgar museum-reserve, Specialized Centre of Studies of Bolgar civilization, scientists from Tatarstan Institute of Archeology, specialists from leading scientific academic and university centres



of Russia and abroad who are invited to the expeditions, specialists from the Tatarstan Ministry of Culture.

Methods used in Russian archeology for studying settlement monuments and necropolis of the central Russia extended and replenished in the result of long term studies of the Bolgar ancient settlement are the basis for the scientific-technical provision of the research of the Bolgar architectural-archeological complexe. Among most important of them is the carefully developed stratigraphical scale of the monument related to historical stages of the life of the ancient settlement and different economic periods of its life. Its use makes it possible to carry out research of separate objects according to their reference to concrete layers and horizons while obtaining the general picture of the development of the town during the concrete historical period.

The method of statistical study of numerous ceramic material, which permitted to introduce numerous fragments of pottery and stock moldings into the scientific circulation and to characterize dynamics of establishment and development of the Bolgar pottery crafts also proved to be rather helpful. Singling out ethnic-cultural groups of Bolgar dishes has become further development of this method that made it possible for researchers to touch questions of studying ethnic and territorial components of population of the town of Bolgar and the Volga Bulgaria in the whole.

Modern research oriented at investigation of concrete important questions of the monument development and peculiarities of its formation taking into consideration the climatic changes and influence as well as human strategies of using the environment provide succession in using these methods, creatively complementing and improving them.

Modern research programmes pay special attention to implementation of predominantly non-destructive methods including technologies and methods used in natural sciences, aerial mapping and processing of space satellite information. Widely introduced are modern methods of exact field fixation, development and use of new dating methods of cultural layers, objects and separate artifacts.

The following research methods should be mentioned among those currently used on the Bolgar ancient settlement:

- historical-archeological;
- aerospace distance earth probing;
- geophysical;
- chemical-technological;
- soil - palynological;
- geomorphological;
- antropogenetic;
- archeozoological;
- geoinformation (GIS, 3Dmodelling, etc.).

This complex of methods based on interdisciplinary approach and wide use of non-destructive research methods significantly raises the quality and results of archeological studies.

Aerospace investigations are used in particular for revealing new architectural



monumental objects and for studies of a monument's planning structure (geo-, aerospace and magnetic reconnaissance).

Widely used are geophysical methods which do not destroy the cultural layer and make it possible to localize architectural and industrial facilities (geo-radiolocation).

Introduction of technologies of an archeological object computer mapping enables fixing the massive material on the excavation site with the use of highly accurate geodesic equipment.

Development of database management systems and geo-information systems in archeology give possibility not only to fix the spatial layout of archeological findings but also to forecast the location of monuments on the territories not studied yet.

Combination of these methods for studying the cultural layers broadens the understanding of integrity and authenticity of the property, revealing new sides of knowledge about its Outstanding Universal Value.

The archeological research programme developed till 2019 and aimed at provision of cultural layer integrity creates conditions for formation of a new stage in understanding the role and place of the Complex in the world culture.

The Bolgar museum-reserve has its own full-time archeologist. Together with specialists from the Centre of Studies of Bolgar civilization he carries out constant monitoring of the condition of archeological objects in the Bolgar ancient settlement, implementation of any kind of protection, rescue, scientific and other kinds of work at the heritage property and is responsible for integrity of the cultural layer and the complex of archeological monuments following the museum and protection legislation of Tatarstan, Russian Federation and requirements of international conventions.

He is responsible for registration and description of the condition of the ancient settlement, monitoring of any ground excavation actions within the heritage property and bordering land plots. To protect the Outstanding Universal Value, any activity carried out on the ancient settlement monuments and its protection zone is registered by documents, then studied and analyzed. There is an obligatory requirement of carrying out consultations with the Centre of Studies of Bolgar civilization, archeologists from the Institute of Archeology of Tatarstan Academy of Sciences and the Kazan federal University who serve as experts.

Any kinds of work such as protective-rescue, scientific and others must get the approval of the Advisory Committee of the property represented by the Regional Fund of Revival of Historical and Cultural Monuments of Tatarstan and its International Scientific-Advisory Expert council as well as by specialists from the Tatarstan Ministry of culture. Fulfillment of these requirements provides high scientific-methodological level of works in conservation, preservation and musefication of archeological monuments and also supports high quality of use of archeological resources of the territory. The Regional Fund, the Tatarstan Ministry of Culture and Academy of Science at corresponding levels of management are responsible for following international and Russian requirements concerning archeological research including fulfillment of liabilities of the archeological service of the Bolgar museum-reserve. Both domestic specialists and employees of international specialized organizations including ICOMOS are invited as independent



experts with the aim of considering difficult questions of preservation of archeological monuments, implementation of this or that technology and modern research techniques.

In addition to the museum archeologist and specialists from the Centre of Studies of Bolgar civilization, the control of carrying research during the summer field season is carried out by scientists from the Institute of Archeology of Tatarstan Academy of Sciences and the Kazan federal University. These specialists are not legally responsible for monitoring of the archeological resource, but according to Russian protection legislation and agreement with the Bolgar museum-reserve serve as an archeological contractor of carrying out all kinds of work at corresponding archeological complexes. This work can include both the preliminary evaluation of the archeological potential of the territory, finding the objects and monitoring the condition of the monument under research during the whole period of its study.

Scientific reports and descriptions, results of research and archives related to the investigation of the Bolgar complex are located in three sites – in the Bolgar museum-reserve itself, the archives of the Institute of Archeology of Tatarstan Academy of Sciences and the department of field work of the Institute of Archeology of Russian Academy of Sciences which causes certain difficulties in studying archive documents. The management plan envisages the work on finding, systematizing and joining all archeological material into one storage in the premises of the Bolgar museum-reserve. The collected materials must be catalogued, reliably kept and be available when needed both for specialists and the community.

A special role in the plan of management of archeological resources is given to the International archeological stationary office of the Institute of Archeology of Tatarstan Academy of Sciences established in Bolgar, which will function as a scientific and social institution, a polygon for attracting specialists in research and preservation of archeological heritage, for scientific discussions, independent expert work and the so-called “Centre of Excellence” for broad international cooperation and implementation of educational projects and programmes. It has all necessary conditions for holding scientific conference and symposiums, workshops and students’ internships.

An important part of the plan is establishment of experimental archeological research laboratory.

Data obtained during archeological excavations and work accompanying them make it possible to carry out substantial research in the sphere of reconstruction of production and technological processes and objects, recreation of historically true copies and images of things, objects and people using methods of graphic and sculptural reconstruction and technical construction. Results of this research can serve for popularization of achievements of the Bolgar civilization of the Bolgar architectural-archeological complex in the museum sphere, for use of obtained products and skills in interactive work of the museum-reserve.

Further development and implementation of measures on high quality management of archeological resources is connected with increasing efficiency and coordination of work of all participants implementing the Management Plan, members of the archeological community – from the archeological service of the museum-reserve to federal institutions



represented by Russian Academy of Sciences and Ministry of Culture and international organizations.

The current and short-term tasks of the plan are as follows:

Issues of improvement of qualification and financial provision of the archeological service of the museum-reserve and the Centre of Studies of Bolgar civilization;

Formation of the system of information exchange with museum, scientific and educational centres – participants of the programme on archeological research of the heritage property with the aim of exchange of advanced experience, modern technologies and results of studies;

Creation of united database and the archeological archive of the Bolgar ancient settlement.

4d. Visitor management and presentation

Due to the large increase in the number of tourists and pilgrims in particular, a Special programme has been adopted to maintain the authenticity and integrity of the nominated property. Since 2010 the White Mosque, the Bread Museum, the Monument commemorating the adoption of Islam, the Bolgar Museum of Civilization combined with the River Station and the center of tourists' reception, and a number of other development projects, have been built aimed at preventing the negative impact of the large number of tourists and pilgrims on the complex. This has significantly reduced the load on the ancient settlement, and its architectural and archaeological monuments, especially during the annual celebration of the adoption of Islam anniversary, when the number of visitors and pilgrims reaches 50 – 60,000 people. For pilgrims there have been organized such visiting routes of the monuments that do not harm the landscape characteristics of the complex, its integrity and authenticity.

Solving the problem of the Islamic spirituality revival, Bolgar has become one of the main centres of pilgrimage for Muslims of Russia and the Tatar diaspora around the world. In fact, Bolgar has gained importance as the interregional cultural center of Russian Muslims and an area of international cooperation. For visitors it will actually be the only Russian museum-reserve representing the history of Islam in the Russian Federation and the Muslim culture as a part of the Russian civilization.

An important part of the property management is the preservation of the objects and the creation of museums to promote and present the object. The development strategy of the museum and tourist activities is aimed at the broader presentation of the historical, cultural and spiritual potential of Bolgar, its heritage diversity, the adoption of Islam, its development as a historic center of Russia's Muslim culture, the tolerant coexistence with the Orthodox culture, and the intersection of cultures and civilizations. A major museum exhibition has been created, representing all the highlights of the history and development of the Bolgar-Tatar civilization of the ancient city. Several museum exhibitions showing the essential aspects of its medieval and modern history have been created, both in the territory of the museum and beyond it. These exhibitions allow to increase the number of tourists visiting the museum, to avoid undue stress on some objects, and to form a



diverse tourist offer. The extension of modern methods of museum display and the use of multimedia tools and technologies are provided as well.

In order to maximize the “museum-exhibition” effect the management plan provides that the sightseers, tourists and pilgrims will be able to observe not only the turning of archaeological sites into museums, but also “real” excavation. This not only gives them new information, but also enhances the sense of belonging to their history, and gives an idea about the process of archaeological research and the work of archaeologists. For schoolchildren and students the visiting of these monuments is introduced into their history lessons, archaeological practice, and voluntary movement to give the concrete idea of obtaining information on the ancient history of the region and the importance of archaeological sites.

Solving the problems of the presentation and promotion of the Bolgarian complex monuments, the organization of the following types of tourism has been predetermined:

- Cultural tourism;
- Pilgrim tourism;
- Eco-tourism;
- Event tourism;
- Research and congress tourism.

The organization programmes of children’s tourism, cultural and educational campaigns raising the educational level of young people, and the development of a youth regional history movement are being formed as well. These programmes are closely connected with the issues of schooling and patriotic education.

A professional tourism product of the Museum-reserve is being formed and the organization of tourist and excursion services is being provided in collaboration with tour operators in the domestic and international tourism markets. Information resources (Internet software, booklets and guides, hotel booking system, proper routes) are being improved, which will allow the Bolgar museum-reserve take part in tourism fairs, including international ones.

An important part of the organization process is the provision of tourist services by the museum’s own transport. The proper bus fleet provides services to elderly people and small groups of specialized tourists, who are very important for the implementation of programmes of scientific and cultural tourism, with tourist services. The availability of water transport - cutters for small groups of tourists - plays a very important role in the Bolgar Museum. Due to the possible increase of the flow of visitors, limiting the access of private vehicles to the territory of the Complex and in order to avoid the degradation of the object, other transportation systems are presented in the management plan.

The Visitors’ centre performing informative, organization and service functions should become the most important component of the tourist structure. The Centre will allow a tourist to get the information about all the components of the regional tourism product (museums and other attractions, hotels, restaurants, entertainment, crafts, transportation, etc.), informative and regional literature, tourist maps, as well as video and audio recordings, and souvenir CDs, etc. It will be also possible to make a reservation in the hotels and other



accommodation both in Bolgar and further routes, to book tours and transport.

Different types of tourist accommodation facilities are being formed in Bolgar (hotels, motels, private homes). Currently, a prefabricated encampment has been installed outside the nominated property which may hold up to 3000 people during the celebration of the adoption of Islam.

In implementing the planned volume of construction for tourists, the following tourist offer will be provided:

- tour visiting of Bolgar ancient settlement;
- accommodation in one of the tourist hotels
- a wide range of services related to the use of the potential of the cultural and natural heritage of Bolgar and its entourage.

These include:

Catering: one of the most important parts of the tourist industry is the public catering. Fast food catering is located on the territory: buffet, vending machines, self-service cafes, a coffee shop - with a limited set of dishes. Restaurants and the cafes are located outside the Complex in hotels, in the Bread Museum, and in the building of the River Station;

Retail sales: The most important and attractive point of the tourist trade is the purchase of products made here. This purchase is a part of the complex of tourist experiences. The work on the creation of the proper souvenir product and symbolism is being managed in the museum-reserve. At present, probably the most popular souvenirs are ceramic figures in the form of reduced copies of architectural structures. Another type of the high-demand specialized product is special informational literature about the museum-reserve (booklets, brochures of tourist attractions, guides to the museum objects).

The following items are also presented at the museum-reserve:

- a wide range of handicraft produced on-site at the craft workshops;
- paintings, drawings and decorative art works created by contemporary artists (original works and reproductions);
- imitations (replicas) of historical objects represented on the museum displays;
- postcards, audio and video tapes, CD-ROM discs, which reproduce the specific historical and cultural heritage of Bolgar.

It should be noted that in summer a temporary personnel increase of the museum-reserve is required in order to ensure full tourist service. This involves the creation of employment in the town and other settlements of Spasskiy region (due to the organization of restoration and construction work, the expansion of tourist services, etc.) Taking this fact into account, we can speak about the role of the Museum as a special “city-forming” institution.

In order to prevent the possible degradation of archaeological heritage, architectural constructions and the wider area of the nominated property due to the predicted increase in tourists and pilgrims, the Management plan contains a strategy providing for the distribution of tourist streams and their placement in infrastructure objects, located outside the complex.



4e. Involvement of local people and community

One of the main objectives of the Management Plan has become to determine the forms of involvement of the population of cities and regions of the Republic, Tatars living in Russian regions and in the world, with the preservation, conservation and museification of the objects of the Complex. At the end of each year, since 2010 The Register of Philanthropists, who channel their funds to Bolgar preservation, has been published. Three volumes, which include more than 22 thousand names of benefactors, have been already published.

The management system of the nominated property involves the active participation of the local population. It has become very important to set a cooperation policy with the owners of private residences. In the southern and eastern part of the historical village the low-value residential development, mainly of the Soviet period, has been preserved. That is why, primarily, the buy-out of private residences was organized and comfortable apartments in the houses built outside the Complex were provided. After that the prohibition on the construction of residential buildings using modern construction materials and exceeding the traditional height of residential buildings has been imposed.

As to the residential buildings and structures that are in personal ownership or situated in the western part of the historic village, and to a large extent help to preserve the historic character of the XIX - early XX centuries, it is assumed that the rural development will be preserved and partially used as the Ethnographic Museum and for the development of tourist infrastructure. The historical houses will be renovated and can be used as a museum display of peasant farmstead items. This will give more information about the history of this place and will make the archaeological displays and exhibits more interesting and vivid. Workshops will be located in residential homes, where traditional crafts and production will be on display (weaving, embroidery, clothing, footwear, pottery craft, etc.) and where visitors can buy a souvenir handiwork they like.

The economic museum being widely spread in the world museum practice, but until recently insufficiently organized in the Russian Federation is being established. The Museum-Reserve, which expansion is in short-term and long-term plan, will employ some villagers who will work there and also participate actively in recreating a way of life and attracting tourists. This plan is implemented with the consent of the villagers and with an active aid of municipality. Discussion with the villagers who want to see the village attractive to tourists and having economic potential, who agree to use some houses and parts of them altered as expositions of the ecological museum, are already carried out at the level of local bodies of municipal authority. These discussions will be kept on and the development of the ecological museum within the work with locals and use of their potential will be reflected in long-term plans.

Houses - family cafes will become an important addition, where visitors can stop and have a snack (Tatar or Russian dishes), try a selection of pastries, sweets and drinks. Some homes are supposed to be reequipped into small hotels. In some houses the conditions to rent premises for overnight tourists during the peak period will be provided.

The farm owners must maintain the historical appearance of the buildings. It is prohibited to use modern construction materials in the external appearance of the houses,



or to build constructions standing out by their height and colour. 53 families have already moved to new houses and it is planned to relocate another 63 families, mostly from the slum dwellings that do not represent any historical and cultural value in Bolgar. They will be relocated to new apartments with all amenities in the city of Bolgar

It is important to emphasize that the majority of the Museum staff is represented by local people, mostly with higher and vocational education. There are also employees with scientific degrees in the staff, for example, the leaders of the archaeological service, Ph.D. Jamil Moukhametshin and Ph.D. Renat Valiev. Thus, the museum-reserve plays an important role in the employment of the local workforce. At the same time, some experts are invited from Kazan and other research centers (approximately 20 leading experts) to organize the museum and research. They share their experience, help to train local people to work in the museum-reserve.

The ongoing government measures regarding the active involvement of the local population to serve tourists and pilgrims; the huge and effective work of the Foundation “the Revival of historical and cultural monuments of the Republic of Tatarstan” in the involvement of the inhabitants of the Republic, the Russian Federation and the Tatar communities living in various countries all around the world, as well as business structures, industrial and commercial enterprises, and finally the Management Plan, all enable the protection of Outstanding Universal Value, and effectively preserve, museificate and use the material and spiritual heritage of the Complex.

The introduction of principles of dialogue and co-residence; the promotion of the system of traditions and values to culture, education and science, to formation of policy of the federal, regional and local power bodies is an important part of the management plan. It aims at implementation of measures proposed by the UN in 2010 on bringing closer and improvement of incorrect cultural values, stereotypes and viewpoints.

Process of this section Management Plan and approaches of Coordinating Committee to interact with local community mean that understanding of stockholders represented by federal, republican and local bodies, Coordinating Committee, local community, the Bolgar Complex in the property of the Ministry of Culture of RT, help to protect the Heritage Property. The work carried out between the stockholders gives opportunities to exchange information, enhance commitment of the stockholders, take into account the gender aspects under community responsibility and acquire knowledge, consent and support of those who will protect and enhance importance of the Bolgar Complex, its integrity and authenticity

Taking into consideration the spiritual and religious significance of Bolgar and the fact that according to the ICOMOS and ICCROM documents the living religious heritage has certain characteristics differentiating it from others forms of heritage, and also that by the UNESCO Programme sacred places “ are really the most ancient protected territories on the planet... and have vital importance for preservation of cultural diversity for future generations”, active participation of religious communities in the preservation and presentation of the spirit of the Bolgar site, its life and social and spiritual nature is an important part of the plan. This part is completely based on the Nara Document on authenticity, and related to the World Heritage Convention and the Quebec Declaration on preservation of the spirit of place adopted by the 16th General Assembly of ICOMOS in 2008.



The Bolgar complex is in full compliance with the UNESCO and ICOMOS documents and is considered as “the sacred place covering the territory of special and spiritual importance for people and communities”. The legislative body of the Republic, the State Council of Tatarstan, has passed a decision to include May 21 into the List of Holidays and Commemorative Dates as the Day of Official Adoption of Islam by the Volga Bolgaria which is celebrated every year. To celebrate this holiday, the Tatarstan President issues decrees, organization committees are established and by its decrees the Tatarstan government develops and approves management measures on holding this solemn event.

At the level of all legislative, executive and municipal bodies in the Russian Federation and Tatarstan, there is a firm conviction that existing religious and sacred places need special protection and management, which take into consideration their original spiritual nature as a key factor of their preservation, and which cannot be sustainable without profound consultations with corresponding interested parties.

The main principles used when attracting religious communities of Muslim and Orthodox Christian organizations, and in dialogue with them, the local population and other communities in the matter of preservation, museification and promotion of the Bolgar complex is an understanding of the permanent character of the sacred heritage of Bolgar capable of protecting its authenticity and integrity, its spiritual heritage and knowledge of our common history.

The management plan also envisages actions in maintaining the Complex as a living heritage underlining its role as a place of attraction for Muslim pilgrims. An Islamic Centre is being established in the White Mosque as a bearer of Bolgar cultural and religious potential, and the sustainable management of this property, and the development and introduction of complex and interactive educational programmes is implemented.

The Islamic centre provides both to local population and communities and pilgrims from other regions of Russian Federation and the Tatar diaspora from all over the world evident resources: different kinds of religious, spiritual ceremonial practices on the basis of Islamic faith; educational resources as a religious high educational facility with the function of organizing additional vocational religious education; training students to become tour guides and lecturers for giving pilgrims tours round the cult buildings (The Memorial Sign, The Cathedral Mosque, the Smaller Minaret and the Khan’s Shrine, the Sakhabs’ Memorial, etc.); use of the conference-room for discussing theological problems of Islam, etc.

The Islamic centre organizes and coordinates pilgrimage both everyday and during the holidays such as the Birthday of Prophet Muhhamad, the Day of Adoption of Islam by Volga Bolgaria, Urasa-bayram, Kurban-bayram and others. Koran will be read all day round in the Memorial Sign and work will be started to establish the Museum of the Koran as the supreme spiritual phenomenon of humankind.

It will store collected all over the Islamic world: northern Africa, Iran, India and China, Western and Eastern Europe, ancient and modern printed, and also handwritten editions of The Holy Book of Muslims – Koran, other Islamic rare books with put on them sayings from Koran. In the museum also will be available a library with scientific and Islamic literature, Arabic calligraphy, Koran translations, copies of the Koran donated to the Bolgar museum, the White Mosque and the Memorial Sign and other interesting and significant materials.

Great part of the exposition in the museum will be devoted to history of dissemination and study of the handwritten Korans in the Tatar community. With the adoption of Islam



by Volga Bolgars in 922 till the change of the Arabic script of the Tatar language (1927) , despite the widespread printing in the XIX century, the tradition of making handwritten copies of Koran of Tatars was not interrupted.

Museum exhibition will present the history of creation and functioning of handwritten Korans, show the features of text decorations and books that make these manuscripts recognizable as made by Tatars. Submitted manuscripts in the museum demonstrate continuity of Tatar and common Islamic traditions in creating manuscripts of the Koran.

The Islamic centre is an important social institution providing possibility for social interaction and following development of friendly relations.

The Islamic centre continues traditions of the educational institution well- known in Volga Bolgaria – the “Mukhamed-Bakiriya” university (dar al-ulyum) founded about 1080 by a famous historian and the chief judge Yakub ibn Nugman, the author of the “History of Bolgaria”. History, theology, literature, eloquence, poetry, astronomy, medicine and other sciences were taught here. Not only local shakirds but also students from the Arabic East, Khoresm, Iran and even from far way Spain studied here. According to record of Abu Khamid al-Garnati he brought his son to study here in 1135.

Taking into consideration that a significant part of the population in the Spassk region of the republic are Russians, the culture of Russian Orthodoxy exists and actively develops as a tradition and value orientation in the town settlement and neighbouring villages. The plan presupposes the support of Saint Abraham’s church located in the Bolgar town settlement. This promotes inter-confessional dialogue and the exchange of knowledge among all communities taking part in the preservation of our common heritage.

An important aspect of the plan is active participation of scientists, scientific workers, doctoral students and students for their scientific research, preparing their books and other scientific products, pursuing new methods including non-destructive ones, holding conferences, workshops, etc.

Scholars have written and published six volumes dedicated to study of Bolgar, five volumes of «TARTARICA», «BOLGARICA», «The Great Bolgar» atlases and more than 100 books on the history of Bolgar. It is planned to organize the IV Archaeological Congress of the Russian Federation in Bolgar in 2014. There is a separate plan for the further publication of materials, and implementation of measures on promotion of the property, attracting not only scientists from Tatarstan, Russia, Ukraine and Bolgaria but also from other countries.

An important management action is the attraction of schoolchildren, students and volunteers not only from neighbouring towns such as Kazan, Chistopol, Ulyanovsk, Tolyatti and others but also from other countries as international volunteers of the Summer Archaeological School as well as the modernization of university educational programmes to incorporate the popularization and explanation of principles of world and national heritage preservation.

4f. Resource management

The resources of the Bolgar State Historical and Architectural Museum-Reserve include archaeological, numismatic, ethnographic items, painting and sculpture works, arts and crafts, photographs, and documents. As of January 1, 2013 the number of exhibits



of the main collection contains more than 102 thousand items, including more than 65 000 archaeological items, more than 14 000 numismatic items, 1500 ethnographic items, more than 100 arts and crafts exhibits, more than 140 paintings, more than 250 graphics, 13 sculptures, more than 19 000 documents and others. Some finds from the territory of the reserve are kept in the State Historical Museum (Moscow), the State Hermitage Museum (St. Petersburg), the National Museum of the Republic of Tatarstan (Kazan), and the National Museum of Finland (Helsinki).

The museum fulfills the following functions: identifying, collecting, recording, storage, conservation, study, publication of museum items and collections, and access to them.

The main objective for the next few years is the continuation of the formation of the museum collection, and giving this process systematic and scientifically grounded character.

The replenishment of the museum funds and collections is carried out both with budgetary and non-budgetary funds, including more effective work of the museums with private persons and legal bodies to donate collections and individual items to museums.

The top priorities in the preservation of museum items and collections are the following:

- the development and introduction of a unified information system for monitoring the condition and the use of museum items and collections;
- the systematic formation of inventory databases, and the maintenance of the updated data in consistent state;
- the development and introduction of a security and accounting marking system of museum items, and creation of electronic copies of the basic accounting records of the museum;
- the development and introduction of modern safety providing systems (monitoring and provision of temperature- humidity and light regimes, monitoring and provision of microbiological and entomological safety), anti-terrorist, anti-criminal and fire safety;
- the development of various security systems in the museum;
- the development of anti-crisis plans and instructions on how to act in case of emergency.

The Museum fund provides for methodological support of the work on accounting and storage of the collected museum items and collections. In the current context, the preservation of museum collections requires the efficient combination of the latest research methods, conservation and restoration. Restoration can not only save a monument or object, but also identify its historical, cultural and artistic value.

The development priorities in the field of conservation and restoration of museum items are the following:

- Training of restoration specialists (higher professional education, further training, in-service training).
- Technological equipment of restoration departments.
- The research support of the restoration of museum items.



- Depository creation.
- The development of preventive conservation of cultural values, which often allows one to avoid restoration interventions.

5. SYSTEM OF RISK READINESS AND MANAGEMENT

Advance planning and readiness for various kinds of hazards are necessary aspects of the Bolgar complex management plan to provide a high security level for the nominated property concerning the following hazards:

Landslides and geological faults

Taking into consideration that the length of one side of the nominated property is located on the bank of the Volga, and is thus exposed to the impact of seasonal water level changes, spring filling, and the rise and discharge of water in the Kuybyshev reservoir (the water rises up to 5.4 metres and higher and reaches the highest mark of 54.60 metres), it is very important to carry out landslide prevention actions. In addition, there are the Jerusalem ravine and smaller ravines on the territory of the complex. Much attention is given to this problem too.

During the period of exploitation of the Kuybyshev reservoir (starting from 1957), the bank line underwent considerable erosion and the retreat of the bank reached 90-140 metres. Currently the bank line territory of the Bolgar complex, and living and household construction of the east suburb of the Bolgar settlement are both in the erosion zone, which calls for protective bank fortifying engineering measures.

In the north part of the ancient settlement is found the “The Red Chamber”, a monument of Bolgar architecture of the XIV century. This unique building was carefully studied by a famous scientist – archeologist A.P. Smirnov - in the 1960s. With the aim of preservation of the historical heritage, the monument underwent conservation after having been studied in detail. Nevertheless its location near the water boundary causes its slow destruction. Annual changes in the water level of the Kuybyshev reservoir cause scouring of the bank line of the Bolgar ancient settlement and also slowly destroy the cultural layers. It is important to mention that the North and East Mausoleums, the Cathedral Mosque and others are located very close to the bank (in 15 metres). These are unique architectural monuments of Bolgar and the Golden Horde culture, the only in Russia and the northernmost monuments of Muslim medieval architecture in the world.

Landslide prevention and bank fortification works were carried out in the 1950s, with especially significant work between 2009-2013. The total length of the bank fortification sector is about 1 000 metres according to the land plot choice. The project presupposed bank fortification works on the part of the bank exposed to the worst erosion threatening the Bolgar historical-architectural museum-reserve. It is about 560 metres long.

Bank erosion downstream from the Bolgar complex is currently negligible, and taking



this into consideration as well as the absence of living houses near the bank on this part, the first stage does not plan any bank fortification works here. Further monitoring and examination will reveal if they are necessary.

Regional and local authorities consider the problem of landslides and geological faults to be a large scale issue and are responsible for monitoring and control of the situation at the nominated property. In case of need it is planned to develop plans and corresponding feasibility studies with a solution of financial questions.

Fire safety

Planning of action in case of fire at the Bolgar complex is very important. Russian and Tatarstan legislation provide protection for architectural monuments, museums and the buildings of the Museum-reserve: archaeological and restoration offices as well as living houses in the settlement, which are private property.

The fire brigade and the emergency department of the Tatarstan Emergencies Ministry in Spassk region are law enforcement bodies, managing actions in case of risk of fire, and inspectors of high level fire safety measures ensure that their fire safety certificate corresponds to modern requirements.

Fire extinguishing is organized by the Tatarstan Emergencies Ministry and its local department. The latter carries out any necessary rescue measures in the complex. The fire brigade works around the clock and takes into consideration peculiarities of rescue operations at monuments, museums and museum collection facilities.

There is an approved plan of fire safety measures for the museum-reserve as a whole, and the buildings of museums, collections/depositories, mosques and the archaeological-restoration office have their local fire extinguishing plans. All employees of the museum-reserve, the river port combined with the museum, the mosque and the archaeological-restoration office are trained at special courses and are issued certificates. The fire department inspects buildings in the complex twice a year and writes instructions on implementation of fire safety measures. The fire department is well aware of the value of archaeological artifacts, monument constructions, documentary archive materials and books and has a special procedure for preventing their incineration and for control of epidemiological diseases.

All facilities are equipped with fire- and burglar alarms connected to the separate place of the security console and dispatch centre. Additionally the following fire safety measures are envisaged at the facilities:

- collection storage: gas fire extinguishers in the storage building on the ground floor.
- the River Port with the function of a museum in the town of Bolgar: special technical conditions were developed due to construction scheme of the building. There are fire sprinklers, water-based fire fighting, and powder fire-fighting systems in switchgear rooms.
- the mosque in Bolgar: water-based fire fighting systems, powder fire fighting systems in switchgear rooms. Water removal in the ancient settlement is carried



out by making plans of the territory as by arranging water discharge chutes. Storm drains from the River Port go to the water treatment plants.

The museum-reserve, the mosque and other buildings are under jurisdiction of the department of labour and health protection of the Tatarstan Ministry of Culture, the Tatarstan Muslims Religious Board, Spassk region municipality which regularly carry out fire drills.

Vandalism, larceny and unintentional damage

The prevention of vandalism, larceny and unintentional damage are considered to be extremely important aspects in the property management. The preservation of movable artifacts in museums, stores, the archaeological-restoration office, expositions and other facilities is provided according to national legislation on registration and storage of museum articles. All archaeological artifacts, pictures and other portable treasures are registered in the catalogue and given numbers. Museum articles containing precious stones and metals are in the special register and there are strict measures on their preservation such as safes, safe rooms with sealing, security alarm and video surveillance. All buildings are equipped with security alarms.

Video surveillance has been installed and vandal-proof materials have been used close to and inside the monuments with presentation stands and other technical and information multimedia products.

Improvement and stepping up of security measures have been envisaged for preventing larceny and vandalism. As there are huge numbers of tourists and pilgrims visiting museums and monuments, these measures help to keep them under control. The section “Resource management” lays out the main managerial priorities regarding the security of museum articles and collections for the next 20 years. In this respect the organization of virtual museums, exhibitions and expositions is an important aspect in eliminating possibility of vandalism and larceny.

Reducing the consequences of hazards and natural disasters

The problem of natural disasters, flooding and other natural hazards is perceived as a large scale problem and that is why the Tatarstan Emergencies Ministry in its plans takes account of measures for reducing their consequences.

The management plan also presupposes establishment of control and monitoring system containing tasks, implementation deadlines and quality evaluation indicators.

There is a developed system of monitoring for preventing unfavorable affects and solution of complex tasks of the property management. It presupposes carrying out the monitoring of condition of archeological and architectural monuments, of their conservation and musefication of number of visitors and prevention of their possible influence on cultural and natural heritage. A system of indicators which makes it possible not only to monitor parameters but also the time of events has been developed for defining quality control. It is based on the timing of short-term and long-term actions and events defined till 2019 and for the next 20 years.

The ICCROM documents (2004) provides information on setting up monitoring indicators and they are used. The information on monitoring and control are collected by the Complex Management Office and analyzed under periodic report.



5a. Control of protection and excavations management

Taking into consideration these actions and events, the format and schedules have been defined for work on preservation and research of the cultural layer and objects on the property paying attention not only to excavations but also to the set of interdisciplinary research methods based on wide use of non-destructive, on increasing the quality and results of archeological excavations, on collection, backup and widening of the property computer mapping technologies, system of management of database and geoinformation systems in archeology, establishment of a virtual archeological museum and attracting independent experts.

As the reports and archives related to the Complex archeology are kept in different locations of the created Archeological-restoration base, the management plan has presupposed an establishment of a storage of historical-archeological information about the property and provision of access to these archives, setting up closer connections between different archives for simplification of the search for a researcher and for setting up a depositary for keeping collections of numerous archeological materials. These measures are to be implemented during the Short term plan till 2019 with further development within the Strategy till 2034 so that the decision concerning the property preservation is taken on the basis of the sufficient amount of information taking into consideration historical and archeological context rather than being based only on the data obtained by a researcher during the excavation.

The concrete parameters of this section are: the amount of excavated areas according to the Russian legislation; the number of archeological artifacts found on the excavation site, their conservation and timely passing to the fund of the museum-reserve; measure on conservation of archeological objects, conservation and musefication methods and techniques, non-destructive research methods and the ration compared to the traditional excavation methods, anti-damage and other actions during hazards and other parametres.

The control of research and conservation and of musefication of property monuments is an important part of the plan. This section is carried out within the short term and long term plans. The parameters are: how many projects have been developed, passed the state expertise and been implemented; the use of traditional materials, technologies and nonintrusive methods of conservation and musefication and etc. The control over the buffer zone and observation of all parameters and regimes of maintenance of different sub-zones from B to F. The Main parameters and terms are defines in the General Plan of Bolgar and in the plan of the territory development approved by state bodies on cultural heritage protection.

5b. Visitors management

This task is one of the most important and main objectives of the museum-reserve. The aim of the implemented measures is to protect the heritage property from possible negative affects of tourism and here are some of the measures:

- Protection regimes were introduced on the property territory, which prohibit layout of unauthorized places of rest, setting up camps and tents;
- The pass control to the property and separate monuments has been organized and is carried out;
- There are limitations for using the transport and passing on the property territory;
- Regimes of visiting separate monuments and museum and expositions placed there



have been set up and strictly followed, which include limiting visiting time and the number of people separately depending on the type of the monument;

– It is prohibited to visit museum expositions places in the monuments when the weather is not favourable (rain, snow, etc.) to prevent possible temperature and humidity variations, mudding of the visited objects;

The control of tourist flow has been organized and adjusted, including:

- distribution of museum attendants in places of active visitation and museum and exhibitions rooms and facilities;
- fire-safety measures (ban on smoking and making fires);
- protection, police control over the public order and preventive measures against non-authorized and illegal actions, especially in situations connected with mass visitation of the property during religious and state holidays, antiterrorist measures;
- excursion accompanying of tourist groups and visitation of museum expositions and exhibitions (tourist guides are responsible for monitoring execution of the rules of visiting the museum-reserve).

The Plan pays special attention to the calculation of the nominal anthropogenic load of the territory, monuments and the natural landscape of the heritage property, evaluation of anthropogenic influence that will enable correcting regimes and time of the property visitation introducing quote on attending the Bolgar Complex if necessary.

To decrease the negative influence, the Plan presupposes development and implementation of new (additional) tourist routs, which makes it possible to lessen the tourist flow to main (mostly attended) objects of the Complex. These measures can protect the property at the same time solving questions of increasing the number of quality of provided services and increasing the property attractiveness, openness and security.

The main indicator of the visitors management is the accounting the number, types and categories of visitors who are divided into the following groups:

- Number of visitors to each area of the site; number of cars, buses;
- Annual inspections of key viewsheds;
- Representatives of the local community (population) permanently or temporarily staying on the territory of the property;
- Pilgrims and representatives of clergy;
- Tourist (groups) and separate tourists;
- Children, schoolchildren, students;
- Volunteering serving cultural and other events;
- Scientific workers and expedition personnel (workers and specialists);
- Annual monitoring of a small selection of particularly vulnerable and tightly georeferenced areas of the site, using photography and measurement to provide data for comparison;
- Analysis of environmental monitoring data in museum stores;
- Measurement in the river bank erosion;
- Recording of weather data and in particular extreme weather incidents.

5c. Increasing of the local community awareness

The management Plan presupposes systems of constant information sharing with the local population on preservation of the property. The museum-reserve describes its activity



as a museum institution open for public. The system of raising awareness of the work of the museum includes various forms both passive – sharing information, organizing exhibitions and cultural-educational events and active connected with participation of local residents in the museum actions and work, joint projects, reports and public discussions.

Quantitative parameters of the work on raising awareness of the local population are used such as:

- the number of organized events (as a result of spreading information, attracting local population to participation in holidays, exhibitions, competitions, etc.);
- the number of implemented educational programmes (on organizing workshops explaining the Outstanding Universal Value of the property, the meaning of the buffer zone, regulations and regimes of land use and city-building, principles of the property management; on work with schoolchildren and organizing field museum lectures, etc.);
- the number of published advertising-information materials (on development of information stands, publications in mass media and Internet sites);
- the number of presentations of the museum-reserve (on holding Days of the museum and important museum events, entertainments functions);
- the number of implemented programmes and projects aimed at involving the local population into the work on preservation and maintenance of the property.

Involvement of representatives of the local community into work of the Museum Public Council, joint discussion of projects and initiatives concerning the property preservation and use are also important directions of the work.

5d. Popularization and promotion of the property

The promotion of the Complex as an object having outstanding world importance must be based on the results of scientific-research work of the museum-reserve employees, other independent researchers, academic scientific institutions and university centres, on deep analysis and scientifically grounded interpretation of the obtained results. In this context, the popularization of the museum-reserve scientific and educational work gains big importance.

The latter is achieved by developing educational programmes, modernization of the tourist guide work, organizing different tour guides training courses, improvement of their qualification and retraining, development of presentation-exhibition programmes, organizing and holding different holidays (including religious ones), creating holiday programmes with the use of museum reconstruction methods, developing distance resources in the form of Internet-projects.

The management Plan envisages constant information support of event with the use pres-conferences, presentations, round tables, announces and pos-releases, special reports, analytical and review publications for printed and electronic mass media, release of topical multimedia products, publications in museum and scientific periodicals, on the site of the museum-reserve and in social network.

Taking into account the international status of the property as well as the necessity of popularization of work of UNESCO, the information about the Plan implementation is spread not only through regional mass media but also through federal and international publications. The UNESCO symbols will be used in information materials and exhibitions connected with the property and showing its Outstanding Universal Value and the



implementation of the management plan in full compliance with the approved rules and principles of using symbols of UNESCO.

The main indicators of popularization of scientific-research and museum-educational work of the museum reserve are quantitative characteristics including the number of separate kind and type publications, mentioning of the property in Internet publications and other mass media, in other scientific works (books, references in Russian scientific quoting index, publications included into the Skopus and the Web of Science.

5e. The funds management

The indicators of the museum-reserve fund management are as follows:

The number of museum items of the main and supplementary funds, their types – archeology, numismatics, ethnography, paintings, ect.; acquisition of collections and museum items, quality and provision of their safety with implementation of modern systems (temperature-humidity and light regimes, microbiological and entomological security; purchases of necessary fund equipment; introduction of one information system for monitoring the condition and use of museum items and a number of others stated in legal documents of Tatarstan and Russian Ministries of Culture.

5f. Risk management

As far as the terms and indicators of readiness quality and risk management evaluation are concerned, such management sections as fire safety, vandalism, larceny and unintended damage as well as the deadlines for providing necessary fire fighting and modern alarm equipment to museums, expositions funds and facilities of the museum-reserve, the White Mosque and other buildings are clearly regulated by normative documents of Russian Emergencies Ministry and its department in Tatarstan.

There is constant monitoring of the banks on the territory of the museum-reserve and of hydrological peculiarities of the Kuybyshev reservoir as underground waters are hydraulically connected with the reservoir; landslides and cases of their widening are also monitored and prevented. Timely response to geological faults and natural disasters are also very important indicators of the property preservation.

Concrete tasks, time for their implementation and parameters of the quality control can be adjusted according to changing conditions.

Organizational structure of the property management implementation

The Deming model is used for improvement (constant renewal) of the property management process on preservation of its Outstanding Universal Value, which enables constant further improvement of the cycle “plan-action-check-correction”. This cycle is constantly repeated in the process of the property management.

The property management process algorithm (cyclic succession of actions):

1. Monitoring, data collection. Accumulation of information (about the measure implementation plan, changes happening in the environment, appearing conflict situations and hazards for the property, new appearing initiatives and projects) during a year in the management plan monitoring department of the museum-reserve on the basis of information prepared by specialized unites of the museum.



2. Analytical work. Analysis of the situation — problematic zones and new risks concerning the property, conflicts between stakeholders. Preparation of the problematic questions by the management plan monitoring department for their further discussion in the museum-reserve or at the public council meeting.

3. The Coordinating Committee meeting, decision-making. The Public council discusses problematic questions (causes of different events, necessary actions, etc.) which are outside the museum competence, concern several participants on the territory the Committee discusses new projects and initiatives concerning the property and the historical landscape preservation and development. The Coordinating Committee makes decisions and gives recommendations. If necessary, it prepares submissions.

4. Report on the results of the management plan monitoring. The museum-reserve prepares a yearly report (on results of the year) for a meeting of the Coordinating Committee on implementation of the management plan, monitoring results, fulfillment of decisions and recommendations passed by the Committee. The Committee requires and the museum submits information (reports) about work concerning the property and implementation of decisions and recommendations of the Coordinating Committee from stakeholders' representatives. The evaluation of the managements plan implementation is made and necessary corrections are discussed.

5. Adjustment of actions. The property management plan is revised taking into consideration results of analysis of the situation and discussion with stakeholders.

Because of changeability of the environment it is important to create strategic level adaptive mechanisms, that is mechanisms of early prediction of possibilities/threats for the property and their use/neutralization. Technically the property management plan implementation will use the planning strategy according to which the correction for the next stage of the plan will be made taking into consideration results of the previous stage and changing internal and external environment of the property.

As far as the social-economic sphere is concerned, it uses the idea of **communicative planning** consisting of involvement of interested people into the process of implementation and revision of the property management plan for preventive solution of disputable situations related to the property and its surrounding territory. The Coordinating Committee will become an instrument for communication and discussion of the decisions made.

Leveling of different interests related to cultural values is carried out on principles of public consensus. At the same time the ripe conflicts must be solved exceptionally in compliance with Russian and international legislation and in favour of preservation of the property Outstanding Universal Value.

A model of conflict solution algorithm has been developed for Russian conditions according to modern scientific theories in conflict studies and taking into consideration the uniqueness of the property. It is a management instrument influencing the solution of contradictions in social-economic relations including questions of territorial and social-economic planning.

The efficiency of the property management plan implementation is assessed by indicators of fulfillment of projects and measures on priority direction and corresponding tasks of managed changes concerning the property. The main indicator is the expert evaluation of managing changes concerning the property that is defining the positive dynamics of reaching the ideal condition of the Property.

The property management presupposes introduction of a system of continuous



monitoring, evaluation of the condition of the property and its environment, evaluation of the property management process.

6. PROSPECTS FOR PRESERVATION AND DEVELOPMENT

Particular and long-term management plans are connected with the main goal, which is maintenance of the Outstanding Universal Value of the complex, its integrity and authenticity, its management transfer to society as a whole for providing a positive contribution for a sustainable development.

The general elements of an effective control system for providing these prospects are the following:

- a) clear comprehensive understanding of the Property by all the stockholders
- b) planning, realization, monitoring assessment and feedback cycle
- c) monitoring and assessment of tendencies influence, changes and estimated measures
- d) involvement of partners and stockholders
- e) distribution of necessary resources
- e) capacity building
- g) accountability, clear description of management system functioning

The development of the Bolgar Complex proceeds from the Principles of the Fuller guidance (UNESCO 2013a, 140)

7. BIBLIOGRAPHY

ICCROM (2004) Monitoring World Heritage, World Heritage Papers 10 UNESCO World Heritage Centre / ICCROM

UNESCO (2011) Preparing World Heritage Nominations; UNESCO Resource Manual. Paris: UNESCO <http://whc.unesco.org/en/activities/827/>

UNESCO (2013) Operational Guidelines. Paris: UNESCO <http://whc.unesco.org/archive/opguide13-en.pdf>

UNESCO (2013) Managing Cultural World Heritage: UNESCO Resource Manual. Paris: UNESCO <http://whc.unesco.org/en/activities/827/>



Appendix № 1

**MISSION REPORT
OF THE ICOMOS ADVISORY MISSION
TO BOLGAR ARCHAEOLOGICAL AND
HISTORICAL SITE, REPUBLIC OF
TATARSTAN, RUSSIAN FEDERATION**

**30 AUGUST 2013 – 3 SEPTEMBER 2013
BY BRITTA RUDOLFF AND WILLEM J.H.H. WILLEMS
15 October 2013**



PREFACE

This Advisory Mission to Bolgar was conducted in an atmosphere of professional exchange, debate, deliberation and mutual agreement, which would have not been possible without the energetic and highly qualified participation of cultural heritage professionals from the Republic of Tatarstan. The authors of this report would like to thank the authorities of the Republic of Tatarstan and the Russian Federation for not only making so many local partners available to receive our mission in such a short amount of time but also for the perfect organization, which allowed to make best use of every minute we had, as well as for their extraordinary hospitality.

In this context we would like to give special thanks to Mr. Rustam Minnikhanov, President of the Republic of Tatarstan, for receiving us and giving us much of his time and attention despite his busy schedule. It is with sincere gratitude that we would like to commend the efforts of Mr. Mintimer Shaimiev, First President of the Republic of Tatarstan, who not only provided us with his detailed response to the ICOMOS evaluation report but also assisted us in finding constructive solutions for the forth-coming work towards the revised nomination of Bolgar to the World Heritage List. It became obvious to us how much importance Mr. Shaimiev attributes to the destiny of Bolgar, how quickly he comprehended and reflected the issues at hand and, hence, how much relevant care he would, through the Tatar cultural heritage authorities, give to the site should it be successfully inscribed in the World Heritage List.

Our further thanks are given to Mrs. Tatyana Larionova, Aide to the President on Social Issues and Executive Director of the Renaissance Foundation, who became our right hand throughout the mission. It was thanks to her facilitation that the dialogue with our Tatar colleagues was so successful and that the short three days visit concluded in very precise recommendations.

The relevance of our recommendations was assured by the many in-depth exchanges with our Tatar colleagues and we would like to express our special thanks to Mrs. Svetlana Persova, Deputy Minister of Culture, Mr. Rafael Valeyez, Head of the Volga Region UNESCO Chair and Pro-Rector for Research of the Kazan State University of Culture and Arts, Mr Kamil Nugaev, Head of Spask District, Mr. Ramil Khairutdinov, Director of the Institute of Oriental Studies and International Relations of Kazan Federal University, Mr. Aayrat Sitdikov, Head of the National Centre of Archaeological Studies, Institute of History of the Tatarstan Academy of Sciences, Mr Yury Egorushkin, Director-General of OAO Tatar Special Research and Restoration Office and Mrs. Ilzira Kuzmina, Head of the Centre of Tatarstan Cultural Heritage. We would like to not forget thanking all other colleagues and officials, who have not been named here but certainly made important contributions to the outcomes of the mission. The full list of individuals met is presented in annex 2 of this report, and everybody listed deserves our gratitude.

We were glad to also have had the opportunity to consult two international colleagues, Mr Francesco Bandarin, former Director of the UNESCO World Heritage Centre and now ADG Culture of UNESCO, who was present throughout the mission at the invitation of the



Russian authorities and Mr Mounir Bouchenaki, former ADG Culture of UNESCO, former Director-General of ICCROM and current Special Advisor to the Director-General of UNESCO, Special Advisor to the Director-General of ICCROM and Advisor to the Chairperson as well as interim Director of the Category II Centre for World Heritage in the Arab Region ARC-WH. He was invited at the request of the authorities of Tatarstan to assist us in understanding past decisions related to conservation and presentation that had been made following his advice. The professional contributions of both colleagues enriched the debates we had and were very valuable in the process of arriving at our recommendations and conclusions.

Lastly we shall thank Mr Igor Makovetsky, who attended the full three days of the mission on behalf of the Russian federal authorities in his Capacity as the Head of the National Commission for UNESCO and UNESCO Chair for World Heritage. He assisted us on matters related to the broader understanding of protection requirements. Last but not least we would also like to acknowledge the tremendous work of our interpreter, Mrs. Gouzel Nezhmetdinova, without whom our communication would not have been possible and whose energy and sophistication was both gratifying and impressive.

We sincerely hope that the report and recommendations provided in this document will be of assistance to the Tatar authorities in their preparation of additional material to be submitted by latest February 1st 2014, which will allow completing the process as desired by the World Heritage Committee at its forthcoming 38th session in Doha, Qatar, June 2014.

Introduction

The ICOMOS Advisory Mission to Bolgar Archaeological and Historical Site was organized at the invitation of the Russian Authorities and followed the recommendation of the World Heritage Committee that the State Party, in collaboration with the Advisory Body ICOMOS, “in particular by inviting an Advisory Mission to the site, to take adequate measures for an inscription of Bolgar Archaeological and Historical Complex on the World Heritage List on the basis of criteria (iii) and (vi) at its next“(37COM.8B.43).

The Advisory Mission was designed to respond to this request and hence was focused on discussing with the local authorities those aspects which ICOMOS had considered most problematic in its previous evaluation and which had prevented ICOMOS from making a recommendation for inscription.

Prior to this mission, ICOMOS had conducted two evaluation missions to the site, in 2000 and 2012 and had considered the nomination proposal three times before. In 2000, when the dossier was initially submitted, ICOMOS recommended inscription of the property under criterion (iii) (24 COM, Cairns, 2000). The World Heritage Committee referred the property to its following session in 2001 requesting additional materials such as the historic drawings which allowed for the minaret’s reconstruction to be presented. Following submission of these materials ICOMOS again recommended the inscription of the property in 2001. However, the Committee debated the authenticity of some of the site’s key elements and deferred the nomination (25 COM, Helsinki, 25 COM X.C , 2001):



“The Committee discussed extensively the authenticity and materials used for reconstruction at the site. Several delegates questioned whether the type of early documentary evidence supplied from the 19th century would be sufficient to guarantee authenticity for the reconstruction of the Great Minaret.

A number of interventions focused on the importance of the site as historical evidence for a nomadic empire. The Committee encouraged the State Party to submit a revised nomination dossier, which further elaborated the history of movements of people. Furthermore, the Committee suggested that a workshop could be organized on the question of authenticity and reconstruction to provide clear guidance in this matter.” (25 COM X.C , 2001)

The Russian Federation submitted a revised nomination dossier on 30 January 2012. Following its evaluation process and a renewed technical evaluation mission to the site, ICOMOS concluded that it could no longer recommend the inscription of the property. Recent development projects as well as conservation and stabilization treatments were judged to have affected the authenticity of the site so negatively, that its Outstanding Universal Value could no longer be demonstrated. In consequence, ICOMOS recommended to not inscribe the Archaeological and Historical Site of Bolgar on the World Heritage List (2013, WHC-13.37 COM.INF8B1) .

Following the World Heritage Committee’s decision [37COM.8B.43], the mission undertaken in advisory capacity was tasked to specifically review the condition of authenticity and the extent to which the Outstanding Universal Value had been affected by the reduction of authenticity.

The key question in this process was whether through redefinition of the Outstanding Universal Value, through boundary modifications or through corrective measures and reversion of measures the condition of authenticity could be strengthened and reestablished. To define these tasks at hand, the Russian Federation, the Republic of Tatarstan and ICOMOS agreed on the below purpose and terms of reference for the advisory mission.

Purpose of the Mission

The purpose of the Advisory Mission is to undertake consultations with the State Party, in the framework of upstream processes, in order to advise the State Party on the way forward with respect to the State Party’s intention to submit additional material in relation to the referred nomination of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Complex.

Terms of Reference

The Advisory Mission is to be undertaken to provide assistance and establish dialogue between ICOMOS and the authorities of the Russian Federation, including the Republic of Tatarstan, to:

- Review in which way, conception and boundaries Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Site could demonstrate Outstanding Universal Value, including its qualifying conditions of authenticity and integrity, under criteria (iii) and (vi).



- Advise the State Party on necessary steps to be taken for the revision of the dossier to be submitted by latest 1st February 2014.

Organization of the Mission

The ICOMOS Advisory Mission was organized for a period of 3 complete days, which were fully dedicated to site visits and discussions with the regional and federal authorities. The initial two days were mostly spent on site in Bolgar, emphasizing inspections of all critical issues addressed in the ICOMOS evaluation, while the third day was spent in Kazan, where possible ways forward were discussed. The detailed mission program reflecting the actual proceedings of the visit is attached as annex 1.

Observations at Bolgar Archaeological and Historical Complex

The two day site visit in Bolgar allowed for a detailed study of recent projects and architectural structures and to visit a number of on-going excavations as well as all the main previously excavated archaeological structures. They also allowed a visit to the archives and archaeological storerooms of the site administration. The following observations related to features, functions and conditions on site have been recorded by the visiting experts.

Development Projects

The ICOMOS evaluation referred to six recent development projects as having a negative impact on the Outstanding Universal Value of the property. The six projects were (1) The River Boat Station, which integrates the new Museum of Bolgar Civilization, (2) The Memorial Sign, a structure commemorating the introduction of Islam in 922, (3) the Pilgrimage Village, which comprises temporary habitations for pilgrims during the annual festival located next to the former airport runway, (4) the Festival Hall, built for festive events during the annual pilgrimage season, (5) the White Mosque, a new fully functioning Mosque complex just outside the southern site boundaries and located in the buffer zone and finally (6) the Bread Museum, located east of the White Mosque in the buffer zone. The Bread Museum is a museum complex consisting of a main building, a miller's residence, a windmill and several smaller structures.

All six development projects were visited and seen from both exterior and interior. In addition to the development projects covered in the evaluation report, the ICOMOS Advisory Mission visited two additional new architectural structures, the so-called Craft Workshops, a lengthy building hosting a number of craft workshops and a souvenir shop and the House of a Doctor with an exhibition focused on traditional medicine. A third new structure was seen only from the outside and did not seem to be fully completed at the time of the visit. It was introduced as the new Archaeological Museum Depository. The impressions gained on each of these projects as well as their function, location, design and effect on the Outstanding Universal Value shall be considered separately.



River Boat Station and Museum of Bolgar Civilization

The River Boat Station and Museum of Bolgar Civilization is a five-storey complex built against the steep slopes that separate the main parts of the archaeological site from the banks of the Volga River. It maintains the location of a prior river boat station but has created a new entrance gate to the site in the form of a museum. When seen from the upper plateau of the site, the Museum of Civilization appears merely as a single storey glass roof pavilion with the remaining four storeys visually hidden behind the slope. When approaching the site from the Volga River, the structure is rather majestic and will divert attention from the natural slopes and the visible minaret, which previously characterized the site.

In its interior, the Museum of Civilization provides a relevant and high quality introduction to the site, already strongly focused on the proposed Outstanding Universal Value of Bolgar. It is a well developed museum exhibition, which rests on traditional approaches of panels and objects showcased, combined with modern technology interactive exhibition parts. The ICOMOS Advisory Mission experts considered that given its enormous didactic potential, the Museum of Civilizations should be considered an asset of the site. It centralized the explanatory needs of the incoming visitor, provides good understanding of the place before the archaeological and religious structures are encountered and allows for a more minimalistic approach to interpretation in most other locations on site. The mission therefore concluded that the River Boat Station and Museum of Civilization did not have any adverse impact on the Outstanding Universal Value of the property.

Memorial Sign

The Memorial Sign was inaugurated in 2011 and is a new octagonal structure, which imitates the ground plan and shape of the historical structures in Bolgar. The upper hall hosts the world's largest copy of a printed Holy Quran, certified in the Guinness Book of Records, while the lower halls provide space for an exhibition hall and lecture theatre. The Memorial Sign was built to provide a symbol of the site of the historical acceptance of Islam for the wider region in 922 CE. It was constructed at the explicit and repeated request of the religious communities related to the site and the pilgrimage activities.

In terms of its impact on the Outstanding Universal Value, the Memorial Sign was judged with some ambiguity. In relation to the historical archaeological values of the site, as a Testimony to the Volga Bolgar civilization as expressed in the justification of criterion (iii), the Memorial Sign has negative impacts in that it was constructed in a location in which historic layers of the Volga Bolgars have previously been traced and is by far disproportionate in relation to the existing historical buildings. It was therefore judged to constitute a negative impact and to reduce integrity and authenticity of the values expressed under criterion (iii).

Another context of significance was presented under criterion (vi), which was suggested in the decision taken by the World Heritage Committee and which recognizes the importance of Bolgar for the expansion of Islam in its northernmost territories, including that Bolgar provides an alternative pilgrimage centre for local pilgrims who cannot afford to go for hajj in Mecca. When seen in this religious context, the Memorial Sign has a lesser impact



on the potential Outstanding Universal Value. On the contrary, it provides a dominant symbol of the religious importance of the place, which reflects that for many Muslims from the wider region the religious significance of Bolgar exceeds its archaeological significance.

The ICOMOS Advisory Mission therefore concluded that should the property be submitted by the State Party according to criterion (vi) (as suggested by the World Heritage Committee), the Memorial Sign may be interpreted in a new light. While we still consider that better locations could have been found for the construction of such memorial sign, it is acknowledged that it has now been fully constructed at a specific location and can no longer be reversed. Although it has compromised the historical proportions of architectural structures on site and has negatively affected the authenticity of the Volga Bolgar testimony, the mission concluded that its existence would not prevent the inscription of Bolgar Archaeological and Historical Site, if the religious value of the place was adequately described and justified in the significance presented in the nomination.

Pilgrimage Village

The pilgrimage village or camp is a temporary structure which provides accommodation for several thousand pilgrims during the annual pilgrimage season in late May. Throughout summer the tents are partly used by the archaeological teams. The tents consist of metal frames and cover sheets which provide basic shelter from wind and rain. The only installation of slightly more permanent nature is the sanitary complex. However, these structures seem easily movable to any other location in which water and drainage access can be provided.

The ICOMOS Advisory Mission considers, that while the temporary architectural structures have not impacted the archaeological resources negatively, the use of the village and the potential disposal of water or other fluids into the ground may affect underground archaeological resources. The camp is further not ideally located in this central part of the site, where it features prominently in some key perspectives over the wider landscape, an effect that is increased by the bright colors used for the tent covers (white and yellow). Although there does not seem to be a serious or severe threat at the moment, the ICOMOS Advisory Mission recommends that the State Party move the pilgrimage village outside of the site boundaries in the medium term, for example in the vicinity of the festival hall and the bread museum in the southern buffer zone.

Festival Hall

The Festival Hall is located just outside the south-eastern boundaries of the proposed site to the east of the bread museum. It is a vaulted tent structure, created for larger events and lectures during the pilgrimage season. The tent structure seemed smaller in reality than on the imagery provided in the nomination dossier and did not seem to constitute any negative impact on the property.



White Mosque

The White Mosque complex is located outside the south-western boundaries of the Bolgar Archaeological and Historical Complex in the Buffer Zone. It is visually prominent due to its Islamic architectural features, which – although rather beautiful – create a contrast to its immediate surroundings.

Located at the southern edge of the city, the white mosque is visible from various locations on site. Yet, this visibility is relative since due to the large expansion of the site, when seen from the cathedral mosque it is merely a tiny feature on the horizon. The cathedral mosque seems to have a stronger impact on the southern unexcavated areas of Bolgar than on the key sites visited during the ICOMOS Advisory Mission, which are predominantly located in the north. Despite that there may be a potential negative impacts on archaeological resources yet to be excavated in the southern part of the property and related to the significance concept presented under criterion (iii), as for the Memorial Sign it needs to be recognized that the mosque is related to the religious significance which the World Heritage Committee has suggested to be recognized under criterion (vi). The ICOMOS Advisory Mission accordingly concluded that the White Mosque does not constitute an adverse impact on the property, if its religious significance is highlighted as a key component of the Outstanding Universal Value.

Bread Museum

The Bread Museum Complex is located between the White Mosque and the Festival Hall. It was designed for the combined purpose of a catering facility to visitors of Bolgar Archaeological Site and a museum predominantly targeted at a younger generation. Here, children shall learn the processes of bread production starting from the harvesting and extraction of grains up to the final baking process which can be observed in the open charcoal oven of the restaurant. The museum complex highlights the importance of agricultural production and self-sufficiency in Tatarstan, a central topic to the Republic as was explained to the ICOMOS Advisory Mission. Yet, it did not become clear despite a long discussion how exactly the aspect of bread production related to the historical site of Bolgar and why – apart from an intention to create multiple attractions for visitors in one location – it was to be located here.

Despite the lack of relation between Bolgar Archaeological and Historical Site and the Bread Museum, its existence does merely seem to impact the southern, yet unexcavated, part of the property. It may even bring the small advantage of diverting visitor flows on peak visitation days, however, such visitor diversion may not at present be required as the overall visitor pressure on site – at least outside the pilgrimage season – seems acceptable.

Overall considerations on development projects

In summary, the ICOMOS Advisory Mission concluded that the only moderate to major adverse impact to the significance of Bolgar as a testimony to the Volgar Bulgar presented under criterion (iii) is the Memorial Sign. The Bread Museum and White Mosque may constitute minor adverse impacts on the not yet excavated archaeological remains in



the southern part of the property. However, given the suggestion by the World Heritage Committee that this property could be further considered according to criterion (vi), these impacts could be viewed as relatively minor and acceptable if the justification for Outstanding Universal Value is modified to include these values. The pilgrim's village is considered a feature that assists in facilitating appreciation of the site's religious significance during the pilgrimage season, but may be more suitably located outside the boundary of the future World Heritage property. It is recommended to shift its location towards the southern buffer zone, in the vicinity of the Festival Hall.

Conservation Projects and Approaches

The Bolgar Archaeological and Historical Complex contains a number of ancient built structures such as mausolea that have survived to the present day, a large area with the remains -mainly foundations -of other stone structures, and a large quantity of remains of wooden structures, kilns, deposits and other features that have survived as archaeological features. The standing ruins have been conserved. The programmatic excavations at the site that appear to be directed towards uncovering archaeological remains containing foundations of stone buildings -have created and continue to create a continuous need for conservation measures.

The ICOMOS Advisory Mission visited a number of different conservation projects at the proposed World Heritage property. These can be differentiated into at least three categories of conserved and/or restored buildings and ruins, conserved and/or restored excavated foundations and conserved archaeological features.

For the first category, there are structures such as the Black Chamber that are authentic architectural structures which have undergone some conservation, as well as structures such as the Main Mosque with the reconstructed Big Minaret, the Eastern Mausoleum and others where more extensive conservation work has been done. As the restoration techniques and the scale of intervention are often rather extensive these cannot be easily undone. In most cases, painted red lines have now been introduced to distinguish additions from the historical fabric. In future, a more structural approach might be used for this.

Especially for excavated remains in need of conservation, the ICOMOS Advisory Mission would have preferred a more cautious and minimal approach to conservation, ideally restricted to consolidation of the historic material. In this respect, covers such as the well designed structure erected over the remains of the Khan's Palace are a good solution. Such covers are a good solution, however, they should not have been combined with extensive reconstructions that are incompatible with retaining the conditions of authenticity and integrity. To consolidate the Khan's Palace, strongly invasive conservation works have been carried out and consequently much authenticity and all integrity of this key monument have been lost. Nevertheless, while the ICOMOS Advisory Mission considers the work done as a failed conservation project, the site also contains a visualization of archaeological remains that together with the reconstructed walls can operate as an open-air museum, established after the excavations to display the original architectural remains and archaeological artifacts from the complex.



Much more minimal conservation has been undertaken at the Bath immediately east of the Bolgar Civilization Museum on the lower Volga terrace, that is also protected by a covering structure where ventilation might need to be improved. Nevertheless, it is a suitable solution to conservation of excavated structures. In other cases, stone mausolea and other buildings have been protected by adding layers of stone that at the same time enhance the structure. This procedure is understandable given the climatic conditions, but should be carefully limited to cases of absolute necessity. In one case, only an indication at the surface has been made, thereby creating a good outline of the structure through what might be called a “two dimensional reconstruction”. A method apparently not used so far, is to cover remains completely with earth again after excavation, or even after geophysical survey without excavation, and erecting a reconstructed outline on top of the original remains, without physical connection to them.

Finally, some kilns from an excavated potter’s workshop in the vicinity of the tent camp for pilgrims, represent another example of archaeological remains that have been carefully conserved and are protected by a well designed cover.

Archaeological Excavations and Research Potential

During the two days of site visits, the ICOMOS Advisory Mission was shown several excavations, most of which appeared to include remains of stone buildings. Given the available finances, a programmatic approach to excavation has been established to systematically explore the site..

Such an approach, with properly resourced excavations employing modern technological facilities and including subsequent analytical work, is indeed needed to obtain a fuller understanding of the chronological and chorological dimensions of the vast habitation and burial areas. It is also needed to compensate for much of the earlier work, where hardly any or no analyses were done, as became obvious from the excavation reports that were shown to the mission.

To enable such analyses in the future, it is important that samples can be taken from undisturbed layers and deposits. The ICOMOS Advisory Mission and archaeologists working locally discussed the need to maintain and preserve profile dams and sections, in order to make this possible. Such preservation is also necessary to maintain a basic level of archaeological integrity that is otherwise destroyed by excavation. The concept of integrity at an archaeological site also includes the degree to which original contexts and layers have been preserved undisturbed. Excavation increases knowledge but it at times destroys integrity, especially if excavation is complete or poorly documented and analyzed. It was stated that regulations from the Moscow Academy of Sciences did not allow leaving profile dams. While such regulation is fully understandable in a context of rescue or preventive archaeological investigations, the ICOMOS Advisory Mission considers application of this rule on a World Heritage property that is to be preserved in perpetuity, as a serious – and unnecessary – breach of archaeological integrity.

Otherwise it should be stated that excavation work and analyses appeared to conform to usual internationally accepted standards of archaeological excavation. The use of



non-destructive techniques to chart the entire property has begun and should be completed as soon as possible, especially a ground penetrating radar survey of the entire property. These techniques have already yielded much new information and have allowed the strategic choice of new excavation locations. The ICOMOS Advisory Mission considers that it would also be useful to design a long term excavation strategy that includes not only a strategy for excavating certain areas, but also and importantly, a strategy for the intact preservation of areas as reserves for future research and to retain the archaeological integrity of the property as a whole. This strategy should be part of the Management Plan. The ICOMOS Advisory Mission already indicated that it would in this respect prefer if no more stone mausolea were to be excavated. Apart from the 7 mausolea surviving as built monuments that have been conserved and partially restored (the North Mausoleum or 'Monastery cellar', the East Mausoleum or 'St Nikolay's Church', and the Khan's Shrine (5 mausolea)), 9 other mausolea have been identified of which 8 have already been excavated. Information from written and cartographic sources indicates that there are approximately 20 mausolea on the territory of the ancient settlement. Hence, the remaining ones should be preserved intact and reserved for study in the long term, not the near future. The recommended method for these sites would be to cover them with an additional layer of soil. If a sufficiently clear ground plan can be obtained by ground radar or another non-destructive prospection method, it could be considered to construct that ground plan on top of the added soil, thereby creating a visible element for visitors while preserving the integrity of the remains and retaining the option of scientific research at some future time.

The ICOMOS Advisory suggested that the Bolgar Archaeological and Historical Complex could become a showcase of modern, non-destructive archaeological methods that by itself could add to the tourist value of the property.

While the site archive, in the sense of the collection of all excavation and ancillary reports as well as the repository for all finds from all excavations at the site, is partially present, it is very incomplete and not all facilities are state of the art. Many excavation reports are lacking, and finds are stored at other locations. The basic facilities appear to be in fairly good order, but still leave much to be desired such as a modern GIS-based system. The ICOMOS Advisory mission further recommends that all finds and related reports should be stored in a centralized location on site.

Visitor Management and Presentation

Visitor management at present involves letting visitors drive around the site in their own cars and parking them at the former airport site and other indicated parking areas. In future, if the expectation of massively increased visitor numbers materializes, this is obviously no longer sustainable and other systems of transport should be envisaged that will prevent degradation of the property or even direct damage to archaeological structures. The Management Plan should provide a clear insight in the strategy for visitor management to be employed when in future visitor numbers have reached the expected levels.

As was already mentioned above, the Museum of Civilization provides a relevant and high quality introduction to the site, presenting the historical and archaeological signifi-



cance of Bolgar. The well developed museum exhibition has explanation panels in three languages (Russian, Tatar and English), which is not always provided on other elements of the place. Some of the archaeological and religious structures that are encountered have only minimal interpretation and signage and not always in three languages.

It was apparent during the mission that the potential of excavations in progress to explain the ongoing archaeological research was not used to a great extent. While visitors are given the opportunity in the museum to gain an understanding of how archaeological research is done, the chance of following this up by a real life experience while visiting the site was not apparent. Given that it is likely that there will almost always be some excavations occurring somewhere on the site, and in view of modern concepts of public access and participation in archaeological work, there is an opportunity that could be further considered and developed as part of the Management Plan.

CONCEPT AND APPROACH FOR A REVISED SUBMISSION

The ICOMOS Advisory Mission made efforts to openly discuss all aspects of the ICOMOS evaluation report and the mission experts listened carefully to the opinions and views of the Russian experts and officials to understand alternative perspectives on the approaches taken to the nomination and to the conservation management of this property. Certain challenges were encountered during the discussion, in particular there were difficulties to arrive at a shared understanding of the terms ‘civilization’ or ‘cultural tradition’ as used in criterion (iii). It was also recognized that no agreed perception on the quality and significance of the Memorial Sign could be reached. In the exchange of views it became clear that the addition of criterion

(vi) and the associated emphasis on the religious significance of the site could allow different arguments to be made concerning authenticity and integrity.

However, in the view of the ICOMOS Advisory Mission the authenticity of the excavated attributes remains very limited and integrity in relation to criterion (iii) under which Bolgar is proposed as a testimony of the Volga Bolgar civilization remains difficult to demonstrate after several interventions had left irreversible marks. These aspects and potential solutions shall be discussed in the following sub-chapters on criteria as well as authenticity and integrity.

Criteria

The nomination of the Bolgar Archaeological and Historical Site was proposed under criterion (iii), which had been acknowledged by ICOMOS in its earlier evaluations of 2000 and 2001. It was suggested, that Bolgar was a unique and exceptional testimony to the civilization of the Volga Bulgar, the ancestors of the contemporary Tatar people. However, when considering the submitted documentation, ICOMOS considered that several recently conducted development projects and conservation measures had negatively impacted on the physical testimony of the Volga Bulgar civilization and that too little evidence remained to constitute an outstanding testimony of the early settlements in the 10th century.



In reviewing the archaeological remains in the historical and archaeological complex, the ICOMOS Advisory Mission considered that if criterion (iii) was applied, it would be difficult to reference the early Volga Bulgar civilization (10th to early 13th century), which accepted Islam in these northern territories, given that such testimony remained limited and was affected both in terms of integrity and authenticity. The mission experts suggested that alternatively criterion (iii) could reference the Golden Horde, which ruled the region in the late 13th up to the 15th century and selected Bolgar as its first capital, as for this period more relevant physical evidence had been retained. Likewise the subsequent Turk Khanates had left significant archaeological and architectural evidence on site. Yet, it might be difficult to argue that these were the most exceptional or unique remains of such khanates, which occurred in a far larger region.

The Tatar authorities highlighted that a shift of reference for criterion (iii) from the Volgar Bulgar to the Golden Horde was not desired and that the subsequent historic periods including their different influences of ruling powers (Volga Bulgar, Golden Horde and Kazan Khanate) were considered one continuous civilization that had created the contemporary Tatar nation. As already indicated above, the mission experts had considerable difficulties to follow this understanding of the terms ‘civilization’ or ‘cultural tradition’ and could not agree to this approach to the application of criterion (iii).

However, after becoming aware of the key argument presented by the Tatar authorities, that the Volga Bulgar had established a historic context of values and references – both religious and cultural – which continued throughout differing rules of the Golden Horde and the Kazan Khanate up to the contemporary Tatar Republic, which continues to reference the ancestral testimony of the Volga Bulgar, the ICOMOS Advisory Mission suggested to opt for an alternative criterion, criterion (ii). In recognizing the interchange of human values over a span of time or within a cultural area of the world, criterion (ii) would allow highlighting this continuity of cultural references as it is expressed in architecture or technology, monumental arts, town-planning or landscape design. The ICOMOS Advisory Mission considered that a nomination under criterion (ii) would be able to reflect the concept of an interchange of values over 12 centuries within the “continuous civilization”, which the Tatar authorities wished to highlight and would have far better chances to demonstrate the conditions of integrity and authenticity.

Following an agreement between the Tatar authorities and the mission experts for conceptualizing the site in relation to the continuity of human values over time and that criterion (ii) would have more potential to capture these key values of Bolgar, the mission reflected with the local authorities about the fact that the World Heritage Committee in its decision had explicitly highlighted criteria (iii) and (vi). While all parties did not wish to act against the explicit wish of the World Heritage Committee, they considered that the shift to criterion (ii) is more promising in relation to the broader request of the Committee to facilitate an early inscription of Bolgar on the World Heritage List. The ICOMOS Advisory Mission experts therefore express their hope, that the honorable members of the World Heritage Committee will agree with this shift and see the value of recognizing the importance of Bolgar and in particular its religious and cultural values in continuity over



several centuries. ICOMOS in conclusion recommends the State Party to re-conceptualize the nomination on this basis and present a revised submission on the basis of criteria (ii) and (vi).

Authenticity and Integrity

The evaluation by ICOMOS of the authenticity and integrity of a property is developed in the context of an inspection of its attributes and in relation to the specific set of values presented and expressed according to the established criteria. The consideration of different values (and therefore different criteria) may lead to different assessments of authenticity and integrity. In this case, the suggestion of the inclusion of criterion (vi) by the World Heritage Committee has expanded the consideration of both qualifying conditions to the religious and spiritual context of the property; and the shift towards criterion (ii), instead of (iii), allows for a evaluation of authenticity and integrity in relation to the wider context of the property than in the previous evaluation.

With regard to criterion (ii), the assessment of authenticity should highlight that the successive architectural and material culture expressions of different historic reigns utilized not only the same locations but also referenced each other in urban and architectural expressions. Remains from all historic periods are now combined in the Archaeological and Historic Complex. While the authenticity has been significantly reduced through conservation measures at some of the key historic locations (in particular the Khan's Palace), and this will affect the authenticity of physical remains according to this criterion, it could be considered that the authenticity of the many yet unexcavated historic remains has the potential to balance unfortunate and irreversible past decisions.

With regard to integrity, it is important to highlight the immense potential of yet unexcavated archaeological remains, both in terms of their potential future contribution to knowledge about the historic eras but also in terms of presenting a wide and dense testimony of the many subsequent layers of occupation. As such, the consideration of the integrity of the property should include reference to the unexcavated remains which remain covered by soil and which should only be made visible through non-intrusive means of analysis, such as the below-mentioned radar surveys. The ICOMOS Advisory Mission would like to highlight that an extremely cautious approach to both excavation and conservation is necessary to prevent future reductions of authenticity and integrity as have recently occurred.

The application of criterion (vi) to this property requires consideration of the integrity and authenticity of Bolgar as a site that carries associations with the historic acceptance of Islam in these northernmost Islamic territories and to its important function as a regional pilgrimage centre, a replacement of the pilgrimage to Mecca for those who cannot afford to travel for hajj. Information sources relevant to authenticity in this context include use and function, spirit and feeling as well as other tangible and intangible aspects. It is likely that the consideration of criterion (vi) will modify the ICOMOS assessment of the impact of the Memorial Sign and the White Mosque on the proposed Outstanding Universal Value.

Further to the consideration of criterion (vi), the State Party should identify in its re-submission the specific attributes and information sources that constitute the key aspects of the religious use and veneration of the property, and the basis on which the authenticity



could be assessed. In terms of integrity, it may be helpful to consider the specific historic locations that contribute to the religious significance in order to assess whether these are included inside the property boundaries and whether their long-term protection against negative influences is assured.

Boundary and Buffer Zone

Based on the ICOMOS evaluation report and its assessment concerning the impacts associated with the location of the Memorial Sign, the State Party presented the mission with a map with revised boundaries, which exclude the 20th century habitations in the north-western part of the site as well as the Memorial Sign. The ICOMOS Advisory Mission experts discussed this proposal with the local authorities. In the light of current excavations in the zone undertaken south of the Museum of Bolgar Civilization and the obvious evidence of relevant historic features in these excavation pits, the mission concluded that if this area was excluded, the integrity of the site could not be demonstrated. It is therefore strongly recommended to present the property within the boundaries delineated by the historic city wall and not to exclude parts inside these historic boundaries.

In light of the extended proposal for Outstanding Universal Value in reference to criterion (vi), the ICOMOS assessment of the Memorial Sign needs to be re-evaluated and is not likely to prevent inscription of Bolgar within the previously outlined property boundaries. However, ICOMOS previously recommended an extension of the property boundaries towards the river to include early settlements that had previously been identified on the first river island. The Tatar authorities explained that the archaeological remains on the island were likely to have been completely destroyed following the water level rise of the Volga. The experts of the ICOMOS Advisory Mission did not fully agree with the scientific arguments about the theory of complete destruction and requested the local authorities to conduct surveys on the island to confirm whether archaeological remains are retained in this area. The ICOMOS Advisory Mission considers that unless the complete destruction of archaeological evidence on the island is confirmed, it would be preferable to include the island within the property boundaries.

With regard to the buffer zone, the ICOMOS evaluation of the nomination in early 2013 considered that “towards the north, the buffer zone ends in the middle of the river Volga and does not therefore protect the essential views across the river”. ICOMOS recommended extending the buffer zone further north to protect the views across the river. The State Party presented revised maps during the mission which suggested a buffer zone reaching up to the shores on the opposite site of the Volga River. ICOMOS welcomes this approach and considers the buffer zone presented in this meeting to be more appropriate. However, it seemed that the proposed buffer zone at times expanded beyond those areas visible from Bolgar site and accordingly the ICOMOS Advisory Mission recommended that the State Party conduct a view study from the northern upper terraces of Bolgar to determine which areas of the Northern Volga banks are indeed visible from the archaeological and historical site. The areas north of this visibility line could then be excluded from



the revised buffer zone proposal which may reduce tensions with the neighboring district affected by the buffer zone protection.

Protection and Management

It is clear that all those involved in the enhancement of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Site have always had the protection of the archaeological and surface remains in mind. Given the harsh climate, it is understandable that sometimes very invasive methods have been used. Nevertheless, as time progresses new techniques, insights and approaches have been developed that have not yet found full application at the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Site.

In order to develop an integrated approach to protection, management and the continuation of research by destructive methods (excavation), it is of paramount importance that a full and detailed plan of the entire property is made by prospection. With the development of sensor and IT equipment in recent years, there are now for example multi-channel magnetometer prospection systems available, equipped with GPS that can render highly detailed maps of large areas and in a relatively short period. Not only does such non-destructive prospection help to reduce excavation costs and allow for the precise targeting of such work, as is already done at Bolgar, its full potential as a management tool becomes available once a complete coverage of the site has given a clear picture of the totality of surviving archaeological remains. Elsewhere, this work has already yielded highly significant scientific results, such as the work undertaken by the Deutsches Archäologisches Institut (DAI) at Stonehenge, United Kingdom.

This ground-plan can be the basis for a research plan for the next decades where -as part of the overall Management Plan -excavations are scheduled at precisely aimed locations to investigate specific research questions needed to further elaborate the habitation history of the site and to further underpin its Outstanding Universal Value. As a complement to that, the plan should also contain a strategy to preserve substantial areas within the property undisturbed for the future and to make sure that these also contain remains of stone built structures, as it seems that a disproportionate amount of those has already been excavated. This is essential to maintain sufficient integrity at the site.

As excavations also produce additional need for conservation, such a research plan provides at the same time an insight into the need for further conservation in addition to the need for a planned approach to upkeep the existing conserved structures, maintenance of covering structures, etc. Obviously, such planning should also encompass the budgetary resources as well as physical facilities for storing the 'site archive', the materials found during excavations and the research reports (including the dispersed reports from past decades) in analog and digital form and connected to a site GIS. The latter has already begun to be developed and the completion of this work is of the utmost importance.

Another important element in the protection and management is the further development of a visitor management plan, taking into account the likelihood of increased visitor numbers due to tourism and pilgrimage.



Of great relevance is that the management plan contains a strategy for how to deal with the need for visitor facilities and other buildings on site, so that placing new and invasive structures such as the Memorial Sign in the immediate vicinity of the Volga Bolgar settlement remains, can be avoided. It can also contain, for example, a strategy for using reconstructions as covering structures which has successfully been employed at archaeological parks, a ‘style guide’ to avoid too many different architectural styles on site, and an interpretation plan for the site in line with the interpretation offered in the Museum of Bolgar Civilization.

RECOMMENDATIONS

For the preparation of the documentary material for the revised nomination of the Bolgar Historical and Archaeological Site for inscription of the World Heritage List, the ICOMOS Advisory Mission recommends to give consideration to the recommendations detailed under the respective headings above and in particular to the following aspects and questions. For the justification of Outstanding Universal Value including its conditions of authenticity and integrity the ICOMOS Advisory Mission experts recommends that the State Party:

- Re-conceptualize the nomination on the basis of criteria (ii) and (vi);
- Highlight the immense potential of unexcavated archaeological remains in relation to criterion (ii), both in terms of their potential contribution to knowledge about the historic eras and in presenting a testimony of the many subsequent layers of Bolgar’s occupation;
- Identify the specific attributes and information sources that constitute the key aspects of the religious use and veneration of the site as potentially recognized by criterion (vi);

With regard to the medium and long-term protection, management and presentation of the site, the ICOMOS Advisory Mission recommends that the State Party consider the following:

- Present the site within the boundaries delineated by the historic city wall to the west, south and east and include the first island to the north, unless evidence can be confirmed that all archaeological material on the island has been destroyed after the rise of the Volga water level;
- Expand the buffer zone based on the drawings presented during the mission and a view study from the northern upper terraces of the archaeological and historical site;
- Expand the site GIS that has already been established to encompass the entire nominated area and conduct a high resolution geophysical survey as a basis for further planning;
- Develop a plan to create a comprehensive site archive and store, which collect



all data and reports and as far as possible all finds, in a centralized facility in the vicinity of the site.

- Develop a plan to move the pilgrimage village outside of the site boundaries, for example in the vicinity of the Festival Hall and the Bread Museum in the southern buffer zone.
- As part of future restorations of historic surfaces, replace red lines where they have been introduced to distinguish additions from the historical fabric by a more rigorous approach in which authentic remains that are to be covered by additions are separated from these by red mortar so as not to depend on paint that is easily eroded in the harsh climate;
- Restrict further excavations of mausolea and present the ones investigated and not yet conserved either by “two dimensional” reconstruction or by covering the original remains with a layer of earth, thereby restoring resilient conservation conditions and creating a reconstruction on top;
- Arrange with the relevant authorities for the non-applicability at the site of national regulations that excavations must always be complete and no profile dams can be left standing, as a means to maintain integrity as well as to provide the option of more sophisticated additional research at some future time.

ANNEX 1: MISSION PROGRAMME

30th of August 2013, Friday

- 21:10 Arrival Ms. Britta Rudolff at Kazan International Airport
21:45 Arrival Mr. Willem Willems at Kazan International Airport
 Transfer to hotel

31th of August 2013, Saturday

- 08:00 Breakfast (at hotel)
09:00 Helicopter flight to Bolgar (35 minutes)
09:45 Meeting with local heritage professionals and officials
 at Bolgar Archaeological and Historical Site
10:00 Visit of Museum of Civilization and new River Boat Station at Bolgar
12:00 Visit of the bath on the lower river terrace
12:30 Visit of current excavation sites (near upper entrance of Museum
 of Civilization, and west in the latest settlement area)
13:00 Lunch in Bolgar City
15:00 Visit of Memorial Sign (including exhibition hall)
15:30 Visit of Cathedral Mosque (including access to larger minaret),
 the Eastern Mausoleum, the Church of the Dormitian
 (at present Museum of Bolgar Crafts and Costumes),
 the Khan’s Palace



- 16:45 Visit of the newly developed Craft Workshops, the Doctor's House and the archaeological site Eastern Chambers
- 17:15 Helicopter flight back to Kazan
- 18:00 Working Dinner (with discussion, reflection on impressions of the first day)
- 21:00 Return to hotel

1st of September 2013, Sunday

- 08:00 Breakfast at hotel
- 09:00 Departure to helicopter landing place, Helicopter flight to Bolgar
- 10:00 Visit of ongoing archaeological excavations under the supervision of the Reserve, Visit of Khan's Palace, Red Chambers (view of landslide location and discussion), visit of the Jerusalem Ravine and drive along the north-eastern lower river terrace,
- 11:30 Visit of the Pilgrimage Village, the Clay kiln excavation and its new protective shelter, the Small Minaret and Khan's Burial Vault, the City Wall (Ramparts and ditch) at different locations
- 12:45 Visit of the Bread Museum
- 13:00 Lunch in the Bread Museum Restaurant and Catering facility
- 15:00 Visit of the White Chamber and three different mausoleums, discussion of conservation approaches
- 16:00 Visit of new village (east) to which site inhabitants were relocated, visit of eastern city wall and boundary
- 16:30 Visit of site administration building, archives and archeological storages. Initial discussion of boundary modification proposal
- 17:00 Visit of the north-western section of the property which would be affected by the proposal of modified boundaries
- 17:30 Visit of the White Mosque
- 17:45 Helicopter Return flight to Kazan
- 18:45 Working dinner, discussion of nomination criteria, impact of new developments as well as aspects of authenticity and integrity
- 21:30 Return to hotel

2nd September 2013, Monday

- 07:30 Breakfast at hotel
- 08:30 Transfer towards the Cabinet of Ministers
- 09:00 Meeting with the President of the Republic of Tatarstan Rustam N. Minnikhanov
- 10:00 Transfer to Kazan Kremlin
- 10:15 Guided visit of Kazan Kremlin
- 11:00 Working meeting with cultural heritage authorities in the offices of Renaissance Foundation, discussion on the approach to be taken



for the resubmission of documents, in particular the question of criteria

13:00	Meeting with the First President and State Advisor of the Republic of Tatarstan Mintimer Sh. Shaimiev
14:45	Lunch at the invitation of the First President and the State Advisor of the Republic of Tatarstan Mintimer Sh. Shaimiev
17:00	Continuation of working meeting with cultural heritage authorities in the offices of Renaissance Foundation, discussion of boundary and buffer zone requirements
19:00	Working dinner, review of conclusions and recommendations
22:00	Return to hotel

3rd September 2013, Tuesday

07:45	Airport transfer for Mr. Willem Willems
08:15	Airport transfer for Mrs. Britta Rudolff
09:15	Departure of Mr. Willem Willems
09:45	Departure of Mrs. Britta Rudolff

ANNEX 2: LIST OF REPRESENTATIVES MET DURING THE MISSION

<i>Name</i>	<i>Occupation, position</i>
1. Igor Makovetskiy	President of the Russian National ICOMOS Committee
2. Tatyana Larionov	Aid for Tatarstan President in social matters, Managing Director of the Regional Fund “Renaissance”
3. Kamil Nugayev	Head of the Spask Municipal Region
4. Svetlana Persova	Tatarstan Deputy Minister of Culture
5. Albert Usmanov	Deputy Head of the main investment-construction directorate of Tatarstan
6. Ramil Khayrutdinov	Director of the Institute of Oriental Studies and International Relations of the Kazan Federal University
7. Rafael Valeyev	Vice-Rector in Science of the Kazan State University of Culture and Arts, Head of the Volga region UNESCO department



8. Aayrat Sitdikov Head of the Archaeological Research National Centre of the Institute of History of Tatarstan Academy of Science
9. Adel Khusnutdinov Director General of the Tatinvestgrazhdanproyekt Construction company
10. Yuriy Yegorushkin Director General of the Tatar Special scientific-Restoration Directorate
11. Rafael Khakimov Director of Tatarstan Institute of History after Mardjani
12. Ilzira Kuzmina Head of the Centre of Tatarstan Cultural Heritage
13. Farida Zabirowa Deputy Chairman of the Tatarstan department of the All-Russia Society for Protection of Monuments of Culture and Arts
14. Andrey Faskhutdinov Deputy Director of the Bolgar-Museum-Reserve
15. Artem Silkin Director of the state historical-architectural and fine arts museum “The Town-island of Sviyazhsk”
16. Andrey Krosnozhon Head of excavations at Bolgar of the Moscow Institute of Archeology

ANNEX 3: IMAGES AND D MAPS



PHOTO 1: SUGGESTED BUFFER ZONE EXTENSION AS PRESENTED TO THE ICOMOS ADVISORY MISSION



PHOTO 2: RIVER BOAT STATION AND MUSEUM OF BOLGAR CIVILIZATION AS SEEN FROM THE MEMORIAL SIGN LOCATION



PHOTO 3: EXCAVATION AREA IN THE LAST STAGES OF WORK, WHERE THE PROFILE DAM BETWEEN TWO EXCAVATION PITS IS REMOVED. BECAUSE THE SITE WILL BE PROTECTED IN PERPETUITY, THERE IS NO NEED TO DO SO. MAINTAINING THESE DAMS AND BACKFILLING THE EXCAVATION TRENCHES ALLOW FOR CONTINUED FUTURE INVESTIGATIONS.



PHOTO 4: VIEW FROM INSIDE THE KHAN'S PALACE AREA. WHILE SOME ORIGINAL TILES ARE INCORPORATED, THE WALLS AND FLOORS ARE COMPLETE RECONSTRUCTIONS THAT HAVE REPLACED THE ORIGINAL CONTEXT. THIS HAS SIGNIFICANTLY REDUCED INTEGRITY AND AUTHENTICITY. THE AVERAGE VISITOR DOES, HOWEVER GAIN A GOOD UNDERSTANDING OF THE STRUCTURES THAT WERE ONCE PRESENT. HENCE, THE COVERED AREA CAN BE CONSIDERED A SITE MUSEUM.



PHOTO 5: WORKSHOPS AND SOUVENIR SHOP COMPLEX WITH SHELTER OF KHAN'S PALACE IN THE BACKGROUND



PHOTO 6: SHELTER OF BATH (FOR REGROUND) AND MEMORIAL SIGN (RIGHT) AS SEEN FROM THE RIVER BOAT STATION



PHOTO 7: CATHEDRAL MOSQUE COMPLEX APPROACHED FROM THE MEMORIAL SIGN



Appendix № 2

**MAIN DIRECTIONS OF THE
MANAGEMENT PLAN
FOR BOLGAR STATE HISTORY AND
ARCHITECTURE MUSEUM-RESERVE
FOR THE PERIOD UP TO 2019**



PRIMARY AREAS

CONCEPTUAL CHALLENGES FOR FURTHER DEVELOPMENT

The Bolgar State History and Architecture Museum-Reserve has currently emerged as one of the largest, oldest and most prominent conservation areas on the territory of the Russian Federation. The historical and religious significance of this place, the sites of unique cultural heritage located here, as well as the experience of museology and organizational work which has been accumulated since 1969, provides the setting for the task of further development of the Bolgar museum-reserve and turning it into one of the leading Russian museum-reserves of global significance.

To realize the goal following challenges should be met:

1. Registration and conservation of heritage throughout the area of the museum-reserve and provision of competent territory management, on the basis of its cultural landscape and functional zoning.

Eventually, *the entire territory of the museum-reserve will be treated as a single cultural landscape complex*, which includes not only the archaeological and architectural monuments of the Bolgar and Golden Horde period, but later accretions due to the existence of an Orthodox monastery, preserved historic villages, natural monuments, the Volga riverside landscape.

2. Formation of modern museum complex. Museum complex structure includes the *following sites: Museum of the Bolgar civilization, Bread Museum - Ethnographic Museum* with a display of traditional life, presenting craft workshops, traditional cuisine facilities and other ethnographic attractions, Museum of a healer. Preserved architectural monuments, archaeological sites are added to the category of museum exhibits. Study of the cultural layer and presentation of the heritage articles, their museification and representation are carried out by non-intrusive methods.

It is planned to set up branches of the Museum-Reserve near historic Bolgar.

3. Development of the Museum-Reserve as one of the leading Russian tourist centers. The historical significance of Bolgar and its favorable economic and geographical position (the Volga route, reliable communications with Kazan and other cities) make this task manageable and feasible. Long-term development will have various forms of cultural tourism, pilgrim tourism (including the annual holiday - the day of Islam adoption). It is also important to use the Bolgar cultural and natural heritage for development of science and scientific tourism.

4. Development of the Museum fund facilitating conservation of collections (archaeological, archival, ethnographic, fine and applied arts, etc.). The development strategy of the museum fund includes the creation of appropriate conditions for the storage of existing collections, inclusion of the identified archaeological finds. Materials collecting, updated with digital data for different collections stored in other museums in Russia and worldwide, originating in the territory of the Bolgar settlement.



MUSEUM-RESERVE AREA MANAGEMENT TASKS

Functional zoning and long-term objectives of the specific zones development

The following functional zoning of the Museum-Reserve has been conducted, based on the characteristics of the historical, archaeological and natural heritage of the Museum-reserve, as well as taking into account implemented cultural and landscape zoning .

Tourist Reception Centre (“Museum of Bolgar Civilization”)

Basically, the Volga pier serves as the main tourists’ reception center. Visitors begin their tour of museum and historical monuments from that pier. That center receives tourists arriving on boats and partly using automobile transportation. It also organizes river excursions. The complex is part of the riverside panorama of historic Bolgar.

Tourist reception center near the South Gate

In the short term, it is necessary to ensure the development of a new tourists’ reception center, located near the South Gate area outside the territory of the Museum (near the White Mosque, the festival-event complex and the Bread Museum). The main flow of visitors arriving by car will come through it.

The main exhibition and religious center

The complex of Jami (the Cathedral mosque) and the Big Minaret, as well as other landmarks surrounding it constitute the core of the Museum-reserve, which is visited by all the tourists, but it is also used for religious purposes during the annual celebration of the anniversary of the adoption of Islam.

Most of the sites of cultural heritage within the selected areas are used as objects of tourist tours. The Dormition Church exposition is open for tourists.

Among the challenges related to the preservation of monuments authenticity, there is one related to maintaining visual communication between sites and interrelation with the natural environment.

Gabdrakhman’s Well

This complex is situated in the north-eastern outskirts of the Bolgar fortress on the banks of the Kuibyshev reservoir on the historic location of the well-spring (“Gabdrakhman’s Well”). According to the legendary tradition the site is associated with the name of a Muslim preacher, a companion (Sahabah) of the Prophet Muhammad, who lived on the territory of Volga Bulgaria after the Bolgars had adopted Islam. The location is visited by Muslim pilgrims year-round.



The central archaeological zone

It is divided into two parts:

- Settlement that appeared before the Golden Horde period with discovered bathhouses, chambers, industrial facilities and the grounds of the ancient market;
- The central part of the Golden Horde city with such outstanding architectural buildings as the Black Chamber, the White Chamber, the Small Minaret and other architectural and archaeological sites with their natural surroundings.

This area forms a sort of an open-air museum where a visitor sees both interesting restored monuments and archaeological sites, studied by archaeologists.

The Small town

The Small town is an expressive architectural site which has authentic fragments of masonry.

Residential Area

The architectural environment of the village with its preserved historic and traditional buildings, typical of its inhabitants' way of life is of independent interest as a tourist attraction site, having potential of establishing here an ethnographic museum (with Tatar, Russian exhibitions, offering "entertaining" catering) and turning the fragments of the village historical environment into a museum. The most interesting of these are located close to a small lake Britankino.

Ecological Area

Relict oaks and birch wood form the ecological framework of the Museum Reserve, and define its cultural landscape.

PROSPECTS of DEVELOPMENT of TOURIST SPHERE

Main directions of tourism development

Cultural and educational tourism. This particular direction is mainly related to the historical and cultural resources and sights of Bolgar and its posing itself as a historical destination, the place of adoption of Islam and the capital of the ancient state.

One of the main forms of work with the visitors will be *travel services*, without accommodation for the night.

Improvement of tourist accommodation (hotels, motels) in the surrounding area will form a tourism product, designed for a few days visit - the program of 2-3 day tourism.

Event tourism. Bolgar event tourism could be focused on several matters. The major event is the adoption of Islam which took place here in 922. Marking this date along with continuous improvement of the organizational procedures will result in turning it into one of the most popular Russian events.

Sabantuy is a traditional event holiday .



Pilgrimage tourism. Ancient Bolgar has already become a center of pilgrimage for Muslims from all over Russia.

Ecotourism also opens up huge opportunities for the Bolgar museum- reserve. It is preconditioned by its natural resources, environmental peculiarities, abundant fishing opportunities and the ability to organize river tours. Ecotourism may combine visiting cultural sights with getting an acquaintance with archaeological heritage, old rural settlements and other ethnic cultures (in Tatar villages, for instance).

SCIENTIFIC TOURISM

Formation of tourism infrastructure

Tourist hotels. In order to boost tourist flow to Bolgar there is a strong need for construction of three different types of hotels and accommodation.

- For holding the annual holiday in honor of the adoption of Islam it is becoming necessary to set up one more facility for tourists – *a pilgrims' camp*.
- *Public catering facilities.* Catering system determines the reputation of a tourist zone and plays a pivotal role in a tourism industry in general.
- *Designated trade facilities.* The most exciting moment in tourist trade is purchasing an item that he or she can get only here. That purchase also contributes to the set of tourist impressions.

Organizational and economic problems of tourism development

In order to achieve setup goals the Bolgar Complex should create a special department for tourism issues, which will be responsible for the formation of its own tourist product and for providing high quality services for incoming tourists and visitors together with tour companies of Tatarstan and neighborhood regions.

One of the important issues is *provision of the tourist services with their own transportation*.

The most important component of the regional tourism infrastructure is *a Visitor-center*, which provides informational, organizational and service support for tourists.

SCIENTIFIC AND EDUCATIONAL DIRECTIONS IN MUSEUM-RESERVE ACTIVITIES

The first of these is related **to the opportunities for the development of scientific studies** by leading experts from Russia and abroad **based on the resources of the Museum-Reserve**, its historical and cultural values.

The meaning of the Bolgar ancient settlement as a unique archaeological monument, as a well-preserved ancient town of Volga Bulgaria and its worldwide fame create good conditions for development of the following scientific studies on the basis of the museum-reserve resources.



NOMINATED AREAS OF RESEARCH

Archaeological monuments and landscapes

Firstly, the work will be aimed at studying its unique archaeological monuments and landscapes, and the issues related to the history of Volga Bulgaria.

The *Centre for Archaeological Research* under the Academy of Sciences of the Republic of Tatarstan as the Russian-wide scientific-methodical center coordinating research and providing necessary advice for all Russian regions, which possess objects dating to the given period, has been established on the basis of the Bolgar Museum.

Proposed areas of archaeological research are identified in Appendix № 3.

The natural environment

Studies of *the natural environment of the territory* that have been extremely limited till now are no less important. The following studies are needed in this particular direction:

- making a list of typical and rare species of the territory: botanic and floristic analysis of the museum-reserve territory (taking into account the suggestions on the development of the territory). This work is necessary for more precise planning of ecology-oriented projects, including educational ones;
- drawing up a list of animals and birds inhabiting the territory; faunal studies of the territory of the museum-reserve (taking into consideration the suggestion on the territorial development). The work is also needed for more detailed planning of ecology-oriented projects, including educational ones (burrows of large animals were found during the field study on the right hand side of the Big Jerusalem ravine tributary);
- a comprehensive survey of the territory of the Aga Bazaar (to justify its borders);
- a comprehensive survey of the surroundings of Lake Rabiga (to justify its borders);
- a comprehensive survey of the territory of the Musin-Pushkin's estate in Antonovka (to justify the borders of the future branch of the Museum, and landscape design at the territory of the country estate);

Folklore and traditions

Research into *local folklore* promises to be fascinating as well. Folklore studies of the region, making a collection of legends and stories are important for its development. In the view of some specifics of the museum related to research issues and preservation of its archaeological and architectural heritage, the issues related to the research and conservation of the cultural heritage of the region are very important and promising.

Due to the rich history and cultural traditions of the place the folklore survey of the territory is very promising. The last study of this type was made a few decades ago. Legends and stories appropriately included in excursion activities and work with tourists are inherent elements.

There is also a justification for carrying out work aimed at drawing a map of the heritage of the toponymy of the museum-reserve and its surroundings. The scientific value of the work consists in the fact that the oral map of folklore toponymy is a part of



the Bolgar -Tatar cultural landscape, intensifying the authenticity of its architectural and archaeological heritage.

Monitoring

Work on the comparison of environmental data and human impact on the nature are very interesting. In this regard the topmost scientific task for the museum- reserve is the organization of complex monitoring which implies permanent tracking of the state of the environment and ongoing processes in accordance with clear procedures comparable to different periods and regions. This monitoring can be done on several components:

- Environmental monitoring: monitoring the system of natural and man-made factors that have an external impact on natural landscapes and some natural objects in the museum- reserve, and monitoring the overall condition of the natural environment;
- Historical and Cultural monitoring: monitoring the state of archaeological and ethnographic monuments;
- Sociocultural monitoring: monitoring the problems of population and the clarification of its dependence on various aspects of the activities in the museum- reserve, with the desire to help the objectives of the museum and participate in its work.

Implementation of integrated monitoring will also help the museum-reserve to become a real center of scientific research and information in the area, and to join the system of nationwide and even global centers tracking the condition of cultural and natural heritage. Simultaneously, it will predict the potential environmental and social problems of the Bolgar Complex.

Research and collaboration

The accumulation of scientific results and the formation of its own museum system and promising research programs will allow the Bolgar Complex to work actively with a variety of specialists (archaeologists, naturalists, ethnographers and others) later on. At that stage, it may become a very attractive research partner for professionals around the world. Moreover, the arrival and scientific work of experts may be conducted not only in terms of archaeology, but an invitation of experts on related issues (specialists who study the river landscapes, folk culture of the Tatars, etc.) can be very interesting and presents considerable potential.

In these circumstances, the Bolgar Museum can also be a venue for prestigious conferences, seminars and international meetings.

Information and technical direction of the Museum activity suggests that a powerful computer service will be formed that will be able to work with a great deal of information, grouped by databases, and will ensure updating of databases, responses to requests for information and will facilitate the preparation of publishing materials. The programs of informational support are expected to provide constant scientific support for the main areas of research, museum and other activities that will be implemented in the form of creating and maintaining the proprietary databases of the *Geographic Information Systems* of the Bolgar Museum.



An educational center

The second trend is the **creation of a special educational center** on the basis of the Bolgar Complex, conducting historical and environmental education, and education in other disciplines. This activity can be combined with teaching at local schools.

It is very important to create distinctive lessons or courses on archaeological heritage, and training practices for students of historical and archaeological disciplines on the basis of the museum-reserve.

An archaeological training camp is currently run each summer for volunteers, who come from different regions (for example, a large group from Ulyanovsk). In the long term, specialists-archaeologists, as well as students of other faculties of humanities and natural sciences, and departments of fine arts will be able to undergo an annual practice in such a camp.

The role of the Bolgar Complex can be very significant in improving the education system in the region. First of all, experts from the Complex should prepare a system of school lessons (in archaeology and ecology), and give them to the students. The museum staff can also conduct natural history studies in local schools, preparing special teaching materials on local history.

In future, the activity of the Bolgar Complex should be an impetus for the appearance of specialized training centers in the city of Bolgar, a kind of school for the revival of crafts, and for the learning objectives of the tourist service. By close cooperation with schools, the Complex will have an opportunity to prepare for the future their own staff, who will be able to perceive new environmental and cultural challenges of revival of their native land.

Reoriented structures in an existing training school (or newly generated specialized training school in the future) will conduct training in two main profiles:

- Folk art (development of handicrafts and folklore);
- Socio - cultural activities (organization of tourism and leisure, cultural and educational activities).

An important part of implementing the results and techniques of scientific and educational programs is the information and publishing activities of the Bolgar Complex.

Information and publishing activity of the Complex should accomplish three main tasks:

- Preparation and implementation of scientific publications (scientific papers of individual authors and monographs, materials based on new research, republication of old books, etc.);
- Introduction of the results of research into scientific circulation;
- Promotion of the unique historical and cultural heritage of the ancient Bolgars.

Implementation of the objective of improving the website of the Museum with the necessary information for Russian and foreign experts and users is very important.

The third area of the Museum's publishing should include the publication of various works directly associated with the region and its history, advertising display and travel opportunities of both the Museum and the Spasskiy district.



Assessment of social economic efficiency of developing of the Bolgar Complex

Despite the considerable development costs of the development of the Bolgar Complex, in the future its activity will bring tangible social and economic effects.

The main directions of development of the Complex are focused on the formation of the unique museum offer, the resource base of tourist accommodation and the infrastructure complex that would allow a full-fledged and long visitor stay and would overcome the existing situation, when most visitors visit the ancient monuments of Bolgar only as tourists and remain here for a few hours.

By 2020, up to 20 different museums could operate in the territory of the Bolgar Complex and its surroundings. Among them, there will be museums with archaeological exhibits as well as the Bolgar city museum, the Museum of estate culture, etc. Creating a system of museums will allow to distribute evenly the visitors on the territory of the nominated property and to avoid excessive load on the individual sections of landscapes and historical sites. It pursues another goal - the formation of tourist demand, which encourages the visitor to linger in this place for several days.

It is also expected to form a ramified network of different typologies and on the comfort level of tourist accommodation facilities (hotels, motels, private homes). The total capacity of accommodation establishments will be able to achieve 1200 beds by 2020.

The programs of children's tourism will also be formed; there will be cultural and educational campaigns in order to raise the educational level of young people and youth, and a youth development local history movement. These programs will be closely connected with issues of school education.

The planned strategy of tourism development allows increasing the extent of visiting the places of interest and providing significant economic effect.

An important social effect of the Bolgar Complex is also creating the conditions for historical and environmental education, with environmental education for teenagers and youth.

Another key facet of social efficiency will be changes in lifestyle and the improvement of living standards for the local population, with the emergence of new opportunities for employment, including for the employment of some categories of vulnerable populations (seniors, youth).

Another social accomplishment would be the emergence of new opportunities not only for employment but also for special education based on technical training schools, contributing to training for the development of cultural preservation and tourism.



Appendix № 3

**Strategy and Program
for the preservation and study of the Bolgar
historical and archaeological complex
for 2011-2019**



The basis for the programme development

The integrated project “Cultural Heritage – Sviyazhsk island-town and ancient Bolgar”
The European Convention on Preservation of Archaeological Heritage

Program purpose

Total preservation and modern inter-disciplinary study of archaeological heritage of the Bulgarian historical and archaeological complex, considering it as the vital source helping to restore history of the humankind and environment

Program objectives

- Conservation of standing and excavated architectural-archaeological objects and archaeological artifacts;
- Development and implementation of modern methods of displaying historical and archaeological information;
- Carrying out scientific and rescue historical-archaeological research on the territory of the Bolgar architectural-archaeological complex;
- Spatial arrangement of archaeological town facilities of Bolgar and its district, including the establishment of operational historical and cultural geoinformation databases;
- Research of settlements by nondestructive methods (remote sensing, geophysics)
- Study of ancient production technologies, and the physical and chemical properties of products;
- Integrated study and modeling of the process of nature development and natural resource management;
- Anthropogenetic study of human bone remains of Bolgar town necropolises.

Research methods

- historical and archaeological;
- Earth's space remote sensing;
- geophysical;
- chemical and technological;
- soil and palynological;
- geomorphological;
- anthropogenetic;
- archeo-zoological;
- geoinformation.

Directions of research

- Geoinformation system development of Bolgar and Sviyazhsk region with the adjacent territories;
- Reconstruction of habitat and economic life;
- Development and application of new age-determination methods;



- Reconstruction of ancient production technologies;
- Anthropogenetic research and reconstruction;
- Introduction of modern methods dealing with accurate field fixing.

Expected results

- Identification of objects for museification;
- Development of a “Virtual Cultural Heritage Property” program;
- Development of a Bolgar and Sviyazhsk geoinformation system;
- Preparation of presentation publications;
- Development of new expositions;
- Broad representation of the works results in leading international scientific publications;
- By 2019 another 9 monuments situated in the territory of the Bolgar ancient settlement are supposed to be studied and granted the status of a museum;
- Incorporation of the Bolgar architectural and archaeological complex in museums space of Russia.

Archaeological studies of 1864-2010

Research has been conducted since **1864**.

Area of the Bolgar ancient settlement: **400 ha**.

The investigated area by 2010: **2 ha**

Spassky district of the Republic of Tatarstan (Bolgar region): **340** archaeological sites and/or monuments

The list of investigated areas of Bolgar for 2011 based on historical sources, on-site observation and results of archaeological works

Inventory of the Bolgar ancient settlement in 1712 by clerk A.Mikhaylov (**more than 70 objects**)

In 1768 the Orenburg expeditions led by P.S.Pallas (**44 objects**)

In 1841 the Big Minaret of the Cathedral Mosque crashed down

In the 1860th the White Chamber had collapsed

In 1871 – the plan of 1869 with designation of **25 objects**

In 1901 – the integrated plan of A.Shmidt, A.Straus and N. Savenkova, (**more than 50 objects**)

In 1919 – Plan survey under the leadership of A.S.Bashkirov (**about 20 objects**)

In 1864 the first archaeological research by V.G.Tizengauzen

In 1938 the Bolgar archaeological expedition was made (Prof. Smirnov A.P.)

Results of researches from 1864-2010

More than 23 thousand sq.m are studied with more than 150 excavations

About 30 brick and stone constructions have been studied and museified



Bolgar's monumental architectural and archaeological objects (the XIII-XV centuries)

Architectural and archaeological objects of the Bolgar ancient settlement survived up to now in various degrees of condition.

1. The standing monuments (authentic – remaining in rather satisfactory condition, partially ruined, and restored):

The Cathedral Mosque with the Big Minaret (“Quadrangle”) of the XIII-XV centuries.

The Northern mausoleum (“A monastic cellar”) XIV century.

The East mausoleum (“St. Nikolay’s church”) XIV century.

The Khans’ Shrine of the XIV century (5 buildings)

The Small Minaret of the XIV century.

The Black chamber of the XIV century.

The Small town of the XIV century (3 buildings)

In total number of monuments remained: 13 buildings

2. The excavated sites (the authentic remains of buildings – partial remains, excavated, restored):

Mausoleums of XIV centuries (ruins) (8 buildings)

Apart from the East and the Northern mausoleums, and the Khans’ Shrine, six more mausoleums have been studied in the Bolgar ancient settlement to the south of the central part, in the southeast area in the district of the Small Minaret and in the southern areas. Mausoleums are constructed of limestone in the middle of the XIV century and in the beginning of the XV century. Burials in mausoleums testify that they are burials of notable, especially esteemed persons. All burials are made on a Muslim ceremony and are identical to burials of city cemeteries.

In 2012 the excavation of CLXXIV under the leadership of I. I. Elkina investigated Mausoleum No. 6 discovered by geophysical methods in the southern part of the Bulgarian ancient settlement. Now its preservation is carried out.

During planned field works in 2013 mausoleums known from cartographical sources were found by the Small town and the Babiyl hillock. Geophysical methods did not reveal their location.

The White chamber XIV century.

The East chamber of the XIII century.

The Greek chamber XIV century.

The Bath No. 1 XIV century

The Bath No. 2 XIV century

The Bath No. 3 XIV century

The house with towers of the XIII century.

The Trade yard of XIV century.

The total number of revealed and investigated buildings: 17

3. The location of buildings was researched by means of visual supervision and methods of remote sensing:



In the territory of the ancient settlement of Bolgar 9, buildings of the middle of XIV – the beginning of the XV centuries - are located, some of which are traced in the form of small hills with a large content of lime and stone rubble. Only those objects which demand urgent measures for their preservation and give the chance to expand information on this category of monuments are studied. The plan of 2011-2019 proposes the study of 2 earlier revealed mausoleums. Further researches are not envisaged. These objects are considered as zones of the archaeological reserve, and buildings especially valuable to future generations

The total number of revealed and located buildings – 9

4. Historically known buildings (eventual)

According to written and cartographical sources, in the territory of the ancient settlement there are approximately 50 buildings, in addition to those which are designated in points 1-3. These are determined by written sources and are not revealed topographically in the territory of the nominated property and are a subject of researches by nondestructive methods. This category of monuments shows the considerable research potential of the territory of the Complex.

Thus, in the territory of the Bolgar architectural and archaeological complex about 80 monumental stone constructions of the XIII-XV centuries are recorded at the moment.

The plan of archaeological works in the territory of the Bolgar ancient settlement, which is aimed to discover new objects in order to give them the status of a museum for 2011-2019

In recent years leading Russian and foreign specialists were carrying out excavations and monitoring of archaeological objects using nondestructive research methods (such as aerospace, geophysical, physical and chemical research, GIS, 3D modeling, etc.) in the territory of the nominated property. They managed to discover earlier unknown medieval brick and stone buildings i.e. “the Khan’s palace”, Gostini Dvor (medieval trade establishment), mausoleums; craft constructions (kilns); to study rural settlement planigraphy and also to set up the database and the virtual project of the Bolgar ancient settlement.

In order to accomplish objectives connected with observation of cultural and natural heritage on the base of the Bolgar museum preserve, the government of the Republic of Tatarstan had established a special Centre for the study of Bolgar civilization. One of its functions is constant monitoring of the state of the cultural layers and archaeological memorials of Bolgar.

Development of scientific research in the Bolgar region is supposed to continue archaeological study. The program of works is provided till 2019. It includes not only excavation works, but also the wide use of modern research methods of an archaeological monument.

1. The use of satellite imagery for the identification of new architectural monumental objects and for study of monuments’ planning structure. The geophysical methods, allowing for the location of architectural and production constructions are widely applied in order to preserve cultural layer.



2. A separate part of the program proposes the creation of a controlled database of the cultural heritage property, which has the possibility of operational feeding of data on the study and assessment of the current condition of the property. Bolgar's GIS contains data on materials of previous research and the works on carried out for the preservation of monuments as well as information about current and planned scientific and restoration activities. The information system also contains details about the museum collections, their condition, and data on results of their studies. The geoinformation system of recording historical and archaeological data (GIS), and information on archives, excavations, satellite data, geophysical research and the museum collections created during implementation of the project increase the efficiency of work of the monument preservation, and planning of its scientific study and museification.

3. The independent direction of the program is the implementation of complex restoration of the archaeological finds, which provides for their long term integrity. The excavated artifacts are investigated not only by traditional archaeological methods, but also be applying special (emission spectral) equipment for studying chemical properties of archaeological subjects.

4. According to existing Russian legislation, archaeological researches are carried out in full also on venues of the earthwork caused by economic needs of functioning of the Culture preserve and development of its infrastructure.

5. Creation of a virtual museum – Bolgar city (website museum) is the optimized general and situational reconstruction of the city and separate elements of city life. The presented materials can be from the various areas: from archival data and historical artifacts to virtual and other museum collections. Virtual museum solves problems of storage, safety, ensuring broad, fast and easy access to exhibits.

Archeological excavations planned from 2011-2019.

1. *Archaeological excavations under the museum and River Port communications*
2. *Archaeological excavation "The palace (the house with towers)"*
3. *Archaeological excavation "Market"*
4. *Archaeological excavation "The southern building of the Small town"*
5. *Archaeological researches of sites revealed by Aerospace Remote Earth Probing*
6. *Archaeological excavation "Moat of the XII century"*
7. *Archaeological excavation "Moat and rampart of the XIV century"*
8. *Archaeological excavation "Bolgar's production and residential development"*
9. *Archaeological excavation "Mausoleums"*
10. *Archaeological excavation "Settlement of early Bolgars"*

Spatial placement of archaeological objects of Bolgar and their district with creation of operated historical and cultural geoinformation databases

Introduction of technologies of computer mapping of archaeological sites

- Full extraction, copying and storage of information on archaeological sites



- Recording of mass material on an excavation site with the help of high-precision geodetic equipment

Development of systems of management of databases and geoinformation systems in archeology

- Use of GIS gives the chance not only to record the spatial arrangement of archaeological finds, but also to predict location of monuments in territories not studied yet.

- Creation of a virtual archaeological museum project

Bolgar's total survey by nondestructive methods (geo-, aerospace and magnetic investigations)

Geophysical researches

Georadar-location

Space remote sensing of the earth

Creation and introduction of new methods of studying of archaeological objects on reconstruction of environment and of dating

Direction of Researches	Types of Works
Adaptation and application of a reconstruction methods complex of environment conditions	drilling of lake cores and sampling of residues
	vegetation reconstruction
	humidity assessment during various eras, erosion of soils
	reconstruction of summer and winter paleotemperatures
	reconstruction of environment, agriculture and plant growing
	archaeozoological researches of bone residues of animals
Dating of objects	radio-carbon dating
	archaeomagnetic dating of the remains of the hearths
	thermomagnetic dating on cores of lake residues
Research of products from clay	mineralogy of clays
	thermomagnetic studying of technology of baking
	research of microelement structure



Research of metal wares	metallographic researches of technology features
	research of microelement structure, raw materials identification
	structure studying, raw materials identification, origin
	research of alloys structure, identification of products
Research of products from glass	microscopic research of production technologies
	research of microelement structure, raw materials identification
Biogeochemical estimates of environment	geochemical characteristics of soils, occupation layers
Anthropogenetic research of bone remains	Genetic analysis
	Reconstruction by M. M. Gerasimov's method.
	Definition of the social and biological status.
	Definitions of racial type.
	Odontologic analysis
	Carrying out forensic proceedings of bone remains

Measures for preservation and museification of archaeological sites and objects

- Preservation and restoration of architectural constructions and objects in museum collections
- Creation and introduction of new technologies of preservation and restoration
- Creation of objects of modern museum display and routes
- Implementation of the “Operating Excavation - On-line Display of Museum Object “ project.

Organizational and structural actions

Creation of the archaeological restoration center of the Institute of History of the Tatarstan Academy of Sciences

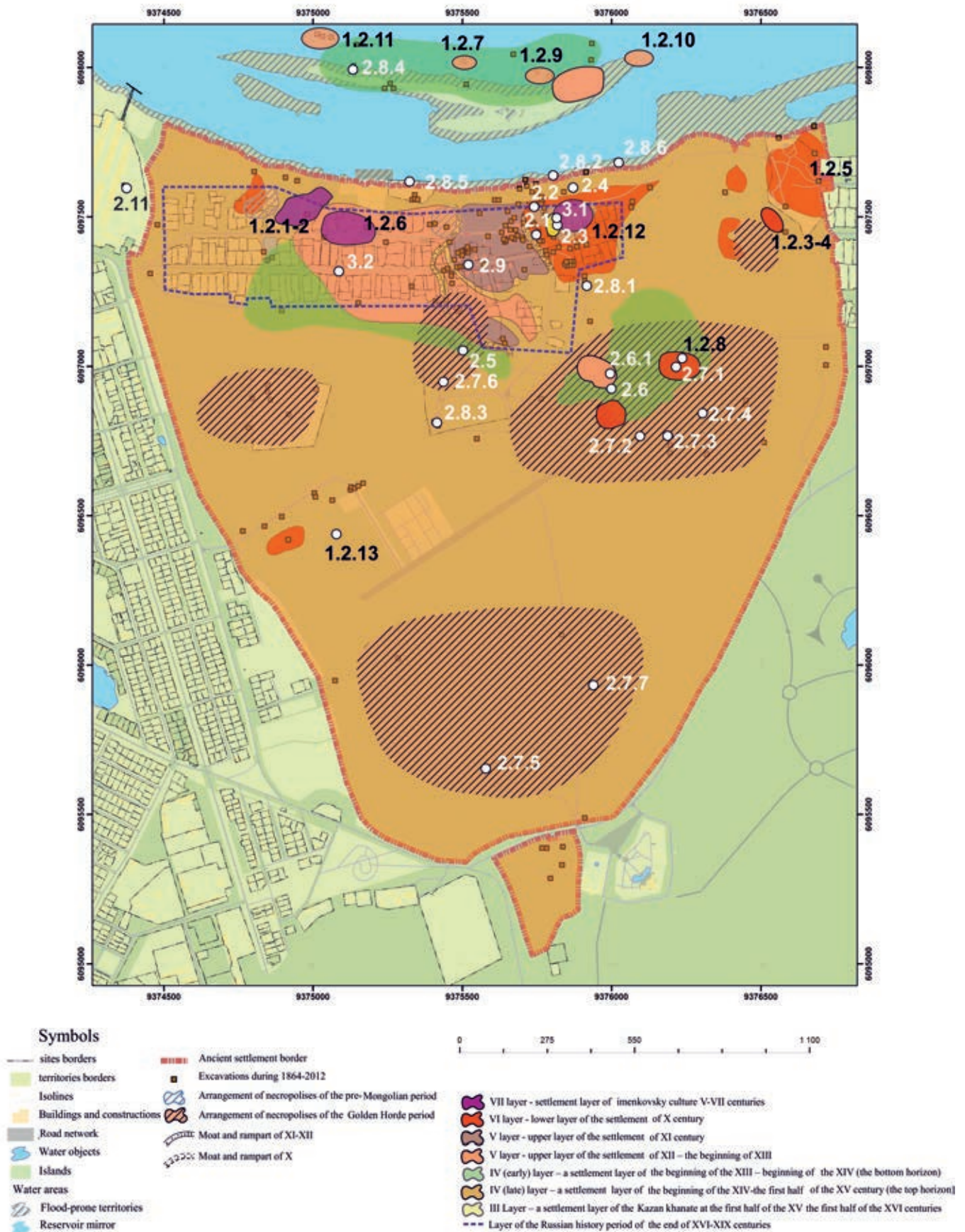
Creation of the International research center “Bolgar Civilization” in Bolgar

Providing suitable storage conditions for archaeological collections: depository creation for storage of collections of mass material.



Maps and Photos

The Plan of the objects of Bolgar historic and archeological Complex

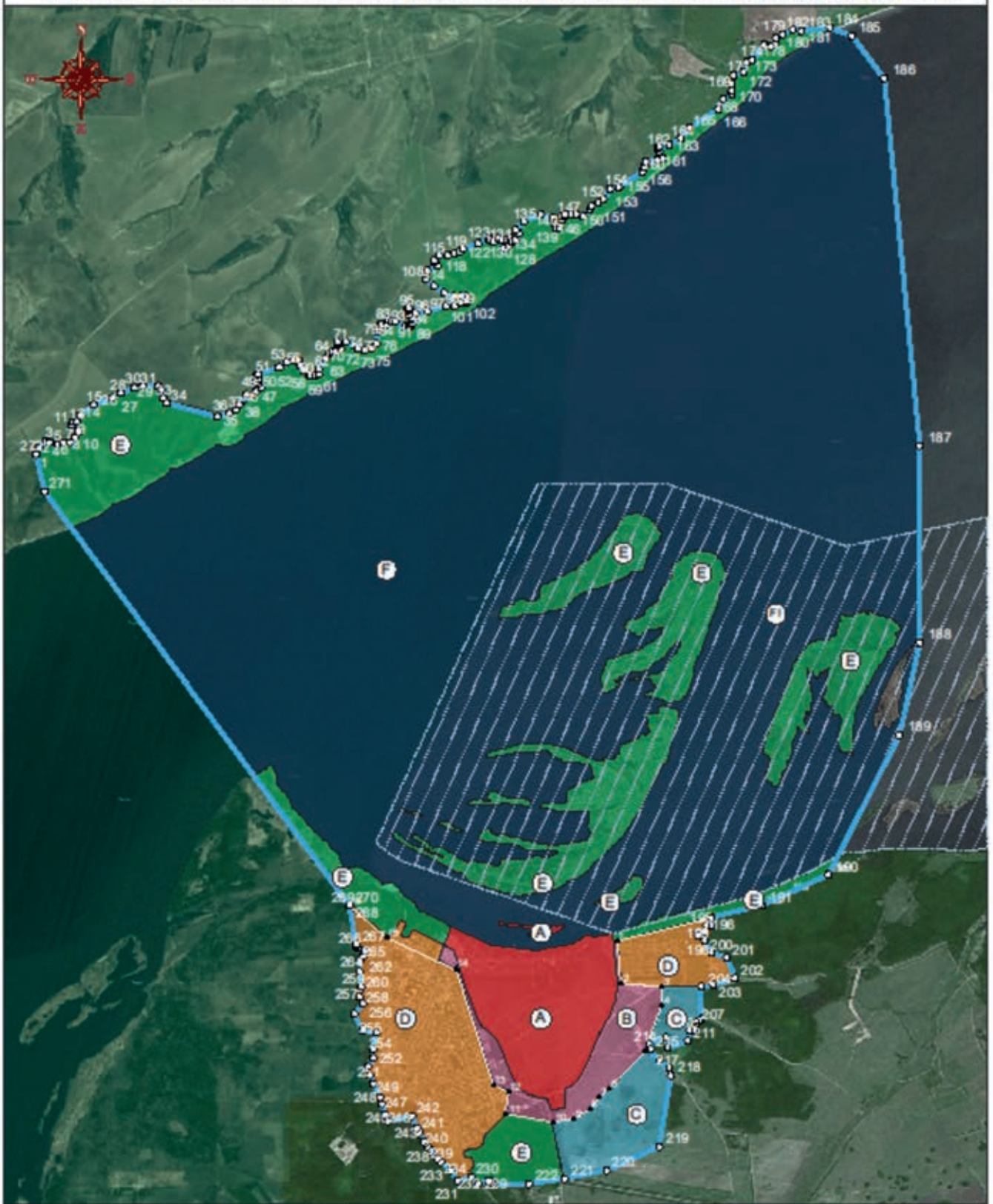




List of cultural heritage sites on the territory of Bolgar historical and archaeological complex

#	Monument	Date
1.1.	Bolgar settlement 10-20 c. and its archaeological sites	
1.1.1	Fortification	10-14 c. A.D.
1.1.2	Occupation layer	5-20 c.
1.2.	Local archaeological sites situated on the territory of the Bolgar ancient settlement and its district	
1.2.1-2.	Bolgar settlement and burial ground "Babyi Hill"	5-7 c.
1.2.3-4.	Bolgar settlement IV-V. "Ust-Jerusalem settlements I-II".	10 c.
1.2.5-8.	Imenkovo villages on the territory of Bolgar settlement	5-7 c.
1.2.9-11	Bolgar settlement I- III.	14 c.
1.2.12.	"Koptelov Hill".	5-7 c.
1.2.13.	Ceramic workshops at Galanskiy Lake.	14 c.
2.	Stone and brick buildings of the XIII-XIV centuries	
2. 1.	The Cathedral Mosque ("Tetragon") and the Big Minaret	2 half.13 c.
2.2.	The North Mausoleum ("Monastery Cellar")	1330s.
2.3.	The East Mausoleum ("St. Nicholay Church")	1330s.
2.4.	The House with Towers ("Khan's Palace")	2 half 13 c.
2.5	The Black Chamber	mid. 14 c.
2.6	Small Minaret	2 half. 14 c.
2.6. 1.	The Khans' Shrine	14 c.
2.7.	Mausoleums	
2.7.1-6	Mausoleum №1-6	14 c.
2.7.7.	The Southern Mausoleum	14 c.
2.8.	Bathhouses	
2.8.1.	The East Chamber	End 13-beg.14 c.
2.8.2.	The Red Chamber	14 c.
2.8.3.	The White Chamber	14 c.
2. 8.4-6	Bathhouses №1-3	14 c.
2.9.	The Market place ("Caravan-saray")	14 c.
2.10.	Small Town	14 c.
2.11.	The Greek Chamber ("Armenian necropolis")	14 c.
3.	Russian settlement Bolgary monuments	
3.1.	The Church of the Dormition	1732-1734. 1841,
3.2.	The Village of Bolgary	18-20 c.
4.	Cultivated and natural landscape sites	
4.2.	Gabdrakhman's Well (Captain's well)	

THE BUFFER ZONE OF THE BOLGAR HISTORICAL-ARCHEOLOGICAL COMPLEX

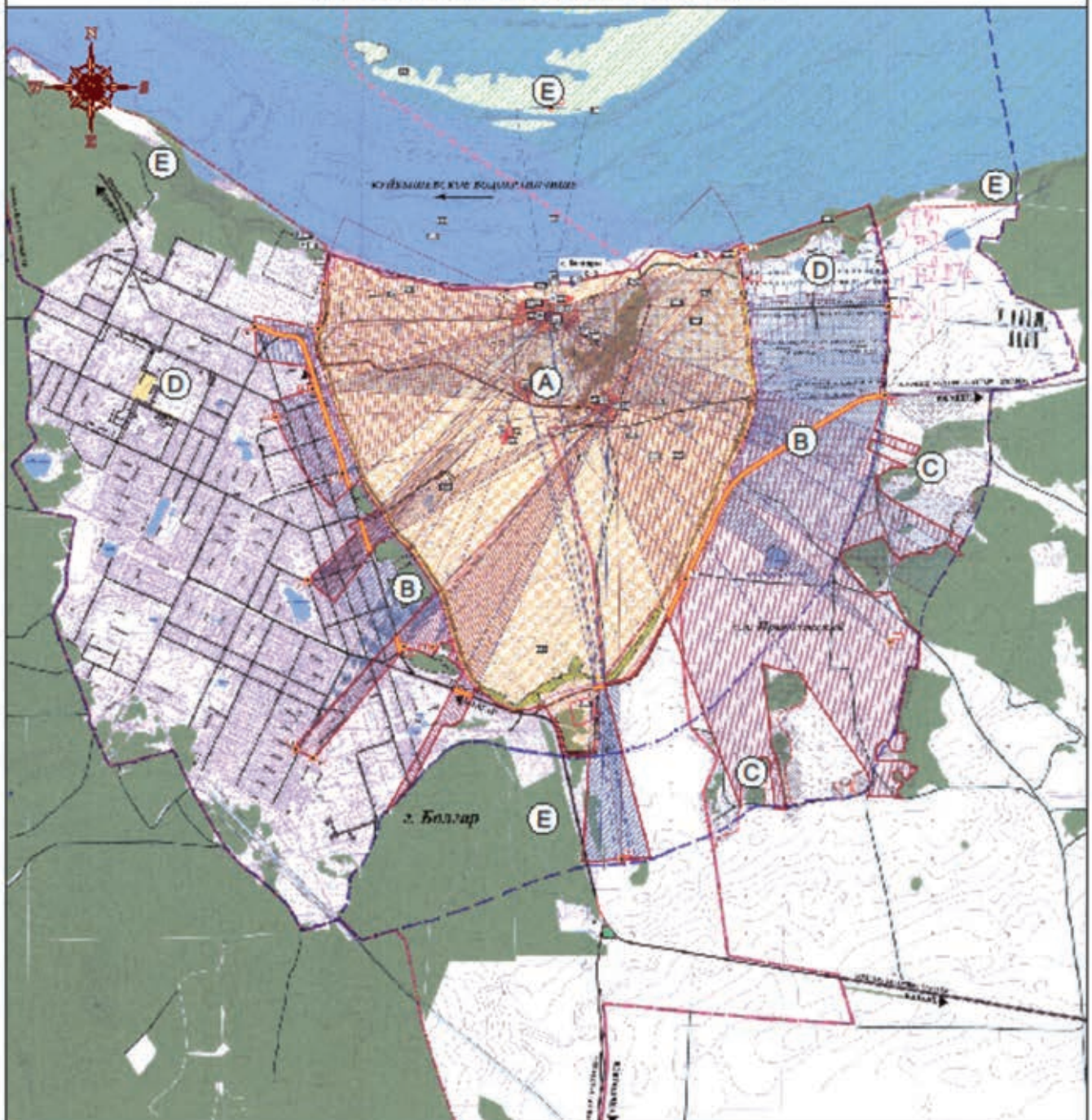


- (A)** The territory of the cultural heritage property
- (B)** The territory directly adjacent to the Bolgar ancient settlement **S=12 101 hectares**
- (C)** Undeveloped sites outside the ramparts of the Bolgar ancient settlement

Map symbols

- (D)** The territory of the Bolgar town settlement and the village settlement "Privolzhskiy"
- (E)** Natural landscape sub-zone (forest, the littoral zone, islands of the Kuybyshev reservoir)
- (R)** The water zone of the Kuybyshev reservoir R – the water zone within the boundaries of the "Spasskiy" nature reserve
- (Hatched)** The boundaries of the "Spasskiy" nature reserve

LANDSCAPE-VISUAL ANALYSIS – EXPLANATION OF THE BOUNDARIES OF THE BUFFER ZONE AND SUB-ZONES



Map symbols

- (A) The territory of the cultural heritage property
- (B) The territory directly bordering the ramparts of the Bolgar ancient settlement
- (C) Undeveloped sites outside the ramparts of the Bolgar ancient settlement
- (D) The territory of the Bolgar town settlement and the village settlement "Privolzhskiy"
- (E) Natural landscape sub-zone (forest, the littoral zone, islands of the Kuybyshev reservoir)

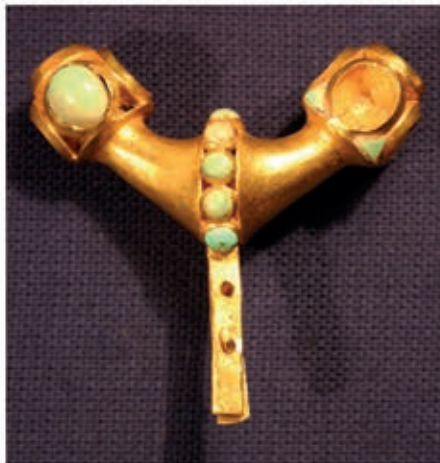
Air-photography of the settlement of Bolgar



BOLGAR AND REGIONS IN V-VII CENTURIES



BOLGAR REGIONS IN VII CENTURY



Kommenternovskij kurgan

BOLGAR IN X CENTURY



ETHNOCULTURAL GROUPS

BOLGAR IN X CENTURY



TRADE TOOLS

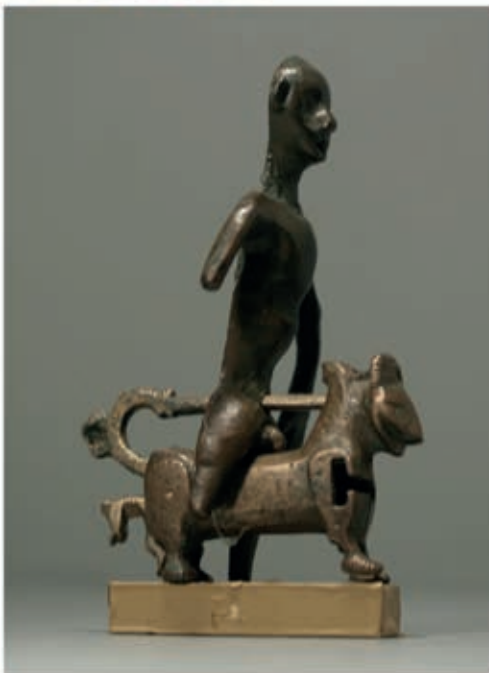
BOLGAR IN XI-XII CENTURIES



BOLGAR REGIONS IN XI-XIII CENTURIES



**COZHAYEVSKIY
TREASURE**



MAKLASHEEVSKIY "RIDER"



BOLGAR IN XIII-XIV CENTURIES



BRONZE ARTICLES

BOLGAR IN XIII-XIV CENTURIES



BOLGAR IN XIII-XV CENTURIES

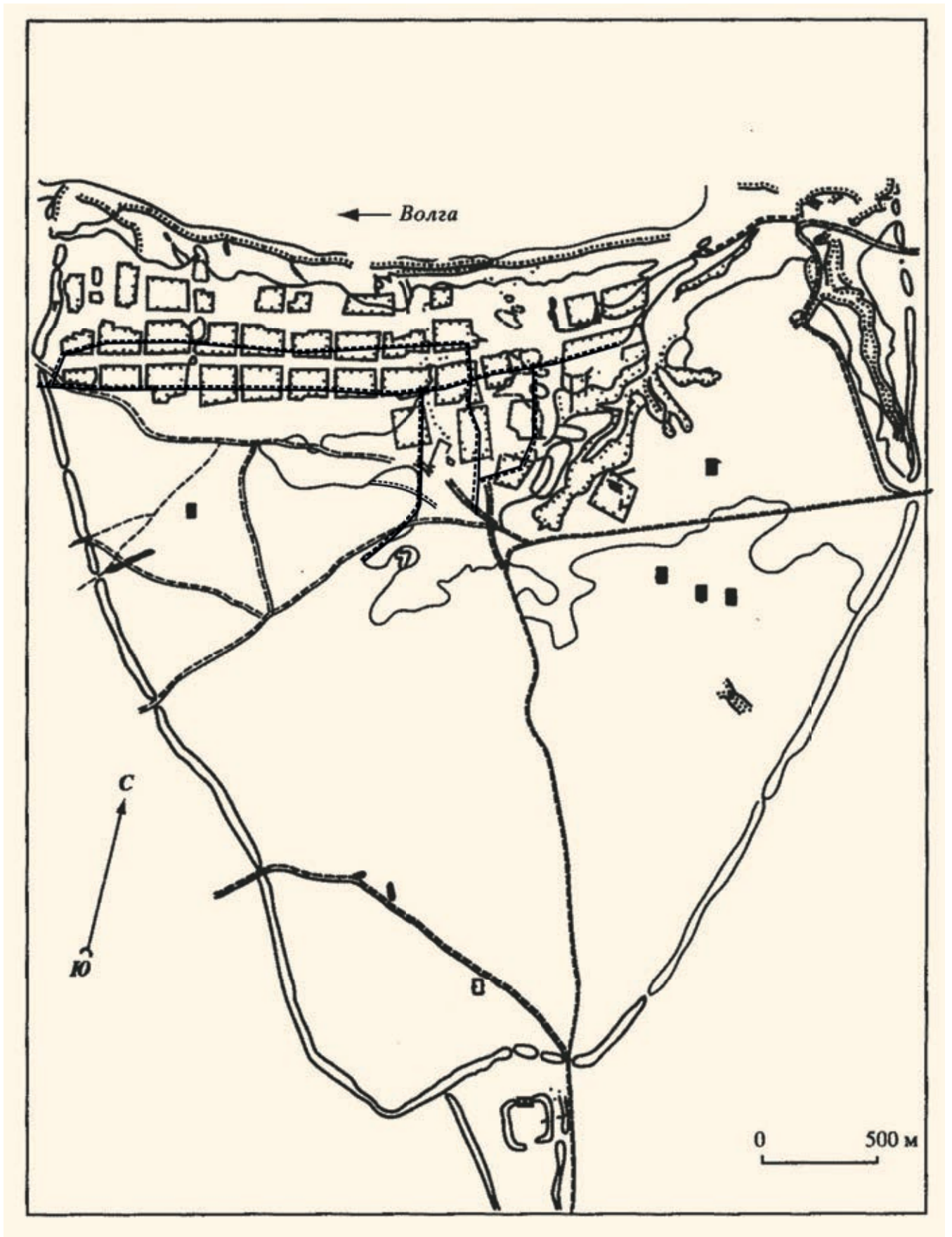


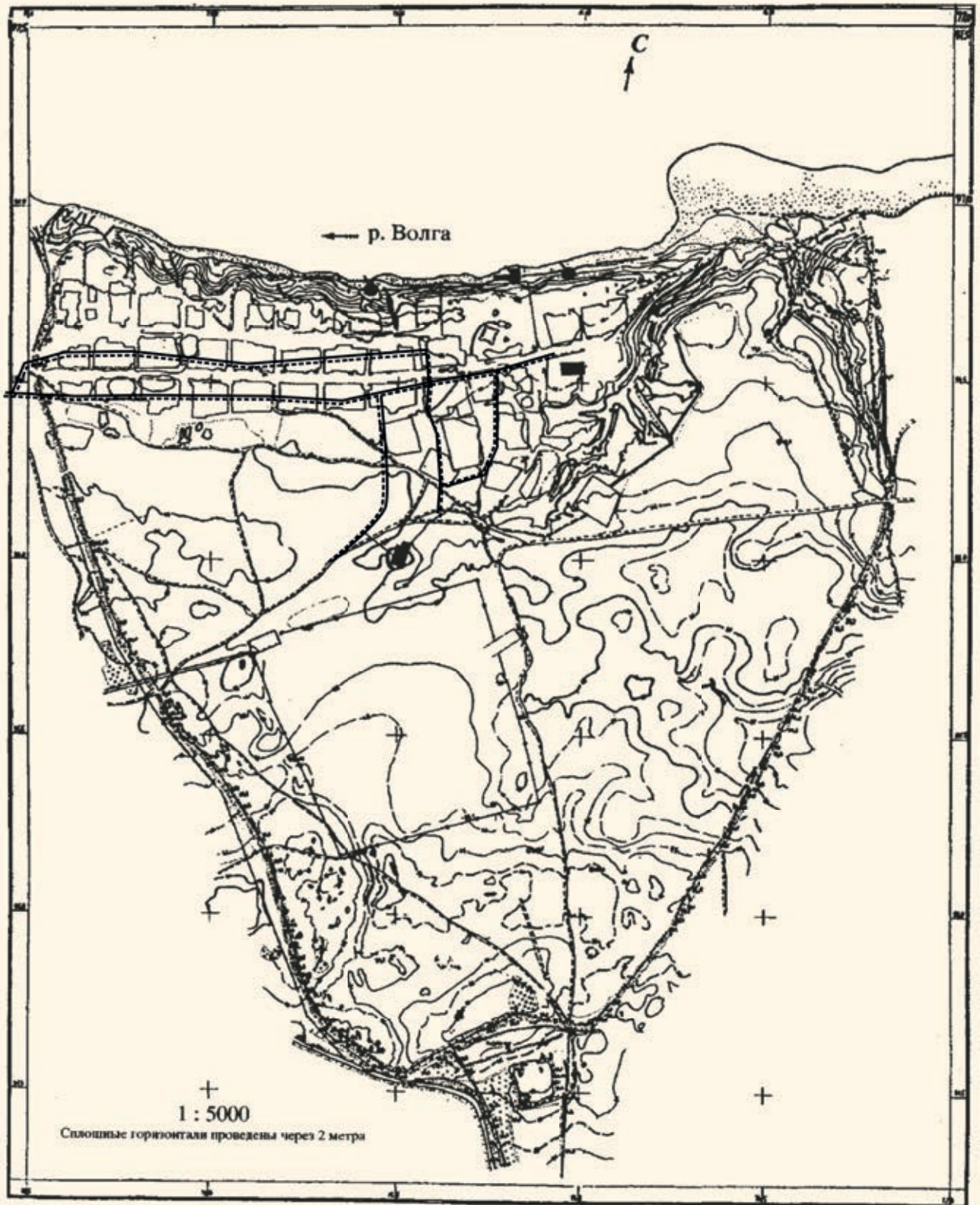
METAL WARE

BOLGAR IN XIII-XV CENTURIES



OVENWARE







Ramparts and moats





Ramparts and moats





Ramparts and moats





Ramparts and moats





Jerusalem (Ierusalimskiy) ravine





Ceramic workshops at Galanskiy Lake
(the first half of the XIV century)





Ceramic workshops at Galanskiy Lake
(the first half of the XIV century)





The Cathedral Mosque and Big Minaret
("Rectangle") XIII – XIV centuries





The Cathedral Mosque and Big Minaret
("Rectangle") XIII – XIV centuries



*The Big Minaret and the Cathedral Mosque ("Tetragon") (ruins).
The drawing by the brothers N.G. and G.G. Chernechov's. 1838.*



The North Mausoleum
("Monastery Cellar") the 1330s





The North Mausoleum
("Monastery Cellar") the 1330s





The East Mausoleum
("St. Nicholay Church") the 1330s



The East Mausoleum
("St. Nicholay Church") the 1330s



*The East Mausoleum ("St. Nicholas Church").
The drawing by the F.Kh.Erdman. 1825.*

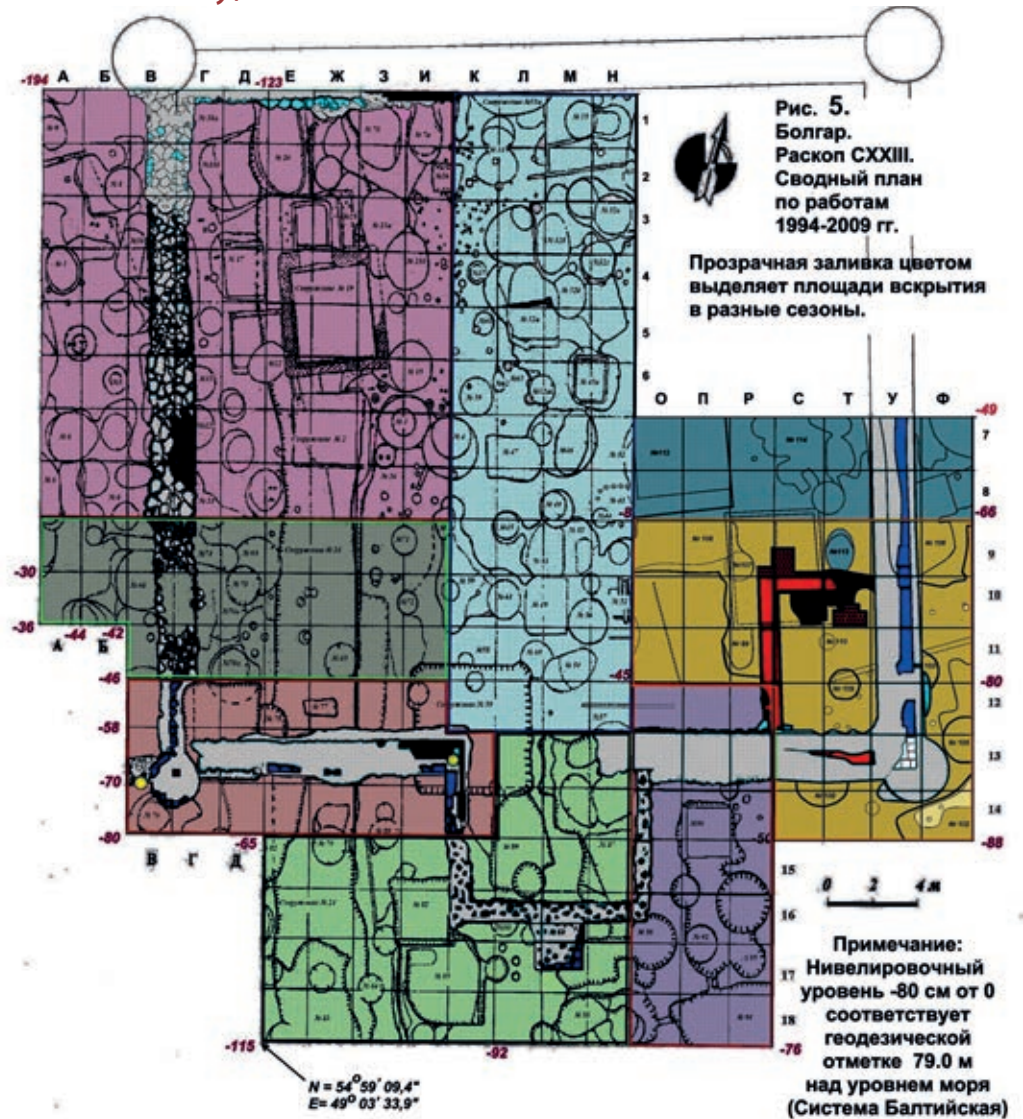




The House with Towers ("Khan's Palace")
(the middle of the XIII century)



The House with Towers ("Khan's Palace") (the middle of the XIII century)





The Black Chamber (the middle of the XIV century)



The Black Chamber. The plan and the drawing by the A. Schmit. 1827.

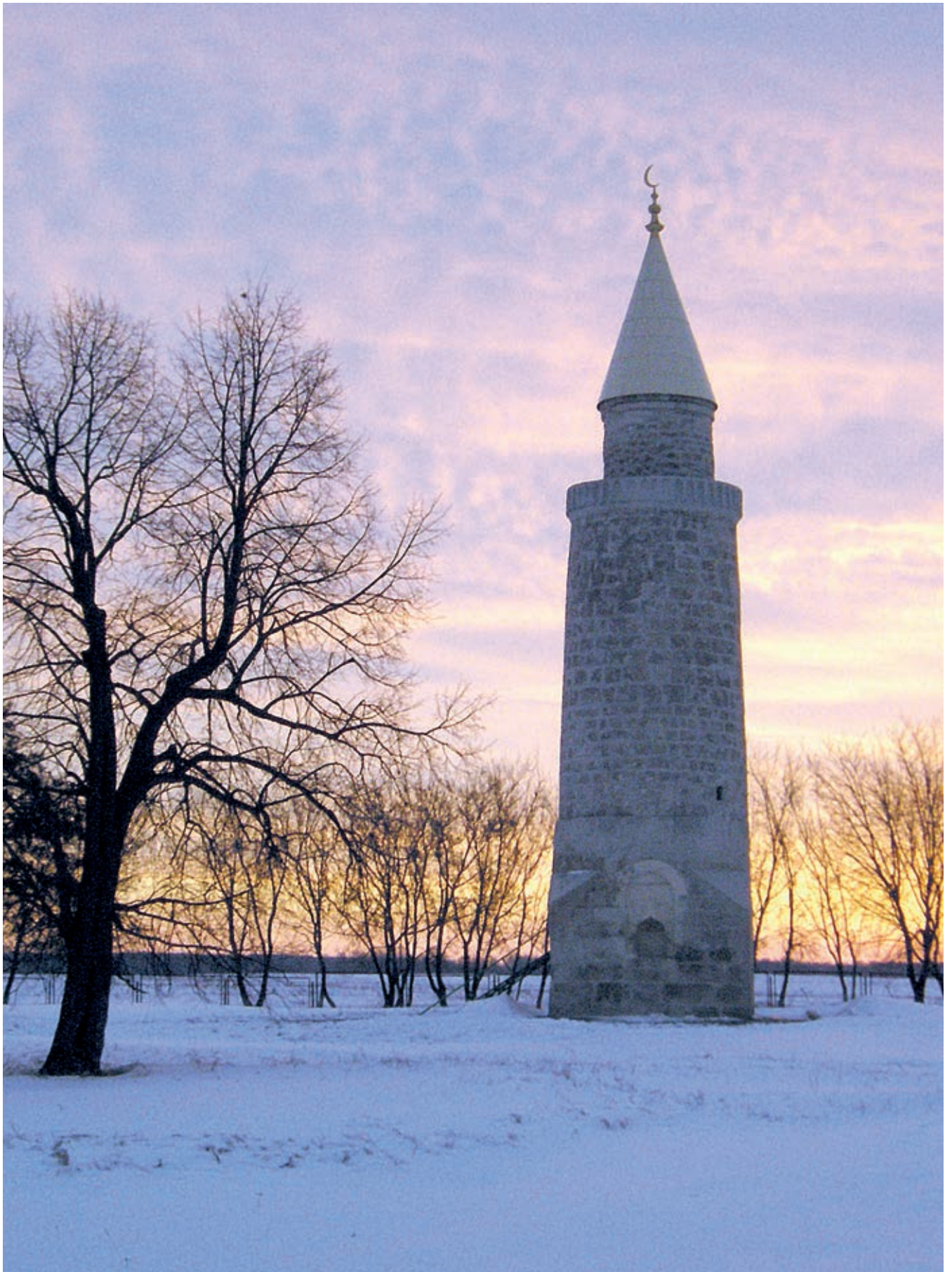


The Black Chamber (the middle of the XIV century)





The Small Minaret (the second half of the XIV century)



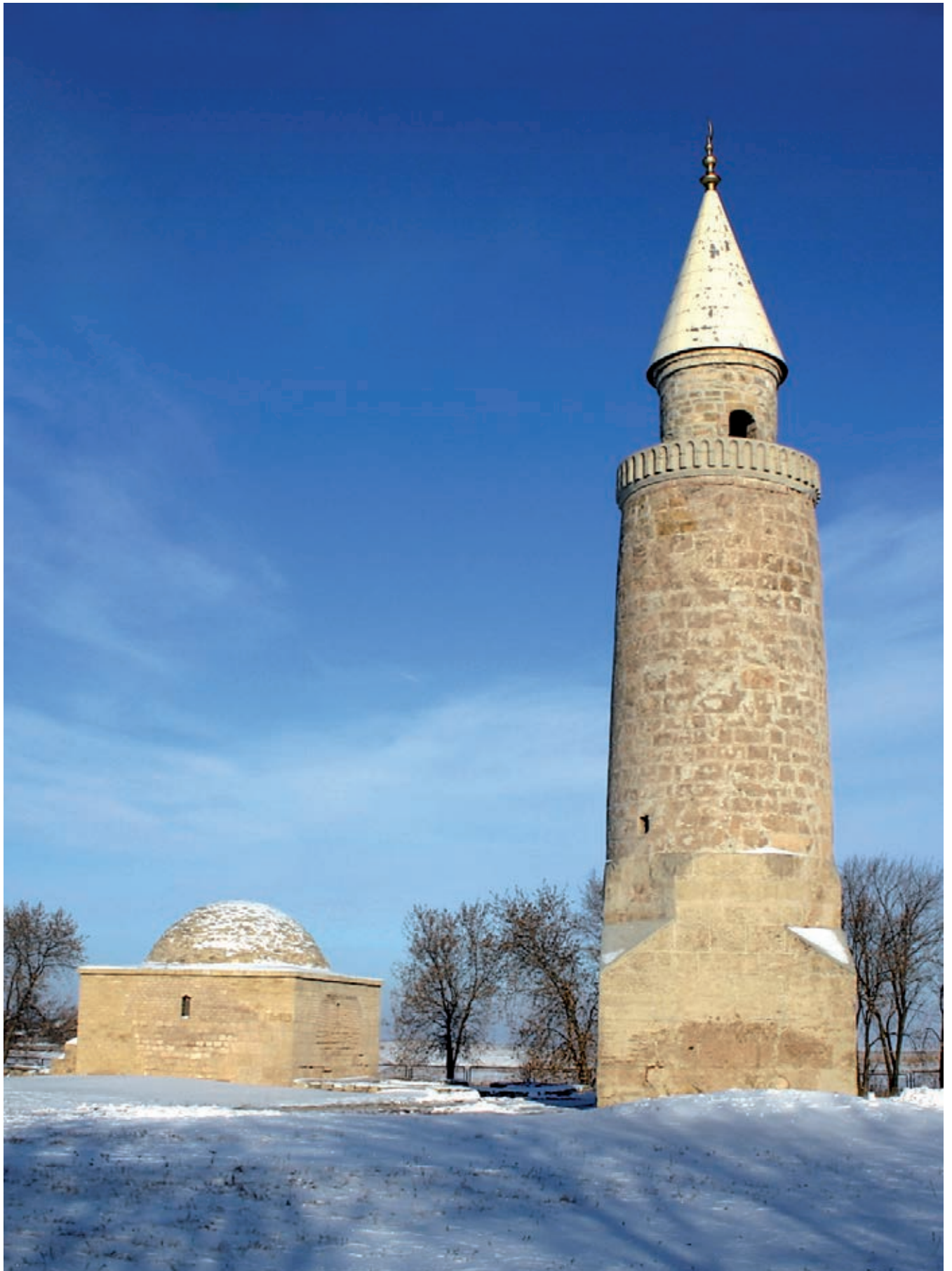


The Small Minaret (the second half of the XIV century)





Khans' Shrine XIV century





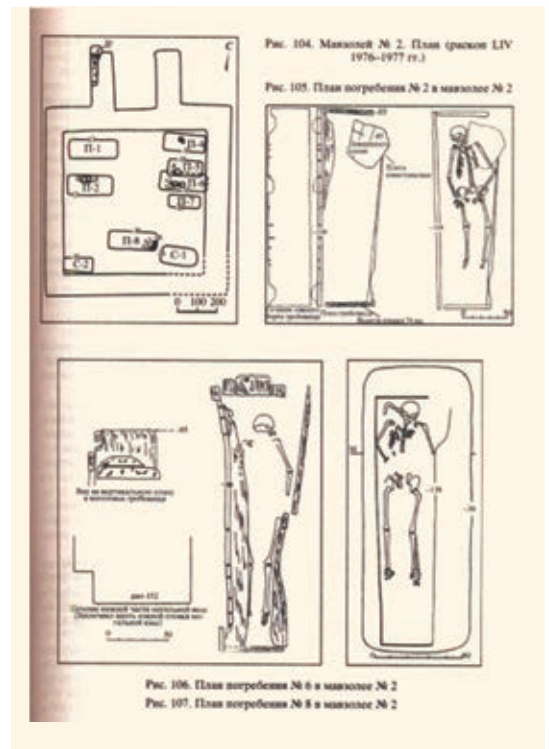
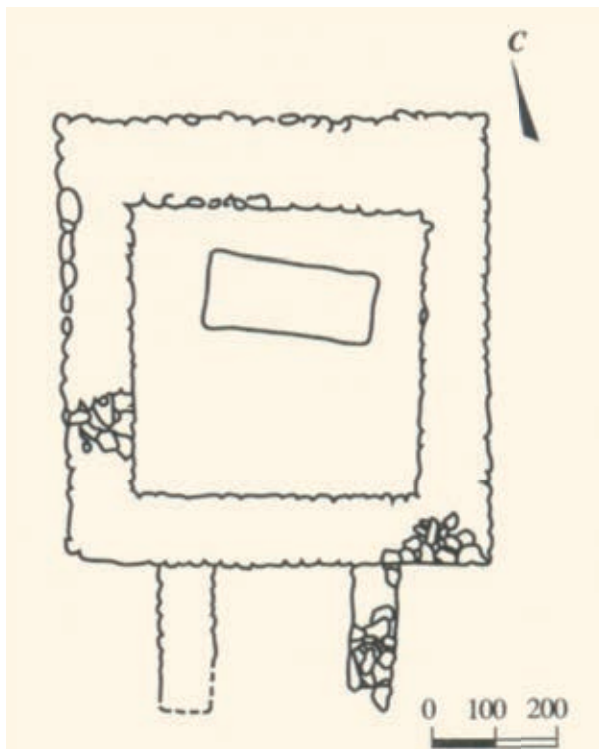
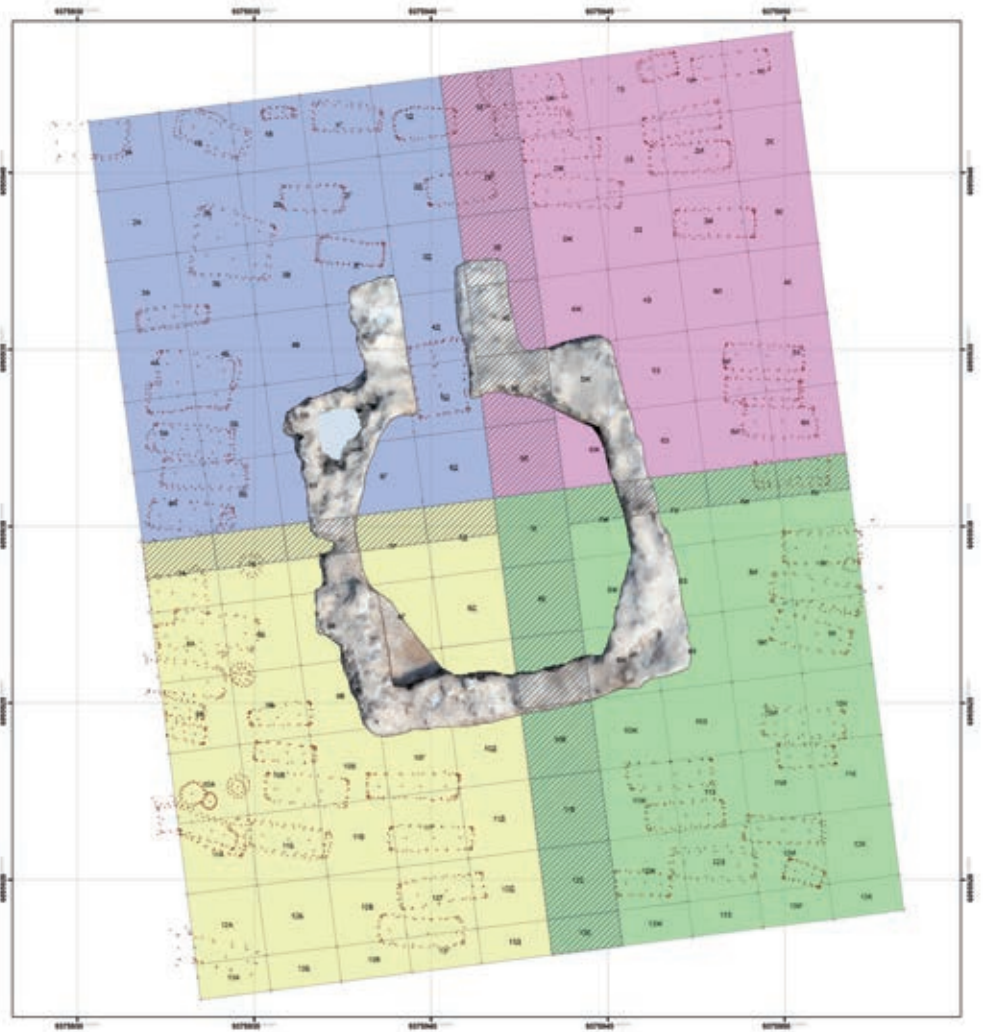
Khans' Shrine XIV century



Mausoleum



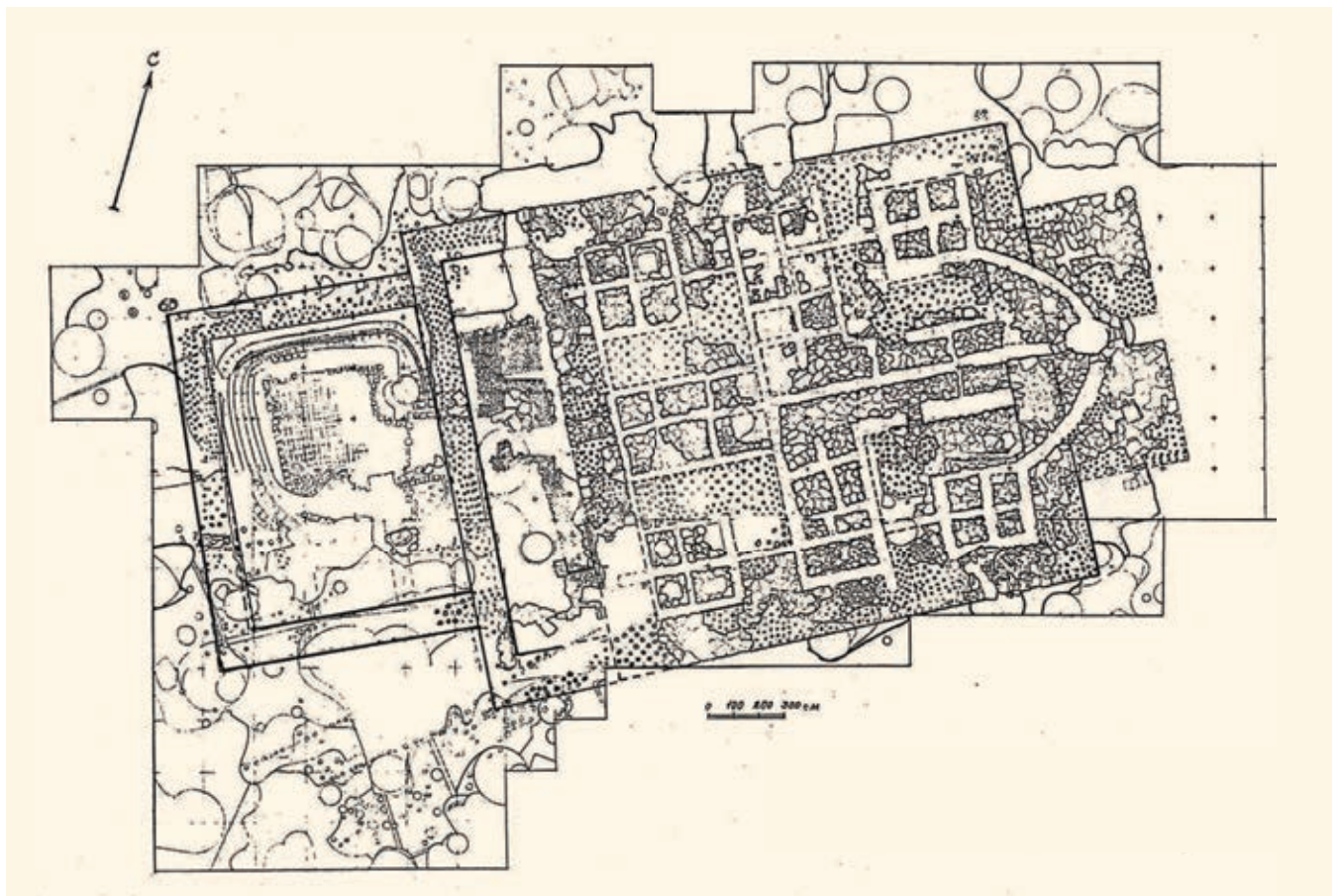
Mausoleum



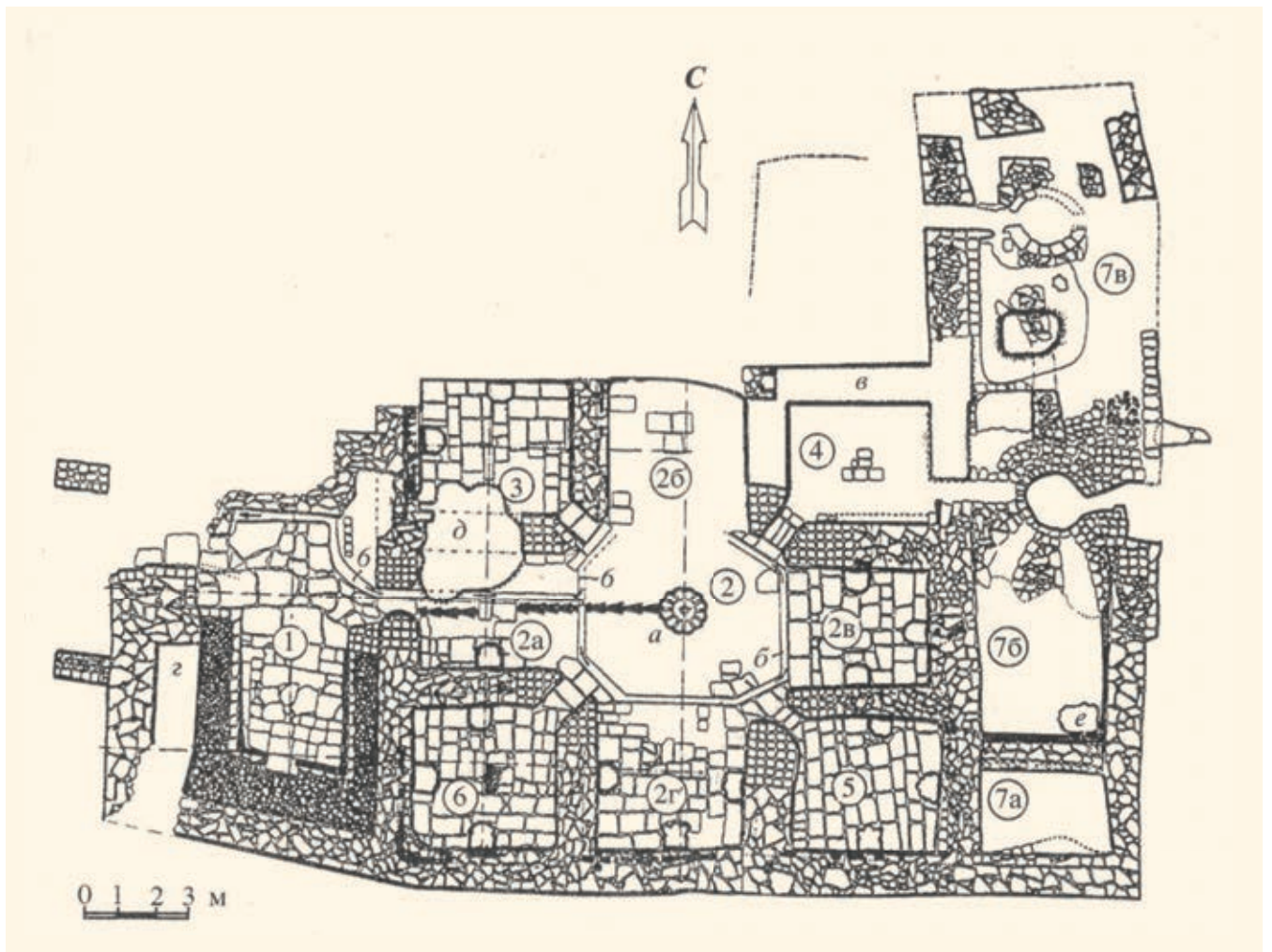
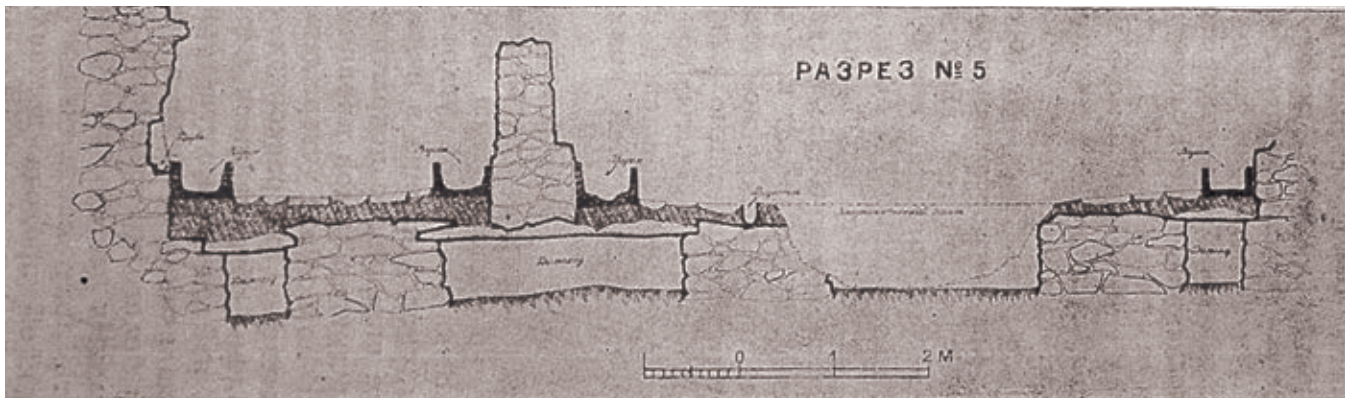
The Eastern Chamber XIII century



The Eastern Chamber XIII century



The Red Chamber XIV century





The Red Chamber XIV century

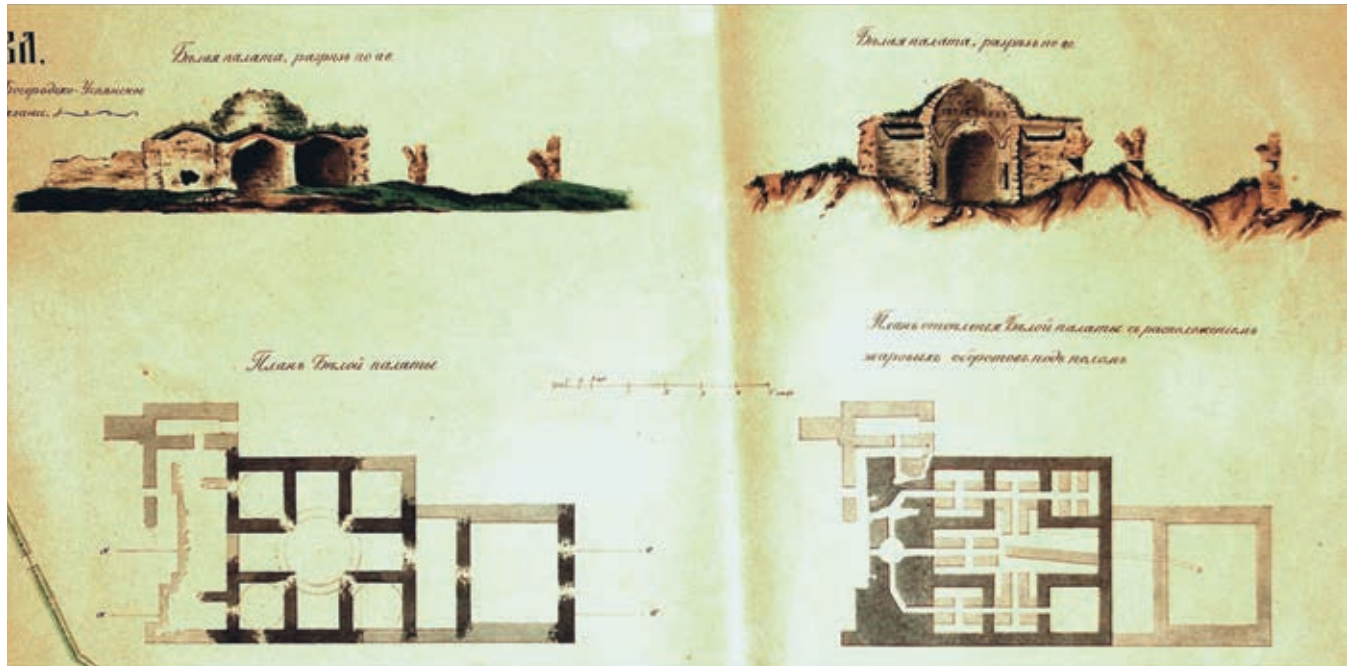




The White Chamber the 1340s and abandoned in 1460s



The White Chamber the 1340s and abandoned in 1460s



The White Chamber. The plan and the drawing by the A. Schmit, 1827.



The ruins of the Bolgar. The White Chamber. The lithography by the S. A. Tille, 1868.

Bathhouse № 2



Bathhouse № 2



The Market square 1340-50s



The Market square 1340-50s



The Market square 1340-50s



The Market square 1340-50s

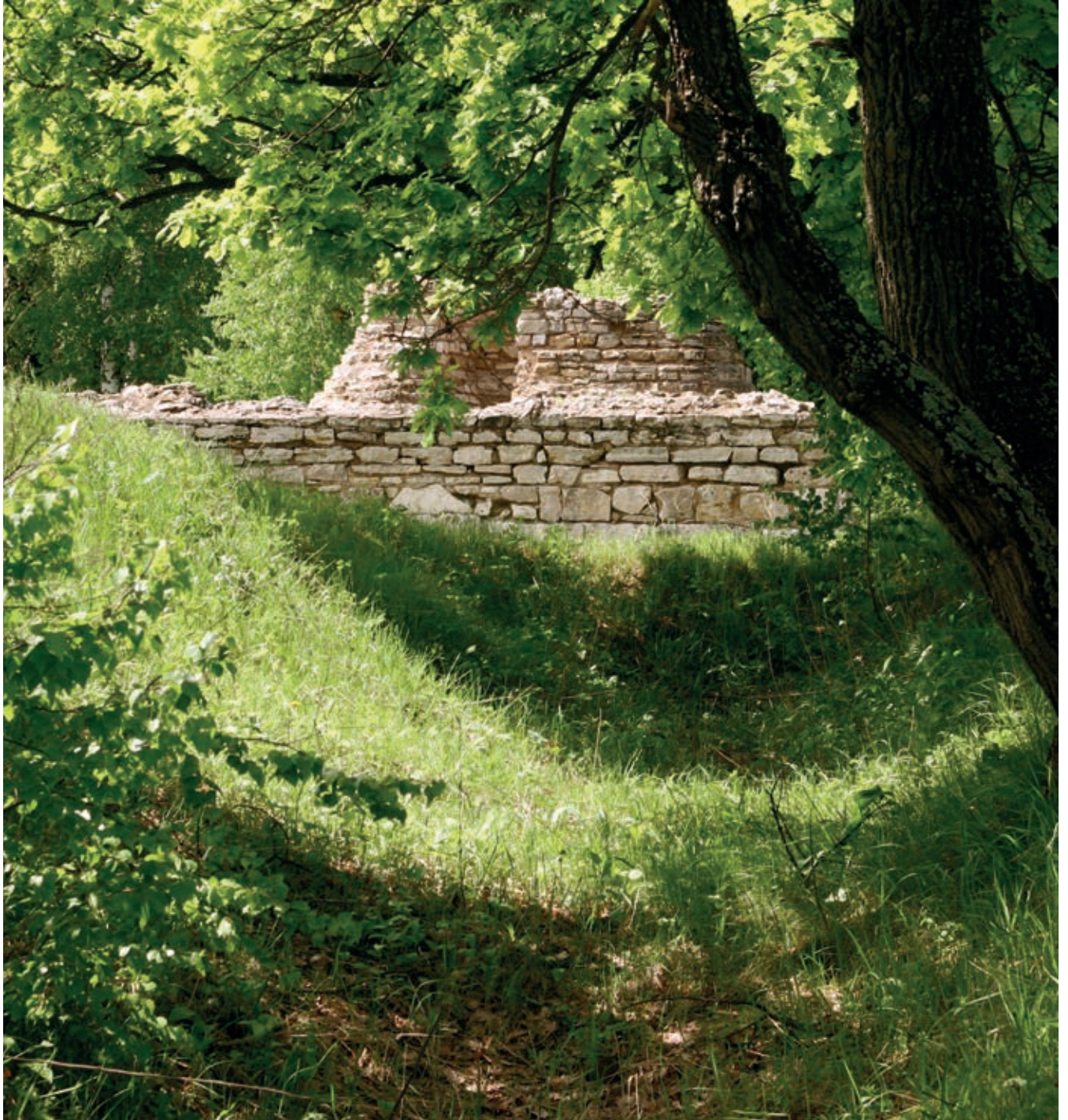


Small town XIV century

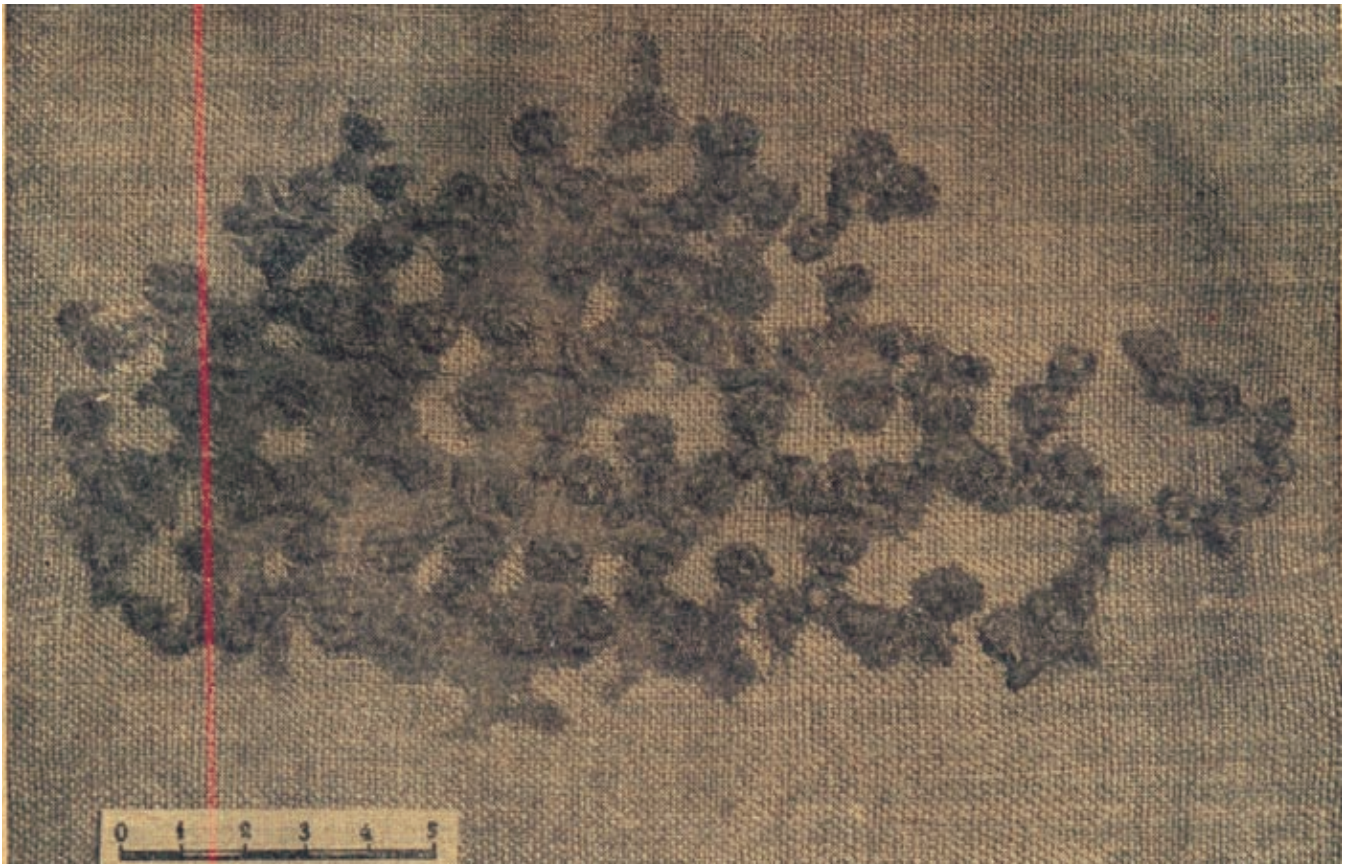
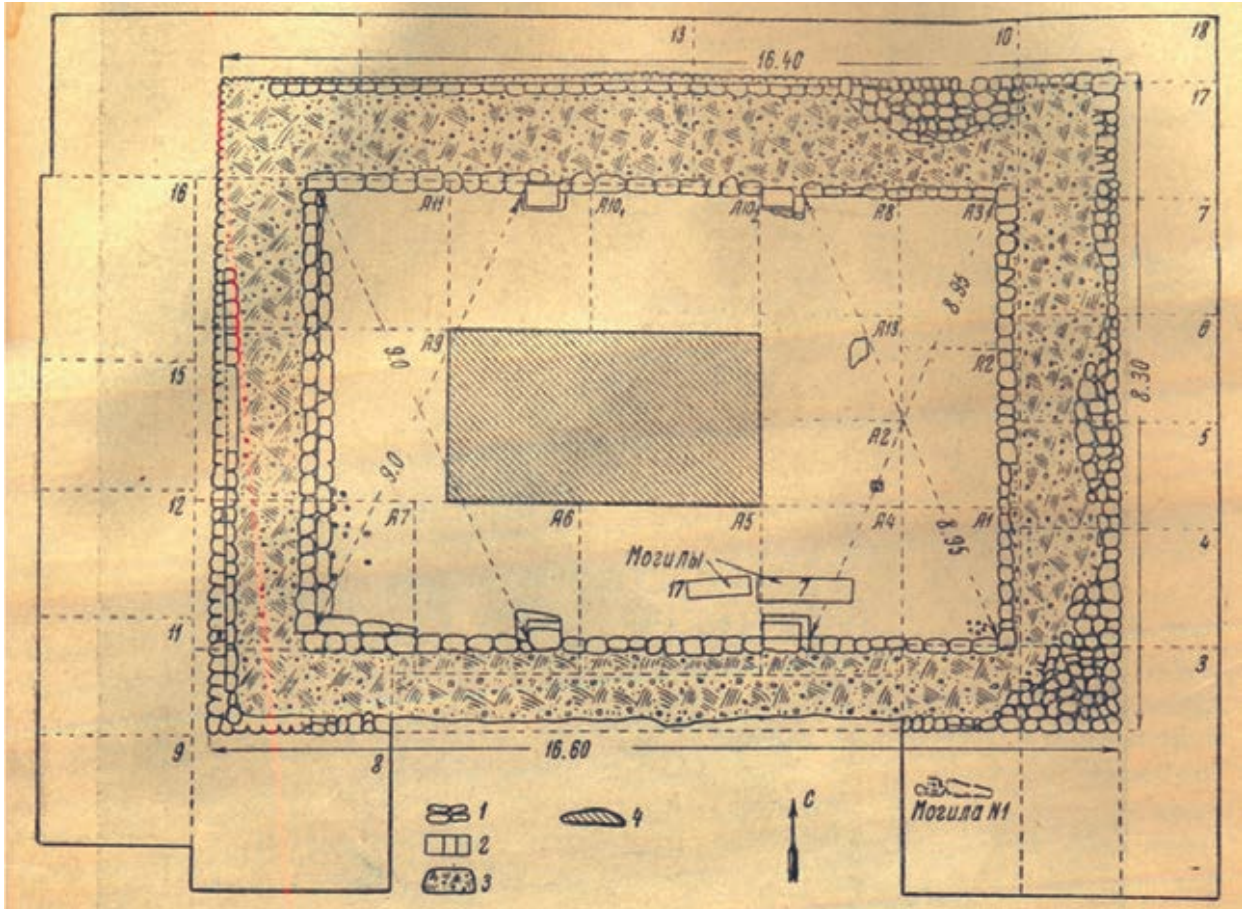




Small town XIV century

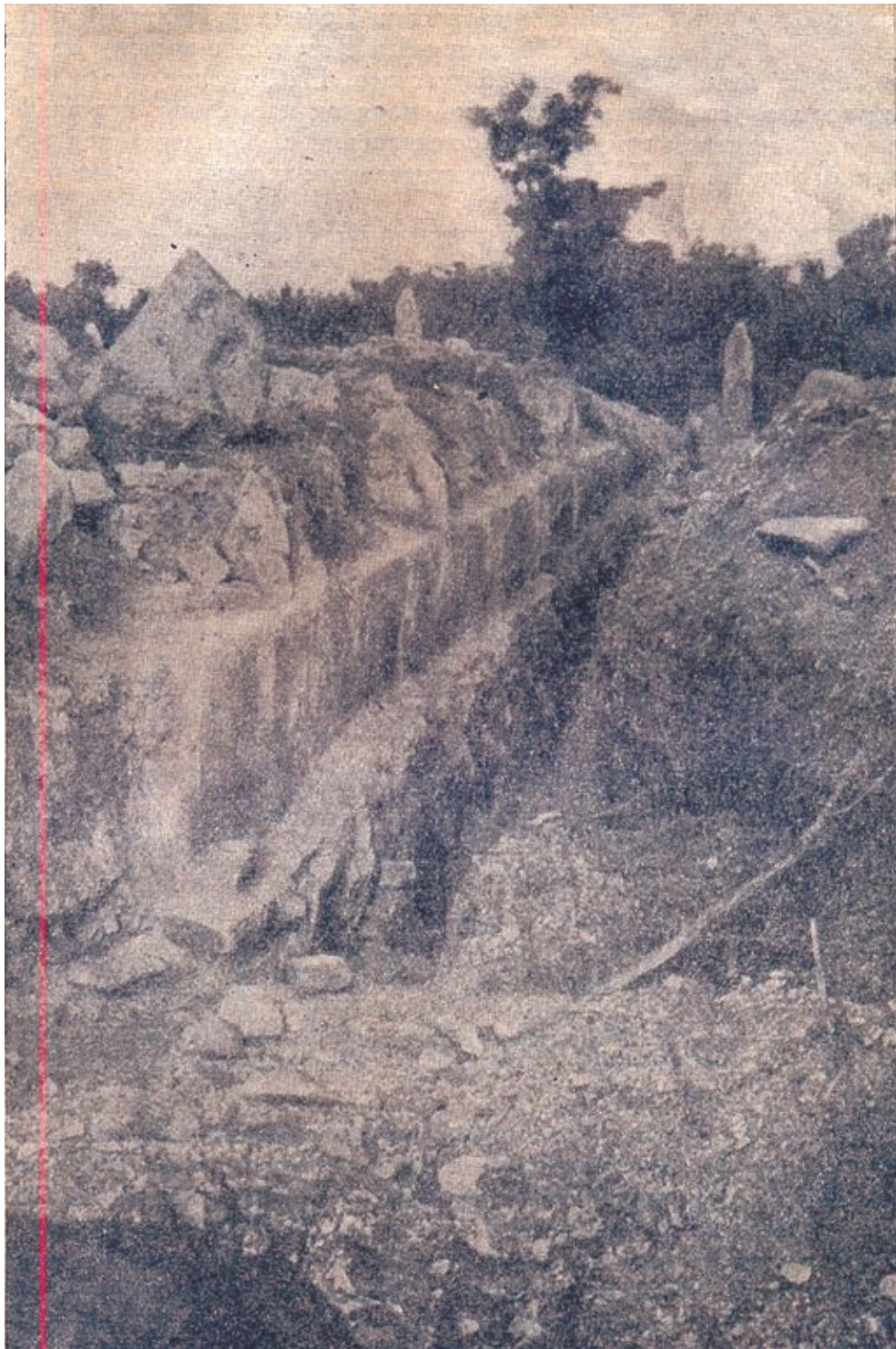
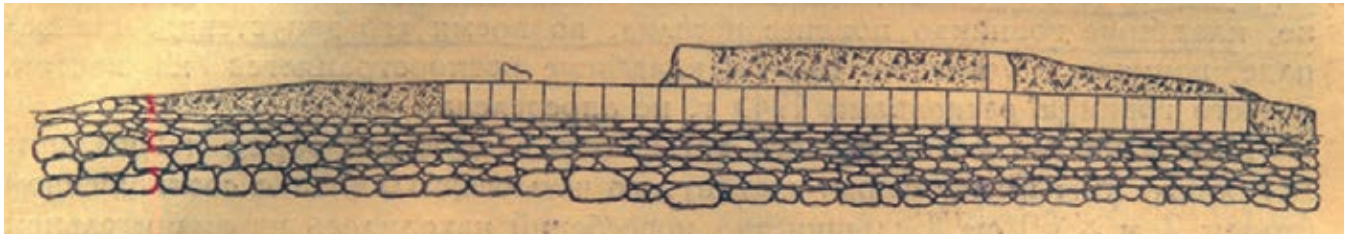


The Greek Chamber the XIV century



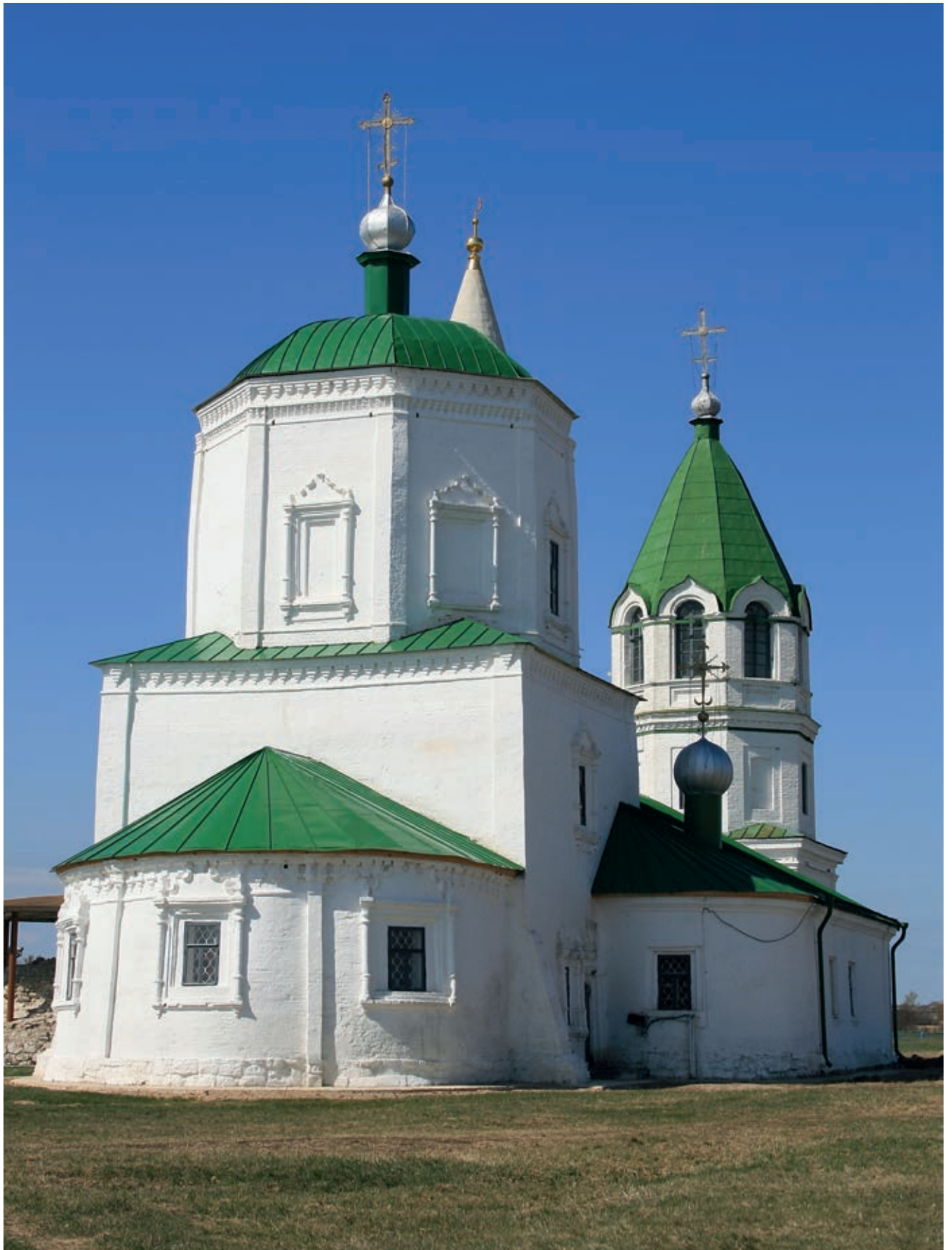


The Greek Chamber the XIV century





The church in the Name of Dormition of the Virgin 1732-1734





The church in the Name of Dormition of the Virgin 1732-1734





Cultivated landscape





Cultivated landscape





Annual celebration of adopting Islam
by Volga Bulgars in 922





Annual celebration of adopting Islam
by Volga Bulgars in 922



Annual celebration of adopting Islam
by Volga Bulgars in 922





Annual celebration of adopting Islam
by Volga Bulgars in 922





River station and the Bolgar Civilization Museum





River station and the Bolgar Civilization Museum



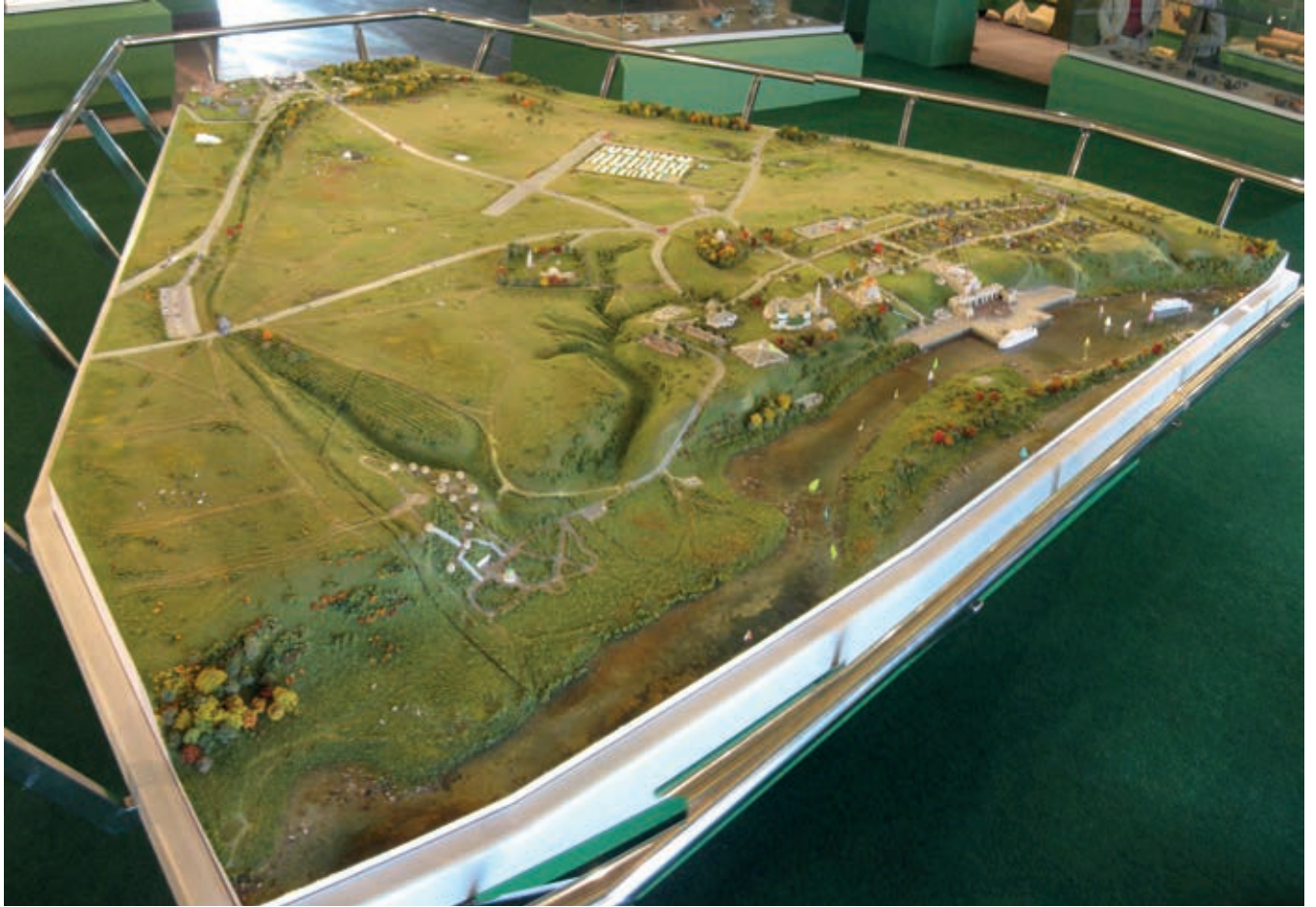


River station and the Bolgar Civilization Museum





River station and the Bolgar Civilization Museum



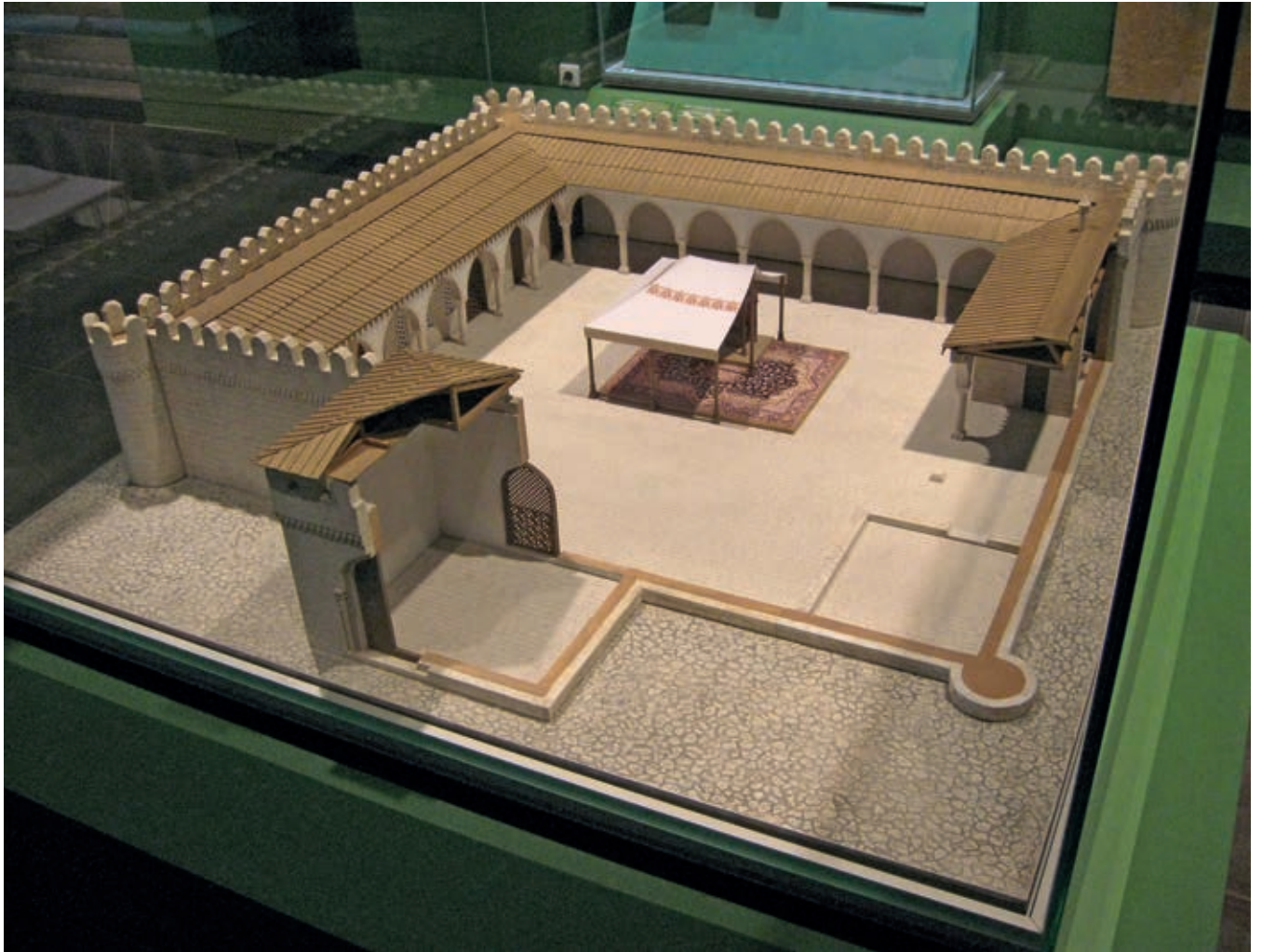


River station and the Bolgar Civilization Museum





River station and the Bolgar Civilization Museum





The Memorial sign



The Memorial sign



Koran



Koran



Ahmed Ibn-Fadlan's path

ПУТЕШЕСТВИЕ АХМЕДА ИБН ФАДЛАНА НА ВОЛГУ В 921-922 ГГ.



---	Границы самостоятельных государств, 921 г.	АЖУРАЖАН	ИСТОРИЧЕСКИЕ ОБЛАСТИ
- - -	Границы зависимых государств и отдельных областей, 921 г.	ХАЗАРЫ	НАРОДЫ И ПЛЕМЕНА
○	Центры самостоятельных государств	АЖАН (ЭЖА)	ГЕОГРАФИЧЕСКИЕ ОБЪЕДИНЕНИЯ
○	Центры областей и зависимых государств	①	ЦИФРАМИ ОБЪЕДИНЕНИЯ
•	Города	②	ВИЗАНТИЙСКАЯ ИМПЕРИЯ
△	Селения, равнины, караван-сарай	③	САСУН
→	Маршрут путешествия Ахмеда ибн Фадлана	④	ТИФЛИССКИЙ ЭМИРАТ
→	Часть маршрута, наиболее предположительно	⑤	ДАДГАЕМ
→	Основные даты путешествия		ВЛАДЕНИЯ АИЩАДОВ (ТАСАРИСТАН)

Автор карты А.А. Астайкин

Ahmed Ibn-Fadlan's path



Picture gallery



Picture gallery



Valiullin Farid. ceremony of Bulgar Khan Almush meeting with a delegation of the Baghdad Caliph. Mosaic





The White Mosque





The White Mosque





The White Mosque



The White Mosque





The Bread Museum





The Bread Museum



The Bread Museum



The Bread Museum



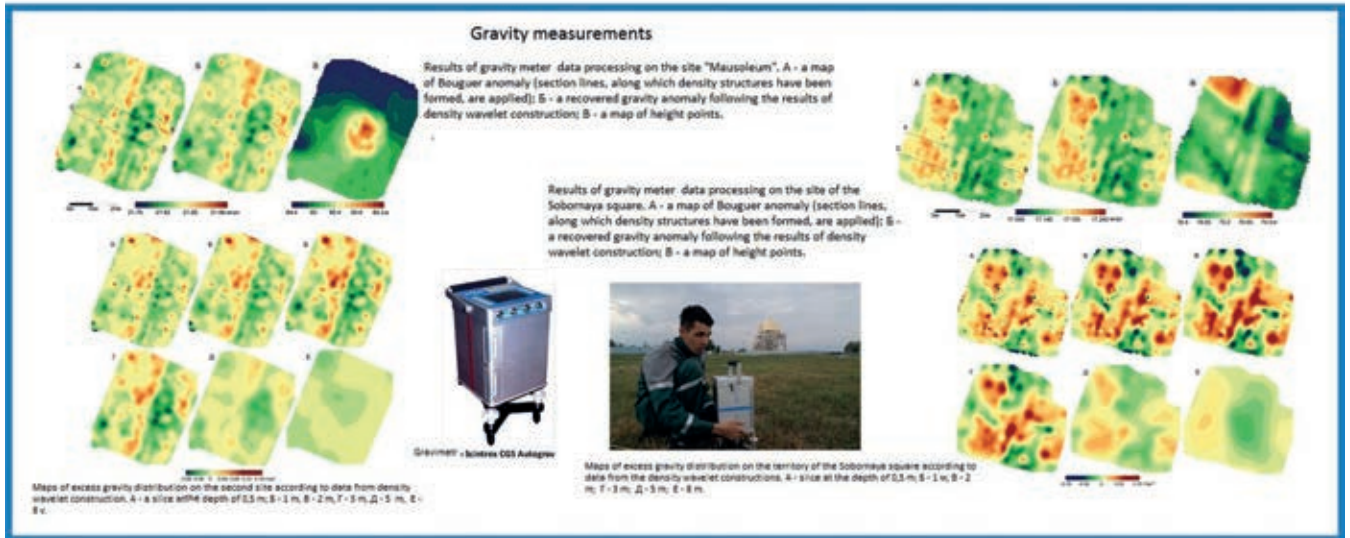
The Bread Museum



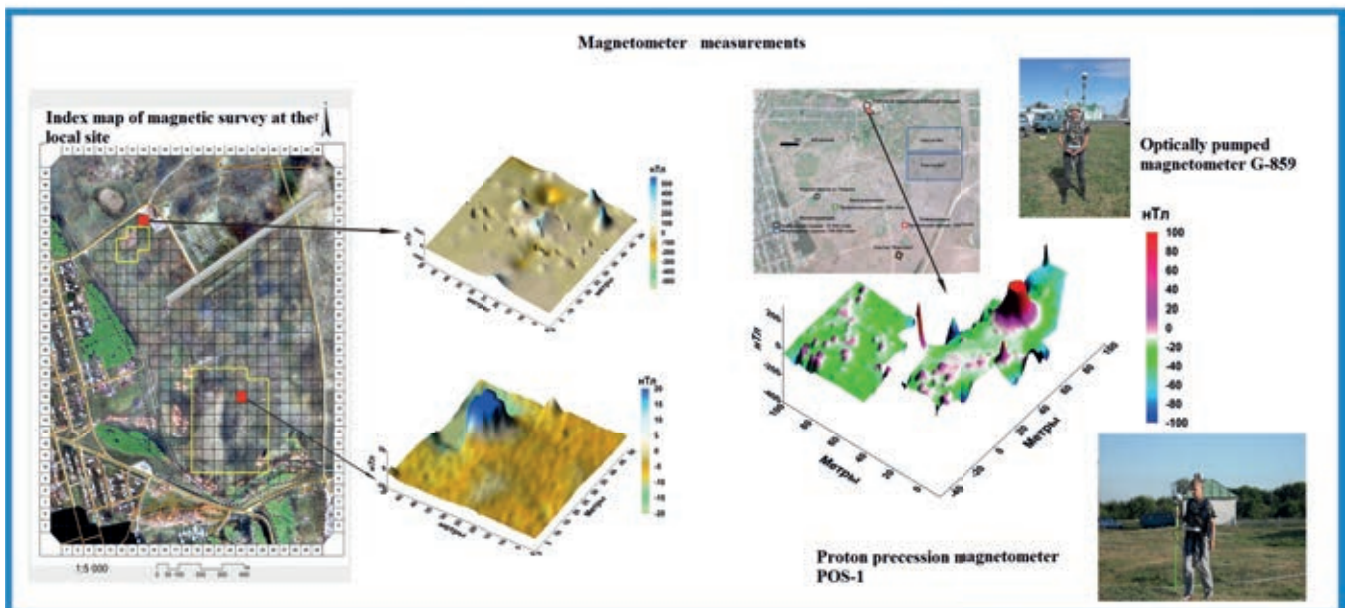
The Bread Museum



Geophysical investigations on the territory of the Bulgar ancient settlement



Geophysical investigations on the territory of the Bulgar ancient settlement



KAZAN (VOLGA REGION) FEDERAL UNIVERSITY

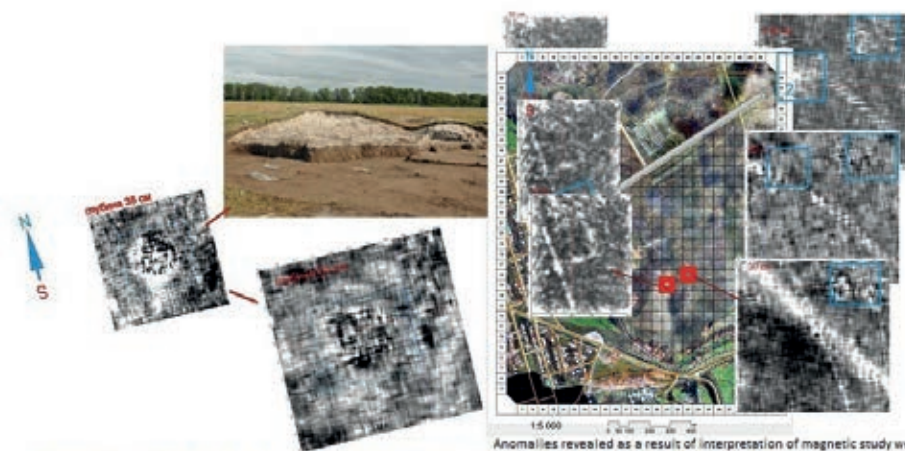
Institute of geology and oil-and-gas technologies

Geophysics and geoinformational technologies department

Geophysical investigations on the territory of the Bulgar ancient settlement

GEORADAR AND ELECTRICAL MEASUREMENT

A mapshot of excavation on the Sobornaya square and horizontal slices of georadar records on site No.1 (from depth of 14 and 80 cm) and site No.2 (from depth 80, 100 and 115 cm), which were calculated for velocity function $v=10 \text{ cm/ns}$

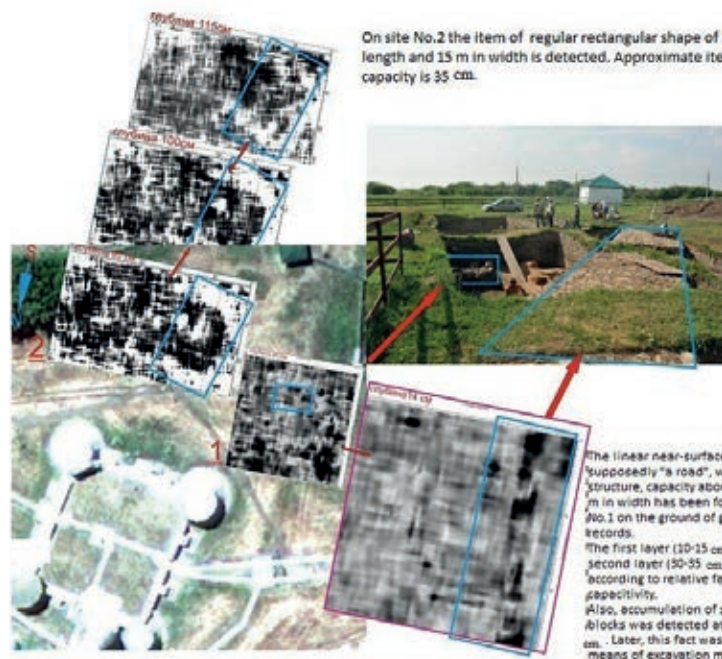


The central detailed body "kurgan" with a square of 160 sq.m and capacity of about 45 cm, has misty, low expressed outlines. But, at the depth of 35 cm, the inner linear structure is specified. A number of local anomalies, which are not large by square and capacity (0,7 m and 0,5 m, accordingly), are traced on the site of interest.

Archeological excavations that made on the site allow to specify the central feature as remains of the destroyed and turned over ancient building, and local anomalies along the perimeter of the site were identified as remains of old tombs.

Anomalies revealed as a result of interpretation of magnetic study were inspected by virtue of georadar measurements.

Near-surface linear anomalies, probably associated with turned over and subsurface roads of recent epoch, were detected in squares 15-21 and 16-23. In square 16-23 two prospective features at the depth of 10 cm and 100 cm, accordingly, were specified. The capacity of the first feature is about 90 cm, the capacity of the second feature is about 45 cm.



On site No.2 the item of regular rectangular shape of 18 m in length and 15 m in width is detected. Approximate item capacity is 35 cm.

The linear near-surface body, supposedly "a road", with two-layer structure, capacity about 45 cm and 3 m in width has been found on site No.1 on the ground of georadar records.

The first layer (30-35 cm) and the second layer (30-35 cm) are differed according to relative fall of dielectric capacity.

Also, accumulation of stones and blocks was detected at the depth of 80 cm. Later, this fact was confirmed by means of excavation made.